...ſame would come forth againſt him, and how Rodelando and his coſin made battaile with him, and how he overcame them both. Chap. 26. fol. 301. b.
How the emperour Alphebo wold haue perſwaded ſ Princeſſe Tigliafa to leaue that lamentable life, which ſhe refuſed to doo, and how the two knightes departed, & of all that happened in their iourney. Chap 27. fol. 305. b.
How the Prince of Poliſmago tooke the Paſtora captiue, and how Filipenſio ...deliuered her. Chap. 28. fol. 311. b.
How Claridiano fought with his own father, and how Galtenor knowing the ſame that would come therof remedied it. Chap. 29. fol. 317. a
How the Emperour Trebatio was reioyced with his nephew the Paſtora, and of a great tempeſt, with other accidents. Chap. 50. fol. 326. b.
How Poliphebo and the queene of Lira had cruell battaile, and what happened therein Chap. 31. fol. 330. b.

FINIS.

¶IMPRINTED AT LONdon by *Thomas Eaſt*, dwelling betweene Paules Wharfe and Baynardes Caſtle. 1583.

naria, and of that which passed in ỹ battaile which he had with ỹ Earle of Modigne. Chap. 20. fol. 111. a.

How the queene being in loue with the Emperour, and seeing that he wold giue her no remedie, woulde haue slaine her selfe, and how the Emperour was constrained to consent vnto her will. Cap. 21 fol. 123. b.

How the Emperour went into ỹ field against the Pagan Bramarandus, and of all that happned in the battell betweene them. Chap. 22. fol 125. a.

How the faire Queene Garrofilea made great lamentation for the departure of ỹ Emperour, and how at their last being together, she remained wᵗ childe by him. Chap. 23. fol. 130. a

How the knight of the Sunne would haue taryed for Tefereo in ỹ place wher as he appointed him, and how he lost his way in a thick mountaine, and of all that happened after that. Chap 24. fo. 132. b.

How the Greeke Emperour did disembarke himselfe at the Citie of Cimarra, and what happened vnto him there. Chap. 25. fo. 139. a.

How Eleno before he would go into the field, would see the Sepulcher of Lidia, and what chanced in the battaile appointed with the Emperour, his kinsemen & friends. Chap. 26. fol. 146. a.

How the two Empresses went to recreate themselues vnto a house of pleasure, and howe the king of Mauritania found them in their pastimes, and knowing who they were, would haue laid hold vpon the Empresse Briana. Chap. 27. fol 151.

How the worthie Queene Archisilora went to pursue the Pagan, & what happened to her in the way. cap. 28. fo. 158. b

How the famous Rosicleer and Brandimardo went to the kingdome of Lyra, and of all which passed in the battaple fol, 164. b.

The end of the Table of the first booke.

The Table of the second booke.

Of the Prince Claridiano, and how the king of Arginaria sent to ỹ king of Trapobana, and of all that happened to the messenger. Chap 1. fol. 169.

How Claridiano went vnto the campe of the king of Arginaria, and demaunded of him battaile, and of all that succeeded in the same. Chap. 2. fol. 174. b.

Howe a Damsell messenger from the queene of Tinacria, and came brought a Letter vnto the Emperour of Grecia, and of all that passed about the same. Chap. 3. fol. 181. a.

Howe the Dacian Prince did meete with Brenio, to whome he gaue the Letter of Lidia, and of Brenios death. Chap. 4. fo. 186. b

How Eleno went out of the forrest to see the aduenture of those knightes which passed by, & of the battaile he had with them. Chap. 5. fol 193. a.

How when the valiant Mauritanian had slaine the Tartarian Zoylo, he put on the armour of Bramarant for that hee woulde not bee knowen, and of all that happened therein. Chap. 6. fo. 199. a.

How the fierce Brusaldoro hauing spoken euil of women, and of all louers, was taken in the snares of loue with a Ladie that he met after he had finished the battaile with Zoylo Chap 7. fo. 202. b.

How Claridiano was verie sadde to see that he was an armed knight, onelye for one worthie feate of armes, and how he departed from the king Delfo. Chap 8. fol, 209. a.

Of

Of the battaile that Claridiano had with the fierce and timerous Gyaunt, sonne vnto the other Gyaunt which hee had slaine, and of all that happened in the same. Chap 9. fo.217.a

Of the great trauaile that the Greeke knight and the Ladies had for lacke of victuailes by reason of their long iourney, and how they found a Gyant whom the Prince slue, & what ofter they had to helpe themselues to victuails, cap.10. fol.219.

Howe Claridiano and his companie went vnto the triumph of Nabatea, and of all that hapned vnto them by y waye. Chap.11. fol.225.b,

How Claridiano was assaulted with two furious giants and fifteene knights that came with them, and of the battaile that he had with them all. Chap.12. fol.229.a.

How the knight and the Ladies went vnto a Castell, and of the greate treason that was ther ordained by art Magick, Chap.13. fol.232.b.

How the king of Nabatea had vnderstanding what the Greeke Prince had done in the Castel, and how he commanded that the Serpent and the heades of the Gyaunts should be set at the entrye of the gate of the Pallace: and how the triumph began, and of all that passed in the time of the feastes, Chapter, 14. fol.238.a.

How the heroycall Greeke was wounded with the dart of Cupid, in beholding the beautie of a verie faire Pastora, and of the great griefe that he sustayned. Chap.15. fol.241.b.

How Rosicleer found in an Iland the sonne of Alicandro, leading a troublesome life, with his faire and welbeloued wife, whome he set at libertie. Chap 16. fol.247.

Howe Rosicleer entered into the Castell, and of the battaile hee had therein, for to bring out of prison the Princes spouse vnto the Prince Meridian, being there kept. Chap.17. fol.251.b.

How the king Fangomadan came without knowing of anie thing that happened in the Castell, and founde the entrye closed, and of the battaile that was betweene him and Rosicleer. Chap.18. fol.256.b.

Of the battaile which Claridiano had with the Prince of Palestina, and howe he had the victorie, giuing libertie vnto Antemisca, and the rest. Chap.19. fo.258.b.

How Claridiano trauayled by Armenia, and of the straunge aduentures that happened in that Countrie. Chap.20. fol.266.b.

How Claridiano after he had read the historie in the parchment, blew the horn, and the gatts were opened, and how resistance was made at the entrie, and of all that passed about the same. Cap.21. fol.268.a.

How Claridiano being ouercome with the loue of the Pastora disguised himselfe in shepheards apparel, the better to inioy her sight, & of all that happened therein. Chap.22. fo.281.a.

Howe Poliphebo because his mother would not giue him the order of knighthoode, went secretly from the court, and of all that happened to him. Chap.23. fol.287.a,

Howe the worthie Tinacrian prosecuted his voyage, and chanced whereas he founde the Queene of Mauritania cruelly intreated of a Gyant, and of the battaile he had with him. Chap 24. fol.292.a.

How Poliphebo prosecuted his iourney for to goe into Grecia, and howe in the waie hee met by aduenture with certaine Clownes forcing of a Ladie, and woulde haue slaine her, and what happened touching that Ladie. Chap.25. fol.295.

How

This was that valiant Eleno prince of Dacia, who seing the controuersie betwixt those three knights, passed forwards on his way, saying vnto Rosicleer without loking vpon his armor and deuice: Knight thou dost wrong to disturbe them them that first began the battell. But Rosicleer with ỹ great anger and wrath he had to see that armes in a strangers power, did not beholde the deuice of his Cousin, and so being both blinde, without anie consideration, they assaulted one another in mortall battaile. This Dacian was not slothfull in drawing out of his sword, and to returne his salutation. At such time as from that part of Grecia, there appeared a great number of Knightes. But now my pen wareth werye, and my afflicted spirits doth constraine me to make an end of the second part of this history: for that with a new courage, I may haue time to translate the third part, which is full of prowesse and valiant dædes. Beginning from the battaile whereas we left Rosicleer, in the Iland whereas hee set Meridian at libertie from a furious Giant, as hath bene tolde you. And in the second of Don Eleno of Dacia, and by what aduenture he came into this place, whereas he shal end this his new begun battaile. Therfore I do request thee gentle Reader, that if in these two boks thou hast receiued any contentment to desire the Muses to aide, helpe and succour me, and not to leaue me, that I may bring vnto lyght the dædes and glorious end of these Princes and Knightes, with the loue of Claridiano, and Rosaluira. O Calliope with thy aide and helpe, I will not staye my hande, till such time as I haue declared all the whole dæds and pollicie vsed in these their feates of armes, for that by all reason I am bound to conclude the same.

FINIS.

The cruell battaile that past between the knight of the sunne, and ỹ fierce Giant Bramarant, in which bickering, the Giant perceiuing that he must needes haue the worst, murthered himselfe. Cap. 1. fol. 1. a.

The worthy knight Rosicleer finding Bramarant giuing vp the ghost, after he was dead, did intombe his corpes neere vnto a Pine apple tree, wherein he did ingraue an Epitaph. Cap. 2. fol. 4. b

Prince Rosicleer trauailing on his way, hauing alreadie taken leaue of the Princesses Ladies, did chaunce vpon a certain aduenture, and of the successe he had therein. Cap. 3. fol. 11. a

The great sorrow that the knight of the Sunne receiued, in thinking of his owne disloyaltie, & that which happened vnto him. Cap. 4. fol. 23. b

How the Grecian knight perswaded his vncle the Prince of Dacia, to accompanie him, and leaue that sorrowful and desolate life, and of that which after happened to him. Cap. 5. fol. 26. b.

Of the terrible battaile ỹ this Grecian Prince had with the Giant, and of all the aduentures that chaunced in the said battaile. Cap. 6. fol. 32. a.

How the knight Eleno had battayle with Tefereo the giants cousin, and the successe that was therein, and howe the Prince Eleno by a straunge aduenture was separated from his cousin and Tefereo. Chap. 7. fol. 37. a.

By what aduenture Floramont was deliuered from the perill he was in, and how the Princesse Claridiana was deliuered of child, and how she was comforted in all her trouble by the wise Artemidoro. Chap. fol. 44. a

How that when the king of Hungarie was taking his leaue to departe, there came a Gyant, hauing a cruell and furious countenance, who defied the Emperour and his sonnes, & of al that chanced therein. Chap. 9. fol. 49. a.

How the king of Tyre gaue an assait to rob the ship where Rosicleer was, & how the same king was come. Ca. 10 fo. 53. b

How the king of Sardenia was baptised, and how a Ladie demaunded a promise of the Emperour, which he graunted, for the which all the court was very sad. Chap. 11. fol. 58. b.

How ỹ Emperour vndid a scrowle of parchment, & therein read the cause why a certaine dead Ladie was slaine with cruell tyrannie, and of the great sorrowe he receiued for the same. Cap. 12 fo. 65. b

How ỹ Emperour Trebatio did land at the Iland Citarea, & of all that happened there. Chap. 13. fo. 71. a.

How the Ladie Lidia talked with her knight Brenio, demaunding the cause of his discontment, and of other accidents. Chap. 14. fol. 74. a.

How the Emperour when he was recouered of the wearinesse which he receiued at the sea, trauailed in the same Iland where he was cast a lande, and how he met with certaine knights, with whō he had battaile. Chap 15. fol. 81. b.

How the two children of the great Alphebo were stolne awaie by the Gyaunt Galtenor, and what succeeded of ỹ same. Chap 16. fo 87. a.

Of the great paine that the Prince sustained for the absence of his cousin, and how he had battaile wth a certaine knight that was afflicted with loue, and of all that chaunced therein Chap. 17. fo. 90 b.

How the Prince met in Paris with the knight of the Images, and of the battel he had with him, & how they ouercame the three knightes that did accuse the Princesse, and of all that happened besides. Chap. 18. fol 99. a.

Of all that happened vnto the faire Lidia, and to the Prince Eleno, after they departed the mountaine where as they met. Chap. 19. fol. 105.

his horse side, that he made him to run lyke vnto the winde, so that he was straight with the Pagan, and stroke him such a blow, that it semed a whole tower had falne vpon him, and hauing no power to the contrary, he fell vpon his horse neck without anye feeling: who being scarred with that terrible blow, with a swift course carried his master from his enimy. In all this time was not the Tinacrian nor that faire dame idle: but when they saw the battaile begun betwixt the two Knights, with great furie they returned vnto their battaile, and for that the Tinacrian was full of anger, he threwe his sheeld at his backe, and stroke at the Queene so mightie a blow & with so great fury ý he made her to fall downe vpon the buttock of her horse without any remembrance, who caried her a while round about the field. The Queene came quickly againe vnto her selfe, so wrathfull, that she had no other thought, but to take reuengement on her enimie, and throwing her sheild to the grounde, she toke her sworde in both her hands, & stroke her horse with the spurres, that she made him run like vnto the winde, & with a trice shee was with the Tinacrian, and stroke him so vppon the healme that with the fire which flew out thereat, he lost his sight, & this valiant young Knight fell backwardes vppon his horse crupper without any feelyng, who carried him vp and down the field, which when the Lady saw, she would haue finished the battaile, with another rigorous blow. At this time it so fell out that the horse of that valiannt African with his master, did likewise runne about the field, the which was the occasion, that the Greeke might behold all that passed, and with a trice he was with them & sayd. Withdraw thy selfe for that it is not the part of heroycall Knights to pursue and follow them that are without remembrance. The Lady who was very angry, gaue the Greeke for aunswere, a furious blow, but straight way she was paid again with ý like: wher betwixt them began a new battaile. In the meane time the Tinacrian & the Pagan were come againe vnto themselues, & setled in their saddles, & either of them looked about for his aduersary, whom they beheld in mortall battaile. And they

two

two being together, which did hate each other deadly, made no reckoning of their late enimies, but assalted one another very furiously and strongly. All this was great profit vnto the Quéne of Lira, for that the Tinacrian was so mightie & furious, that she should haue bene in great perill. I cannot tell you who was more furious of these two warriors, but I can say this, that Claridiano was verye sore wounded and ouercome, as hereafter shall be tolde you, in such sort, that no medicine might auaile to helpe him. Thus they indured foure houres without taking any rest, fighting more fiercely then at the beginning. And being in this controuersie, towardes the parts nert the sea side, they saw comming Rosicleer, and that stout Troyan, and the Prince Meridian, who séing the battaile, did stay to behold them. Rosicleer knew straight wayes the armour of Bramarant, who séing them in the power of another, was very full of wrath, and without any more tarrying, he put himselfe in the midst among them, and with a furious voyce he sayd. Tell me knight, who made thée so bold to take this armour, from the place wheras I put them for a Tropheo and remembraunce. The Pagan aunswered him and said: Saperbious and proud knight, art thou by fortune one of those Grécke Princes, who with great threatenings dost defende this armour. I am one of them said Rosicleer, and he that will take away thy life for thy boldnesse, and therewith he drew out his sword for to assault him: but the Tinacrian did put himselfe before him & said with great curtesie as vnto his elder brother. Knight & prince of Grecia, let not your highnes do me so much wrong, to hinder me from being reuenged on this Knight, let mée alone with him, for that I haue so much hope in ỹ strength of my arme, to giue a good accompt of him. Therefore I do desire thée to stand a little a side. Rosicleer woulde haue aunswered him, but vpon a sodaine he saw comming from the parte of Pireo, a Knight, armed with russet armour, garnished with stripes and barres of golde, his shield was likewise Russet and there was painted on it, the God Cupide with two faces.

neither at the one nor at the other, but assaulted the Pagan with a meruailous mightie blow. The Queene at that time did put her selfe before him againe, and vpon her was executed that blow vpon the left shoulder, which did grieue her very much, as it appeared by her outward countenaunce. At this time the Pagan put himselfe againe formost: then this furious Lady with her sword all aloft, said. Keepe thy selfe backe, thou vile Knight, and of base linage, and let me make an ende of this that I haue begun, before that the potencye of my arme, do ouerthrow thy great pride. Stand thou back sayde the Pagan, for it is my right to take vengeaunce on this euill Knight, for that he doth carry my Lady robbed from me. In these words which was spoken, the Tinacrian did know the other to be ỹ king of Mauritania, who brought him in so great extremitie at the beginning of his Knighthood, for the which he was very full of yre and wrath, insomoch that a thicke smoke came forth at his beauer. At this time came vnto that place Don Claridiano of the speare, the light of all Knighthood, who was armed with his purple armour, and as I haue told you, he departed out of the Emperors pallaice in great secret. And when he saw the great cõtention that was betwixt those knights, being very desirous to know the occasion, he put himselfe betweene them, and desired them to leaue off that battell. The furious Pagan answered: thou knight, put not thy self to vnderstand any matter before thou art called: for if thou dost, possibly thou shalt beare part of that, which this vnfortunate knight doth owe me. Then Claridiano said: I know not wherein he should be indebted vnto thee, but rather I do vnderstand that thou art he that hath least reason, for that the other knight of the branch, was the first that begun this battaile. First he did to me the griefe, sayd the Pagan, before the other. For that I gaue vnto him the order of knighthood, and after that I had giuen it him, he did defie me in mortall battaile: & not content herewith, he hath robbed me of my Ladye which thou dost see yonder. To these words the Tinacrian answered and said. Thou lieſt like an euill knight, for ỹ I haue not robbed

her,

her,but I haue deliuered her from that place, from whence thou with all thy power wert not sufficient to deliuer her:& for thy falshood,thou shalt not carrie her away without mortall battell.This furious pagan when he heard himself so ill spoken off,like a Lion he went against him : but that stoute Dame did put her selfe before him,and said.Stand back thou Pagan & importunate diuell, for first thou shalt haue to do with me,or els thou shalt let me make an ende of my pretence.This braue Tinacrian like a furious Lion,said vnto ỹ Greeke Prince:Curteous knight, I pray you to stand backe somewhat and let me alone with them both , for that I doe esteeme both of thē but a little.And with loude voice he said: Come,come against me thou Pagan king,& of little valour,& take in companie with thee that other arrogant fole as thou art,for that of both you together I do meane to set an agreement with ỹ strength and force of my indomable arme.Then Claridiano sayd,it shall not be so, but first procure to cleere thy selfe of him with the branch,and I will set thee at libertie of the pagan.And therewith he drew out his sword, and stroke him such a blow, ỹ he made him to tremble & remain as one amazed : and seeing him in ỹ case,he stroke him another blow vpon the beuer, that he made the pagan to gryppe fast about his horse neck to keepe himselfe from falling.But this Moore came quickly again to himselfe,and with a furious courage he stroke him vpon the left sholder such a blow that it made the Greeke to shrinke in his body,and to scape downe to his saddle bow,with ỹ great griefe that he felte, & giuing a terrible grone,he lift vp his sword,& stroke the pagan a blow vpon ỹ helme,that the sparks of fire flewe into the aire,and almost without remembrance,he fell down vpon his horse crupper.The pagan comming again vnto himselfe,puffed out at his beuer a thick smoke,& threw his shield at his back,and stroke the Greeke so terrible a blowe, that without all remembrance, he fell forwards vpon his horses eares,who carried him a while vp & down ỹ field: but presently he came againe vnto himselfe,& seeing ỹ he was so ill intreated,he toke his sword in both his hands,& set spurs to

called for his horse, which was straight waye brought vnto him by Macedonio, and without putting foote into the stirroppe, he leaped into the saddle, and toke his speare in his hand, & without replying any other thing, that valiant Tinacrian presently withdrew himselfe backe, and toke of the field that part which was needfull for him. The lyke did the Queene, and at one time returned their light horses, and in great hast they stroke their horses with the spurs, without all pitie, and with extreame furie, they made the incounter vpon their shields, that their speares shiuered all to peces, and passed along with their course without any stay of their bodies, or moning in their saddles, and turned aboute their horse with great lightnes with their swords in their hands. The Queene stroke the first blowe at the Prince, that shee made the sparkes to flye out of his helme, and the Prince to decline his head to the saddle bow, who with great lightnes did settle himselfe againe in the saddle, and did cleare himselfe from the second blow, which was readie to be discharged vpon him: & putting himselfe on the one side, he stroke her such a blow vpon the helme, that it made a great sounde throughout all the fields and craggie mountaines, and shee fell backwards vpon the horse crouper with her heade: but very quickly she arose vp againe, and settled her selfe, and with great yre she layd fast holde vpon her sword, to strike her enimie, whom she did not finde idle, but rather began to assault her with blowes of mortall battaile. Such blowes was stroke betwixt them, that with the least they thought either of them to make an ende of that controuersie. At this time, there came that way a Knight, who was armed with very rich armour. This was that strong and mightie Brufaldoro, who if you do remember, with ỳ mightie & strong blow giuen by the Tinacrian, remained all alongst the flore in his galley without remembrance. And when he came vnto himselfe, with his accostomed bravery, he would followe that way which the barke went: but calling to remembrance the great trauaile and sorrow in the which his Lady was, loue did there constraine him to follow his owne iourney.

the

And when he came thether, he vnderstood that Poliphebo had set her at lybertie, and caried her with him, towards the Almaine Court: & by the way that he trauailed, he met with people which did tell him of all that had happened, and all signes and tokens of the Knight that carried away his Lady, and by them he did vnderstand that he was his enemye: then he left his owne armour, and armed himselfe with that which was Bramarants, and followed that way which was tolde him he went. The fame was such, that this Tinacrian left behinde him, that whersoeuer he came, or whersoeuer he went, he alwayes had newes which way he trauailed, vntill that time, that he came & found him in battel with that worthy Queene, where he staid to behold a battaile so well fought. At length he knew him very well to be the Knight that brought him into so great extremitie: and loking about him on them that were beholding the battaile, amongest the rest he knewe his louing wife: and although his ioye was very great in seeing of her, yet the wrath and ire that he had against the Knight was so much, that without saying any word vnto the Queene his wife, he went toward them that were in battaile, and with his sword drawen in his hand, he put himselfe before the Queene and sayde. I do desire thee gentle Knight that thou wouldest rest and take thine ease, and let me alone with my strong arme take reuengement of this knight, vsurper of my louing wife, and a robber of my fame and honour, and without any other detainment, he went against him for to strike at him mortall blowes. But then that worthy Gentlewoman with great anger said.

Stand away Knight, and let me make an ende of that I haue begun, and offer no wrong vnto them that do knowe how to make their their demaund vnto thy cost: and therewith she put her selfe before him. But this furious Pagan with the great desire he had to make his reuengement turned and put himselfe before the Queene striking at the Tinacrian mightie & strong blowes, who did not much mattell

nei-

and this Prince whome you haue in so great price, I neuer saw. Then Clarentina did beleaue that which the quéene had said, and in beholding her, she did plainly perceiue by the delicateneſſe of her face that shée was a woman. There the Quæne of Lira did take her leaue of them, and returned the way from whence she came, and came into a village in the countie of Tirol, whereas she did take her reſt all that night. When the morning was come, and she in a readineſſe to trauaile, she toke her way towards Hungary, with determination, not to make any stay, till she came into Grecia, whether as she came in the ende of her great trauaile, without any other aduenture happening, and alwayes hauing in remembraunce the Knight of the Braunch. So one day very early in the morning at the breake of the daye, she entered into a very faire forreſt, very nigh vnto Conſtantinople, and at such time as the Sunne would extend his golden beames, she saw lying vnder a trée, a very big and well made knight, who was a slæpe, and his shield did hang vpon a trée, and thereon she saw the deuiſe of the knight of the Braunch, the which bæing well marked by the Quéene, she vnderſtoode, that he which lay ther a slæpe, was the owner of that shield and the Knight whom she sought for. And nigh vnto the shield was his speare, set vp againſt a trée: and loking about her to sée if he had anye companie, she sawe within a small diſtaunce from him a Ladie likewiſe a slæpe, and by her a Page, and therewith she was fully certified, that he was the same Knight that shée loked for. So there shée was a good while, beholding his gentle diſpoſition and stature, and graue countenaunce, till such time as she did determine to doe that, which in the chapter following shall be tolde you.

¶ How the Knight Poliphebo and the Queene of Lira had cruell battaile, and of all that happened therein. Cap. 31.

After



After that this faire Matron had with great deliberation beheld this warlike Tinacrian vpon the grœne grasse a slœpe, she determined with the great ende of her speare, to touch him vppon his armed breast, ỹ which was no sooner done, but he awaked & started with the sodayne calling of him out of his slœpe: but opening his eyes, and seeing before him that bigge and well set Knight, with a trice he arose vpon his fete, and in great hast he laced on his healme, and toke his shield from the place wheras it hung, he did well show in the great hast he made in besturring himselfe, the great liuelinesse of his courage. The Quœne when she sawe him all in a readinesse to the battaile, with a gracious laughter sayd. I would neuer haue thought that there had bene so great an ouersight in a knight and especially of such fame, that so without all feare of a great number that cannot abide them, but procure all euill possible against them, that without all care in the high way doth put himselfe to slœp. The Tinacrian answered, and said: There was not in me so great ouersight, as in you care, to venture your selfe, whereas you shall receiue little profite of the same. And doth it seeme vnto thee, that I was ouerseene therein? Possibly thou wilt iudge the contrary, if thou wilte proue the strength of my arme. It cannot but be very much, if it be conformable vnto thy ouersight, saide this faire Ladie, and beleeue me that it woulde greeue me to make anye proofe, if there be in thee so great vertue, as thy fame doth beare the report. Therefore take to thee thy horse, and let either of vs procure to make his defence, and here I do aduise thee, that I am none of the Knights that hetherto thou hast proued in Grecia. In the mean time that she was saying these words, the Tinacrian did very much behold her, and although he was verie angrie at the wordes which she had spoken, yet he sayde. Well seeing it is so, that thy follye doth so much constraine thee to make a controuersie without any occasion, tarrie, and thou shalt see, howe I was wont to punish such solish people as thou arte, and so in great hast hee

called

and that their principal refuge was dead, without any more tarrying, they altogether did aſſault her, and this worthy matron put her ſelfe againſt them, who was with them incountred on all ſides round about, but yet they did not moue her from her ſaddle little nor much: but ſhe returned againſt them in ſuch ſorte, that ſhe with her mightie blowes, made their harneſſe and redde bloud to ſpring rounde about the fielde. Theſe Knights were all choſen Knights, and did trouble her very much, making her ſundry times to loſe the ſight of her eyes, ỹ which did bring her very much in cholar, in ſuch ſort that ſhe threw her ſhield at her backe, and taking her ſword in both her hands, ſhe beſturred her ſelfe on the one ſide and on the other, about their heads, and wounding of knights, ouerthrowing of them to the ground dead, in ſuch ſorte, that when ſhe remembred her ſelfe, there was no more but fiue of ỹ Knyghts left aliue, who when they ſaw ſo great ſlaughter in ſo ſhort time, they determined the ſeperation of the controuerſie, and to put more confidence in their horſe fæte, than in their owne defence and putting it in vre, they ranne away. This Lady made no reckoning to follow them, but went ſtraight waye and did vnloſe the Priſoners. Vnto whom Don Floriſarte of Bauiera did giue thankes for all the reſt, deſiring him that he wold declare vnto them his name for that they might knowe vnto whom they were bound, for that great benefit done vnto them. The Lady did anſwere them with great courteſie and ſayd: Gentle Knightes, my name is of ſo ſmall valour, that I cannot be knowen by it: but that which I may do to giue you contentment, is to put off my healme, and in ſæing my face, you ſhall ſæ if that at any time you haue heard any mention of me: and in ſaying theſe words, ſhe her ſelfe did vnlace and take off her helme, And lobe with what beautie the Radiaunt Sunne doeth ſhowe himſelfe vppon a ſodaine when all his beames hath bene hidden with a darke clowde: euen ſo, and rather more, did this excellent and beautifull face ſhow it ſelfe, after that ſhe had pulled off her healme, the which before did couer the ſame.

The Knights when they saw her great beautie, they very much meruailed, and beleeued that in the proportion of his great beautie, it shuld be Poliphebo of Tinacria. Then Don Florisarte sayd: Your excellent and beautifull face, and your high and mightie deedes, gentle Knight, doeth make vs beleeue two things: the one, that thou wert borne to remedie and aide those that can do little: the other, we do beleeue that thou art brother, or some kinsman, vnto that faire Poliphebo Prince of Tinacria, sonne vnto the Emperour Trebatio, who now is called the Knight of the Braunch, by reason of a golde Braunch that he carrieth on his shield for his deuice, as you do vpon your healme: and heere I do desire you, to tell vs whether you are his brother or not, for that we are much bound vnto him, and there they declared vnto her, all ỹ was done for them, as before you haue heard. The which was the occasion, that ther kindled in ỹ queene, a great desire to knowe him, and informing her selfe howe that he was gone towards Grecia, she did determine to follow him, to see if she might meete with him, to proue her selfe on him.

And beeing in this thought she made answere vnto that they demaunded, and sayd: This Knight whom you do speak off, I do not knowe him, neither haue I seene him at anye time, but haue heard newes of his heroycall deeds of armes: and I am very glad that you haue taken this seruice as a deede done by him. Then the faire Clarentina sayd. Ah flower of all Knighthode, wherefore will you thus hide your selfe from them, who are so much bound vnto your seruice. I know not vnto whom I should attribute it, but vnto my vnhappie and ill fortune, for that I do well see that thou art Poliphebo, the flower of all those that do weare armour: do not denie me, beeing so well knowen. Gentle Lady said the Queene, by that which I owe vnto my highnesse, I protest vnto you, that I am not the partie that you do speake off: and heere I doe sweare vnto you, that I am a woman as you are, and I am called Archisilora Queene of Lyra:

and

craggie mountaines, she lost her waie amongest a companie of high and thicke Pine trees, amongst the which she gaue a thousand turnes, not knowing which waye to take to bring her selfe out thereof. So with this sorrow and griefe she passed all that daie till night came vpon them, at such time as they had found a verie narow and not much vsed way, which lead them vp to a high and mightie steepe mountaine, in which place they determined to rest themselues, til such time as Phœbus should make her returne, passing awaie the night in verie good communication with her Gentlewomen, and did sup with that which they continually were prouided off. So when the breake of the daie was come, the Queene dyd very well peruse her armour, and put her selfe on horse backe, and for that the waie seemed to be somewhat daungerous, she put on her helme and carryed her Speare in her hande, and with great trauaile they followed that way, when they had well neere spent the third part of the daie, and had made an end of the going vp that mountaine, being vpon the toppe thereof, they looked about them on all partes, and towardes the right hand on the foote of that high mountaine they sawe a companie of armed men, and by reason that they were so far of, they could not discerne what it shuld be. So straight way they descended downe the mountaine, and when they came at the foote therof, they looked round about to see if they could discouer that which they had seene from the top of the same, and sawe that there were to the number of twentie knights verie well armed, and amongest them a Gyant, who brought with them two knights prisoners, armed with verie rich armour, all sauing their heads, & with them a Ladie who was as sad and sorrowfull, as faire and beautifull, and with her certaine Gentlewomen which did beare her companie. These were the vnhappie Earle of Tirol, and his sister, and Don Florisarte of Bauiera, who as I haue tolde you were taken prisoners in the way going towards Esprich, whom this valiant matrone did see cõming downe the Mountaine, & when this worthie Gentlewoman did see this great force & wrong done, she was verie desirous to know ỳ occasion what shuld

mout

moue them to doe that outrage, or else to procure to set them at libertie, & hasting on her waie, larging her pace more then she did before, she in a short space came and ouertoke them, and by reason that the Quæne made great hast, and the noise of her comming was great, the Gyaunt was constrained to looke backe, to sæ what it was that caused so great a noyse, and when he sawe that it was a knight that came after him, he determined to staie and abide his comming. And when she was come nigh him, this couragious Ladie with a manly voice sayd: Tell me Gyaunt what euill hath these prisoners committed, that so without all reason thou doest carrye them so manakled and bounde. The Gyaunt did staie and beholde her with great frowning, and answered her with a wrathfull voice and sayd. What honour and prowesse is it to thæ, for that thou art so desirous to know, and with so great pride doest aske the question? No other thing sayd this vnknowen Gentlewoman, but to make friendship where none is, and againe if of thæ they doe receiue anie griefe or wrong, to amend the same, for that I doe knowe that the condition of all Gyaunts, is nothing, but procuring to doe all wrong, therefore determine to tell me, or make thy selfe readie to thy defence. The furie of the Gyant was verie great when that he heard these words, in such sort, that it sæmed fire flew out of his eyes, and with that furie he spurred forwardes his horse. The like did that worthie matrone, at that time they set spurs to their horses, and with a swift course they made their incounter, and stroke their Speares vppon their stælie shælds, the Speare of the Gyant made his stay vpon the fineneſſe of the inchaunted shælde, but this Ladie did not onely pearce through his armour, but also through his breast and bodie, ouerthrowing him dead with great furie to ẏ ground, whereas he gaue a terrible fall that he made the earth to tremble, and the Quæne passed a long so quietlye as though she had done nothing, and with great lightnesse she turned about her horse, with her naked sword in her hand, and saw that the Gyaunt laye a long on the grounde dead. When the Knightes of the Gyaunt sawe that furious incounter,

And vnder the Sepulcher was there spread abroad a great Carpet a cloth of gold, and vpon it two pillowes of the same, and vpon them lay a knight armed with verie rich armour, and his sword laie at his feete, his eyes were shut, and out of them distilled verie great teares, at euerie piller there was a Gentlewoman which seemed to be without anie remembraunce, although they wept verie bitterly, and nigh vnto the Sepulcher there laie a terrible great beast, of the verie same making of that which Claridiano slew, for to set at libertye the king of Arabia Lapetra. (This was the spectacle ỹ Claridiano sawe comming in the aire.) The Sepulcher was cõpassed round about with a strong wall, with foure gates for to enter in thereat, the gates were after the manner and coulour of fine Diamonds: nære vnto the gate which was ouer against the Pallaice, was there a Marble piller, at the which hung a Bugle horne, and an Epitaph written with red Letters, the which the Prince Rodolpho did reade with a high voice, that all that were there might heare him, and it said as followeth. At such time as the crueltie of the king of Arabia, Lepetra shall be at liberiie, and the valour of that worthye Claridiano knowen, then they which hath not ben wounded w̃ loue, shall know both the reason & the rage of loue, for the which cause I doe aduise him that doth not know what loue is, not to proue this aduenture if he will not fall into greate misfortune, for that cause he must passe by pure force, all the force that Claridiano made plaine. And this shall indure till such time as the bastard Lyon, sonne vnto the Emperiall lion, be borne of the rauening Dunce. Then he who hath loue in his breast, and passed through that vnhappie Ladie, daughter vnto the king of Arabia, shall sée the great rage without reason of loue. The Emperour when he heard that it were things which touched his nephew, sayd: Oh excellent aduenture of my Claridiano, this daie is shewed vnto vs his great valour, Galtenor told vnto those knights all that had passed in ỹ aduenture vntil that day, which caused in them great admiration, and more, at the making of that strange beast who they did behold very atentiuely, & with this they passed away

all

all that day, & the Pastora did chaunge her accustomed apparell into robes of silke, & cloth of gold, shewing ỹ great estate & beautie in all points which was in her. All the whole court receiued great pleasure, sauing onely the Princesse Oliuia, who for the absence of her Roscleer, all things did seeme cõtrarie vnto her, farre different from the iudgementes of all other. So the time drew on for to go to rest. Then Galtenor toke Claridiano by the hand and lead him a part on the one side of the hall, and sayd vnto him: I will carrie thee with me into a place, whereas thy heart a new shall be wounded, and shall forget the loue which before thou hast had, and therwith he commaunded him to arme himselfe in great secret, ỹ successe of the same shall be tolde you hereafter. The next daie in the morning, when they were all readie to go to heare seruice with the Emperour, there entered into the hall a knight of a great stature and proportion of his members, and was armed with verie rich armour, his face and his handes were vnarmed, and shewed by his demeanour a great maiestie and seuere countenance, he was of his face somewhat browne of coulour, but the proportion thereof was verie well fauoured, & his beard began to bud, he brought after him three squires and Pages, the one of them brought his Speare which was bigge and short, and the other brought his healme, & the third brought his sheild with an Emperiall deuice, & straight waie it was knowen wherefore his comming was, and although conformable to reason we haue not spoken anie thing of the faire matrone the quéene of Lyra, who with prosperous weather and great pleasure did nauigate by the sea, holpen by the furie of Borias, which with a fresh winde did continually fill those stiffe sailes, and cutting the seas with that sharp steme, leauing behinde them the token of their great & swift way, by the froth of the water, and in short time discouering land, they toke port vpon the shore of Almaine, whereas this faire Ladie went a land, and with her two Nymphes toke their iourney towards the Court of Almaine. So she trauailed two daies, and nothing chaunced worth the telling.

The thirde daye entering in amongest the thicke and

and ioyntly therewith to forget the anger that you haue a-gainſt your owne ſonne. Great was the ioy & contentment of the Empreſſe, being almoſt beſide her ſelfe, to ſee that ſhe had recouered her two children, which ſhe thought had bene loſt long agoe, and going to imbrace Claridiano, ſhe found him vpon his knées, aſking pardon of his Father of all that be-fore had paſſed. What ſhall I heere ſaie of the good Trebatio, who when he knew that the Paſtora was his nephew (& that his deſire was of a daughter, and neuer had anie) with his armes al abroad he went vnto her, who vnderſtanding their communication, did alight from her Palfraie, at which time the Emperour came and toke her in his armes, almoſt wee-ping for ioy, and with verye amorous wordes he did imbrace her, & receiued ſo great contentment of their recouerie as euer he did in all his life for anie thing.

¶How the Emperour did verie much reioyce himſelfe with his nephewes, but in eſpeciall with the Paſto-ra, & of the great tempeſt which came vpon them at ſupper time, and of all that happened afterward. Chap. 30.

With this great ioy and pleaſure which I haue tolde you they retourned vnto Conſtantino-ple, the Emperour Trebatio carried with him the Paſtora, and wold not one moment a part himſelfe from her, and the Empreſſe went talking with Claridiano. The Emperour Al-phebo was not a little ioyfull, who went in the companie of the king Delfo,, and Galtenor went beſide the Empreſſe, who knewe not howe to giue him ſufficient thankes for his comming. And at that inſtaunt béeing all preſent, they a-lighted at the Pallaice, and the Emperour Trebatio car-ryed the Paſtora vnto her graundmother, committing her vnto her cuſtodie for to make much of her. And hée toke the king of Trapobana by the hande, and rendered vnto him verie much courteſie, and therewith entered into a fayre hall,

whereas

whereas they found the Tables couered, and sate downe to supper, whereas they were with great ioy and pleasure, such as neuer was sæne the like in the Court. The Emperour & the two Kings were set together, then the Emperour Alphebo and the Empresses, and by them Claridiano and the Pastora, who was beheld of all them that were there present, much meruailing at her great beautie. Coridon did serue them at ỹ table, very much delighted with that he had sæne. The Supper indured so long, that Diana did extende her beames: at this time they toke vp the tables, and Galtenor with a loude voyce sayd: One of the high glories of my Esclarisido, sonne Claridiano, shall appeare in this great Citie, before the day do come. He had no sooner made an ende of these words, when that the heauens beganne to wax darke with a very thicke cloude, and it came with great thunderings and lightenings, & with so terrible a noyse, as though the earth would haue sunke, and the longer it indured, the more was the fury thereof: in such sorte, that they all fell vpon their knees, and with great humilitie, they desired god to deliuer them from the fury of that great tempest. So with this sodaine chaunce, they passed away the night till ỹ morning, and although the tempest in some part ceased, yet the heauens remained all cloudie. When the morning was come, there appeared before the pallace nigh vnto ỹ inchantment of Lindabrides, a very strange aduenture, which made them all to meruaile, and straight way they gaue the Emperour to vnderstand thereof, who went out of the Pallayce with all his Knightes, with great desire to knowe what it was, so likewise went forth his sonnes and nephewes. And when they came into the Courte, they sawe that there was fired foure pillers, euery one of a very fine Rubie, vppon the which was placed a Sepulchar of Christall, and within the sepulchar there sæmed to be a verye faire Ladye, her breast pearced thorough with a sword, and vpon the Sepulcher there laye a man all a long, with his face loking vp to the heauens, and apparailed with robes of estate, with a Crowne of golde vpon his head.

but with a light leape he cléered himselfe from that blowe, and strake his contrarie another with so great furie, that hée made him to stepe and put one of his hands to the ground to stay himselfe that he might not fall, and with an incredible lightnesse he laide holde on his healme, & pulled at it with so great strength, that he pulled it from his head, and did discouer that well fauoured and faire face, so that all they who did see it, did iudge it in their hearts to be the verie figure of the Empresse Claridianas face. This valiant young knight séeing himselfe in that case and so nigh vnto the Emperour, caught him betwixt his armes, the like did the Emperour vnto him, so that betwixt them began a dangerous & perillous wrastling, but in the furie thereof vppon a sodaine all the heauen was couered with a verie darke and thick cloude, which fell downe and couered the two warriours for a space, that they could not be séene, but it indured not long but it vanished awaie, and then they sawe that the two knightes who before were closed one with the other, were now put a part the one from the other 2 good spans, & in the middest betwixt thé was there an olde man of a verie good nature and gentle disposition, adorned with garments of great estate, the which were wrought with silke, golde, and pearle, that neuer Emperour nor king had the like, and vpon his head he had a crowne of golde of such meruailous making, that no humane tongue is able to declare the riches thereof, and on the one side of him there was a mightie Gyant, adorned in the same manner & guise. And Claridiano did straight waies knowe them, who kneeling downe before them he sayd: Excellent king Delfo my Lord, what sodain comming is this, in leauing your maiesties kingdoms. The king went towards him with his armes abroad, and sayd: Ah my sonne, wherefore should my comming be but to recreate and reioyce my selfe in seeing of thée, and to disturbe this cruell battaile that thou hast with him whom thou oughtest to honour and reuerence, as it is thy duetie. Then Galtenor did cause them to holde their peace, for that with a loude voyce he beganne to speake vnto the Emperour Trebatio, and sayd.

Sonne.

Soueraigne Emperour, long time past without anye knowledge vnto thee I came into thy Empire, and my comming was the occasion of great heauinesse and sorrowe vnto the Empresse Claridiana, whome I doe see there armed with that white armour. The Emperour when he heard that wold not staie anie more reasonings, but went towardes her, who pulling off her healme likewise came towards him to kisse his handes, so there the one imbraced and receiued the other with great loue. The king Galtenor did eat of theyr talke and adressed his wordes vnto the Empresse Claridiana, and sayde: Soueraigne Ladie, do you remember when that you did contemplate your selfe vpon the beautie of your children which you euer deliuered off, begotten by the Emperour Alphebo, at which time a wall did open, whereat did enter a Serpent, who at two mouthfulls did burie them in his bowelles. You shall vnderstand, Empresse and Ladie, that I was the Serpent, being compelled and constrained by greate necessitie of the strong arme of your mightie sonne, to doe that which at that time I did, and I did bring them vp in the maiestie as vnto such persons was necessarie and dutifull. In the end of fiue yeares, when I determined to make an ende of my iourney, resting our selues by the riuers side of Euphrates, I lost the maiden childe, wher all the time past vnto this present, she hath bene publishing abroade her extreame beautie, till such time as the valour of her brother did bring her from thence, who is the same that is talking with ỹ king Delfo of Trapobana, and knowe this of a certaintie Ladie, that it is thy sonne Claridiano of the Speare. Thou diddest giue him that name by reason of a Speare that he hath on his breast from his birth, and that faire Pastora whō you do see there, is your proper daughter, and I am he that did rob and take them from you, and here I doe make restitution of them againe, so that I do deserue pardon of all the sorrow and griefe which I haue beene the occasion of, onely with this present which I do present you withall. And likewise of you Emperour of Trabisond, I doe desire the same pardon,

that my fame be robbed and taken away by a Pagan and an enemie vnto our Christian lawe. These and such like reasons pronounced this scholarick Mars, and neither more nor lesse, the mightie and strong Prince, casting vp his eyes, and loking vnto the heuens, and reprehending his Gods, he said, Why are you so contrary vnto me, for that as yet I neuer had victorie, but it hath bene by the strength of mine owne armes. What recompence haue I receiued for all ý I haue done? as yet I neuer had any fauour at your hands, for my owne power hetherto hath bene valuable vnto me, and not yours, for that I do beleeue is nothing, as it doth appeare very plainly, in the little fauour that you shew me against this furious Christian. What are you angrie, that I am come into this Countrey: and are anie of you come downe to take reuengement of me therefore? Well, seeing it is so, let it be Iupiter, or Mars, or whosoeuer it be of you, be it a God or a Diuell, first before I receiue the death, I will make you to call for aide of all the rest of the Gods: and if it be a diuel, to call likewise for aide of the rest of the diuells. And without any more tarrying, he returned againe vnto the battaile the like did the Emperour, & made their assault with so great furie, that they onely which did behold them were not a little amazed, but also the heauen and earth did meruaile at their force, & the Eccho was weary in answering of their terrible blowes, so that there was almost no hope of remedy in their controuersie, for that each one feared his aduersarie, & there was not anie aduantage of either part. This conflict continued so long betweene them, that they were almost out of breath, at ý time both together they lyfted vp their Herculiã armes, & hauing them aloft they ioyned together w̃ such fury that their horses met, and stroke their heads the one against the other, in such sort, that although they were both good, yet they fell downe to the ground with their Knights: but they were not so soone fallen, as they wer straight on foote again, without receiuing any harme, and there began betwixt them a new contention. There was shewed the greate frightnesse of the Prince, and likewise that of the Emperour was apparant,

tant, in that either of them did so valiauntly defend himselfe from his contrarie, although at that time their strong armes were more gouerned with ire and wrath, then with pollicie or experience, which was the occasion that the battaile was the more perillous & terrible. This mightie Alphebo thought much, that in the presence of the Emperour his Father the battaile shuld so long indure, and that with one alone knight, and not being his brother. The like did the Prince consider of that, by reason that the great reuerence and respect that the people had, he knew that there shuld be present the Emperour of Grecia, who toke him for his graundfather, as the furie of Merlin had tolde him. All these considerations dyd cause betwixt the two warriours the more wrath, yet for all that, they which did beholde them could iudge no aduantage of either part, at the which they greatly merualled, but in especially aboue all the rest the king of Sardenia was most amazed, who from the beginning of their controuersie was beholding of them, and sawe in what great perill and daunger both of them were, and the great resistaunce which the vnknowen knight made against the Emperour Alphebo, wherfore he returned vnto the Emperour of Grecia, and with a light voice he sayd: O holy God, is it possible that this knight doth resist so long against him, that a Porter of hell within a rocke hidden, could not make his defence against. The Emperour of Grecia would haue made him auns were, but that he was disturbed by a mightie and terrible blowe which hee sawe giuen his sonne vpon his healme, that it made him to bowe both his knees to the grounde, and by reason that the sword did lay no holde on the hard steele, it descended downe vppon his left shoulder, and cutting a sunder all the buckles and lacing of his healme, he made it to flie from his head, discouering that fayre and magnanimous countenaunce, adorned with great maiestie. The Knight when he sawe him in that sort, would haue stroke him againe, but yet this warlyke Mars although he sawe himselfe in that great perplexitie, hee wanted nothing of the accustomed courage which he was vsed to haue at other times in such like necessities,

what to feare him, and making his defence with his shield, he did abide the comming of the blowe, which cutting the aire did descend vpon his shield with so great strength, that in spite of the force of his arme it chaunced vpon his helme, in such sorte, that it made him perforce decline his head and all his bodye vnto the pommell of his saddle, and his teeth to chatter in his head, but he remained in that order, but a small time, and roaring like a Bull, exclaiming against Fortune, he lift vp his sword and gaue him the like paiment. At this time the battaile began a new to be very terrible, increasing double their fury, and likewise augmenting their blowes, in such sort, that with the least blow that was stroken, it seemed to haue cut the other all to peeces, which made all them that did behold the battaile very much to meruaile. At this time there appeared to come forth out of the Forrest, a Knight, all armed in white armor, edged and wrought about with an excellent worke of fine golde, his healme on his head, and his shield at his necke, and gyrte with a very rich sword, and of so gentile a disposition, that ther was none equall vnto him, and seeing the battaile betwirte the two Knights, he did stand and behold them: and straight waies he knew the Emperour, but he could not iudge who y other should be, but greatly meruailed at their strength, and with the great desire he had to know who it was, he demaunded of an old Knight that stood by him, the occasion of their controuersie, and who the Knights were. The olde Knight, for that he seemed to be a Knighte of high estate, sayde. The name of one of them, I can tell thee, the which is the knight with the straunge and rich armour, who is the excellent and mightie Emperour Alpheba of Trapisond, but the Knight with the Sunne, here is not one that doth know him. This Knight began the controuersie first, with certaine knights of Grecia, who killing of some of them, and other some, very sore wounded, and following other two which ranne away, the Emperour put himself before him, for to know the occasion of his great furye, and that Knight did aunswere him with great pride and arrogancie, which was the occasion of

this

this their controuersie: and it is moze then fire houres, sithee they haue bene martring one anothers flesh without all pitie, and this is all which I can tell you, of that which you haue demaunded of me. The knight with the white armoz was very much amazed, when he knew that the controuerse indured so long, and could not iudge who it should be, of so great power and strength, that was able to resist the fury of the mightie Alphebo.

In all this time these two valiant warriours were not idle, but still their battaile went forwards, in such sort, that either of them did doubt of the victorye, finding their aduersarie so mightie and strong. So in this extremitie they indured moze then fire houres not resting one moment, but still plaguing the one the other, making of their bodies euen Anfields, which continually are beaten on with hammers, and as the trauaile was great, and could not be chosen but that they must needes be weary, and show some kinde of faintnesse: vpon a sodaine both at one time did withdrawe themselues to take some rest, either of them very much meruailing at the great power and strength of his aduersarie. This inuincible Emperour could not by any meanes iudge who the knight should be that had brought him into that extremitie, for vntill that daye was there neuer knight that euer before that time did the like, and being full of yre & wrath he sayd.

What is now become of thee Alphebo? Where is now thy great valour, that hath bene so much spoken of in all the woz|d? What is become of thy surmounted strength, wherewith thou didst quaile the power of Lindaraza, and that with which thou didst breake those inchaunted helmes? What is become of thy terrible yre, wherewith thou diddest subdue mountaines, bewe in sunder Diamond armour, and brought all thing vnder thy subiection, nowe I see that all is forgotten, and nothing worth, for that one alone knight and a Pagan, hath brought thee into this extremitie. O holy God, to thee I inuocate, and desire thee to helpe me, & doe not permit

that

conſideration, blaſpheming & denying his Gods, he ſet ſpurs vnto his horſe and returned vnto the Emperour who came towards him, where was ioyned ſuch a battaile as neuer in Grecia had bene ſæne the like, either cauſing other by theyr diſordinate blowes many times to be without remembrance, ſometimes inclining their heads vnto their breaſtes, and at other time vpon their horſe crouper, in ſuch ſorte, that there was inough to do betwæne them for to ſettle themſelues vpright in their ſaddles, all their faces vnder their healmes bæing berayed with bloud, and often giuing græuous grones. At this time was all ire and wrath wholy kindled, and all patience loſt, pollicie and erperience was forgotten, ſo that they made their battaile as men without wit or reaſon, procuring each of them to bring his enimie to death, and aither of them accounting himſelfe of ſmall proweſſe and valour, that one alone knight ſhould indure ſo long before them, and he who was the moſt græued hæreat was the ſtrong Prince, not knowing that he dealt with his Father the mightie Alfebo for neither furious knights nor fierſe Gyants could at any time bring him vnto that extremitie as at this time he was, ſo with this ire and wrath they indured two houres with their mightie blowe, being then preſent the Emperour Trebatio, and the two Princes of Rodamonte and Rodeſo, and the king of Macedonia, and the great Duke of Atenas, and Magecia, and the Earle of Acaya, all the which were in a great admiration to ſæ the great reſiſtaunce that the Emperour Alfebo had found, who at that time did ſtretch vp himſelfe vpon his ſtirops, diſcharging his ſword vppon the head of our Prince, the blow was ſo terrible that the aire was filled with ſparkes and flames of fire, and made an eckoe to ſound in the hidden caues, and Claridiano fell backwardes vpon the crouper of his horſe without anie remembrauuce, & his armes hanging downe as though he had bene dead, and voyded at his mouth great abundance of bloud. The fayre Paſtora verie much merualled to ſæ this rigorous battaile, who ſate with her face couered beholding the ſame, the lyke did Fidelio, and it was vnto them a great griefe to ſæ howe

the

how the Emperor did mightely assault him, procuring to kil him. At this time the knight was come to his remembrance and setteled himselfe againe in his saddle, and with an high voyce he sayd. Oh Gods of small valour, cursed be seruice that I haue done vnto you, because you do so ill rewarde me, who hath so much honoured you. Now do I well vnderstand that your power is very small: for that you haue deceiued me, this being the first christian knight that I haue bene in battaile with, in all my lyfe. I do beleeue that you did all run away, when you heard this knight name ỹ name of Iesus. Heere I do renounce all your deitie and potencie, for it is all as nothing, and againe I do call you vyle, and of small estimation and power. And in saying these words, he ran against the Emperour with so great furye, that he made the ground to tremble vnder him, and when he came nigh vnto the Emperour, he stroke him an ouerthwart blow with so great strength and might, that he made him to fall forwards vpon his horse eares without any remembraunce, in such sort that it seemed he had bene dead, for that there proceeded out of his healme so much bleud. And by the great strength of that blow, his horse was constrained to stoope w̃ his forefæte. This mightie Prince with double fury turned with his sword to strike him the second blow, but it was in such sort, that the reynes of his horse bridle was fast in the buckle of his armour, and was constrained by the force he put to strike his blow to pul the bridle, which made ỹ horse to rise vp before, standing vpon his hinder fæte, which was very perilous vnto the knight: and being in that sorte, he lost the strength of his blow for to succour himselfe, and to gouerne his horse. In which time the Emperour came againe to his former senses, and settled himselfe in his saddle, who seeing the great perill in the which he was brought, did meruaile much thereat, and being full of wrath, like vnto a Lyon he recouered his sword, and set spurres vnto his horse, and made him to moue like vnto the winde, throwing out at his beaner a thicke smoke with very anger, and gaue his assault with so great fury, that the knight could not but somwhat

mour. Who, if you dœ remember was the Emperour Alphebo, and our Knight was his sonne, who with his swoꝛd in his hand all bloudie, followed the other two knights. The Emperour Alphebo seing them come running from ỹ one alone Knight, called vnto them and sayd: Tell me wherefoꝛe doe you runne away you cowards and dishonourers of the Grœkish genealogie, of whom are you afraide, of one alone Knight? Soueraigne Loꝛd sayd one of the Knightes, he that doth follow vs, is no Knight, but a diuell, and thy surmounted strength is nœdfull to make resistaunce against his. So at that time the Pꝛince appꝛoched as I haue tolde you, and likewise the Emperour Alphebo, who did verye much beholde his goodly stature and disposition: the Pꝛince did likewise behold the Emperour, and the straungenesse of his armour. The Emperour was the first that begaune to speake and sayd: Tell me knight, what hath my Knightes, done vnto you, to cause you to vse & intreat them so straightly. Then the Pꝛince who had lost all patience, sayde. Pꝛocure to make their reuengement, and doo not aske mœ the cause of their cowardnesse. Foꝛ that it is verye apparaunt, that they themselues are in fault of their ill intreating. This good Emperour, as one that made little reckoning of his woꝛds, very mœkely sayd. If they are in the fault it lyketh me very well, therefoꝛe I doo desire to know the occasion if it be thy pleasure to tell me, that I may altogether lay the fault vpon them. The Pꝛince with a high voyce sayde. By the Gods I doo sweare vnto thœ, that it is true that I haue tolde thœ. The Emperour when he heard him name those false Gods, without any moꝛe tarrying dꝛewe out his swoꝛd and sayd, Defende thy selfe Pagan, foꝛ it shall cost thœ thy lyfe, foꝛ laying hands vpon Chꝛistians, who are moꝛe woꝛth then thou art. Now doo I not desire to knowe the occasion, foꝛ that they are Chꝛistians and thou arte a Moꝛe. And I saye, that they are in no fauite. So there they assaulted one another, with most terrible and moꝛtall battayle.

Oh Nimphes borne in the Hill of Helicon, and whose habitation is in the Mountaine Olympus, and ye Ladies of the sacred Cabolino, vnto all you I do inuocate to ground in me wisedome and vnderstanding, as you did into him, who did make the Greeke dedicated vpon the great deedes of that mightie Achilles, for that I may particularly declare the furious & well fought battaile of these two inuincible knights, without knowing to be the father and the son, who hauing their swords in the aire, they both together discharged the one vpon the others helme, in such sort, that either of them were constrained spite of their hearts to make obedience, as vnto such high & mightie Princes as they were ought to be done, and both together & at one time they returned their swords about their heads, striking one another such blowes vppon their beauers, that they made a great number of sparkes of fire to flye in the aire, which was the occasion that it toke away somewhat the sight of their eyes. Oh how yrefull was this nephew of Trebatio, and being ouercome therewith, his strong and mightie blowes were incorportable, and taking his sword in both his hands, with that wrath & great lightnesse, he stroke the Emperour such a blow vpon the healme, that the sound thereof made an Eccho throughout all the mountaines and plaines, and he fell backwardes vppon the crouper of his horse Cornerino, who beeing scarred with the noyse of the blowe, ranne rounde about the fieldes with his master. The Emperour came straight waie againe to himselfe, and considering the strong blowe which he had receiued, he sayde: Iesus helpe me, and lykewise with his sworde in both his handes, hee stroke him vpon the helme, that in spite of our knight he fell backwards vpon ỹ crouper of his horse, who being scarred with the blowe, flinging and kicking, he did apart and carrie his master from his enimie. And comming againe vnto himselfe, he did acknowledge his strong aduersary which he had before him, and likewise hee did consider, how that he called for succour vpon ỹ name of Iesus.

But his furie was so much that without anie farther

consider-

when he was nigh vnto the Prince, he sayd: Knight, with more pride and better adorned with rich armour, then with good manners or courtesie, you must iuste with me, for that making thee to kisse the ground, constrained by my terrible incounter, thou shalt learne in another place to vse curtesie. The heroycall Prince with his accustomed meekenesse, answered. If my salutation gentle knight, was not as it becommeth a traueling knight, the distaunce of the waye was the occasion thereof: and this being true which I haue said, then haue you no reason to blame me. Thou hast lesse reason sayd the Knight of the fountaine, for to excuse thy selfe from the iuste, which I do aske of thee, therefore take thy choyce of the field, and procure to settle and firme thy selfe well in the saddle. The Greeke seing his pride, asked of Coridon his sheeld, and a speare which they brought with them: and hauing it in his hand, he saw that the field was all purple very smooth, and a knight made in it, armed with purple armour, striking another knight, armed likewise in purple armour ouerthwart the eyes, and it was all full of starres of golde. The Prince was meruailously amazed and troubled at the great cleerenesse thereof, so that he was constrained to hide his eyes with his owne hands: but the calling out of the Knight of the fountaine did cause him to chaunge his purpose, and called for his speare, and with a furious course, he went forth vnto the incounter. The Knight of the fountaine did breake his speare, not making the Prince to moue any more then he had stroke vpon a hard Rocke: but the Princes incounter was such, that he ouerthrew him to the ground, & with the fall he brake his arme in two parts, who hauing no power to moue himself, and with the great paine & griefe he felt, made a pitifull complaint. The Greeke seeing him in that case sayd: Knight, it had bene better thou hadst remained without any salutation quietlye, then nowe quarrelling therupon, thou hast thy arme broken, and remainest vnable to helpe thy selfe, and without saying any other thing, he did departe, determining to prosecute his former iourney. So within a while after, he heard a great noyse of

calling,

calling, and loking about to sée who called him, he saw that it was the rest of the Knights, which followed with greate spéede. There he determined to staye their comming, and made himselfe ready vnto the battaile, if they would demand it of him. These seauen knights came with great yre, to sée the other knight in that perplexitie, (and forgetting the custome of Grecia, of long time obserued and kept amongst the Knights) they all seauen together with their speares on their rests, they made their incounter vpon him, and stroke the Gréeke with their firmed blowes, some on the sides, and some on the breast with great furie: yet the Prince remained more firme thē an Anfield of yron. They all brake their speares on him, but at their passing by, he stroke one of them such a blow vpon the healme, that he ouerthrew him deade to the ground. The rest which remained, returned vnto him with their swords in their hand, laying vpon him very terribly like knights that were both valiant and couragious: but the Prince moued his horse amongst them, with so great lightnesse and strength, that quicklie his power and force was knowen vnto them, he did so torment them with his mightie blowes. And the more they did grieue him, the worse it was for them: for hauing lost all patience, he threw his shield at his backe, and did assault them with such fury, that in a short time he remained with onely two of them in the field, who séeing the other of their companions dead, procured to saue their liues, tourning their backes vnto the Gréeke, & pricking their horse with the spurs, they put themselues into a broad waye.

This furious Knight followed after them, procuring to ouertake them, and to make that not one of them shall beare newes of the successe of the battaile: but by reason they had some bauntage of the waye, and againe their horses were very good, for all the hast that he coulde make, he could not ouertake them, till such time as they came whereas were many tents armed in the field, and at that place ther was a knight ỹ stept before him to defend the other two which ran away, who were armed with verie strong and straunge ar-

and there they reſted all that night, for that the king would not that they ſhoulde ſo ſone departe from him, becauſe hee would for a time recreate himſelf in their converſation, & told them of ſome things that ſhuld happen vnto them. So when the morning was come the Tent was taken awaie, & they began to trauaile by a verie ſtraight and narrow path. The King of Arginaria did leade them the waie, and commaunded them to followe him, who woulde ſet them out of that wilderneſſe, and bring them vnto the ſea of Hyrcania, whereas they ſhall finde all things neceſſarie for their new begun voyage, and bad them that they ſhoulde haue verie greate care, for being once in Grecia, there ſhall be ioyned together the nailes and pawes of two of the moſt furious Lyons that be in all the world, the one bringing the other in ſo great affliction, that the better of them both cannot be iudged, neither acknowledge anie vauntage till ſuch time as with their outragious furie be taken awaie the lockes which be vpon their crowned heads, and ſhall at that inſtant in a moment be ſet at libertie by the robber of his firſt ioy, making reſtitution of that which a long time hath bene vſurped, remaining one of them without griefe of the young Hinde, that he bringeth with him. When all this ſhall come to paſſe I will returne my ſonne and ſee you. And in ſaying theſe wordes he vaniſhed āwaie, not ſeeing anie other thing but the horſe which was laden with their victualls, which cauſed them to remain amazed at his ſodaine departure, and yet verie much comforted in that he had ſeene him: So they trauailed all that daie by a narow path. When night was come, without knowing by whom, the Tent was armed againe that they might reſt themſelues therein, when they were within and had cōmanded their horſes to be put in, the dore of the tent did ſhut of it ſelfe with ſo great ſtrength, that they could not open it, although they did make a proofe, for that Galtenor had ſo made it, becauſe of a greate number of wilde beaſtes which were in thoſe partes, and in the night time raungeth abroade for to ſeeke their prayes. So they paſſed that night with greate reſt and eaſe, till the morning that the Tent dore did open,

the

the Tent was taken vp and put vppon the horse, and all the rest, toke their iourney presentlye following still that narowe path till it was noone, at which time they came vnto the sea side, and harde by the place whereas they arriued, they sawe at an Anker a Barke meruailously well cauked and trimmed, made after the manner of a Serpent, with mightie wings and a long taile. The Prince when he saw the Barke made after that sorte, straight waie he vnderstoode that that was the Barke which the king of Arginaria had spoken of, and without anie more tarrying he commaunded his horse to be put in and all the rest, and he toke the Pastora in his armes and put her into the Barke, they were no soner within, but that with great swiftnesse she beganne to moue her selfe, in such sorte that in a small time they were farre from the shoare. Thus they trauailed with great contentment for the space of fire dayes, and the seauenth daie verie earlye in the morning they were at the shoare verye nigh Constantinople, whereas with great ioye and pleasure they went a lande, and mounting vppon their horses they entered into a verie geene and delightfull Forrest, which stoode in their waie, and within a while they heard a greate noise of hunters, and towardes that way the Prince and his companie went, and in the way they trauailed, they rode by a fountaine, in the which there was to the number of eight knights verie well armed, and they were refreshing of themselues. The Prince for that they passed by somewhat out of the waie did not salute them, but passing on his waie with the faire Pastora, who followed him, vsing betwixt themselues verie sweete and amorous conuersation. The eight knightes when they sawe them so passe by, they found themselues agreeued for the small reckoning he made of them, but in especiall one of them who was more proud and presumptuous then the rest, without speaking anie worde at all, laced on his healme, and cast his sheelde at his necke, and being readie hee mounted vppon his horse, and toke his Speare in his hande, which stoode hard by leaning against a tree, and with a verye reasonable pace hee followed after him, and

my horse for to carrie thée alone, but both of vs, for it is a horse which can doe it verie well. I shall be counted for a more fole then thou said the olde man, hauing now opportunitie to goe whether I list all alone, and being in thy companie I shall be constrained to goe whether thy pleasure is. The Prince hearing these words went by little and little towards the olde man, but he with a quicke course did apart himselfe from him, making with his mouth and eyes a thousand g stures, for to make him to be angrie. The Prince being astonied said: Thou false olde villaine, more worse then the stinking Fore, tarrie thou mocker of knights, and do not thinke that the lightnesse of thy horse shall deliuer thée out of my hands. The olde man shewed as though he estæmed lyttle his words and threatnings, but ran with the horse from one place vnto another, making a thousand gestures and faces with his mouth and eyes, which was euen death vnto ỹ Prince, who said: Oh Gods is it possible that you do permit that this naughtie olde man should thus scorne me with his iestures. Coridon and the Pastora came behinde, ỹ had great pastime to sée how the knight was mocked and beguiled of an olde man, who sæmed as though he could not moue himselfe with age. With the great anger and rage that the prince had to sée himselfe so mocked, he pricked his horse with the spurres for to ouertake the olde man, who was a good waye off from him, and made his horse to runne so swift a course, that it sæmed he flew, and the olde man with the like lyght course came running towards and against the Prince, ỹ coming nigh vnto him he sayd. What is this my sonne, wherfore is all this furie, for thou doest well knowe that I came not for to cause in you anie anger. The Prince hearing this stayed his horse and did beholde him, and knewe him verye perfectly to be the king of Arginaria, and with greate haste hée alyghted from his horse, and the olde man dyd the like, and with great contentment they louingly imbraced one another. Then the knight sayd.

Is it possible louing father that you doe thus misuse him that hath no other desire but to serue you, I doe promise you

that

that before I let you goe out of mine armes, to make you promise me to bring me out of this solitarie place, in recompence of this trouble and anger which you haue caused mee to haue. I came for no other thing said Galtenor, for knowing the great trauaile which may happen in this place, & againe, ỹ griefe which thou hast for ỹ trouble of a faire Pastora, which thou bringest in thy companie, and knowing the great loue which beares vnto her I did ordaine my comming hether, & determined first to giue thée this intertainment, for that afterward I might of thée with more ioy be receiued. At this time drewe nære the Pastora and Coridon, and Fidelio, and seeing them imbracing one an other they made the more hast on their waie, verie much meruailing to see a crooke back and leane olde man to be turned vnto a great and faire Gyant, with a goodly long white beard, apparailed with rich apparell. The Prince turning vnto the Pastora, said: Faire Pastora, this noble king who is here present is king of the Iland Arginaria, my Lord and father, who vnderstanding by his art the great necessitie in the which we are, is come to put remedie therein. The king of Arginaria with an amorous heart and stedfast eyes without mouing them, he did behold the Pastora, remembring himselfe at that time of the young childe that he lost by the riuer of Euphrates, & straight waie he knew her to be the same, of the which he did not a little reioyce, but seeing that it was conuenient at that time to hold his peace, he did dissemble it, and kept the great ioy which he receiued for the finding of her in his heart, and retourning vnto the Prince, he said: I doe not now much meruaile faire knight, that thy heart is subiect to so fayre a creature, and I doe thinke my labour verie well bestowed, because that by my cõming hether shall be taken awaie a great part of your trouble, which without all doubt you should haue had, & béeing in this maner talking, there appeared before them a horse loden with victualls, and straight waye they toke order that they might eate, for that they had great nede thereof. Likewise there was raised a verie faire & rich tent for to ease thẽselues, and they knew not which way nor how it was made,

By a Mountaine of Armenia verie much inhabited, this warrelike knight trauailed in companie with his faire Pastora, with so great delight and pleasure, that I cannot here signifie it vnto you, and with Coridon they had good passtime, for that he was verie pleasant, who againe seeing that he might so at quiet and familiarly talke with the Pastora, was almost in an extasie for ioye. So the second day that they trauailed by that mountaine, by reason that it was so fragrant, they lost their waie, in such sort, that when they remembred themselues, they wer entered into the thickest of the wilderneſſe, and procured to finde the waie againe, which by no meanes they coulde, for that they were so farre entered into the thicket. So with great trouble they trauailed till mid daie, at which time they heard a noise of the running of water, the which they followed, & it was the occasion ý they brought themselues out of ý thick wood, and came into a mightie great plaine, through the midst of the which there passed a deepe riuer. There they looked about them to see if they coulde discouer any towne, village, or dwelling places, but they could see no other thing but high and mightie Pine trees, the which greeued much the Pastora, & much more the Greeke, for that the Pastora should be so sorrowfull, & againe, for that they had no victualls to comfort her. So they staied a while not knowing which way they might take to bring themselues out of ý distresse, but vppon a sodaine they espied towards their right hande a man who trauailed a foot, being somwhat farre off from them, that they could not discerne what he should be. So in greate hast they went towards him, and comming nigh him, they sawe that it was an olde man, who had his head and beard very white, by reason of his great age, and the better for to trauaile, hee hadde a staffe whereon he might leane, shewing that he trauailed with greate paine, in that he moued himselfe so heauily. Then came vnto the Princes remembraunce the question that the furious beast did aske him in the inchanted castle of the king of Arabia. So when they came vnto the olde

man,

man, they saluted him, the olde man returned their salutation with a faint and wearie voice. The Prince asked him what aduenture had brought him into that solitarie place. This olde man for to make him answere, was constrained to sit downe vpon the ground and sayd: Gentle knight, I knowe not what to saie, nor what I shall tell you, but onely my destinie hath brought me into this misfortune, being mocked wt great falsehood by a Page ỳ I brought with me, who left me all alone and on foote in this solitarie wildernesse. These two daies haue I not eaten any thing, but onely dronke of ỳ water of Euphrates, with the which I haue borne out my hunger, the head of which riuer is not far from hence. And here I doe desire thee gentle knight, if thou hast anie pittie of this my wearie age, for to succour me, in carrying me vpon thy horse, or vpon the horse of anie of thy seruants. The Prince taking great pittie on the olde man, sayd: Feare not good Father of this thy misfortune, for seeing ỳ fortune hath brought vs hether, I will not leaue thee alone in this solitarye place. The Prince leaped from his horse and toke the olde man in his armes, and put him in the saddle, and helped to settle him well, that by reason of his weakenesse he might not fal, & that he being well set, he himselfe might ỳ better without all feare leap vp behind him. This false olde man seeing himselfe master of the horse, stroke him with his heeles, in so great hast, ỳ he made the horse to flie: Oh how the knight was amazed at this act, although he beleeued that he did it to make him go a little on foote, but when he sawe that his mocking proceeded forwards on, he returned that waie which his Squire came, calling out vnto him to bring his horse on the which he trauailed, who in great hast accomplished his demaund. When the knight was on horsebacke, he began to call vnto the olde man for to tarrie. The which the olde man did till such time as he came nigh him, and with a great laughter he sayd. Pittiful knight, what dost thou thinke to recouer thy horse, and to giue me my payment for that I haue mocked thee? Wouldest thou so quickly lose the name to be pittifull. I dot not meane to lose it sayde the Knight, neither did I giue thee

downe vpon his knées, and lift vp his beuer, which was the occasion that the Pastora did know him, and not suffering him to speake, with an excellent grace she sayd. Ah Filipensio how much am I bound vnto the Gods, that haue deliuered me from two so great daungers, and set me at libertie from the troubles thereof. Where hast thou lefte thy shepheards apparaile? Who hath chaunged them, for this faire & strong armour, where hast thou lefte thy shepheards crooke. Ah Filipensio, giue me to vnderstand of thy high estate, ỹ my small vnderstanding be not the occasion that I fall in some errour. The valyant Knight being subiect to her beautie, saide vnto her: I am yours faire Pastora, whether I be a shepheard or a Knight, your beautie hath brought me in subiection, and it is great glory vnto me to be yelded vnto you.

Then the faire Pastora at these wordes toke him faste by both the hands, and not giuing him place to any more reasoning, she sayd. I will now see, whether you are as valyant in deeds as in words, seeing that fortune hath brought vs hether: and here I do aske of thée two things to be graunted vnto me, and it is the first that euer I asked of any person in all the world. The amorous Prince aunswered. Ah my sweete Mistresse, is it possible that I haue deserued to receiue at your hands so much fauour, in that you do aske of me any thing, wherin I may or can do you seruice, & knowing that I am yours, you néede not to aske but commaunde me as your owne, for that I am bound to whatsoeuer you will. The faire Pastora sayd. Wel gentle knight, seeing that thou dost shew thy selfe to be so subiect and bound to do me pleasure, the first thing that I do request thée to graunt me, is, that thou cary me vnto Grecia vnto the Emperors court, and there for the space of one moneth to make my defence, & affirme, that my beautie doeth surmount all others in the world. Now maist thou goe and set at libertie Coridon and thy seruaunt, who are both in prison. The Greeke had great contentment of that which the Pastora did aske of him: and for to performe that which she had commaunded, he went & sought throughout all the Castle, to see if he could finde anye

that

that could giue anie knowledge where his companie was, & cõming vnto a doore he heard a great noise of much people, ỹ Prince knocked at the doore and bad them open it, & promised to doe them no harme if they would open the doore. So straight way it was open, whereas he demaunded for Coridon and his Squire, they were straight waye brought vnto him by one of them which opened the doore, and in the meane time it was tolde him who the Cyants were, you shall vnderstand that they were nephewes vnto the king of Cilicia, and vnto the Prince of Polismago, who being in loue with the Pastora, and being of her cast off, he went and told it vnto the king of Cilicia, then they consented together to doe all that you haue heard, and had gone through with their intent if it had not bene for the valour of the Prince Claridiano. So when Coridon came before the Pastora he could not refrain from weeping, with the great ioy which he receiued at ỹ sight of her, and the Pastora was no lesse ioyfull. Then Claridiano remembred the Prince Polismago, & commaunded Fidelio to see whether he were aliue or dead, who went, and when hee came vnto him, he pulled off his helme and saw that he was dead, for the which it greatly greeued the knight, but ỹ feare was so great of Cayserlinga for remaining in the castle, that she made great hast to the Prince to depart from thence. The which he was constrained to do for to giue her contentment, and commaunded to make readie their horses and likewise a palfray which they found in the castell. So the nert day in ỹ morning they take their way towards Grecia, passing thorough all the kingdome of Media, and the kingdome of Prisopoli, and all the way that he trauailed he left behinde great fame of wonderful aduentures which happened. They trauailed in a skirt of Armenia, whereas chaunced vnto him that which in the next chapter shall be told you.

¶ How Claridiano by chance had battaile with his owne father, which being knowen vnto Galtenor, and fearing the great harme that would come thereof, hee remedied the same. Chap. 29.

arme with his sworde, and stroke at the Pagan so mightie a blowe vpon his healme (so that if it had not bene inchaunted) he had cut it in two peeces, and put the head in great perill, but yet he escaped not but he fell downe to the grounde without anie remembraunce, and there ranne out of his mouth great abundance of bloud. When Claridiano sawe him in this plight, he made no more reckoning of him, but with a furyous hast he went to goe vp the stayres, at such time as ỳ Gyant came downe with great violence, but when the sonne of Gran Alfebo sawe him he returned and did abide his comming in the court, and sayd: Make an end thou great beast, and descend downe that I may giue thee thy paiment for thy boldnesse which thou hast vsed against the goddesse of Pastoras. The Gyant with the great furie which he had vnderstood not what the knight had sayde, and therefore he made him no aunswere, and if that he woulde haue done it, yet his great wrath woulde not consent vnto it, but with his Fauchon all aloft he went towards the Greeke, assalting him with mortall battaile. The like did this strong knight, making betwixt them a terrible battaile, and striking the one the other where they thought to do most hurt. Who had then seene the great lightnesse of the Greeke in bestirring himselfe, would haue well iudged that the worst part should not be his, for that he so handled his enimie in breaking of his harnesse in many places, and wounding him, in such sort, that he was all to be bathed in bloud, yet for all that the great anger which he had, neither the rigorous battaile could cause him to withdrawe the casting vp of his eyes vnto the place whereas he saw his welbeloued Pastora, and he beheld her making her greate lamentation for that which the Gyant had done vnto her, which was the occasion that he had a greater desire to giue him (who was the occasion of her teares) his payment. At this time the Prince Polismago was come againe vnto himselfe, and arose vppon his feete, and sawe the cruell battaile which was betweene the Gyant and the knight, and howe that the knight almost ouercome the Gyant, he did determine to forget that which he was bound

vnto

vnto beeing a Prince, and recouering his sword which hung by the wrist band, he went and ioyned with the Gyaunt, so that both of them together did assalt him, which did nothing grieue the Gyaunt for that he was somewhat wearie. The villanie which he sawe them vse did increase his wrath, and double his strength in such sorte, that it fell out worse for them being both together then before, for that the vilenesse of their assaulting made him to double his blowes, striking now mightely at the one, and then as terribly on the other, with very great power & strength, procuring to indamage thē And for that he dealt with two such valiant knights, it stood him in hand to vse all kinde of pollicie: but yet he could not so at libertie defend himselfe, but that the giant watched his time, and stroke him so furious a blow vpon his steely helm, that he made him to bow with both his knées to the ground The Prince of Polismago seeing him at that poynt, doubled his blowes vpon him very terribly: but in spite of them, he arose vp againe with more fury then a baighted bull, & with his sword fast in his hand, he prested to the Giant, & stroke him so mortall a blow vpon his shoulder, that he cleue him downe to the waste, cutting harneste and bones, and with great facilitie ouerthrewe him dead to the ground. Ye had not so soone giuen that wonderfull blowe, but he retourned another at the Pagan, vppon his inchaunted healme, that he made it sounde lyke vnto a Bell. The which blowe was so mightie that it ouerthrew him downe to the ground, throwing out at his Beauer verye great abonndaunce of blond.

Who coulde beere declare the greate ioye which the Pastora receiued when she sawe her enimies in that plight, I I cannot iudge which had the greater ioye, the knight in that he had set her at libertie, or the Pastora to see her selfe at libertie. So when the knight sawe the Pagan on the ground without remembraunce, he made no more tarrying, but went vp the staires, and stayed not till he came whereas the Pastora was. And when he sawe her, he fell

downe,

didſt ſpeake off. And for that thou ſhalt be the better certified of this, thou ſhalt vnderſtand that I am he, who in ſhepheards apparaile, onely with my ſhepheardes crooke, at one blow brought that traitor the Prince of Poliſmago to the ground without remembraunce, and likewiſe with another blow with the ſword of the ſaid Prince, I ſlew the King of Galicia: and am the ſame who will do the like with thee, if thou doſt not deliuer vnto me that faire Paſtora, who was brought hether by force, by that naughtie Prince of Poliſmago. The Giant was very ſorrowfull for that which hée heard, and ſhowed by his countenaunce to be very wrathfull. At that time there deſcended downe the ſtaires another Giant, who with a furious voyce ſayd vnto the firſt Gyaunt: Brother put thy ſelfe apart on the one ſide, and let me take reuengement of this vile Knight, that is before thée: & without ſpeaking any more words, he lift vp his great and heauie lawchon, and ſtroke a mightie blow at the Knight, but this politike Knight ſtepped with great lightneſſe on ỹ one ſide, which was the occaſion that his blow fell downe vppon ỹ pauement in vain: this terrible blow was no ſooner down, when the Knight cloſed with him, and ſtroke him with his ſword ſo mightie a blow vpon the right arme, that he cut it cleane a ſunder, and it fell downe to the ground, ſword and al. The Giant when he ſaw himſelfe ſo wounded, gaue a terrible ſhrike, and threw his ſhield from him, and would haue taken the ſword in his other hand: but the Prince woulde not ſuffer it, but ſtroke him another blow on the ſame arme, and euen as he did by the other, he cut it a ſunder by the elbow: ſo that he was lame of both his armes. Yet for all this, the giant did not loſe his furie, but roaring like a Lion, he opened the ſtumpes of his armes which did remain, thinking with them to imbrace the Knight, and by his greate force to ouerthrowe him. As he he laboured to enter in, the Knight put the poynt of his ſword before him, in ſuch ſorte, that what with the ſtrength and furie of the Giant, and the force that he put therevnto, the ſword paſſed through his body, that he fell downe dead to the ground.

At this time, there descended downe the staires in great hast a Knight of a mightie proportion, whom Claridiano knew to be the Prince of Polismago. This Greek Knight receiued great delyght at the sight of him. Then the Prince of Polismago said: Thou peruerse dogge, come and take reuenge me, for the griefe and wrong which thou dost publish heere to haue receiued: for I am the Prince whom thou dost seeke for: and in saying these words, he did assault him with terrible blowes. Then Claridiano did returne vnto him ȳ like, but not in so terrible a sort as he might, for the great compassion that he had of him, considering that the pangs of loue cause a man to doe that sometimes, which afterward he doeth repent himselfe off. So heere betwirt them began a mightie and well foughten battaile, the one striking the other, on all parts, great and terrible blowes. In this sort they indured a while without knowing any aduauauntage betwirte them, the occasion was, for that the Greeke woulde not vse the rigor of all his strength. And beeing in this controuersie, the Greeke lifte vp his eyes, and sawe at a windowe the faire Pastora, who was beholding them in their battaile: at which sight he receiued so great plesure and delyght, that the strength of his armes did faile him, and he had no more power to lifte them vp. When the Pagan saw that, he did assault him with more courage: the Greeke had no power, but onely to beare off the blowes, and recoyled till such time as he came right vnder the windowe: which made the Pagan to thinke that he was ouercome, and that he had got the victorie. At that time the other Giant was very well armed, & went vnto the Pastora, and toke her by the haire of ȳ head, and pulled her from the windowe, and sayd: Apart thy selfe from that place, thou which art the cause of all this euill, for that thou shalt not content thy selfe in seeing him, who doeth procure thy libertie, although it be impossible: and I do sweare vnto thee by my Gods, that the great damage which thy niceneſſe hath caused, thy head shall paye for. Oh howe wrathfull this Greeke was, when he saw the Giant intreat her so euill, for a giuing a terrible shrike he lift vp his right

arme,

of a payre of winding staires, at which doore the knight entered and went vp the staires. And when he came aloft, hee entred into very great and broad chambers all furnished wᵗ beds, and it seemed to be a place for the household seruaunts, and going from thence he entred into a very faire hall, in the which was a well wrought windowe, and looking out thereat he sawe that it was ouer the gate of that ill kept Castle, by which he entered, and looking for Coridon and Fidelio, he could not see them, but beleeued that they had put themselues apart in some place because they would not be seene. Then this valiant knight looking downe againe to the gate, sawe a mightie great Gyant of a huge stature, who called with a great loude voice and sayde: Runne quickly and seeke out that bolde knight, who without anie lisence entered into the Castell, and put him into the most cruellest prison in all the house. These wordes caused little feare in the knight, but rather going from the windowe he went out of the hall, where was a payre of stayres, and as he beganne to descend downe by them, he sawe comming vp thereat in great hast fiue armed knightes, and after them eight clownes, who seeing him to be the knight they sought, with theyr swordes drawne verie rigorously they did assault him. This valyant warriour drew out his sword, and stroke two of them two such terrible blowes, ỹ he made their heads to tumble downe the stayres, and in the fall of them they chaunced to hit two of the clownes, that they made them to fall backwards vpon the stayres, but his furie stayed not in this, but he stroke another knight such a blowe, that he ouerthrewe him deade the same waye, the other two knightes which remained seeing that slaughter so quickly done, they put themselues the one on the one side of the stayres, and the other on the other, and hauing theyr shéeldes before them they layde on the knight with great and thicke blowes, but by reason of the desire which the knight had to see his Pastora, and being very much troubled therewith, hee determined with speede to cleere himselfe of those two knightes, and therewith he stroke at each

of

of them a mightie blow and sent them with the rest downe the stayres, the like did he vnto foure of the clownes that were so hardie as to assault him, the other with a great noise ranne downe the stayres, this valyant knight hasted downe the stayres after them till he came into a great court, whereas he found the Gyant vnarmed, with a shælde on his arme, and a great broade sauchen in his hande. The knight made shewe vnto him that he woulde not fight nor strike him, but put his swoorde vp into his sheath, and said: Holde thy hand Gyaunt and strike not, but put on thy armour for to make thy defence, for this vnderstande of a truth, that I will not drawe out my swoord so long as thou art vnarmed. The Giaunt when he sawe howe lyttle hæ did estæme him, stoode still and did beholde him, and noted the greate riches of his armour, and by the deuice of his shælde he knewe him to be the knight that wonne the prise and honour in the iustes at Nabatea, for you shall vnderstande that all these Gyauntes were of the kingdome of Cilicia, and the king thereof if you remember was the first with whome the knight did iust, which in that triumph was ouerthrowen, when that to reuenge that quarrell came forth a brother of his, who by the strength of the arme of this knight was slaine, and the Gyaunt which he slewe by the riuer of Euphrates was the king of Cilicia himselfe (the occasion of his comming and who all the rest were shall more at large appeare in the processe of the historie.) When the Gyaunt knewe him, with a diuellish countenaunce he sayde: Tell me knight, by fortune art thou that famous warriour, who in the iustes of Nabatea (as hath bæne tolde me) carried awaye all the honour and praise, and ouerthrewe the king of Cilicia, to whome the Gods did shew themselues enimies, and the same which likewise slew his brother, if there be anie curtesie in thæ I desire thæ to tell me.

This valiant Prince aunswered and said: I do not knowe to what end thou doest aske it of me, but let it be for what it shall be, thou shalt vnderstand that I am the same that thou diddest

Coridon can remaine alive onely with his bodie, for that my soule is absented and gone after my Pastora. With manye teares the shepheard said these words. The Prince seeing that the detracting of time was perillous, toke his leaue of the Princesse, and found his horse in a readinesse, and with great lightnesse he mounted vpon him, so likewise his Squire and Coridon mounted vpon verie good horses, which ỳ Princesse commaunded to be giuen them, & with great hast they departed out of the citie, and toke their iourney into a broad high waie, and at such time as the Sun had couered all the earth, they met with a labouring man who was comming from his accustomed worke in the field, of whom thy asked newes of their Pastora, but he could tell them none, but he sayd, that about midnight he heard certaine lamentations made by a woman, but he knew not the occasion wherefore, So straight way he thought what it might be, which was the occasion that they made the more hast in trauailing, with great feare least they should lose her: So all that daie they trauayled, and rode through Damasco, and left the riuer of Euphrates, this knight trauailed with great sorrow for the small newes that he heard of his Pastora, and the anger was verie great of the Prince, for that he was so careless, in such sorte, that neither Coridon nor Fidelio durst speake a worde vnto him, and diuerse times lifting vp his eyes vnto heauen, with an heauie voice he said: Oh high and mightie God Iupiter, how is it possible that I hauing done my duetie vnto thy Deitie in all respects, and almost vsing a quotidian sacrifice, thou doest yet suffer thy power to bee contrarie vnto me in this, giue me now some light to happe on that waie by which that traitour and disloyall knight doth carrie the Goddesse of all shepheardes, that I maye deliuer her, that shee be not scorned nor ill intreated of that false knight: Oh Diana, chast Goddesse, hide thy breast, and send some keeper of thine to defende her, let that reuenger Camilia be her garde, and with her Bowe send a sharpe arrowe to passe through the heart of him that doth all this euill. In this sorte with greate anger the Prince trauailed, and the thirde daie of his iourney, some-

what

what early in the morning he sawe vppon a rocke a verie faire and great castell which seemed to be verie strong. The Prince determined to goe thether, he had not trauailed long when he came into another greate and broade waie, in the which there was a man which came towardes them, & when he drew nigh, they asked of him if he coulde tell anie newes of the Pastora. The man lift vp his eies and seeing the proportion of him that demaunded the question, he saide: For thy profit sir knight, for that thou seemest vnto me to be of estimation, I will not tell thee thy demaund. The valiant knight with more humilitie then his passionate heart would abide, desired him to giue him to vnderstand if he knew anie thing of her. The man said: Sir knight, I knowe not wherefore you will knowe of that thing, that by seeking of remedie for her deliuerie, will procure thy selfe death. Notwithstanding seeing that with so great courtesie you doe request me, I will tell you, although it were better for you not to knowe it, neuertheless you shall vnderstande that yesternight a knight brought her vnto yonder Castell which you see before you, & put her vnder so strong keeping, that there is no power able to deliuer her, except the power of the high Gods. The contentment was great that the Prince receiued when he heard newes of her, the which he so much desired, and giuing great thankes vnto the man, he went towards the Castle, & when he came thether, he found the drawe bridge downe, and the gate open, and no gard there to keepe it. And without all feare, he entered in at the gate, and left Coridon and Fidelio without. And being within, he came into a very great and broad Court, the which was paued with very faire and wel wrought stones, and the walls were full of windowes with yron grates very faire, but he saw no body: and discouering a broad and well made paire of staires, he alighted from his horse, and went vp, and being halfe waye vp, ther was a doore open, and looking in thereat, he sawe it was a greate Hall, and that verye darke, sauing at the farther ende thereof, there was a little louer hole, which gaue a small light, wher by he perceiued a little doore, which seemed to be at the foote

countenance she cast her eyes vpon Filipensio, she went vnto her sheep, and in her companie the Pastora Galismena & Coridon, and Filipensio and Alphesiuio remained with the sorrowfull Prince, comforting him with many good perswasions, but all did profit little, for that without saying any word with a terrible sigh he arose vp, and toke his horse & put himselfe in amongst the thickest of the trees, with pretence to do that which in the next chapter shall be tolde you.

¶How the Prince of Polisinago returned and tooke prisoner the Pastora Cayserlynga, and how that Filipensio followed after him till such time as hee tooke her out of his power. Cap. 28.

After the departure of the Prince, the three shepheards remained vnder those high Pine trees, till such time as the darke night came vpon them, and there did determine to passe the night awaie with musicke and amorous songs, and in this conuersation Filipensio receiued great pleasure, but they heard vpon a sodaine a greate noise, which seemed to be of a woman, and likewise a rumor of the running of horses. These shepheards spedely arose vp and went to see what it was, and they found Galismena who cryed out vnto the Gods, and when she sawe Filipensio she sayd: Ah good shepheard runne and giue succour, for that the Pastora is carried awaie prisoner by the Prince of Polisinago against her will. O that I were able to signifie vnto you here ỹ great anger of Filepensio, it was so much that almost he was beside himselfe, but when Galismena saw him in that traunce, she called vnto him with a loude voice and said: Ah gentle shepheard is it now time to lack courage, dost thou not see the great perill which may happen vnto Cayserlinga, and all by thy detracting of time. These high words was the occasion that the shepheard came vnto himselfe againe, & lyke vnto an arrow out of a bow he followed the way after them, till such time as he came into a broad high waie, whereas he

did

did discouer the new fot steps of his horse, by which he knew that he was rode that waie, and with great lightnesse he did prosecute his iourney, til such time as he came to Ierosolima, and when he sawe the small remedie that he had to goe forwards, for that he was on fote, he determined to enter into the citie, and loked backe to see if anie of the shepheardes did follow him, and he sawe none but Coridon that did followe him, and tarrying for him he sayd: Ah shepheard what shall we doe without our delight, follow me if it be thy pleasure, and let vs procure to recouer againe our losse, which is our Pastora. For here I doe sweare vnto thee by the Omnipotent Iupiter, neuer to retourne vnto the riuer of Euphrates, without the faire Pastora, and without anie more tarrying they entered into Ierosolima, not staying till they came vnto the Pallaice, and the first that he met with was with Fidelio, whom he commaunded to goe and declare vnto the Princesse of his comming, who did verie much meruaile when that Fidelio did tell her, for that he returned in so short time, and she went out of her chamber and did receiue him with great ioye and pleasure, saying: What quicke returne is this that you haue made, valiant and excellent knight: Verie heauie and sorrowfull sayd the Prince, for that good Ladie you shall vnderstand, my Pastora is robbed and carried awaye from me, and I am not able to make anie defence. And being cut off by the great abundaunce of teares that proceeded from his dolorous heart, he coulde not speake a worde more. And without anie tarrieng he depriued himselfe of his shepheards apparell, and put on his owne garments, and with a trice he was armed, and returning vnto Coridon he sayd: Friende Coridon this is mine accustomed wearing, for that which hetherto thou hast seene me weare, was lent me, ỳ I might the better reioyce my selfe with the sight of my loue, & nowe seeing that fortune hath frowned on me, here I sweare vnto thee not to take anie rest til such time as I set her at libertie. The shepheard meruailed to see ỳ which he did see, and sayd vnto the knight: Ah Filipensio how doest thou pretende to leaue the bodie without a soule, doest thou not beleeue that

with great lightnesse he put himselfe on the one side, so that he stroke his blowe in vaine, and because his Pastora should see the great strength and force of his armes, hee toke the swoorde fast in his hande and firmed himselfe on the ground and stroke the Gyaunt on the waste on his left side, that although his armour had beene made of harde and fine Diamonds, it had not beene able to haue made resistance against the furie of that great and mightie blowe, which was in such sorte, that the Gyaunt was cut a sunder in the middest, so that the one halfe fell on the one side and the other on the other side. All the Shepheards that were there present were verie much amazed, and lykewise the Pastoras, to see howe the newe shepheard at two blowes had ouerthrowen two such knightes as they were. The Pastora when shee sawe her selfe cleere from that perill, went vnto Filipensio for to imbrace him, and with amorous woordes she said. What reward can I poore Pastora giue, for to make satisfaction and gratifie the great good which at this present you haue done mee: surely I haue no other thing but to put my selfe into your handes, that with mee you may doe your pleasure, hauing a respect vnto my honour. Oh happie Pastora, that hath deserued by thy beautie that such a shepheard shoulde yeelde himselfe vnto thee. Who could declare the great contentment that Filipensio receiued when he sawe himselfe embraced with the thing that in all the world he best loued, and with that contentment he sayd.

Oh Goddesse of all beautie and faireneſſe, wherewith can I gratifie the [illegible] Pan, for the great force and strength which he gaue mee at this present? What sacrifice can I make, to paie this benefite and ioye that I doe feele, in hauing this my shepheards bodie imbraced and compassed about, with these delicate armes. This great force and strength I maye attribute vnto you my swéete Pastora, for that by your fayre sight my small strength did the more augment, which was the occasion that I deserue so greate fauour. Fayre Pastora, I desire no other thing of you, but onely to accept this which I haue done in part of a recompence of the great

seruice

seruice which this shepheard doth desire to doe vnto me. At this time the knight that was without remembrance was come vnto himselfe againe, & put himselfe on foote, the which when Filepensio sawe, he ceased his communication, & ranne vnto him with a wrathfull furie, and before that he coulde well settle himselfe, he laide holde vppon his healme with so great strength, that he pulled it from his head, breaking all the buckles and lacings, and when they saw the knight without his healme, he was knowen of all the shepheards to bee the shepheard called Tarsides. Then Alphesiuio went vnto Filepensio, and requested that he would mittigate his ire, the which this new shepheard did at his request, leauing to execute a terrible blow which he had all aloft for to strike him. What shall I saye vnto you of this Knight, when hee sawe himselfe ouercome of one alone shepheard, beleeuing ỹ twentie Knightes had not bene able to haue done it, but loking about to see where his companion was, and sawe him deade with so terrible a blow, he could not but with great sorrowe saie: Oh ye Gods come downe all together and doe obedyente vnto this Pastora, for that she doth better deserue it then all you, whose beautie hath so much force, that it incouraged one shepheard to doe that which a thousand knightes durst not haue giuen the enterprise off. Oh God Pan howe hath thy power extended this daie farre beyond the power of all other Gods, that thou diddest permit thus to be slaine so mightie a king. Ah Cayserlinga, no Pastora, but a Goddesse, that onely doest not bring in subiection the shepheardes, but also the high and mightie kings. Thou shalt vnderstande Pastora, that amongest them which doth beare thee companie is the Prince of Britania in disguised apparayle, and I am that vnhappie prince of Polismago, and he most vnfortunate whome this shepheard hath slaine, was the King of Silycia, agaynst whome the Gods hath shewed themselues contrarie. All this he sayde with great teares which came from his heart, accompanied with terrible sighes. The Pastora without anie shewe of pittie she hadde of that Knight, arose from the place whereas she was, and with a gracious

had bene, leauing all them in a greate confusion at the first, who did separate themselues euerie one to his waie, for whē they sawe that they could haue no longer sight of that fayre Pastora, they all departed, and none remained but Filepensio, Coridon, and Alphesiuio. This Filepensio was brought into that perplexitie, (that although he had the vauntage of all the companie in bravery & stomacke) yet he coulde not perswade himselfe to the contrarie, but he wared so leane and feble, in such sort, that it appeared in his face his great affliction. Coridon which did well perceiue his griefe, & wringing both his hands, he said: Ah faire and gentle shepheard, very apparant thou dost giue to vnderstand thy sorrow and griefe, and likewise by my soncts thou dost vnderstand my paine. This is the Pastora that hath all these valleyes full of the amorous fire of loue, and loke in how so much Nature hath indued her with beautie and faireneſſe: euen so great a malitie hath she accompanied with her crueltie, that there is no shepheard that can suffer it. This is the Pastora for whom the name of this flowred fielde is lost, whether as all Shepheards doth resort to kepe and fede their sheepe, but once haning a sight of her, then all their care is lost, their sheepe goeth a straie, and they giue place vnto cruell lone to enter into their heartes, and there he doth satisfie his cruell appetite, in such sort, that all their delight is to paint and set forth their amorous songs, belauing thereby to abate the crueltie of her stonie heart, and yet there is no more shew of remorse, then is in the hard rocke beaten with a mightie storme of haile.

Ah Filepensio, I see nowe that thou art a new louer, and yet by beholding thee thou seemest to bee an olde louer. This new shepheard would haue made him answere, but he was cut off by a beautie noise which he heard amongest the trees, which seemed to be of the Pastora, and crying out with more vehemencie, he heard that it were shrikes of the Pastora, and Galisinena, which being heard by the shepheards, with great alteration they ranne that waie whereas the noise was, & by reason that in lightneſſe and loue this new shepheard did exceede all the rest, he was the first that came vnto the place, and

sawe

ſaiwe that there was a Gyant, and with him a well proportioned knight, who had faſt hold of the Paſtora, and with the point of his ſword pricked the hands of Galiſmena to make her let goe her holde, for that ſhe imbraced the Paſtora in her armes with great ſtrength. At that time came Filepenſio, and with a greate noiſe he ſaid.

Thou vile knight and falſe traitour, I charge thée ſtand ſtill, and not laie hands vpon the delicate Paſtora, and taking his ſhepheardes crooke in his hande, which was both knottie and hard, with the ſame hardineſſe as though he had bene armed with complet armour, he preſſed towards them. The knight with great anger for that which the ſhephearde had ſayde, drew out his ſword, pretending with one blow to returne thoſe words of the ſhepheard, but he that knewe brie well how to vſe himſelfe, ſtepped on the one ſide & made him to ſtrike his blow in vaine, at which time the ſhepheard entered in to him by the one ſide, and ſtroke him ſo terrible a blowe with his crooke vpon the left ſhoulder, that he ouerthrew him to the ground without anie remembraunce. The Gyant being greatly amazed at the power of the ſhepheard, beléeuing that the knight had ben ſlaine, with a great ſhrike let goe the Paſtora, and ſet ſpurres vnto his horſe, thinking to ouerrun him, but it chaunced not with him as he thought, for that the ſhepheard was not idle, but hadde recouered the ſword of the ouerthrowen knight, and hauing it in his hand with great diſcreation he did a part himſelfe from the furye of the horſe, and in paſſing by ſtroke him on the hinder legs with ſo great ſtrength that he cut them both a ſunder, and he fell downe with his maſter to the ground, but in ſuch ſorte, that the Gyaunt might well cléere himſelfe from his horſe without receiuing anie harme at all, and béeing on foote he preſentlye layde hande vppon his greate and broade Fauchon, and beeing voyde of all patience, with a diueliſh furie he diſcharged his blowe at the vnarmed head of Filepenſio, but the Shephearde did not determine with himſelfe for to abide the comming of that vnmeaſurable blowe, but

And when it was towards night, they founde themselues in the broad and beaten way of Pyreo, which went vnto Constantinople, of the which they were very ioyfull: and he did determine to goe vnto the Emperour his father for to kisse his hands, and so they directed their waye vnto Constantinople. They had not ridden long, when that they heardes a great noyse of hunters which followed their game, and they came towards the place where as they wer, for that the night drew on: and they vnderstood by some of the huntsmen, that the Emperour was in that hunt, who for his recreation at that time came forth, and had in his company the Empresse, and the faire Oliuia, who was very sorrowful for the absence of Rosicleer. When the Emperour Alphebo knew that they were there, he went vnto their tents, and there did not lack them which did aduertise the Emperour and the Empresse, who with much ioye went out to receiue him, as he would haue entred. And when Alphebo was before her, he fel down vpon his knées: then the Empresse with teares of great ioy did imbrace him, and spake words of maternall loue. Then was he receiued of the faire Oliuia, and of all the Princes & Ladyes that were there. Likewise they receiued and gaue great intertainment vnto the King of Sardenia, for that hée was welbeloued of them al, from the time that he made battaile with the Giant in the Emperiall Pallaice. And being in this pleasure the Emperour came with as much spéede as he could, and there beganne a newe the welcomming of Alphebo and the king, with so much ioye and pleasure vnto al, that I cannot expresse it. So there they passed that night till the morning, and when all things was put in order, they heard diuine seruice, and went to breakfast, with pretence to retourne againe vnto their hunting. So when they were a taking vp of the tables, they heard a great rumour of Seruants, and of the running and coursing of horses. The Emperour Alphebo arose from the Table, and putting on his helme, he went out of the Tent, whereas he found in a readinesse his horse, and with great lightnesse he mounted on him, and rode towards the place from whence ỹ noyse came,

and

and vpon a sodaine he sawe come riding two knightes, and after them followed one knight of a meruailous disposition, with Purple armour all to be spotted with starres of golde, likewise his shield was purple, vpon the which was put for the deuice a knight who seemed to haue the same deuice, his eyes shut by reason that certaine Sunne beames did strike on them, the which seemed to proceede out of the face of another knight. This Purple knight brought his sword in his hand all naked, in manner as though he would strike ỹ other two which ranne awaie. The Emperour Alfebo did reprehend the two knights for their running awaie, and put himselfe before them. At this instant we must leaue the Emperour and his knights, for to returne vnto the Pastor Claridiano, whom we left with his swéte musicke, and his Lute in his hand, compassed round about with a companie of shepheards, hauing her before him, whose beautie did make him to disguise himselfe in that base apparell, and she was set vpon the grœne grasse, whereas she might with good attention beare the delicate swœtnesse of this new shepheards musicke. Also all the rest of the shepheards had no small admiration as well therat, as at the swœt melodie he vsed in singing, and at sundrie-times he sent forth dœpe sighs, so that it made all the shepheards hearts to melt, and the verie birdes which did flie in the forrest did staye & were astonied at his swœte musicke. So when he was wearie of playing & singing, the amorous sight of the Pastora did graunt him no farther lisence, but that with a fewe teares he cast downe his humbled eies, and began to wring his hands. The Pastora did very much behold him, & it seemed vnto her that in all her life she had not seene so much fairenesse in a man imagining with her selfe that he was some worthie knight. So straight way she toke Galismena by the hand, and arose vp from the place whereas she was set, and did loke vpon the shepheard, giuing him to vnderstand, that her sight shoulde be vnto him more at commaundement, then to all the rest of ỹ shepheards there a long the riuer, and with great maiestie she turned her back, as though she had perfectly knowen whose daughter she

¶How the Emperour Alphebo would haue perſwaded the Princeſſe Tigliafa to leaue that lamentable life,and how ſhe refuſed to doo it, and went from them,& how the two Knights departed, and of all that happened vnto them in their igurney. Cap. 27.



THis valiant Tinacrian trauailed ſo faſt ouer the Mountaines,that in a ſhort ſpace he left them behinde him. So likewiſe he did thorough Hungaria & Samaria, and paſſed thorough Thracia,Miſia,Dardenia,and Macedonia,and came vnto the principall parte of all Grecia vnto Conſtantinople. This Tinacrian chaunced vpon many aduentures in this his iourney,as recompencing of griefes,and rightening of wrongs,and ſetting at libertie of compulſions,as well vnto knights as vnto Ladies and Gentlewomen: but in eſpeciall againſt Giaunts in battaile,killing and deſtroying. In ſuch ſorte, that the fame of the Knight of the Braunch was in all partes,and eſpecially amongſt the Knights of Grecia: inſomuch,that they did not talke of any actes and deeds paſt of Emperours and Princes,but all was of this valiant Tinacrian. Likewiſe ỹ fame of the Purple Knight was there amongſt them, which was no leſſe,then that of the Tinacrian. And if it be ſo,that I do tell you no more of this good Tinacrian, it is not for ỹ Artemidoro hath not declared it: but conſidering the great antiquitie of the time,it was becauſe he ỹ did write this,could not read it,therfore he doth declare that which he could read. This Hiſtorie ſayth,that when this Tinacrian came within a mile of Conſtantinople,the night came vppon them, & he did determine to paſſe it away in a thicke Orcharde that was there nigh the high waye,and hanged his ſhielde vppon the bough of a tree: and by reaſon of the wearineſſe of his iourney,he ſlept as one that was without all care. The Lady put her ſelfe farther into the orchard,and in this ſort,they

paſſed

passed away the night, till the morning came. At which time there chaunced an aduenture, which for to declare in order, I must returne vnto the Knight of the Sunne, whereas wee left him, and as you haue heard, he was beholding the ceremonies of the Princes Tigliafa, which she vsed ouer the body of Zoylo, vpon her knees with a sorrowfull lamentation. The Knight of the Sunne the better to vnderstand what she sayd, pulled off his helme, and then he heard that she said as followeth,

I do not know wherfore I do lose so much time in this sorrowfull lamentation, for that it is not sufficient for to deliuer me from the sorrow and griefe, which continually I am afflicted with. Very heauie I am for thee my Zoylo, & being without thy company, I knowe not how I liue. It were better for me at once to ende my sorrow, procuring w my owne hands, to goe and beare thee company. Oh sorrowfull Lady, how dost thou liue without thy welbeloued? How dost thou sustaine thy self, without thy life? That day in the which thou didst lose him, that daye it had happened well vnto thee, if thou hadst lost thine owne life: but in the end wil come an end, that thou shalt goe to seeke him, in giuing thy selfe cruell death.

And with this she made an ende of her lamentation, for that lifting vp her eyes, she saw how the two knights were very attentiue vnto that which she said. And giuing a terrible and grieuous sigh, she arose vp in great hast, and entered into the chamber whereas she came forth, and with greate wrath she shut the doore, making within the chamber, meruailous lamentations. The Emperour Alphebo went thether, to see if he coulde open the doore, but he found it verye fast shut, as one who had the Fortresse made by the wise Lyrgandeo and so likewise did he bring that monster for to keepe her, that she might be troubled of no body. The Emperour Alphebo seeing that his calling was in vaine, departed and went out w his company, and mounting vppon theyr Beastes they did prosecute theyr iourney. So all the rest of the daye almost they trauayled in the same Forrest,

and

vnto the Embassage sent with so great pride, was in a maze, and greatly meruailed in such sort that he could not speake, but when he came vnto himselfe, he sayd. Oh God, and what may this be, that ther is so much power and strength in this one Knight, that within my kingdome, yea, within my pallaice, he doth these actes without feare, and with this yre hée toke Florisarte, by the hande and entred into his chamber whereas betwixt them there was very much a do, with hold and kæpe. So when he was wel aduertised who the knight and the Lady were, he was fully determined to set at libertie Clarentina, and Macedonio, and to send them vnto the Knight, ioyntly with the Lady, & that Florisarte shuld beare them company, till such time as they had deliuered them vnto the Knight, and that they shuld of his part request him to remaine in the Court, for that therewith he shoulde receiue great contentment: so according vnto the Emperours commaundement Florisarte went, and in his company Laurentino, who when he saw his sister clære of so great euill was very ioyfull. So they stayed not in anye place, till such time as they came vnto the passage, whereas they found that inuincible knight, who when he saw them, he was right ioyfull and receiued meruailous delight, and much more when they tolde him that Clarentina was at her libertie: and whē he heard the message of the Emperour in requesting him to remaine in his Court, he surrendred vnto him great thanks for the same, and sent to request him to pardon and forgiue Candisea. There Florisarte and Laurentino did promise him on their parts to importunate the Emperour therevnto, and hærewith they toke their leaue the one of the other, the Tinacrian did passe ouer the riuer, and the rest returned vnto the Citie with the knights answere, the which they gaue vnto the Emperour, and when he saw that he would not tarry and remaine with him, he was very sorrowfull. Laurentino when he saw the Emperours sorrow sayd: High & mightie Lord, he was by vs very much perswaded, who doeth kisse your highnesse hands, and sayd that he could not in any wise staye longer, for that he had other great matters in

charge,

charge, which nedes must be accomplished: and doeth most heartely request your highnesse, to make reckoning of him as of your owne, wher, and in whatsoeuer your highnes will or shall commaund him, and for a recompence of the same, he doth request your highnesse for to pardon & forgiue Candisea all her fault & offence, for that she was blinded by loue, and againe her fault doth deserue pardon, for that she sought remedy, against that false accusation. Likewise we do pray and desire your highnesse of our part to performe the same. The Emperour did straight graunt vnto all their request, & as the yre and wrath did lose their superiorite ouer him, he showed himselfe to be very sorrowfull, to haue lost out of his court so valiant a knight. Then Laurentino did importunate his sister for to aske license of the Emperour for to returne vnto Tirol, the which was graunted them: so they carried in their companye the Bauiero, and passing through Augusta, they came vnto Minique, whereas they remained a time with great feasts and triumphs. And when they saw that it was time to depart, they toke their way to Espruch, a Citie of the Earledome of Tirol: and passing ouer the Alpes, they were taken prisoners by a mightie Giaunt, and twentie armed knights vpon such a sodaine, that they could not make any defence: but all their company were slaine, & the rest prisoners, as the two knights. Florisarte and Laurentino, and the Lady his sister. The Gyant and his companye toke their way through the mountaines, towards the land of Esguizaros: but the third day of their captiuitie and imprisonment, they sawe comming downe by the Riuers side, a knight armed with very rich armour, his stature was such, that he seemed to be a very good knight, and in his companie he had two very faire Ladies. This knight came all readye to the battaile, his shield in good order, and his speare in his hand, put vpon his right thigh with a very good grace and demeanour. But before I do tell you who this knight is, I must first show you of all that happened vnto the Tinacrian, after that he departed from the Emperour.

¶How

At which call there came forth out of a little groue ten armed knights with their speres on their rests, and made their way against the Tinacrian, who seing them comming, was nothing afraid, but pricking his great beast with the spurres he put himselfe betwirt the two cousins, which was the occasion that these ten knights could not execute ther furious blowes. The Tinacrian did throw his shield at his backe, & toke his sword fast in both his hands, and firmed himselfe in his stirrops, and stroke Feridefonte, such a blowe vppon the helme, that although it had bene of a fine Diamond, he had broken it all to peces, for the furie of his blowe was such, that he cloue the healme and head of that furious Firidefonte down to the breast, so that he fell downe dead to ỹ ground, and hauing done this he founde himselfe compassed about with all the other knightes, vppon whom he began to strike meruailous great and furious blowes, in such sort, that in a small time he brought fiue of them to the ground, Rodelando hauing opportunitie, with both his handes stroke him so terrible a blow, that he made him with his beauer to touch the eares of his beast, thē all the rest laid vpon him, but they did no more harme then if they had stroke vpon an Anfield, but when the Tinacrian was come vnto himself finding Rodelando by him, who without all pittie laide vppon him, he turned his sword about his head, & stroke him such a blowe vpon his left arme, his sword being gouerned by the force of his worthy hand, ỹ he brake the steely armour, and cut flesh & bone with so great fury, that the head with the right shoulder blade was deuided from the body, and he fell down dead to the ground.

Then all the rest which remained, when they sawe so great slaughter, trusting more vnto the lightnesse of their Horses, then vnto the strength of their armes, determined to flye. But the Knight of the Braunch perceiuing it, and hauing a very light beast, put himselfe betwixt them and their waye, saying: If you will not receiue the death, staye, and doe that which I will tell you, and I will let you goe at li-

bertie: and they seing y if they did it not with a good will, they should doo it spite of their heartes, they did strayghte waye consent, vnto whatsoeuer he would commaund, and returning them all, he did commaund them to take the bodies of Feridefonte and Rodelando, and to put them vppon two horses, and that from him they should carrye them vnto the Emperour, and tell him all that which he shoulde saye vnto them. So they did accomplish his commaundement, and they came vnto the Courte, at such time as the night began to appeare.

These were the two dead bodies which the Emperour sawe brought into the Court, at such time as they had little care of anye such matter: So they that brought these dead bodies, went vp into the great hall, and when they wer before the Emperour, they sayde: High and mightie Emperour, the Knight of the Braunch doth sende vnto your highnesse, two furious Knights, Rodelando and Feridefonte, in this sorte as you doo see them, desiring your highnesse to sende vnto him, his Ladye and his Page, and lykewise to cleare and delyuer out of prison his companion, and that fayre Clarentina, for that it is very apparaunt that she was falsely accused, as hee, and the Dukes sonne of Bauiero, doo well knowe, of whome your Highnesse maye very well certifie your selfe. Likewise if there be anye Knight in all your Courte, that will stande in contention, and defende the contrarie, being one, or tenne, that he alone with his person will defend it. And if so be that your highnesse will not doo this right and Justice, he is determined to doo vnto you all the harme and damage that hee maye. And to conclude, in defence of this right, he doth defie thy Emperiall Crowne and [illegible] royall estate: and the better to satisfie thy minde, he [illegible]deliuer vnto thee Candisea, for that of her thou shalt vnderstand all the whole truth of the matter, with condition that she receiue no hurt nor harme vnto her person, for that she hath repented her selfe of the fact done.

The Emperour, who was very attentiue, and hearkened vnto

appeared the occasion of their deaths, whereas we wil leaue them, for that the furie of this Tinacrian doth compell me to declare the end of this conflict, as in the Chapter following you shall vnderstand.

¶ How the Tinacrian was tarrying to see if anie would come forth against him, for that which was past, and howe that Rodelando and his cosin made battaile with him, and how he ouercame them both. Chap. 26.



Euen as the furious Faunus in the mountaines of Tartarie, doth couer his great & brutall members with the braunches of ỹ mightie Pine trees, working pollicies to get his praie, for ỹ he cannot finde wheron to execute his anger, for to satisfie his capitall enimie, hunger: euen so & rather more furious was this Tinacrian, abiding the comming of Macedonio, or anie other ỹ peraduenture might follow him, he blasphemed against the Gods & loked vp vnto the heauens, & said: So long as I beleeue in them, there will nothing prosper with me, nor in anie thing will my honour increase. And being in this spech he sawe cõming ỹ waie which he came, two well proportioned knights, mounted vpon two mightie horses, who when the came vnto the waters side, in greate hast they called for the barke, & loking round about them to see if they could espie their enimie, they sawe him on the other side of the riuer, vnto whom with a loude voice they called, & did defie him to mortall battell, the knight of the braunch when he heard them call, he made himselfe readie, & entering into the barke he said: Tarry ther & I will come ouer to see if you do seeke me or not, and therwith he made great hast with the barke, & whẽ he came nigh vnto the shore he mounted vpon his mightie beast, & with a light leap he was a land. Then one of those knights with an high voice sayd: Now sir traitor, thou shalt pay ỹ great offẽce which thou didst vnto me before ỹ Emperour, for thou shalt vnderstand ỹ I am Rodelando, & this other is my cosin Firi-

defonte. When ý Tinacrian heard this, without tarrying for any more words, he set hand vnto his sword & said: Oh traitors, how your faults hath brought you to receiue ý paiment for your treason at my hands, & now in place wher your treasons shal not profit you, and in saying these words he stroke Rodelando such a blow ý he made him to fal backwards vpō the horse crouper. Then Firidefonte entered in to him on the one side, & stroke the Tinacrian such a blow vpon the helme that it made a sound as though he had stroke vpon a bell, & made him decline his head vnto his brest, but quickly he setled himselfe againe, & lift vp his rigorous arme & stroke him such a blow vpon his shulder, ý it made him to shrink in his bodie with the great paine he felt: at ý time Rodelando was come vnto himselfe & setled againe, verie much troubled at ý great valor of ý knight, & throwing his shield vnto ý ground he stroke the knight such a blow on the one side of his helme, ý he made him to decline his head vpon his beasts neck, who being scarred with ý blow, gaue a great leap from thē, which did not a little vantage the Tinacrian, for ý Firidefonte came to discharge his blow vpon him, & by reason ý the beast did leap on the one side, he could not execute that blow: in which time wout receiuing any other blow, the prince setled himself againe in his saddle, & found nigh vnto him Firidefonte, who followed to strike him, to whom he gaue such an ouerthwart blow vpon his beuer, ý with the sparkles of fire which flewe out thereof, he singed his browes & eye lids, & made him to fall backwards vpon his horse crouper without any remembrance, & therewith Rodelando prested vnto the Tinacrian, whereas began a great & perilous battell, this Tinacrian wō great lightnesse entered in & out with his enimies, without receiuing any harme, & stroke them with so great furie, ý they wist not what to doe, & it could not be chosen but ý he must nœds receiue some harme, for ý he dealt with two of the best knights in al Almaine. In this sort they endured two houres & he had brought these two knights into great wearinesse, & all their bodies were couered with bloud, and faling themselues so troubled, Firidefonte hallowed with a loude voice,

they found verie much amazed at the great prowesse of this knight. The Earle of Maguntia who likewise followed the knight, at his returning againe he found Macedonio, & toke him and carryed him before the Emperour and said: This is Page vnto that diuell, who to our cost and spite of our teth is gone awaye. The Emperour did beholde him and sawe that he was of a good disposition & had a faire face, he asked of him and said: Tell me my friend, howe doest thou call thy Lord, is he by fortune some diuell, for that according as hee hath shewed himselfe vnto vs, it cannot be but that he is some infernall creature. This young Gentleman with great deliberation sayd: My Lord is a humane creature and sonne vnto a humane man, and more mightier then your highnesse, for you shall vnderstand that he is sonne vnto the Emperor Trebatio, Emperour of Grecia, and his mother is the quæne Garrofilea Quæne of Tinacria, and your highnesse shall vnderstand that he is a knight that will reward (and that verye well) all the harme and griefe which is done vnto him, with whatsoeuer knight he be in all the world, the Ladie which he brought with him is of high estate, for you shall vnderstand that she is a great Ladie and a quæne. The Emperour whē he heard this, he looked about for her, and sawe her in a corner of the hall verie sore afflicted, and commaunded that shee should be carried with great honour and reuerence whereas ỹ Empres was, & with great anger he returned vnto Macedonio and said: I will see howe farre the power will extend of this diuell, for that he shall not haue thee, neither his Ladie, till such time as I haue him in my power. All that the Emperour sayd was heard by a brother of Clarentinas, who was called Laurentino, that came vnto the court that present day, & being verie much moued, he said: Your highnesse doth very ill in intreating my sister so euill, is this the reward for the great seruice which I & my father haue done for you, to procure for to destroy & kill him, who respecting our honour, doth put his person in aduenture to deliuer my sister from that false accusation laide against her, and the other which came in his companie thou hast put in prison, and not content

hærewith, but doſt kæpe in thy power from him a Ladie and his Page, it ſhoulde ſuffice thæ to knowe who they are, and the highneſſe of their linage, and not in ſuch ſoꝛt to doe them wꝛong, my Loꝛd, moderate your ſelfe and doe iuſtice, foꝛ that hetherto you haue bene a friend in dæing iuſtice and right, & doe not blemiſh this daie with thy great pꝛide the high fame which in ſo manie yeares thou haſt gotten. The Emperour who was blind & ouercome with anger, & verie wꝛathfull he ſayd: Get thæ hence in an euill houre vnto thy lodging, foꝛ that thy ſiſter ſhall neither winne noꝛ loſe foꝛ thy ſpeach. This baliant young man did anſ were: Foꝛ that you are my Emperour & Loꝛd you may intreat me in this oꝛder, but if that reaſon did now gouerne your bꝛeaſt, you would do moꝛe iuſtice then by your outward ſhewe you doe meane to doe, thereforꝛe now I doe ſaie, let them take hæde who is in the fault, foꝛ that with my perſon and goods I doe determine to make my defence, and to aide and ſaccour him, who foꝛ my ſiſter doth put his life in aduẽture. And in ſaying theſe woꝛds he departed out of the great hall, leaning the Emperour full of cholar and wꝛath, who commaunded to burie the dead bodies, and Polio with great honour. His death was verie ſoꝛe lamented of many, foꝛ that he was wel beloued of all ỹ court. Then they gaue the Emperour to vnderſtand how that the knight whom he had in pꝛiſon was ſonne vnto the Duke of Bauiera, foꝛ the which he receiued great grieſe, foꝛ that he was ſonne vnto one of the mightyeſt Loꝛdes that was in all Almaine, his power was ſo greate, that hæ and the power of Laurentino were able to maintaine warres agaynſt the Emperour. So conſidering all things, the Emperour in his owne perſon went and toke the Knight out of pꝛiſon, of whome he vnderſtoode all that happened in the Caſtell of the Rocke, and likewiſe the truth of the treaſon of Finde-fonte, and bæing in this communication, they heard in the Court a greate rumour, and going to ſee what was the occaſion thereof, they ſawe that there was bꝛought two dead Knightes vppon two hoꝛſes, and hadde on eyther of them a meruailous greate and cruell wounde, which was as it

but he with his sworde made such a slaughter amongest them, that they did verie well feele and vnderstand the valiantnesse of his heart, & the great noise & crieng out of the Emperour, neither his emperiall presence was sufficient to appease them. At this time the Emperours gard came into the hall, who were cõmanded that with their halberts they should indeuour to part them, then the Emperour went to lay hand on Finidefonte, the beginner of all this tumult, but he putting himselfe in defence went forth of the hall, so likewise did Rodelando, ỹ Emperour seing that, laide hand on the Bauiero, who with great humilitie did obey his Lord, he would haue done ỹ like vnto Poliphebo, but he put the point of his sword before him & said: Kæpe your highnesse backe, for that I am none of them that so lightly will be taken prisoner, take & put in prison thy owne vassalles, such as hath had little respect vnto thy presence, & let not them which are not of thy kingdome pay for this thy anger. The emperour very angry said: If my vassalls are in the fault, they shall haue theyr punishment, & thou also if thou dost deserue it, therfore yæld thy self to prison, if not, vnderstand that it wil be to thy cost. I know not what will fall out hærein, said the Tinacrian, but w̃ my god will neither you nor all yours shall triumph of my imprisonment, & before that this doth come to passe, I wil make more then one thousand of them that do pretend to take me prisoner lose their lines. Then the Emperour with a loude voice commaunded to take him, at which wordes all the whole gard together pressed at him, but this valiaunt knight did determine that in spite of them all he would clære and set himselfe at libertie, there did he begin to doe wonderfull feates of armes, breaking and cutting a sunder those sharpe Halberts, and killing and wounding that it was terrible to beholde. All the people fæling and seing the effect of his rigorous arme, did giue him waye and let him goe tyll hæ came to the stayres, there they beganne to assault him a newe with verye much people, and amongest them some armed knightes. The Knight when he sawe that he coulde not passe in quiet, he was cleane without anye patience,

and

and not fearing death but forgetting pollicie, he firmed himselfe, and throwing his shield at his backe, he toke his sword in both his hands, and layd about him on euerye side, & lyke vnto a furious Lion he pressed amongst the people, cutting, killing and wounding, for to haue way to descend ỹ staires. At that time was the Knight in great perill, for that those which were before him, did persecute him with the sharpe poynts of their halberds, and likewise those which were behinde him did the like: in such sorte, that the Knight being on the staires, could not tourne himselfe at his pleasure: but yet all that euer they did, did little auaile or profite them, for that with the great furie which he had, he pressed vpon them that were before him, and what with killing and wounding, he forced them to giue him way to descend downe ỹ staires, where hee founde many people fallen downe with the great hast they had to flye from him. And when he saw that hee could not passe by reason of the people, he gaue a great leap, & with wonderfull lightnesse he passed ouer the people that were fallen, and went vnto the place whereas Macedonio did abide his comming, with his great beast, & with strange lightnes he lept vpon his back, and rode into the great court, whereas he was assaulted of very much people, for that the Emperour at the windowes cryed out vppon them to take him. The knight of the branch, when he found himself mounted vpon his great and light beast, then he feared nothing, and pricking him with the spurres, incouraging him with a showte, he passed downe the streate, and neuer stayd, till he came vnto the riuers side, and passed in the barke vnto the other side, and determined not to depart from thence, till such time as he had scene an end of that which touched the iniurie of Clarentina, and also to recouer againe his Lady the queene, who with great affliction, as a woman all alone, put her self out of the preasse of Knightes, and abode in a corner of the great hall, to keepe her selfe from harme. The people of the Emperour, which followed the Knight of the Branch, when they sawe him passe with his great beast so swiftly, they returned backe againe whereas the Emperour was, whome

"part, and named a space, in the which that faultlesse Gentle-
"woman, daughter vnto the Duke of Tirol, should seeke one
"for to defend her honour and right, being falsely accused for
"a murtherer, partly for this thing also am I come before thy
"high presence, to make them vnderstand their wicked pre-
"tence & false accusation which they haue raised on her with-
"out desert, and if they be here present, let them marke what
"I saie, and if not, let your highnesse command that they may
"be aduertised hereof, for that I wil make them to know that
"it is great falsehode and treason in that they haue accused
"Clarentina.

These two cosins were there present and heard very well his words, and Rodelando without anie respect vnto the emperour, taking his cosin Firidefonte by the hand, stepped forth with a furious countenance and said: Here thou hast before thee they whom thou dost demaund for, beholde vs well, and let not thy youthfull courage deceiue thee, giuing enterprise vpon that, of which the sonnes of the Emperour Trebatio would make doubtfull, therefore loke what thou doest determine, and giue vs our aunswere, and that quickly. The Knight of the Braunch in the meane time that Rodelando was saying these words, did verie much beholde and viewe him, and it seemed vnto him that hee was a Knight of greate valour, but yet for all that his strong members did not dismaie him, but with a graue speech and seuere countenaunce he aunswered: If thou hast so much haste to knowe my determination, here I doe saye that in the accusation that thou hast put against Clarentina, thou doest lye lyke a false Knight, and that thy cosin lyke a cruell murtherer doth deserue the death for killing of his owne Brother, committed by his owne handes, who was more worthie in all respects then he is. Then Firidefonte with great fury answered and sayd.

O vile ribalde, howe can I suffer so greate euill, to bee charged with that which that naughtie woman hath committed and caused to be done, if thou wert not before the

Em-

Emperour it should cost thée full dère, and out of hand thou shouldest haue thy payment for this great lie, but yet I doe comfort my selfe, for that verie quickly I will bée reuenged on thée. I cannot declare the great anger which the knight of the Branch receiued, for that he tourned vp the white of his eyes, and all his face wared wanne and blacke, and trembling with very anger mouing his pace he sayd. I doe promise thée thou traitour, that I will make thée with thy owne mouth confesse this great treason which thou hast committed, and if it were not but that I am before so high an Emperour, héere in this place without going anie farther, with my fists like a vile traitour I would make thée to confesse it. Héere Firidefonte had no patience to heare these things spoken to his face, but like a tyger he leapt vnto him and wrapped his cloake about his arme and drew out his sword, and went against the knight of the Branch. This worthy warriour thereat made no kinde of mouing, but did abide his coming, making an outward shewe of the greate valour of his heart, Firidefonte did strike at him with his sworde, but the knight of the Branch stepped on the one side, and made him to lose his blow, so that his sword stroke on the ground, and like vnto the winde he closed with him, and stroke him with his hands on the breast with so great furie and strength, that without hauing anie power to saue himselfe, he gaue a great fall backwards to the ground, Rodelando séeing that on the best side entered to him, and did imbrace him, and held him verie strongly betwéene his armes. Then this gentle knight drew out his sword, and hauing his arme aloft he stroke a blowe, the which chaunced vpon a young man called Polio, of Velduque, sonne vnto the Duke of Velduque, and that cruell sword did light vppon his head, and cutting it in two parts, the young man fell downe dead to the ground. Nowe was it not requisite that the Tinacrian should remaine in the armes of Rodelando, but with great strength he did ruffle himselfe, & threw him from him. At ỳ time the whole Court was in a tumult for the death of Polio, and euerie one drewe out his sworde and did verie sore assalt the knight of ỳ Branch,

And now that I haue told you all the matter, and the truth, hære I do desire you, that if there be in you any bountie, (as it doth appeare and shewe by your presence) that thou wilt take vppon thy owne charge this battaile and defence, for that I would (sæing that I haue bene the occasion of all this euill and trouble happened vnto this guiltlesse Lady, in giuing false euidence) be the meanes whereby she might receiue remedie for the same. This Tinacrian was very much amazed to heare of such an intangled and false forged matter: and for that he was one that did procure to aide and helpe the afflicted, he did very freely offer himselfe, to procure to make her defence. At this instant the dawning of the day appeared, and the Prince toke the Gentlewoman, and went whereas the Knight of Bauier was, and did awake him, and gaue him to vnderstand, of all that the Gentlewoman hadde tolde him, who incontinent did offer himself to be the seconde in the battaile for her defence. When the Quæne was all in a readinesse to trauaile on their iourney and all the rest, they made great hast, and toke the way which led them vnto Espira, and carried the Gentlewoman with her face couered, that she might not be knowen So when they came with in a mile of the Citie of Espira, they must nædes passe a great and mightie broad riuer, whereas they lefte Candisca in a dayrie house, giuing great charge that she should be well loked vnto, and the Quæne and all the rest passed the River in a barke, and neuer staid till they entered into the citie, and had their helmes on, and their shields at their backs. This strong and stout Tinacrian rode mounted vppon his temerous beast, with so great and goodly a demeanour, that all which did behold him, greatly mervailed what knight it should be, of so great and comely stature, and when they saw the deuise of the trée and broken braunch on his shielde, they straight wayes knew that he was the Knight that had slaine the Gyaunts, for that they had heard the newes there of in the Court, which was the occasion that much people, did folow him to behold his face, if he did put off his helm, to se if they could know him. So these two knightes and

the

the Quæne (with all the people that followed him) came vnto the Emperours pallaice, whereas the Prince did alight, & taking the Quæne in his armes, he toke her from her Palfraie and lead her by the right hand, so with a verie gentle & comely grace they went vp into a royall hall, and Macedonio remained belowe and kept their horses. When they entered they found the Emperour accompanied with all his nobilitie, & the knight was knowen vnto thē al by the deuice of his shæld, & therfore al people did approch to know wherfore his comming was, & greatly merualled at his bigge stature & gentle disposition, and they all kept silence to heare what the knight of the Braunch would saie, who when he was before the Emperour made a shewe of his high lignage from whence he did descend, in making of his dutifull reuerence. The Emperour hauing knowledge of his person by ỹ report which he had heard, did returne his salutation in equall mãner, & when the Emperour would haue speken, the baliaunt knight of the branch did disturbe him and sayd.

High & mightie Lord, the fame which I haue heard of your great vertue hath incouraged me to come into thy kingdome, with intent to yeld my selfe into your seruice, if that your highnesse be content therwith, which if you wil not permit, yet at least to suffer me according to equitie, to shewe the strength of my armie vpon certaine thy subiects, at the which I do desire thee not to receiue any displeasure, for ỹ thou art accounted to be verie right & iust, for such is the fame that is reported of thee through the world, & I vnderstanding ỹ thou wilt reioyce in all ỹ which is true, & also for that the truth might be iustified, as it is reason, although the one part hath shewed with witnesse & words his matter to be of truth yet, for all that at all times they ought not to be beleeued, but that the contrarie partie must likewise be hearde, for that thereby rightly may be shewed and declared the equitie of iustice, I doe not speake this for that your highnesse hath determined anie thing without hearing of both partyes, but for that it is brought vnto another tryall, and referred by your maiestie to the tryall of armes, to iustifie the right of eyther

" who was the murtherer of him, and for that the fraternall
" bloud could not let but to wound verie much his heart, con-
" sidering the euill fact which he had done, he straight way re-
" pented himselfe thereof, which was afterward a farther euill,
" and forsomuch as the diuell was lodged in his heart, this his
" euill pretence did not rest with the death of his brother, but
" gathered in his thought to do a fact farre worser, and the oc-
" casion was, for that Clarentina made so great lamentation for
" the death of that vnhappie Pinaronte, and this was the pre-
" sumption that he would vse, ordeined by the diuell, and it so
" fell out, that I was wounded by that false Cupide with the
" loue of Piridefonte, not hauing anie respect vnto the ill fauo-
" redneſſe of his face, and being constrained by the greuousnes
" of my wound, I gaue him clearly to vnderstand therof, which
" was the occasion ꝑ he was the bolder to doe that which hee
" did, & seeing me so captiue in loue of him, he was in no doubt
" to discouer vnto me his whole heart, all the which he tolde
" me, being in place where boldly he might speake. And he said:
" Ah Clarentina my verie friend, I haue had greate desire to
" haue had this opportunitie for to talke with thee, and to dis-
" couer my whole heart. Thou hast well seene this vnhappie
" and cruell death of my vnfortunate brother, thou shalt vnder-
" stand that Clarentina was the occasion of his death, but and
" if thou wilt doe that which now I will desire thee, I do heere
" sweare vnto thee by the high and mightie God, ꝑ there shall
" none be Ladie of my heart but alonely thy beautie, then I
" (vnhappie and without all good fortune) being wholy yelded
" and so ouercome with his loue, did offer my selfe to doe all
" that which his pleasure was to commaunde mee. Then this
" traitour with dissembling wordes sayde: I alwayes had
" this good opinion in you my loue, that you woulde accom-
" plish my request. Well, thou shalt nowe vnderstande that
" I doe pretende to accuse Clarentina for the murther of my
" brother, and the better to bring to passe my desire, I will
" saye that thou art witnesse therevnto, and doest knowe the
" certaintie thereof. Then I thinking to obtaine that which

so long time I had desired, did promise him to doe it, as by
the proofe it shoulde plainely appeare. And with this con-
clusion he departed from me, and went and gaue his cousin
Rodelando to vnderstand of it, who is one of the strongest
and valyauntest knightes in all this Countrie, and Rode-
lando beleeuing that it should bee true, did offer himselfe to
be the seconde in the defence in helping of his cousin, and so
both of them went and made their accusation before the Em-
perour, the Emperour commaunded mee to bee called before
him, for to declare what I did knowe therein, and did ac-
complish and performe all that I had promised. Then this
faultlesse Ladie seeing her selfe so falsely accused, did weepe
verie greeuously, desiring the Emperour to appoint a time
that shee might seeke one for to make aunswere in her de-
fence, and for to proue that it was all false that was layde
against her. So it was agreed, that in the space of two mo-
neths shee should bring a knight that shoulde defend her ho-
nour, and if so be that shee coulde not, that then shee shoulde
be condempned according vnto the lawe, that is, to burne
her quicke, and in the meane time that shee should be put in-
to a tower, and there well and strongly kept, not forbidding
anie, whosoeuer hee were, naturall or straunger, but that hee
might lawfully make battaile in her defence. So likewise
they commaunded that I should be put in another tower, that
if it were so that I should be found a liar, that I shoulde bee
punished with her prouided death. So I when I vnderstood
it was in a great feare, and went priuelye vnto the lodging
of Firidefonte, of whome I was verie well receiued, and fai-
ning that he would send me into his Countrie, he put all
thinges in order for my iourney, and gaue me these two vil-
laines whom thou hast slain to be my keepers, who brought
me hether, and brought me vnto the point as you found me.
And as I do beleeue it came determined from thence, for that
his euill pretence should not be discouered. Heere you maye
vnderstand sir knight, wherefore I sayd that it had ben bet-
ter to haue let me ben slaine then to liue with so great griefe.

And

those villaines were, these miserable clownes with two so-
ches which they had in their hands did abide his comming, &
stroke with them vpon his hard shields each of them a blowe,
but this knight with other two blowes did ouerthrow them
dead to the ground, and went vnto the Gentlewoman, & cut
the cords wherewith she was bound, & did help to couer her
with her owne clothes. This beauie Gentlewoman though
she did see her selfe free from the villaines & at libertie, yet did
she not let to perseuer in her sorrowfull lamentation, & said:
Ah knight, the defender of my corporall death, wherby liuing
I do passe a thousand deaths, I say that my sorrow and euill
was such, ꝑ with more reason I may bewaile the life which
thou hast giuen me, then the death which I am deliuered frō.
And in saying these wordes she all to tare & rent her golden
haire which she had. This pittifull knight did procure to di-
sturbe her from doing to her selfe such violence, in offering
vnto her all his power and strength for to remedie her euill,
if it were possible to be remedied. This sorrowfull ladie said:
If thou wert such a knight, that with they great valour and
strength couldest set at libertie my hart from sorrow, as thou
hast deliuered my bodie from death, I woulde declare vnto
thee the greatest mishap that euer happened vnto woman, &
thereby thou shuldest vnderstand whether I haue reason ra-
ther to desire the death, then to liue, therefore gentle knight,
I doe desire thee to sit downe and to hearken vnto me with
attentiue eare, for that my iustice will moue and constraine
thee to take my defence as thine owne, & so they sat down vn-
der a great Pine tree which was harde by whereas she was
bound, and with great abundance of teares she sayd.

" After the losse of the Princesse Graualesa, they toke out
" of the monestarie of Basilea, the Princesse Dondelaria, and a-
" mongst all them that were chosen to be at her seruice & com-
" mandement, I was takē for one, for ꝑ I was daughter vnto
" parents, of whom they made great reckoning, and againe, for
" ꝑ I was verie diligent in my seruice, & my father is ꝑ Earle
" of Bura, so it fell out (ꝑ it had ben better to ꝑ contrarie) Ther
" came to the court the daughter of ꝑ Earle of Tirol, who was

of

of a meruailous and extreame beautie, who was at her en- 299
trie accompanied with many worthy Knightes, for that all
did respect the Earle verye much, because he was a very no-
ble man. At the great fame and reporte of this daughter of
the Earle of Tirol, for that she was of so excellent beautie,
came many young Knights out of diuers countreyes to see
her, amongst whom came two brethren, iolly young gen-
tlemen, and sonnes vnto the Earle of Olanda, and a cousin of
theirs, a valiant Knight, sonne vnto the Duke of Brabant.
There was no great friendship betwixt these two brethren,
as it appeared, because they were of different condition the
one from the other, & likewise great difference in their per-
sons: for that the eldest had a very fierce countenaunce, and
ill fauoured, and of great pride: and the youngest of a seuere
and gentle countenaunce, and very humble of person, and
was well beloued of all them in the Court. Both of them
set their eyes vpon Clarentina, daughter vnto the Earle of
Tirol, and for a farther euill, that false Cupide would not,
but that she should likewise set her eyes on one of them, bring-
ging her heart into captiuitie with the loue of Pinorante, the
youngest of the two brethren. Firidefonte who was the
eldest hauing vnderstanding thereof, (being gouerned by his
great pride) and seeing the small accompt that Clarentina
made of him, the diuell straight wayes put into his heade,
(with the great ieelousie that he had) for to kill his brother:
but many dayes after, he went meruailously troubled, with
great alterations in his thought, about the doing of ỹ wic-
ked déede, sometimes ouercome by brotherly loue to leaue
that enterprise, and at other times counsailed by his owne
choler to the contrarie. And in this sort he continued a long
time, till in the end, Clarentina did vtter more at large her
good wil vnto his brother, and vpon a time he saw them tal-
king together, which was the occasion to confirm in him that
damnable intent. Wherfore vpon a night as Pinorante was
walking on the backe side of the Court, his euill brother did
kill him with great cruelitie, & leauing him vpon the ground,
he returned vnto his lodging, and it was neuer knowen,

who

walking vp and downe with Florisarte of Bauiera in ỹ hal, and went vnto a window which opened towards that place whereas he lefte his company, and blewe his horne with so great strength that they heard it, and knew the sound: and being thereof very glad and ioyfull, they arose vp, and wente vnto the Castle. In the way whereas they went, they saw the Knights that were slaine and the Gyants, and were verie much amazed at so great slaughter, and went forwardes, till they came vnto the Castle, whereas they found ỹ prince, who was very glad and reioyced much of that which was done, and commaunded straight way that the Lady shuld be very well loked vnto, and healed of her harme receiued.

¶ How Poliphebo did prosecute his iourney for to goe into Grecia, & how in the way he met by aduenture with certaine Clownes forcing of a Ladie, and would haue slaine her, and of all that happened of that Ladie.
Cap. 25.

THe space of three daies was Poliphebo in the Castle of the giant, in which time he did procure all kinde of remedies ỹ was possible, to bring the Quéne againe vnto her health, & to be healed of her euill. So with the great care he had, and the good diligence which was vsed, she recouered her health, & receiuing ỹ castle for his owne, he put good order therin for their gouernment. The fourth day he determined to depart, & to prosecute his iourney, & to carrie in his company ỹ quéne Espinela, & the gentle knight Florisarte. His pretence was, to passe through all Almania & Hungaria, till he came into Grecia, for to se his father, & make himselfe knowen vnto him, & did procure to do such deeds, ỹ with great honor he might name himselfe to be sonne vnto so noble a father. The occasion why he did carry ỹ quéne Espinela with him, was, for ỹ he vnderstode, that ỹ king of Mauritania wold come to séke her: & to performe his promise, not to deliuer her without mortall battell,

he

he wold not lose her company. And so leaving ỳ castle in the kéeping of a knight of Almaine, & in ỳ name of ỳ Emperor Ladislao, he toke his iourny towards Espira, wheras at that time ỳ Emperor kept his parliament, & commanded ỳ mariners to returne vnto their barke, & be in company wᵗ the Quéene & Florisarte, & his Page Macedonio toke their iourney as aforelaid. When ỳ quéene saw the knights determination, & vnderstood his pretence, with sorrowfull teares she called for her king: but all her sorrowes & griefe did little auaile, for ỳ the knight wold not by any meanes chaunge his pretence: & by reson of ỳ great sorrow, griefe & heauie chére of the quéene, it was ỳ occasion ỳ all trauailing & venterous knights, which sawe her, did procure battell with the newe knight, for to set her at libertie. So they trauailed viii. daies, wherin they passed ỳ Alpes, & went through all ỳ dukedome of Bauiera, by Minique & Aspruch, & being ouertaken by the night, they wer constrained to take their rest, by a very faire & clére fountain, wheras they did alight & refresh thẽselues, likewise they did eate of such meate as they had. And when they had satisfied themselues, euery one prepared himselfe to take his rest, & being wery of their iourny, they fel al a slæp, sauing only Poliphebo, who was awake, hauing in remembrãce such things, as ministred him most care: & being in this thought, he heard a certaine lamentation, which semed to be a far off, & the better to heare what it was, he arose vp on his féete, & being very attentiue, he plainly heard & perceiued that it was a womã, & as a knight ỳ alwaies did procure to help & succor those which could do litle, he laced on his helm, & threw his shield at his necke, & with a reasonable pace he went towards ỳ place wheras he heard ỳ lamentation, & the more he went, the plainer he heard the lamentatiõ, he had not gone far when ỳ he saw two clownes had bound a Ladie[all naked vnto a træ, & one of them had a sharp knife in his hand redie to murder her. The prince saing them, wᵗ a loud voice said. Oh vile villaines, holde your hands, for if you do not, it shall cost you your liues. And with these words, he layes hande on his sword, and with great lightnes he ran where

those

Oh mervailous and valiant dædes done by one knight, that in one daye, by three blowes, he ouerthrewe and slewe three great and strong Giants. The knights that came forth of the Castle, when they sawe that mightie dæde, with greate showtes and shrikes they compassed him round about, striking vppon him manye a furious blowe, and although they thought that of the last battails he remained verie wearie, they were greatly deceiued, for that he began with greater wrath to strike and wounde them then at the first. In suche sort he behaued himselfe amongst them, ouerthrowing and wounding on euery side, that in short time they left him at his libertie, & the like he would haue done, if there had bene as many more before him, his anger and fury was such, the rest which remained, being about the nnmber of six knights, put themselues vnto flight. The Tinacrian would not follow them, neither made he any reckoning of them, but entered into the Castle, and did alight from his great beast, and went into a broade Courte, whereas were all the Giauntes household seruaunts, and when they saw him, they began to runne away, and to hide themselues, as from their sodayne death. The knight did call them againe, and bad them be in quiet, and not to feare, for that he would not hurt them, if they would shewe him where the prisoners were in the castle. Then one of them said: Prisoners there are, but what shall it profite to showe thee the place, when thou canst not deliuer them, for that ther be such keepers to kepe them. Let it be what it will be said the knight, for once thou shalte showe me where they are. As for their keepers they haue but smal defence, neither haue you any occasion to feare, for that this daye they haue made accompt and payd all the euills & harmes y they haue done. The man when he heard this, without any replying toke a bundle of keyes, and came out of the kitchin into the Court, whereas he opened a dore, and entred therein, they descended downe a paire of staires into a deepe dungeon, whereas they heard a very sorrowfull and lamentable noyse. The knight spake with a lowde voyce & sayd. Who is it that lyeth so lamenting within this darke

dungeon.

dungeon. To whom was aunſwered with a verye dolezous voyce: Hære lyeth the moſt grieuous and afflicted knight that may be found in all the wozlde, & in his company other knights, brought vnto this place by forcible vyolence, why I do not know, for that we haue not ſæne one another, by reaſon of the great and terrible darkneſſe that is hære. Well ſayd the Prince, come forth, if hæreafter you can defend and kæpe your ſelues from other priſons, ſo it is, for of this, from this day forwards you are clære: and in ſaying theſe wozds, he aſcended vp the ſtaires, and after him the man which opened the dooze. Then the priſoners in great haſt came vp the ſtaires, and comming forth whereas the Knight was, they all fell downe on their knées, giuing thankes vnto God for that he had giuen them libertie: and afterward they kiſſed the Knights hands, deſiring God to increaſe his powers and honour, who with a very good grace gaue them ſuch anſwer, that they were all very well content. Amongſt them there was one priſoner of a very goodly diſpoſition and faire face, and of a double ſtature, moze then the others, who with a ſeuere countenaunce and well placed wozdes, did ſurrender vnto the Knight great thankes for that good tourne which he receiued at his hands: he ſpake to him in the Tuſcane tongue. It ſæmed vnto the Prince that he ſhould be a perſon of eſtimation, and aſked of him his name, and what countriman he was? To whom the priſoner ſayde: My name (ſir knight) is Floriſarte, ſonne vnto the Duke of Bauiera, brother vnto the good Emperour Ladiſlao of Almania, who was taken priſoner villainouſly by theſe euill Giants. The Tinacrian receiued great contentment, for ý he had done ſo great ſeruice vnto ſo mightie a Knight and Lord, and with a merry countenance he toke him by the hand, & went vp a paire of ſtaires, & after him went all thoſe that were delinered out of priſon, which were to the number of fortie knights, & of ſquires, pages & other ſeruants, to the number of an hundred. So when they were aboue in a great hall, the knight commaunded that there ſhould be brought them ſomwhat to eate, for that they had great need thereof. This new knight was

the deuise which the shield had, he did imagine to what ende it should apply, and likewise of the words which the damosel had sayd. And beeing troubled with these thoughts and such lyke, he prosecuted his waye: and when he came forthe of that narrow and straight way, he came into a great plaine, in the which he saw a Castle, scituated vppon a rocke, and a mile from that place there was another Castle, which seemed to be very strong. And in the Castle that was in the plaine, there was a great noyse, and strayght way there issued out a company of Knights, and amongst them a valyant Giaunt, who with great pride came towards the Knight, and when they came nigh, and saw that he was mounted vpon the giaunts beast, with great anger and fury they assaulted him, & they were to the number of twentie Knights. This courageous young Knight was nothing troubled to see them, but rather did abide their comming with his sword in his hand, and with as much courage, as though he had had as manye more in his company to help him. And when they had made their encounter vpon him, yet he remained as firme in the saddle, as a strong and hard Rocke: but yet at their passing by, he stroke one of them such a blow vpon the shoulder, that cutting it in two peces, he ouerthrew him to the grounde. At that time approched the Gyant, who by reason of his deformitie in bignesse, his horse could not trauaile so fast as the others did. He brought in his hand a strong speare, wherewith he made his encounter against the young Knight, that he made him to leane on the one side in the saddle: but with a trice he setled himselfe againe, and throwing his shielde at his backe, he toke his sword strongly in both his handes, & stroke his beast with the spurres, who with a light leap was with his enimie, and discharged his blow vpon the Gyants shield with so great furie, that he cut it in two peces, and it descended from thence vpon his hard and stelie healme with so great strength, that he made him to fall vppon his Horse necke without anye remembraunce, and retourned with his sword, thinking to giue him the seconde blowe, which by no meanes he could, for that the Knights did so assault him on

euery

euery side: but it did little profite them all that euer they did or could do, for returning against them with his light beast, he intreated them in such sort, that when the astonished Giant came vnto himselfe, there were fifteene of his Knightes ouerthrowen to the ground. Oh how angrie and wrathfull was this Giant when he saw so great slaughter, who with a furious rage drew out his sawchon, & with both his hands he stroke him such a blow vpon his fine and hard helme, that he did depriue him of his vnderstanding. His furious beast being scarred with that terrible blowe, began to run about the field, in such sort, that if the knight had not quickly come to himselfe, he had carried him into the Castle: but remembring himselfe, he rayned the bridle of the beast, and came against his enimie with such fury, and with his sword all aloft, he stroke him such a blow vpon his helme, that cleauing it in peces with the head downe to the shoulders, he fell downe dead to the ground. The rest of the Knights which remained, when they saw that terrible blow wold haue run away: but sodainly they sawe come forth out of the other Castle, as many moe knights, as came at the first, and with the like pride and fury as the others did, they assauted Poliphebo, who seeing that new assault, and that there came another Giant in their company, he made himselfe readye for his defence, and procured to do his best to deliuer himselfe from them, and taking a speare which was one of the dead knights, and being shrowded vnder his shield, he went forth to mete the Gyant, who when he saw him come, addressed himselfe. They made their incesuter very strongly vpon their shields, and the Giant did no more but breake his speare in small peces, but he neuer moued the Tinacrian in his saddle, who made his encounter so stronglye, and stroke him with so great fury vppon his shelde, that by reason of the great sharpnesse of his speare it rested not there, but pearcing it thorough and also his armour, it appeared behinde him at his backe, in such sort, that he ouerthrew him dead to the grounde.

aduenture against them, that will seme farther to misuse her. In the meane time whiles the Knight was saying these words, the Gyant was beholding him very precisely, and knit his browes with the great anger he receiued to heare these words, and with great fury he spurred his monstrous beast, that he made him giue so mightie a leape, that he reached vnto the place whereas the knight was, and it lacked little, that he had not fallen vpon this new knight, who with great lightnesse did apart himselfe from him, and drewe out his sword, and would haue stroke him: but the beast passed by with so great fury that he could not reach him. The Giant straight way returned his great beast, & with his broade sauchon in his hand he came against the Prince, and would haue stroke at him. This inuincible Tinacrian did abide his comming, and at the discharging of the Giaunts blowe, he stepped on the one side towards his left hand, and stroke an ouerthwart blow with so great strength vpon his knee, that by reason his armour was not very good, he cut it a sunder, so that leg and all fell downe to the grounde, and the monstrous Giant fell on the other side likewise to the earth, and with great roaring began to blaspheme against the heauens for this his sodaine mishap. There was a man that came with the Gyant, who when he saw all that had passed, with great feare returned the way from whence he came. The Prince when he saw that with so great ease he was cleare of the Giant, with a loude voyce he said. Oh God whom the Christians do worship, I do giue thee thankes, and I do acknowledge that all this my good successe doth proceede from thee, and heere I do promise and vowe, that once comming vnto my father, to accomplysh and performe all that I am bounde to do, for to be a true Christian. The great beast whereon the Gyaunt lately rode, did very well please and gaue great contentment vnto the Knight, for that he was of a bigge stature, and of a very good haire, because the halfe parte forwardes was was of the colour of a Wolfe, and the other halfe was all blacke, sauing that heere and there it was spotted with little white spots. His feete were clouen, so

that

that he næded not at anie time to be shoed, his necke was somewhat long, and a little head, with great eares hanging down like a hound, his pace was with great maiestie, and he doubled his necke that his mouth touched his breast, there came forth of his mouth two great tusks, and he did exceed all beasts in the world in lightnesse, and did runne with a verie good grace. The young knight received so great delight in him, that he did determine to take and kæpe him for himselfe, & not to vse anie other horse so long as this beast would indure, and without the helpe of stirop or anie other thing he leapt into the saddle, and commaunded his Page and the Marriners, that in the thickest of the forrest they shoulde abide his comming, and to haue great care of that Ladie, and not to remoue from thence till such time as they dyd heare the sound of his horne, and when he had aduertised thē what they should doe, he toke the narrow path by which the Gyant came, in the which he had not trauailed long, when that vpon a sodaine (not knowing what it should be) there came a damsell and put her selfe before him, who brought vnto him a shæld verie rich, in the which was painted a træ, the one halfe was of siluer and had a braunch broken which hung downe, out of the which ranne streames of red blood, and the other halfe was of golde, and by it a knight who did contend to breake one of the braunches, and on the shæld were certaine letters which sayd: Contention oft times doth ouercome fortune. Then the damsell sayd: Polyphebo, they which doe wish and desire all good vnto thæ, doeth sende thæ this shæld with the deuice which thou doest sæ, & vnderstand, that thou hast thereof great næd, & I desire thæ to note well the deuice which it hath, for that in the time as ỹ braue bastard Lyon with his surmounted contention shal ouercome all inchantments, in tearing the golden braunch, although it is not ordained for him. The sonne of Garrofilea shall lose all his libertie. And in saying these words she put the shæld about his necke, and without anie more tarrying, shæ vanished awaie, without bæing anie more sæne, at the which this new knight was verie much amazed and troubled, & considering

he would prosecute it. In such sort, that many times he made resistaunce against inchantments, for ý he had more strength and force, than euer Knight or Giant had, at any time before, and did surmount very much his brethren and Cousins. He made no reckoning of loue in his youth, by which he was iudged to be the Emperours sonne, as in the third parte of this booke shall be tolde you. So when ý morning was come, this young Mars was not slothfull, but arose vp and followed his iourney, and his Page followed him with his helme: he had not trauailed scarce halfe a mile, when that he heard a pitifull lamentation of a woman, who by reason of her great weeping, her voyce was very hoarce. So he stayed to heare from whence that lamentable noyse should come, and went towards that place whereas it was, and saw a far off a high piller of stone, out of the which, there came forthe a spoute of very faire and clere water, and thereat was bound a woman all naked, her backe fastened to the piller, and her armes backward imbracing the piller, and there her handes fast bound. Her skin was so faire and white, that if it had not bene that he heard her lamentation, he would haue iudged her to haue bene an image made artificially of Alabaster ioyned vnto the piller. This warlike young Knight laced on his helme, and came vnto the place whereas she was: and when he saw her, he thought verely that it was the Quene of Mauritania of whom the countrey man told him, and by reason of the coldnesse of the darke night, and with her great lamentation and weepings, she was so full of sorow and affliction, that she could scarce speake. Likewise the Knightes heart so yerned at the sight of that vnhappie Lady, that almost he could not loke on her for weeping: but with a sorowfull sigh he sayd. O cruell hands, is it possible, that there should remaine in you so much mischiefe, that whereas there is so great beautie and fairenesse, you should vse such basenes and villanie, she doth more deserue to be beloued and serued, then to be in this sort so euill intreated.

This Knight did very much, and with great sorow beheld her whits skin and backe, all to be spotted with her red

bloud,

blond. And taking a cloke from one of the mariners, he threw it vpon her, for to couer her body, and toke her in his arms and commaunded Macedonio for to vnlose her. This vnhappie Lady neuer felt nor knew what was done vnto her, till such time as she was vnbound out of those bands, and in the Knights armes: and giuing a terrible sigh, she thought that she had bene in the armes of that furious Giaunt, saying. Oh Brufaldoro my Lord and husband. The Knight hearing those wordes, was fully certified, that it was he with whom he had had battaile: and so it was true as hath bene tolde you. This new Knight would haue aunswered her, but he was disturbed by hearing of a great noyse of a horse, which seemed to be in the wood amongst the trees, and for to see what it should be, he left the Ladie lieng along vpon the grounde, in the keeping of his Page and the marriners, and went towards that place, whereas he heard that rushing noyse, and sawe y^t it was a mightie great & monstrous Giant mounted vpon a great beast, the which was Marmoraton, who returned to see if the Lady were aliue, for to torment her a new. And when he came vnto the piller, and saw not the Ladye, with an irefull looke he cast his eyes, looking about on euery side, and at last he saw the Knight, who was comming towardes him with a reasonable and quiet pace, and how that the Lady was buryed, making her sorrowfull complaint.

And seing them in this order, with great fury vpon his terrible beast he came towardes them, and when he was nigh them, he staid and did behold the great proportion and gentle disposition of the Knight, and asked him saying. Art then by fortune the King of Mauritania that traiterously hath slaine in the field my brother and his children. I am not he that thou dost aske for sayd the Tinacrian, but rather I do giue thee to vnderstande, that he is the Knight that I dee most hate, and I am a knight that at the sorrowfull complaynt of this Ladye am come hether, and seeing her to bee a verye fayre woman, and without anye deserte to be thus so cuill intreated, it moueth mee to put my person in

reward me so ill as you do, and I doe acknowledge and confesse him to be the true God, and you all full of mockinges, liberall in promising, and slow in giuing, from this daie forwards be assured ỳ I will not aske you of anie thing, neither wil I accept any thing from your vile hands. These and such like wordes saye this new knight, & was in such anger, that neither Page nor Marriners durst speake vnto him, but to giue him contentment they rowed a pace towards ỳ bark whereas that dolorous woman went. So in this sort they trauailed all the rest of the night that remained, till such time as the daie began to be clære, and straight waie they discried land, to which place with great hast they rowed, till such time as the barke was a ground, so this angrie young knight presently leapt a shore, & Masedonio carried his realme, but hée toke neither speare nor sheild with him, the Marriners followed him & carried such victualls as they had, & they found no vsed way, but one narow path, the which they kept, and it brought them vnto a mightie greate & dæpe riuer, wheras he sate downe & did refresh himselfe, & washed his hands & face, & called for to eate of that which they had brought, & when he had eaten, without anie more tarrying he begã to trauaile alongst the riuer side: he had not trauailed long when ỳ they met with a poore countrie man, with a great hatchet in his hand, he was going to cut fire woode from those high & mightie trées: of whom they asked what countrie & land it was, & he told them ỳ it was the land of Almania, but yet sir knight thou must pardon me, for ỳ I doe request thée to returne againe & procéed no farther this way if thou dost estéeme thy life, for in going on this way there is nothing to be had but death, for ỳ the Lord of this riuer is a furious giant, & is called Marmoraton, & the riuers name is Ospriz, this giant is ỳ most furious in all the world, & is of such might ỳ our Emperour doth feare him, he hath also two sons who are no lesse furious then he is, although they are now very sad for certaine newes which were brought them, how ỳ a brother of his who was Lord of an Iland in Spaine called Corsa, was destroied, and all his people slaine by sword, & none left aliue by

force

293

force of cruell warre: and in part of reuengement of all this harme done, no longer then yesterdaye, he brought hether a Ladie prisoner, and they say that she was the occasion of the death of them all as I haue tolde you, and straight way whē he came a shore, with a diuelish crueltie, he did all to bewhip and beate her, that it was very pitifull to beholde, swearing that euery day he would so torment her, till such time as her life and body did make their seperation, and he hath all his Castle compassed round about, with mightie strong and armed Knights, and with them his two sonnes, who doth kep watch and ward for to defend the Castle: for that they saye, that the King of Mauritania doth followe and pursue them in a galley, for to clere and set at libertie this Lady. This new Knight was very attentiue vnto the words which the countriman told him, and although he spake in the Tuscan tongue, yet he did vnderstand him, for that he was brought vp to vnderstand and speake all languages, and thought verely, that he with whom he had battaile in the galley, was the King of Mruritania, and thinking thereon, it caused him to be more furious in his heart, for that as you haue heard, he had the experience of his force and strength, and thought by him he was ouercome, and without saying anye word, he followed on his way, and did determine, that if fortune did so fauour him to rescue and set at libertie this Ladie, not for to let her passe, till such time, as the King did come in her demaund, (and if it were he with whom he had the battaile) he would not deliuer her but with mortall battaile. So trauailing with this thought, the night came on, & it was so darke, that he was constrained to take some place to take his rest, and laying himselfe downe vnder a mightie Pine tree, he passed that night, speaking a thousande blasphemies against the Gods.

Artemidoro declaring the acts and deeds of this Knight, saith, that he was the most furious in all the world, and a very friend to aide and succour all those, that could do little for themselues: and if he chaunced at any time to begin an enterprise that he could not well compasse, with double force

and downe the gallie, breaking their banks and oares, that it was straunge to see. They indured long in this contention without knowing any advantage either of the one part or of the other, in such sort, that for verie wearinesse they were constrained to leaue the wrastling, & arose vp againe, & betooke themselues againe vnto their swords, at the time the night was very darke, but the blacke knight with a loude voice called for lights, which presently wer brought them by the marriners, in the meane time these knights did somwhat breath themselues, although it was not much. So when the lights were brought, they returned vnto their late contention with new force and strength: Oh Gods of little valour, said the Pagan, I cannot beleeue to the contrarie but that this is Mars that doth contend in battaile with me, & for the great enuie he hath at me, he goeth about to dishonour me. Let it be who it may be of all you, for I will beare giue you to vnderstand that you haue brought vp one that will make you know that he is of more force & strength then all you together, and with these thoughts he thickned his blowes with great desperatnesse, & although in this last assault they wer more then two houres in their battaile, yet neither of them did faint, but with new force both together they lift vp their swords, & discharged them together the one vpon the others helme with so great strength, that both of them together fell downe vpon the hatches of the gallie without anie remembrance, & those which did looke vpon them did beleeue verily that they wer both dead, by reason of the great abundance of bloud which came forth of the beauers of their helmes, but quickly it was perceiued that ther was life in them, then was there an agreement made betwixt the marriners of the gallie & the barke, that they should take Poliphebo into his Barke, and either of them to prosecute his iourney, & not to tarrie till such time as they came to themselues, suspecting that the contention would not be ended without death of one of them, which would be great pittie. So straight way they put their deuice in vre, Macedonio with the helpe of the marriners got his Lord into their barke, & they of the gally straight way began to follow their votage, striking the water

with

with their long oares with great violence, & so either of them departed and followed his voiage.

¶How the worthie Tinacrian did prosecute his voiage, and chaunced whereas he found the Queene of Mauritania euill intreated of a gyant, and of the battaile he had with him. Chap. 24.

IN the order as you haue heard they carried the new knight without anie remembrance, and when he came vnto himselfe and found himselfe in ỹ order, with a loude voice he said: Oh Gods, is it possible to be true that I am ouercome in the first encounter and assault of my knighthood, & that you haue consented thereunto, hære I do curse the day in which I began to honour you, sæing that my sacrifices doth so little profit me. Then Macedonio did of his sayings and said: My Lord, thou wert not ouercome, neither had thy contrarie so much power, for ỹ he was rather more worse intreated then you, in such sorte, that I know not whether he be aliue or dead. This new knight turned his head, & looked on him with so much wrath & anger, ỹ Macedonio durst not looke him in the face, and with great ire he said: Oh traitor, was it so, & why didst thou cõsent to bring me from thence, till such time as fortune had ben fauourable vnto me: Oh vile creature, thou dost not shew thy selfe to be ỹ son of noble parents, in doing so base a dæde, I knowe not how I haue patience, ỹ I throw thee not into the sea, for this great dishonour which thou hast done vnto me: Ah beanie knight of Tinacria & of little valour, I knowe not how thou canst name thy selfe to be ỹ sonne of ỹ most mightiest knight in the world, for ỹ thou hast made so ill a proofe of thy selfe in thy first assalt: Oh Gods how haue you suffred so bilanous an act, it is not possible but ỹ knight with whõ I had combat is of more power then all you, descend into this barke & I will make you to know ỹ same, hære I do deny al your powers, & I do determine to honor ỹ God my father doth, who wil not reward

to take her from me, but also to rob me of my honour. I will deme your faith and lawes, or else recouer my Ladie and mistresse, and punish this fole in spite of your power: Come on thou vnfortunate youth and receiue the order of knighthode, that thou doest aske of me, come and receiue it by the hands of him which will quickly take it awaie from thee againe & also thy life. Giue it me once sayd the Tinacrian, and afterward come what shall, and therwith he came vnto him without anie feare, and this braue knight did giue him the order of knighthode, of him so much desired, and when that he had giuen it vnto him, without saying euer a word he laide hand on his sword, at such time as the Tinacrian was well aduised of the harme comming, & béeing both with their swords aloft, they made their encounter with a diuelish furie, the blacke knight did strike the russet knight first, and stroke him so furious a blowe that he made him to decline his head to his breast, and forced him to recoile backwards two or three steps, so that he lost the blowe he had readie to discharge vpon him, but he came quickly againe to himselfe, and lifting vp his sword he stroke the Pagan so mightie a blowe vpon his healme, that he made all the téeth in his head to chatter, the knight with the blacke armour did verie much meruaile at that mightie blow, but yet it caused not in him anie trouble, but rather with great lightnesse he setteled himselfe vpright againe, so then betwirt them began a meruailous terrible and well foughten battaile, that whosoeuer did beholde it, it caused them to haue great feare, the blowes were so terrible that were betwéene them, & the great noise which they made, procuring either of them to hurt his enimie with as much pollicie and strength as might be, but yet for all that, it did profit little to anie of them both, for that either of them had to doe with a strong aduersarie. The ire of the blacke knight was such, ỹ out of his Beauer proceded great quantitie of thicke smoake, so sé that one alone young knight did so strongly defend himselfe, and with so great furie offend his enimie, this new knight had no lesse wrath to sée that the first with whom he made his triall shoulde intreate him so

euill,

euill, iudgeing himselfe to be weake and of little valour, not knowing that he dealt with the flower of all knighthode amongst the Pagans, and with like furie he thickened his blowes, in such sort, that many times he was amazed. In this sort they indured all that daie, and when they sawe that the darke and tenebrous night came vpon them, they did procure with more courage and strength for to finish their battaile. This strong and stout knight with the blacke armour, puffing and blowing like a bull, lifting vp his sword with both his hands, did discharge it vpon the new knight, who did receiue that blowe vpon his sheeld, and cutting it in two parts, the sword descended vpon his healme with so greate furye, that he made him to bowe his knees to the ground, and was faine to helpe himselfe with his left hand because he should not fall, when the blacke knight sawe him in that order hee would haue laide hold on his healme for to haue pulled it off from his head, but this new warriour was not so far from himselfe, but that he put for his defence the point of his sword vnto his breast, with so great strength, that he made him to recoile backe, and for lacke of sight he put his foote vnder the end of an Dare, that without anie remedie to saue himselfe he fell vpon his backe, but with greate lightnesse he arose againe, in which space the new knight had time to settle himselfe, and to take his sword in both his hands and stroke him such a blowe, that being constrained by the great force thereof to retire backe two steps, he had fallen downe if hee had not laide holde vpon one of the bankes of the Gallie, by the which he did sustaine himselfe, & therewith this new knight entered in with him, and with his handes he stroke him on the breast, that perforce he made him to fall downe, and in ỹ fall of the Moore he reached forth his arme and laide holde vpon his shirt of maile, and caused him by force to fall downe with him, and when he sawe himselfe in that sort, he threw his sheeld from him, and verie strongly he threw his armes ouer his necke and held him fast, heere the new knight was constrained to doe the like, so that betweene them beganne a mightie and terrible wrastling, tumbling and wallowing vp

and

Then Poliphebo sayde, He is not a Knight which doth set his force against a woman, and doth breake the law & oath made vnto Knighthode. Therefore bring me forth my armour, and call the marriners, that they maye launch their boat, into the sea: for by the omnipotent Iupiter I do sweare, that I will not be called the sonne of my father, if I do suffer such force to be done before me, and not procure with all my strength to amend and correct the same. Masedonio would haue replyed vnto him, but the furious countenaunce of the Prince would not giue him leaue, no not once to looke vpon him. So he brought forth his armour, and armed him selfe therewith. In the meane time the marriners had launched the boate into the sea, wherein he leaped with a hastie fury, and carried with him foure marriners for to rowe the barke, and he commaunded for to take the way towards the other that passed by. All that remained in the ship greatlye meruailed at his hardinesse. This Prince of Tinacria caused the marriners to make great hast with their oares, for that they would not lose the way which they had. So they trauailed all that night, till such time as the cleare Phœbus with his glittering beames gaue vnto them such lyght, that they might discouer and see the other barke, although somewhat a farre off. The Tinacrian had great contentment therat, hoping that very quickly they should ouertake them, but it did little profit them: for if that he did make hast to ouer take them, they were not idle, but did make as much hast to goe from them. So in this contention they trauailed til two partes of the daye was spent, at which time they sawe come after them a galley which was gouerned with eighteene oares on a syde, and it made so great waye, that with a trice they were with them, and he saw that ther was in hir a Knight all armed with blacke armour, and was of a gentle disposition and well proportioned body, who made greate hast vnto the mariners to rowe forwards. And as they passed by, the Tinacrian said vnto thē with a loud voyce: Knight I do request thee, that you wilt take me into your Galley, that being in her, I may the better accomplish my desire.

The

The Knight of the gally passed by, without making any answere, but rather shewed ꝑ he made little accompt of him, but made hast vnto them that did rowe. The Tinacrian seing the little accompt he made of him, with the great anger and furie he receiued, he toke an oare in one hand, and another in the other, and with so great furie & strength he strooke the water, that he made the slothfull barke to flye, and laboured so much with his oares, that with a trice they wer equal with the galley, and leauing the oares, with a light leape he put himselfe into the galley, and had his healme on, and his shæld at his shoulder, and bæing within he sayd. Now thou shalt dw by force that, which before I dïng great courtesie, thou wouldest not dw. Those that were at the oares, mervailyng at the great boldnesse of the Knight, did cease theyr exercise and worke of rowing. The blacke Knight being full of anger, as he which was one of the best in all the worlde, drew out his sword, and went towards that bolde Knight. This furious Tinacrian sæing himselfe without the order of knighthood, would not lay hands on his sword, but laid hold of one of those long and heauie oares, and went and strooke at the blacke Knight, who did defend it and sayd: What doest thou pretend to dw, thou fole and without wit, what dost thou thinke with staues as a countrey clowne or villain to make battaile with me? I can dw no otherwise said the Tinacrian, and it is thy small curtesie which doth make me to dw this: for thou shalt vnderstand that I am a Donzel, & as yet haue no license to strike a knight, but if thou wouldest dw so much, as giue me the order of knighthood, I will afterward make thæ to knowe, that thou didst great villanye in not aunswering me.

Oh Gods sayd the blacke knight, is it possible that you consent that a boye should haue such boldnes: now I do wel perceyue that you dw begin to vse me as you were wont, neglecting my oblations, & paying with so great ingratitude one good thing which you haue done for me, in giuing mæ such a Ladie for my wife, it doeth appeare that you haue repented your selues, for that you doe not alonelye procure

to

of the Court were at their rest and a slæp, he alone with his page, who was named Macedonio, went out of the pallaice, and went vnto the sea side. His page did call the marriners of the ship, who straight way brought vnto them their boat, in the which they entered, and went straight a bord the ship, and being therin for that the winde was very faire, he commaunded to waye their ankers, and to spread their sayles, and to take their way towards Grecia, and as he commaunded all was done, and in a short time they found themselues ingulfed into the sea, farre from the lande. This excellent Prince went very much to his contentment: but when the Quæne vnderstood of his departure, the lamentation which she made was very much, and commaunded to go vnto the sea side, to know if there were any shippe that departed that night, and it was tolde them that there was a ship of Grecia, which that night haled vp their ankers, & boised saile, and went to sea: so straight waye they vnderstood that the Prince was gone in her. I cannot hære declare the greate griefe and sorrow which the Quæne felt in her sorrowfull heart, for the absence of the Prince, which she alwayes suspected & feared. But whẽ ỹ absence of Poliphebo was knowwen in Tinacria, all feasts & sports ceased, for that you shall vnderstand, of all his vassailes he was very well beloued. The Quæne did procure to dissemble all her griefe, for the great sorrow which her vassailes had, shewing her self more ioyful in her face, more then anie contentment she had in her heart, giuing them to vnderstand, that he had done it, for that which he did owe vnto his high linage, and the great allygation he had to procure his honour and fame: and that hée had done that, which she and all them should haue desired, & that they should not be sorrowfull for that, which hæreafter would be the occasion of great ioye and plesure. With these and such lyke resons, she did quiet all her vassailes and kingdome, and caused them to returne vnto their accustomed pastime and sports. So Poliphebo sayled forwardes on his iourney, through the dæpe sea, with great delight to sæ howe he had fulfilled his desire. And he sayled thræ dayes with a very

very faire and prosperous winde, and the fourth daye in the euening it was very calme, and no winde at all, so that the Marriners went to take their rest, some on the poope, & some in the foreships, for to ease their wearied bodyes. The prince who sate vpõ ẏ poope of ẏ ship, asked for his lute of his page, the which straight way was giuen him, and when he had it in his hands, he played and sung so swætly, that it seemed to be a heauenly melodie. And being in this swæte musicke, hee heard a very lamentable crye as it were of a woman, and leauing his musicke, he gaue attentiue eare to hearken what she sayd, and he heard the voyce saye: It will little profitte thæ thou cruell tyrant, this thy bolde hardinesse, for thou doest well know, that I am of a lignage, that will reuenge it of thée to thy cost. Then he heard another voyce which said: Now I haue thæ in my power, there is no humane power able to deliuer thæ from me, Poliphebo could heare no more by reason that the barke wherein they were, passed by in so great hast. This heroycall Prince by the words he heard, vnderstood that she was carryed by force awaye, and putting the lute away, he began to fall into a great thought, and was very heauie and sorrowfull, for that he had not receiued the order of Knighthoode, for to giue the enterprise of this aduenture: but yet his stout stomacke could not suffer, that such compulsion and violence should passe without being punished. And returning vnto his Page Masedonio, which was a slæpe, he strake him with his fæte and awaked him, saying: What, didst not thou heare the great lamentation, and sorrowfull complaint, which a Ladye made (as it seemed) in a small bark that is passed by, and is gone forwards along the sea, (to the which Masedonio answered nothing, for that he was still a slæpe,) what counsayle dost thou giue me, that I may doe in so great outrage which is done before mine eyes, that I may receiue no shame thereof. Thou art bound vnto nothing, sayd Masedonio, for that thou hast not receiued the order of knighthoode, and thou doest well vnderstande that without it thou canneſt not put forth thy hand to make defence against anie knight.

hoode went secretly from the court, and of all that happened in his iourney. Chap. 23.

THE valiaunt Eleno wæ lefte in Tinacria with greate ioye to haue set at liberte so excellent a Quæne, and with no lesse sorrowe for the sodaine departure of his cosin, who did no more but put Bremio in his Sepulcher, in such sorte as in the third part of this history shall bæ tolde you. So straight waie bæ entered into a Barke, the which in short time was put into the maine and wide sea, whereas they were sodainly taken with a storme, and by the force thereof they were driuen vppon the coast of Fraunce, where he was constrained to take land, and taking a narow and straight path which he sawe, he followed the same, which brought him into the wilderneſſe of Ardenia, nigh vnto the fountaine Disamore, who séing the clæreneſſe of the water, alighted from his inchaunted horse, and washed his hands and refreshed his face with that water, and dronke thereof till such time as he had satisfied his desire, and when he had dronke and well refreshed himselfe, he sate downe vpon an olde rote of a træ that had bene cut downe, and felt within his breast an alteration of new desires, as shall be tolde you hæreafter, and for that I am constrained to returne vnto Tinacria, I do leaue him in this order. Poliphebo séing himselfe a man of sirténe yéres of age with so stout an heart and manly a courage, requested his mother that shæ woulde commaund the order of knighthood to be giuen him, the which the Quæne did refuse verye much to doe, as one which thought that if he were once made knight, that he woulde absent himselfe, séking whereas he might exercise his strength for to get him fame. This young Prince did continually importunate the Quæne, and euerie daye his desire did increase more and more, the occasion was, for that hæ did sæ so greate knighthode at that time vsed in Tinacria, and all for the loue and sight of the

fayre

sayze Prince sse his sister, so that the knights did not occupie themselues in anie other exercise but in iustes and tourneyes. The Quéene did continually perswade her sonne with gentle and louing wordes to tarrie and not to take the order vppon him till such time as hée came to more yeares, laying before him the greate inconueniences which myght happen for lacke of his full growth and strength, but this delaying of the Quéene did cause the Prince to be very sadde and pensiue, and also caused that all the feastes and sportes that the knights did dayly vse, waxed altogether colde, in séeing the Prince to be in that heauie case, and vpon a daie as hée was imagining with himselfe, séeing the small comfort and good will which hée receiued in his mother for the fulfilling of his desire, he determined in greate secret as soone as was possible to depart the court, the which hée straight waies put in vre, and toke out of the armourie verie secretly an exceeding good armour, the which was all russet, and enameled with blacke, and imbroudered round about with grauen worke all guilt: also hée toke out a shéelde of the same making, sauing that it was not graued as his armour was, and commaunded a young Gentleman that was sonne vnto Rubio, of a good disposition and hardie, that he shoulde kéepe themselues, & gaue him to vnderstand of all his determined pretence, and although it did grieue this young man verye much, yet for all that, séeing the great friendshippe which he vsed with him in vttering his secrete vnto him before anie other, without replying to the contrarie, he verie diligently toke the armour and hidde it, till hée found conuenient time to put it into a shippe verie secretly. So likewise he put into the sayde Ship two of the best horses which the Prince had, and forthwith hée gaue his Lorde vnderstanding howe that all thinges were then in a readinesse and in good order. The Prince dissembling with the accustomed heauinesse hée vsed, withdrew himselfe into his chamber till such time as the night came, which when it was come, he made himselfe readie with his apparaile, and when that all the people

Reward not him that loues thee, with disdaine:
Least Loue at length, repay the like againe.

EXtend not force against the yeelded wight,
shun not his sight that seeketh thee to serue,
Thy willer well reward not with despight,
forget him not that fauour doth deserue,
Neither triumph in his tormenting paine:
Least as thou meatst, Loue measure thee againe.

Redresse my paines O Pastora full faire:
the heauens, my hart, thy sight may them perceiue.
Let not my hope be dashed with despaire:
for then thou wilt my corps of life bereaue.
Offend not Loue by laughing at my paine,
Least like for like, he render thee againe.

With great griefe this sorrowfull Menalcas made an end of his song, and after him there were other shepheards that sung many songs full of sweete & amorous verses, ꝑ which for ꝑ I will not seeme tedious, I do let passe: but ꝑ last shepheard of all, called Alphesiueo, sung these verses following.

WHat needeth threats gainst him that is a thrall
O rurall Nymph? (whose rigor doth excell)
Ponder my fault, and thou shalt finde it small,
Yea nought but this, that I doo loue thee well.

Hard breasts they say doo tender hearts inclose,
I know it true, and finde it to my smart.
Ah Pastora, thy selfe art none of those,
thy breasts are soft, but stonie is thy hart.

The shepheardes did well vnderstande, for that alwayes Alphesiueo was the last of all the companye that did sing, that the Musicke was wholye ended.

But

But yet the flower of all shepheardes had not vsed his amorous exercise, but so sone as Alphesineo had made an end of his song, Filipensio toke his Lute and plaide so swæltly on it, that all the shepheardes of the riuer were amazed, not knowing who it should be that newly was come to wrastle with Cupide, and when they heard him plaie, they all resorted vnto that place where he was, and put themselues round about him for to heare the better, Caiserlinga had straight waie in her eares that new and vnaccustomed musicke, who turning her selfe vnto Galismena said: Me thinks that to be a new shepheard that doth begin to plaie. It is truth sayd the Pastora, for that yester night somewhat a parte whereas hæ was we heard him plaie, and the better for to reioyce our selues of his swæte melodie, my brother and I went vnto ỹ place wher he was taking his rest, but if at his musicke you haue admiration, you will much more meruaile at his gentle disposition and graue countenaunce, I neither know nor can declare it vnto you faire Pastora, but the Gods haue vsed in his bodie and proportion all their knowledge and power. Whereat the faire Pastora arose vp, and taking Galismena by the hand, she sayd: Come sister and let vs goe and recreate our selues at his musicke and faire countenaunce, and so they both together went whereas this new Shepheard was, the other shepheards when they sawe her come, they all arose and put themselues a parte, and gaue her place, with so great reuerence as vnto a diuine creature. This new shepheard at that time had nède of all his force to vpholde him, and not to leaue his begun musicke, the which when he saw the Pastora was much increased in delicate swætnesse, and they being in this conuersation, there chaunced so high matters as well in Tinacria as in Grecia, that I am constrained to leaue the pleasures of Venus, and tourne vnto the furious force of Mars.

¶How that Polifebo because his mother the Queene of Tinacria would not giue him the order of knighthoode,

publike disdaine and hatred: for the which as one hated & not set by, he did determine to leaue this valley, reporting that his departure would shorten his dayes. Alphesiueo, for so is this shepheard called, as one that was more strongler wounded with loue, determined to remaine and to perseuer in his sute. At this time, Alphesiueo did awake, and toke an instrument in his hand which he had, and began to play on it very swætely, singing these verses following.

THe drops of raine in time the Marble pierce,
Submission makes the Lyons hart relent:
But Loue thy cruell torments are so fierce,
That mischiefes new thou daily dost inuent.
For she, whose sight my heart in sunder rent,
Regardeth neither of my faith, nor griefe,
Nor yet yeelds death, which is my sole reliefe.

This song he sung so dolefully, that it gaue plainely to vnderstand his grieuous paine: and by his words that he was not of the lignage of shepheards. At this time the sonne of Tona did begin to appeare out of his golden Horizon, & to shew himselfe vpon the face of the earth, glistering with his beames vppon the clære waters of Euphrates, likewise Fauonius and Zephyrus did very swætely and softlye blowe vpon the græn leaues, and made a delicate harmonie, at such time as the most fatrest Cayserlinga, accompanied with high thoughts, and with her shæpe that she had in charge, for her recreation came forth, and a great companye of shepheardes following her, who were as full of sorrowes and thoughtes for her loue, as she cleane voyd and without regard of them, and when she had left her shæpe in a græn place fæding, she went and sate downe in a place not very farre from thence, where Filipensio and his company were, and when she was set downe, she pulled off a knit caule from her head, where in was wrapped her haire, letting it fall and dispearse it self all abroad her backe, and taking out from her white & christalline breast a combe, she began to kembe her haire, her

hands

hands and fingers seeming to be of white yuorie. All this did this vnknowen Filipenſio beholde, and was in that perpleritie, that he did occupie his vnderſtanding on no other thing, but in beholding of her. The diſcréte Paſtora Galiſmena did well perceiue it, for that he was in a dumpe & ſaid neuer a word. Then ſhe with her hands ſtroke him vppon the breaſt to call him to remembraunce, and ſayd: Gentle ſhepheard, hearken and giue attentiue eare vnto the ſwéete verſes, which the amorous ſhepheards will ſing, and let not this new ſight ſo trouble thée. And therewith Coridon toke his Rebecke, and began to play very ſwétely, and ſong theſe verſes as followeth.

Faire Paſtora ceaſe off delay,
with ſpeed declare the certaintie,
Whether thou wilt my loue repay:
if not, then know that I muſt die.

I Wiſh for life that I might thee adore,
and largely ſhow the loue to thee I beare:
And if that thou offended ſeeme therefore,
with ſpeede by ſpeach let it to me appeare.
Which done, then know that for a certaintie,
thy ſentence giuen I am preparde to die:

Thou well doſt ſee, or plainly maiſt perceiue.
that long time ſince I had thee in regard:
Frame not thy lips thy louer to deceiue,
with ſcoffes and ſcornes returne not thy reward:
Which if thou doo, I neuer will replye,
But meekely yeeld, as readie preſt to dye.

And hérewith he made an ende of his ſorrowfull and grieuous ſong: and then another Shepheard began to ſing with a meruayleus and ſwéet voyce, theſe verſes following.

him to know, that his words were not true, but very false. Then Claridiano did interrupt their communication, and sayd. Gentle shepheards, let these your contentions cease, for that there commeth nothing of them but anger and falling out: but I doe desire you that you would shew vnto me this Pastora, for that her fame doeth giue me a desire to see her. Heere by the riuer of Euphrates sayd Coridon, in an arbour which is made of very faire and greene sallowes, gallantlye wrought, there euerye morning she doth combe her yealow golden haire, thether maist thou goe very earlye in the morning, whereas thou maist recreate thy selfe of that new sight. And in the meane time before that thou dost depart, we doe desire thee to tell vs thy name, and what countriman thou art. This new shepheard answered and said, My name is Filipenso, and am naturally of Siria, and of the plaines of Caniphia, a kingdome of Chaldea, and the great desire of these greene fieldes and fresh feeding which is heere growing about this cleere riuer, hath brought me hether, for to fede a little Cattle, the which the Gods hath made me Lord and gouernour of. Ah shepheard sayd Coridon, (with a dolorous sigh) doest thou come to fede thy sheepe in fresh & greene medowes, and dost not know that in seeing that Pastora, thou shalt fede loue within thy delicate and tender breast.

So with this, and other such like pleasaunt communication, they passed all that night till the next morning, and when it was time for to departe, they toke their waye to the accustomed abiding of the beautifull Pastora, and they met in the waye manye shepheardes, who complained very much against the fury of loue. So vnder a greate Sallowe Tree, they sawe two shepheards, the one did complaine of loue very grieuously, and laye all alongst vppon the ground, and the other was playing vppon a Rebecke, and sung verye sweetelye, wherewith Filipenso did staye, and heard that he sung as followeth.

STraunge is my griefe, yet count I it a gaine:
and great my ſmart, but ſmall I it eſteeme:
In that for her I ſuffer all this paine,
whoſe beautie rare celeſtiall I doo deeme.

The pangs I feele oppreſſe my fainting hart,
the hope I haue reuiues the ſame againe,
Tormenting loue afflicts me ſtill with ſmart,
yet for her ſake I force not to be ſlaine.

My cauſe is good, whereby my care is great,
both cauſe and care I vnto thee replye:
And though with rigor ſtill thou me intreat,
yet will I ioye that I for thee muſt dye.

And giuing a doloꝛous ſigh, he ended his ſong. The ſhepheard Filipenſio and his company went foꝛwards on their waye, and paſſed the time in amoꝛous and ſweete communications, not ſtaying in any place, till they came whereas this Paſtora had her abiding, and there they put themſelues amongſt a companie of thicke treés, vnder one of the which, they ſaw where was a ſhepheard of a meruailous diſpoſition, ſo that Filipenſio did very much behold him, and thought in his imagination by the demeanour of that ſhepheard, that he ſhould not ſeeme to be of the lignage of ſhepheards, and turning vnto Coridon, he aſked him what he was. They all ſate themſelues downe vnder a high & mightie ſallow tree, nigh vnto the place whereas the other ſhepheard was at his reſt, and Coridon anſwering vnto that which was aſked him, ſayd. This is a ſhepheard of Babylonia, who foꝛ to ſeede his cattell, in the companie of other well pꝛopoꝛtioned ſhepheards came hether, and with the ſight of that Paſtora he felt himſelfe full of paſſions and griefes, by the ſight of her beautie. The companion of this, who is called Tarſides, was hée which did moſt followe and impoꝛtunate the Paſtora: but ſhe, who is the honeſteſt in all the woꝛlde, not onelye with ſharpe and bitter woꝛds did put him from it, but alſo with

Cupide himſelfe within his ſnare is caught,
yet voyd of helpe for all hir ſubtill ſhifts:
His words his wyles, his wrath, auaile him naught,
ſhe ſcornes his darts, and all his double drifts.

And thus ſhe ſhuns the thing that ſundry ſeeke,
and ſcapes vnſcorcht, where others burned be:
Her beautie ſhowes her humble, milde and meeke,
but yet her heart is ſtainde with crueltie.

This new ſhepheard was very attentiue vnto that gracious ſong of the other ſhepheard, and when he heard that he helde his peace, he would haue returned and ſung againe, but he was diſturbed by hearing a noyſe of people. This gentle ſhepheard when he heard it, aroſe vp vpon his feete, and went out from vnder the ſhadowe of the Tree farther into the Sunne, and ſawe that it was a ſhepheard and a Paſtora, which were comming into the place whereas he was, and when they came vnto him, they did ſalute him very courteouſly. So they ſate downe altogether, and put the new ſhepheard in the midſt, very much meruayling at his gracious countenaunce: and with a very good grace & gentle diſpoſition, the Paſtora began firſt to ſpeake, and ſayde: Your ſweete Muſicke (brother ſhepheard) did awake me and my brother Coridon out of our ſleep, and we do rather chooſe to loſe our naturall reſt, then thy converſation, accompanied with thy delicate ſong. We do not know, whether that the faire beautie of Cayſerlinga a Paſtora, brought vp by this delightfull riuer, hath bene the occaſion thereof, or any other griefe, which doth raigne in thy heart: but if it be ſo gentle ſhepheard, that your eyes haue not beheld nor ſeene ỹ beautie of our Paſtora, do you procure not to ſee her, that your hart be not taken captiue with the ſight of her: for you ſhal vnderſtand, ỹ there is nothing to be hoped for at her hands but death, her diſdaine is ſuch. This ſorrowfull brother of mine, one day did ſing before her with his Rebecke, and remained ſo impriſoned with her, as euer was ſhepheard with

Paſtora.

Paſtora. And if it be thy Fortune to abide long time in theſe partes, thou ſhalt knowe the greate power that her face and countenaunce hath, and the greate crueltye that ſhe vſeth. Thou ſhalt ſée no other thing alongſt all this riuer, but ſhepheardes who haue forgot to gouerne and fede theyr ſhéepe, ſitting vnder trées wounded with her greate beautie and fayreneſſe, and hauing more care to make their Rebeckes fayre and trimme, then to call together their cattle, and to delyuer them from the rauening Wolues. And by reaſon that ſhée doth knowe that her beautie is ſo great, ſhée is ſo proude, that ſhée doth make them all equall in her eſtimation, although not all equall in ſuffering. I do promiſe thée of a truth (gallant ſhepheard) that this Riuer doth ſéeme to be no other thing, but the habitation of Venus and Cupide. Coridon did cut off the words of Galiſmena, and ſayd.

Ah ſiſter Galiſmena, the little accompt that thou doeſt make of loue, doth cauſe thée to ſpeake of that, which thy ſorrowfull brother doth féele. What doſt thou thinke Galiſmena, that of this my contentious paſſion, I ſhall reape anye other benefitte, but that I haue put my loue vppon the moſt excellenteſt Paſtora, that euer Nature did forme. Tell me I praye thée Paſtora, what ſhepheard haue you belonging vnto this Riuer of Euphrates, vnto whome ſhée doth extend her thought more then vnto me. Hold thy peace Coridon ſayd Galiſmena, do not exalt Cayſerlinga ſo much: for in her reſpecte thou doſt not onelye put from thée all other Paſtoras, but thou doſt likewiſe diſable all ſhepheards alongſt this Riuer. Truth it is although that Cayſerlinga doth deſerue much: yet for that ſhe is a woman, ſhe doth not deſerue ſo much, as the worſt Shepheard in all this our habitation, for that this onelye is ſufficient, that he is a man.

Then ſaid Coridon with great anger: I would it were not thy ſelfe, but ſome other that ſhould ſpeake ſuch words, for ẏ I promiſe thée with ẏ force of my arme, I wold make him

This new shepheard never toke anye rest till such time as he came vnto the clere running riuer. Where vnder a great and mightie Myrtle tre, he laid himselfe downe, and remembring his welbeloued Pastora, he lifted vp his eyes towards the heauens, and giuing a great sigh, he sayd. Oh Venus, seeing that it is thy pleasure, that this thy new vassaile should take his first sitting place vnder a Myrtle tre, so much of thee esteemed and made of, let thy swete voyce so occupy the eares of thy sonne Cupid, that he may vnderstand how that in his blindnesse he had litle respect vnto the highnes of my person in causing me to place my affection so baselye. Oh Gods, is it possible that any base atttempt should come vnto light, but with the authoritie that belongeth vnto your highnesse: vpon you I do call, and vnto you I do offer this my wounded breast, that you make sacrifice thereof, for this my boldnesse, if therein I haue offended, and therwith he leaned his backe vnto the Myrtle tre, and toke his Lute, and began to play as swetely as euer did Orpheus, when with his lute he made the infernall furyes to slepe. Claridiano with his lute did not onely bring the furies, but also the Quene Proserpina, and the auncient Pluto, he brought into a greate perplexitie. So likewise at times he vttered his swete voice that they which did heare it, did iudge it to be some celestiall thing, and not terrenal, and by reason that his songs did procede from his heart, it did in double wise seeme the better. This newe shephearde thought no body had hearde him: but there were other two shepheards, who were very attentiue and hearde, that he sung this song which hereafter followeth.

O Yeelded heart, how free and voyde of care
wert thou of late from this oppressing paine?
What luckleſſe fate allotted thee this share?
that hopeleſſe thou dost voyde of helpe remaine:
Yea, so past hope, that might may naught auaile,
The burning flames of Cupides coales to quaile.

But

But fie (fond foole) thou doſt complaine of eaſe,
and faultleſſe Fortune thou beginſt to blame:
Venus her ſelfe doth ſeeke thy heart to pleaſe,
in that ſhe mooues thee loue ſo rare a Dame,
Oh Paſtora if I enioye thy ſight,
My very death will bring to me delight.

Diſdaine not then beloued for to be
of him, that needes thy beautie muſt adore
So long as Fates affoord my life to me,
which ended once, I can lament no more:
And then will chaunce a ioyfull death to me,
If ſo I hap to die by hand of thee.

And when he had made an end of his ſong, he helde his peace, for that his very voyce could not giue him any more time, but he let his lute fall out of his handes, and croſſing his fingers the one with the other, he was very penſiue, till ſuch time as he heard a ſhepheards voyce accompanied with a Rebecke, ſweetly ſounding, whom he heard ſing this ſong as followeth.

WIthin this vale there doth a Paſtor dwell,
that bringeth vp a Paſtora full braue,
Which from her breaſt doth loue all times expell,
ſhe no regard of louers paines will haue.

Nature her like, as yet did neuer forme,
Venus her ſelfe is daſhed at her view:
Hir breaſt like ſnow throwne downe by Hiems ſtorme,
her hart ſtone hard for all her gallant hiew.

Great is his griefe that vnto her is thrall,
and hard his hap that ſues to win her grace,
Gainſt him ſhe vſeth greateſt hate of all,
for as I ſaid, loue hath in her no place.

fore he came thether, and who was the occaſion thereof: and when ſhe knew that he was in his chamber in quiet, in the company of two of her Gentlewomen ſhe went to viſite him. The Greek receiued great contentment at her cõming, and the Princeſſe with amorous and ſweete words procured to knowe of him, if that were true which ſhe had in her thought, in ſuch ſort that Claridiano did diſcouer vnto her, all his whole heart and pretence, ſaying: that he was determined in ſhepheards apparaile, to goe and ſee that Paſtora, the cauſer of all his griefe. The Princeſſe when ſhe ſawe that all was true ſhe had conceiued, ſhe had not ſo much diſcretion as to declare vnto him the griefe of her hart, but with a diſſembling ſigh ſhe ſayd. Oh loue, what great falſhood is in thée: and without ſaying any more ſhe remained verye penſiue, with her eyes looking downwards to the ground, & diſſembling her griefe, ſhe did offer vnto him, all fauour and diligence, ſuch as her royall eſtate was able to giue, which was not a little, for that ſhe was Lady of all that riuer and landes thereabouts, the Greéke did giue her greate thankes for her gentle offer, and with this determination, the Princeſſe retourned vnto her chamber, whereas with many troubleſome and grieuous thoughts, ſhe paſſed away the night. So when the morning was come, ſhe was not vnmindfull of that which ſhe had promiſed, but commanded to be made ſhepheards apparaile very rich, and commaunded to call vnto her the head gouernour of all the cattle of her father the King, whom ſhe commaunded that the ſhepheard which ſhé would giue vnto him, ſhould be well loked vnto, and ſerued in ſuch ſorte, as though it were her Fathers owne royall perſon.

The ſhepheardes apparaile was quicklye made, and the Princeſſe one night turning into the chamber of the Greék, aſked of him, if he had determined anye other thing then that which he had tolde her, to whom he ſayde, that he was ſtill in that determination. Then the Princeſſe ſayd, that all which he had commaunded was in a readineſſe, and in

that

that order as his pleasure was. The Greeke gaue her great thankes, with such amorous words as her loue did deserue, and the Greeke did straight waye apparaile himselfe in that shepheards apparaile.

The Princesse when she saw him in that order, with a sorrowfull countenaunce she sayd: Knight, I cannot iudge what will come of this: but yet I am sure, that thou goest captiue onely to one, and thou dost leaue captiue more than a thousand, who are in no fault of all this thy greefe. Oh happie Pastora, whose beautie hath so much force, to subiect and bring downe him, whom the Tartarian Giaunts coulde not conquere. Oh Gods, why do not I leaue to be a Princesse, for to be a Pastora by the Riuer of Euphrates, seeing that my highnesse hath not so much power to atchieue that, which the baseneſſe of this Pastora hath brought into subiection. The great desire which this newe shepheard had to see his Pastora, was the occasion that he would not make any aunswere vnto the Princesse, but rather dissembled and made as though he had heard nothing. And straight way he put in vre his departure, and taking a man with him to bee his guide, he toke his leaue of the Princesse, & did commend Fidelio vnto her keeping.

So he departed out of the Citie without any tarrieng, till he came vnto the principall house of the Kings cattell, whereas he was receiued of all the shepheardes that were there present, who showed him great courtesie, and the baseneſſe of the apparayle wherewith he was clad, was not sufficient to take away the iealousie that they had in him to be of some noble bloud, as appeared by his person, stature and graue countenaunce: and although they had not bene commaunded by the Princesse to respect him, yet they coulde not but do all reuerence and curtesie vnto him. This new shepheard, after that he had giuen them thankes for the entertainment which they gaue him, he went forth all alone ranging the fields, and in his hand a shepheards crooke. Also he carried with him a little lute, which he vsed at times for to ease and recreate himselfe.

This

and with great violence he went vnto the Sepulcher, and as he would haue stroke therat, there appeared before him a giant, the which the Prince toke to be ỹ gyant that he slew in the mountains Nabateos, who stroke the Prince vpon ỹ brest with both his hands ỹ he made him to recoile backe a great way, whether he would or not: notwithstanding with great discreation he kept himselfe vpright, & with wonderful lightnesse, accompanied with no lesse anger, he threw his shæld at his back, & toke his s word in both his hãds, & went to strike the gyant a mortall blow, at which time there appered before him a whole legiõ of diuells, with flesh hoks in their hands, with the which they did torment him. The valiant Græke with great wrath and double force put himselfe amongest them, striking on euery side such terrible blowes, that in spite of them he came vnto the tombe, and with great lightnesse he stroke on it two blowes, but he had no time to strike the third, for that this diuellish companie did put him from it wõ their terrible assaults and striking of him. Oh in what great trauaile and perpleritie this knight found himselfe amongst this wicked and diuellish generation, for to defend himselfe, that they might not driue him from the Tombe, and toke great courage, and stretching forth his mightie and strong arme, hee so flourished about him and kept such a sturre amongest them, that hee might strike the third blowe vppon the Tombe, which was with so great noise and rumbling, that he was constrained to fall to the grounde without anie remembraunce, he laie not long in this traunce, but comming againe to his remembraunce, he founde himselfe by the riuers side, and nigh vnto him was his horse and his Squire with him, without seeing anie fortresse or ditch, nor anie signe thereof, but the most they sawe was two greate lumpes verie darke which flewe in the ayre, giuing verye græuous shrikes, and beholding well what it shoulde bee, they sawe that one was the vnhappie Merlin, and with him a legion of Diuells, that went tormenting him, and the other was a Chariot, carried by two Dragons, and before it was that furious beast which hee slewe, and hee sawe

that

that there was in the Chariot certaine Knights, Ladies and Gentlewomen depriued of their vnderstanding. Likewise he saw a man with a whip in his hand, who did gouern the Dragons and that furious monster, who with a loud voyce said. Nephew vnto Trebatio, do not thou thinke that thy strength is sufficient, for to set at libertie, and to clære out of paine this vnnaturall and cruell King, and in saying these words, he whipped forwards those terrible Dragons, and with a trice they vanished out of the Princes sight, leauing him somewhat troubled, and not without great reason.

¶How Claridiano being ouercome with the loue of the Pastora, did put himselfe in shepheards apparaile, the better to comfort himselfe with her delycate presence, and of all that happened therein. Chap. 22.

THe Prince remained meruailously amazed of all that had past, and with some griefe, for that he saw that all his labour and trauaile was to little effect. His squire did not loke for his retourne so quickly, but layde him downe vpon the grasse and fel a slæpe. The Prince with his sote awaked him, who so sone as he had opened his eyes, he loked as one that had bene scarred. The warlike Græke demaunded his horse, and mounting on him, he toke his way towards Ierosolima, and continually had in his imagination the names of his grandfather, father and mother, with intent to go towards Greece, with all hast possible. So hæ trauailed in a great confusion whether it should be true or not, whith they tolde him, that ỹ two Emperours should be his grandfather and father. Likewise hæ had griefe to sæ himselfe subiect vnto Cupide. So with these and such like thoughts, he came vnto Ierosolima, whereas he was meruailously well receiued of the King and Quæne, likewise of the Princesse the Kings daughter, who did him great honour. The Princesse straight way vnderstod wher-

this cannot be tolde thee by anie other but by me, and yet I will not tell thee except thou doest graunt me one thing that I will aske of thee. The Prince who was greatly amazed of all that he had seene, and verie much beholding the countenaunce of the damsell that was verie leane and feeble, aunswered and said: The Gods who are gouernours of my libertie will doe their pleasures, but in that touching the graunt of thy request, I neuer to Ladie nor Gentlewoman denyed anie thing that they would demaund of me, being a thing that I could put remedie in, but with all my power and strength I was readie to fulfill the same, therefore demaund what thy pleasure is, for that I am readie in all things that toucheth thy remedie. Then she sayde, Claridiano loke well and haue a respect vnto ý which thou dost promise, and see ý thou dost performe thy promise, for thou shalt vnderstãd that thou fulfilling the same doest giue libertie vnto thy selfe and vnto me. Gentlewoman, aske what thy pleasure is said ý knight: that which I demaund sayd the damsell is, ý thou giuest mée the ring which thou hast vpon thy finger, for thou shalt vnderstand that in it is my remedie. In demaunding of that said the Prince, thou doest rather procure my harme, & therfore it doth not behoue me to giue it thee. To whom she said: O euill and false knight that doest not performe that which thou hast promised, see that thou doest accomplish the same, or else to the contrarie thou shalt liue dying. Oh false Magitian & cursed witch sayde Claridiano, doest thou thinke by thy deceitfull threatnings to deceiue me? It is not thy inchantments neither thy fained words ý shall get the ring frõ my finger. Thẽ she said, thou shalt see how little thy great strẽgth shal profit & anaile thee against me, if thou wilt tarry a while, and therewith vpon a sodaine she laide holde vpon his hande with so great strength, that it lacked but little of pulling the ring from his finger, but this politike Græke helped his left hand with his right, with so great strength, that he put away that Magitian ý she could not pull it off. This false inchanter did still stand in this contention to get the ring from him, and contended in such sort that he forgot the respect that hee

should

ſhould haue vnto Ladyes and Gentlewomen,and ſtroke her with his right hand that was armed ſuch a buffet vpon the cheeke, that her fantaſticall bodie gaue a great fall vnto the ground,ſhee was not ſo ſone fallen, when that with a timerous noiſe ſhe threw her ſelfe into that dolefull Sepulcher, making a terrible and wonderfull howling within,and this vnhappie king bare her companie with his greeuous lamentations,of the which the Prince had great compaſſion,and it ſeemed vnto him that he heard a voice which came forth of the tombe,which did offer to talke vnto him,& that he might vnderſtand his reaſons he drew nigh vnto the tombe,& heard that he ſayd theſe words: Oh knight borne in Grecia,& nurſed and brought vp in Trapobana,if thou wilt go out of this place and make an end of my continual torments,procure to giue three blowes vpon this my Sepulchar, with the which thou ſhalt deliuer thy ſelfe and me likewiſe,and all thoſe that are heere put in this infernal lodging.This inuincible young man ſayd:There is ſo little truth in this houſe,that I ſtand in doubt whether I may beleeue thy words or not,notwithſtanding tell me who thou art,then ſhall I know whether I may giue credit vnto thy wordes. Then he ſayd: I am that vnhappie Merlin,borne in Gallia, and deceiued by her who would haue deceiued thee,therfore thou muſt beleeue me,for that I doe tell thee the truth, and if thou doeſt as I doe tell thee ther will come vnto both vs great profite.Tell me Merlin,ſayd the Prince,how doeſt thou know that I was borne in Grecia,and brought vp in Trapobana, if thou doſt know I pray thee tell me who was my father,and of what Empire or kingdome he is Lord.To whom Merlin ſaid:Trebatio is thy grandfather,and thy father is the great Alfebo,& the excellent Claridiano is thy mother, from whome Galtenor did ſteale thee,in companie with thy ſiſter, the moſt faireſt creature in all the world.And in ſaying theſe words he helde his peace,and with dolorous grones he began to curſe himſelfe, and it was ſo greeuous that the Prince withdrewe himſelfe becauſe he would not heare it,& without anie more tarrying he embraced his ſheeld and laide hand vpon his good ſword,

proffit him by reason of the great hardnesse. The Prince seeing himselfe so bewrapt with this monster, with greate strength and pollicie brought his sworde downe vnder the beast, and thrust the point into her bellye vp to the harde hilles. The furious monster when shee felt her selfe so sore wounded, queased the Prince so harde betweene hir clawes, that hee thought verily shee would haue broken all his bones in his bodie, and if it should haue indured long in this order, it had not beene possible to haue escaped the death, but that mortall wounde did so trouble the beast, & was so greeuous vnto her, that she was constrained to let him loose, and to withdrawe her selfe backe, for to put some remedie therein, and sayde vnto the Prince: Oh thou Infidell without all faith, thou hast slaine mee, but tarrie yet there doeth remaine in me courage for to make thee that thou shalt not goe aduaunceing of thy selfe, and bearing hir head verie lowe she pressed vnto the Prince, thinking to take him with hir horne and to ouerthrowe him, with pretence to get him againe betwixt hir clawes and nailes, and although she was dying yet not to leaue him till she had torne him all to peeces. This courageous knight did abide her comming, and perceyuing her deceit, when hee thought that shee would strike him hee stepped on the one side, and in the passing the Prince stroke her so mightie a blowe vppon the necke, that it cut the same a sunder, so that that horrible and wonderfull monster fell downe dead to the grounde. The Knight with the long trauaile and wrastling remained verie wearye, in such sorte, that hee was constrained to sit downe to ease himselfe vppon a banke that was there made against a wall, giuing greate thankes vnto his Gods for the victorie which they had giuen him. A good whyle after when that he had somewhat eased himselfe of his former trauaile, his courageous heart would not suffer him to remaine long there, but straight waye he arose vp and went towardes the lyttle doore which was in the wall, and when he came to it hee saw that it was made all of verie strong yron, and in the key hole thereof was a keie, with the which he tris open it.

The

The knight entered in thereat, and sawe that it was verye darke, and it seemed vnto him that it should be a verie great hall, and therein he heard very fearefull howlings, yet for all this the valiant Greeke did not lose anie of his accustomed courage, but entered in farther, and toke off his gantlet from his left hand, whereon he wore a meruailous great and fine Diamond, the which he had in a ring, that gaue so much light that he might plainely see all that was in the hall, the which was verie great and wide, and vpon the walls were painted the figures of many fiends and diuells, and on the one side of the hall he sawe a tombe all couered with blacke, and vppon it there laie a man with a pale colour, who at certaine times gaue a meruailous and greeuous sigh, caused by the burning flames that proceeded from vnder the tombe, being such, that it seemed his bodie should be conuerted therewith into burning coales, the flame was so stinking that it made ẏ Prince somewhat to retire himselfe from the place where he sawe that horrible spectacle. He which laie vpon the tombe, casting his eyes a side, sawe the Prince, and knowing him to bee an humane creature, with an afflicted voice he sayde: Who art thou sir knight, that art come vnto so sorrowfull a dwelling, for that thou canst see nothing in it but great torments. Then the knight sayde, but tell me who art thou that with so much griefe doest demaund of me that which I stande in doubt to tel thee. I am a king of Arabia (answered he) which without all consideration, with my cruell hande did pearce through the white breast of my welbeloued daughter, woe be to me, for that she at once did paie her offence by death. but I a miserable wretch wᵭ many torments doe liue dying. When this worthie knight was about to answere him, he saw come forth from vnder the tombe a damsell, who had a verie yeelow and wanne colour, and by her face it seemed ẏ she should be verie sore afflicted, and with a sorrowfull voice she sayd. O Claridiano vnfortunate, what dost thou seeke in this infernal lodging, wheras cannot be giuen thee anie other pleasure but mortall torments, for ẏ thou wert so bold as to kil my kᵉper of ẏ dore, & there is but one thing that can cleere thee frō it, e

was meruailously troubled at that mightie blowe which he receiued, the beast with double furie returned vnto ỹ knight to strike him as she did before, the Drake did abide his comming, with his sworde verie firme in his hande, and at such times as the beast would strike her blowe, bearing her head verie lowe. The Prince at that present was not idle, but discharged his mightie blow with great strength, and stroke the beast betwixt both the horns, but by reasō of the great hardnesse his sworde could not enter, yet he made her to decline her head to the ground spite of her teth. This furious beast seeing that she had missed her blowe, tourned that which remained of her taile and stroke him in the middest of his bodie a terrible blow, in such sorte that if she had had the rest, she had parted him a sunder with the furiousnesse thereof, but for all that it made him fall to the grounde, he was not so soone fallen downe, when that the monster stroke him with her sharpe hornes verie strongly, yet for all that there was no signe made on his armour by reason of the greate hardnesse, but all the harme was by the strength of the blow, his bodie was somewhat bruised. Oh holie God, ỹ with what ire was this Greek brought in subiection, at that time if a mightie and hard mountaine had bene before him, he would haue torne it in peces. Now was there no resistaunce to be made against his mightie cutting sworde, he threw his shield from him to the grounde, and toke his sworde fast in both his handes, and abode the comming of this beast, who retourned to strike him agayne, verie much meruailing to se how lyttle hir blowes did profit her. The knight stode still verye firmely in his place, and when the beast put downe her head, he discharged his blowe on her, and chaunced vpon the one side of her head, that her harde skull and strong skinne was insufficient to withstand the sharpnesse of his sworde, but that it cut the fleih and carried awaie one of her hornes, wherewith this beast remained verie sore hurt and wounded, who seeing her self in that perplexitie, she withdrew her self backe and sayd.

O Claridiano and Pagan dogge, dee not trust so much

much

with thy great strength, neither in that thou hast done me so much harme, for I will doe so much that thou shalt not returne vnto Grecia, thy naturall Countrie, and lesse shalt thou inioye the Pastora, for that as yet thou hast not prowed of my sharpe clawes and nailes, nor of their furie. The Prince answered and sayd: Diuell make thy defence by all the meanes thou canst, and all shall be lyttle inough. And in saying these wordes he armed his sworde in his hand, then this furious monster began to make a new noise in hissing, and approched towardes the Prince, making as though shee woulde strike him with her horne that remayned, and when she came nigh him, vppon a sodaine shee tourned her tayle with so great lightnesse, that the Prince could not make his defence, and stroke him vpon the helme in such sort that shee ouerthrew him to the ground almost without anie remembraunce, the Prince was not so sone fallen but this monster leapt vnto him with hir hard and sharpe nailes, and griped his hard harnes, thinking with them to teare him all to péces, but she did him no more harme but onely wearied him, in tumbling him vp and downe, yet this inuincible Knight was not without great care to prouide for himselfe and did not lose one iot of his strength and courage, but rather with a double stomack and furious courage procured to cleare himselfe out of the beasts nailes, and with the great strength and pollicie that he vsed, in spite of the monster he cleared himself, and béeing at libertie, with great lightnesse he arose on his féete, he was not so sone vp when the beast stroke him with his one horne which remained, in such sort that he was constrained to fall downe againe to the ground, the beast procured to catch him againe in her clawes, but she coulde not, for that the Prince with great lightnesse rose vp againe, and hauing his sworde in his hand he tarried her comming, the beast made a shew as though he would strike at the Prince with his horne, but when she sawe him with his sworde aloft, she raised her selfe vp on her hinder feete, and fell vppon the Prince, imbracing him with her nailes about his backe scratching and pinching his armour, but it dide lyttle

in giuing to vnderstand therof, yet will I tell thée thy generation.

Thou art sonne and nephew to the two mightiest Emperours in all the world, and the most adorned with all vertues. Thy mother is the most worthiest Matrone that euer hath bene, and none like, but she which was kept for thæ, if thou hadst not entred into this Fortresse. Thus in fewe words, I haue told thæ of thy descent, and from whence thou dost procæde if thou wilt vnderstand it: and more I dw say vnto thæ, that thou art not worthie to accompt thy selfe of such a linage, for that they be Christians, and thou art a Pagan, therefore aske me no more, for I haue tolde thé inough. And now seeing I haue accomplished thy will and desire, haue a respect what thou wilt dw with thine owne person, for if thou wilt retourne without making any battaile with me, thou must of two things chose to dw one of them, which is to returne backe againe that waye which thou camest, or els to declare vnto me the resolution of a question, which I will demaund of thæ. The couragious Greek said, For the one, which is to returne backe againe ỳ way which I came, thou shalt vnderstand that I will not graunt vnto, and touching the second, say on whatsoeuer it be thy pleasure that I shall declare, and I will make thé aunswere thereof if I can and when I cannot with my tongue, hére is my sword that doth know how to make relation of questions, be they neuer so obscure and hard.

Thy sword Claridiano, sayd the beast, will do as all other haue done hértofore, that haue taken vpon them ỳ same enterprise, their masters remaining dead, in recompence of their bolde hardinesse. Leaue off these reasons sayd Claridiano, and demaund what thy pleasure is, or els suffer me to go forwards on my iourney, and if of necessitie for to make an end hereof, I must haue battaile with thæ, come on let vs begin without any more tarrying. Hast thou so much hast said the beast, I dw promise thæ that quickly thou shalt sæ thy selfe in that perpleritie, that thou shalt repent thy spæde. Tell me Claridiano, what beast is that when it is first borne

that

that goeth on foure feete, and afterward on two, and in ỹ end on three. If thou declare vnto me my question, I am content to let thee passe and to followe thy iourney. This question did put this valiant warriour in great thought in himselfe, his eyes fixed on the ground, searching all his memorie and vnderstanding, but yet he could not happé to know what thing it should be that was demaunded, and lifting vp his eies hee sayd: I doe not know with my small vnderstanding what to aunswere thee, therefore my sword shall accomplish that which in my wit doth lacke. And in saying these words hee imbraced his sheeld, and firming his sword in his hande, hee began his terrible and timereus battaile. The furious beast hissing like vnto a Snake, did withdrawe himselfe somwhat backwards, and with great violence did stretch out her long necke, and bearing her head somewhat lowe, she pretended with her hornes to make her encounter, the Prince stood still till that the beast drew somewhat nigher him, and wold not at that time abide the furiousnesse of the blowe, but rather clearing himselfe from it by stepping on the one side, with a light leape towards the left hand, and passing this furious beast by missing her blowe, he stroke an ouerthwart blow at her with so great furie and force, which lighted vpon the middest of her taile (that although she carried it verie low for her most aduauntage, for that therewith she did most offend and defend) yet for all that the Princes fortune was such, that the blow chanced betweene two scales, & with a trice it was cut a sunder in the middest: Oh how furious and outragyous was this deformed beast when she felt her selfe so sore wounded, and turning her selfe as the wind against ỹ Prince before he could make his defence, that neds he must receiue vpon his strong armour a blowe with those long and sharpe hornes, the blowe was giuen him with so great force, that it ouerthrew him to the ground, and seeing him in this sorte, with a diuelliſh rage and ire she ranne towards him procuring to claspe him betwixt her sharpe clawes, and by reason of her great furie and rage, she had not so much time, but passed by and could not fasten anie hold on him. The Drake

THe Greeke with great strength did bloin the inchaunted horne, in such sort, that all along the riuer the sound was harde. At the verye same instaunt they began to open the gate with so great noyse as when they opened ỹ hundred gates of the Temple of Appollo, at the sight of the couragious Troyan. So when this valiant Claridiano saw the gate open, he loked in thereat to see if he could see any thing, and he saw that it was very darke, and for to enter in thereat, he saw that it was requisite to leaue his horse, and with great lightnesse he left the saddle, and deliuered him vnto Fidelio for to keepe him, and without any care whatsoeuer should happen, he shrowded himselfe with his shield, and his sword in his hand, he thrust himselfe into that darkenesse, and when he was tenne paces within, without seeing of any, he receiued a blow, the thing ỹ stroke him howling like vnto a Wolfe which is all night alone in the wildernes, and with the blow which he receiued, it was so furious, that it made him almost recoyle so farre backe, as he had entered, which caused in ỹ Prince a great deale more courage, and as a man beside himselfe, he began to lay about him, striking on the one side, and on the other, not knowing where he did strike, and in this sort he went forwards his way through that great darkenesse, till such time as he sawe light, and going farther in, he came into a great court, in the which he could see but one little doore, towards the which hee went, but he could not come nigh it, for that he was disturbed by a furious beast which arose out of the court, & went towards the doore, whether ỹ Prince went with great swiftnesse. This couragious Greeke did not let to feele some alteration, to see a beast so deformed. It was of body bigger thẽ an Elephant, and was all couered with hard partie coulored shells and scales: the taile was very long, and somwhat bigge, and it had foure feete, and each of them had two long clawes with verye sharpe nayles: the necke was a yearde long, and it had the face of a woman, and out of her heade,

proceéded two mightie great and huge hornes verye sharpe, Her speech was very perfect and cleare, and made aunswere in any language that was spoken vnto her. She would make battaile with none, but it should proceede of questions and aunsweres, and as Galtenor doth affirme and say, that the inchaunted Merlin was shut vp in that beast. This furious beast when she saw that the Prince went towards that little doore she put her selfe before him, and disturbed his going: this couragious Knight shrowded vnder his shield, did abide her comming. Then the beast sayd. Stay thy selfe and stand still Claridiano, and doo not trouble thy selfe so much, for a thing, that for all the dominions and Empires of thy father thou wouldest not haue begun, neither haue giuen the enterprise. Let mee first knowe what did moue thee to enter into this infernall house, whether thou wert moued by thy great courage and strength, or pretence to set at libertie those that are heere detained, or for to knowe somewhat of thy linage. The Greeke marualled verie much when he heard himselfe named, and of the greate reasons which the beast spake vnto him. To whome he sayde: All that thou hast sayde and spoken of I woulde be verie gladde to atchiene and goe forwardes with, for that thereof I shoulde gette vnto my selfe great honour, notwithstanding if thou doest know anie thing of my linage, I doe desire thee to tell me. This furyous beast sayd: Desires and prayings can doo verie little with me, neither moue me, except it come of mine owne good will for to tell thee: but for that I doo knowe after that I haue told thee, it shall profite thee very little by the knowledge thereof, for that if thou dost moue battaile with me, thou shalt remaine broken all to peeces, therefore for this cause I will tell thee.

Giue me heerein my desire sayde this couragious knight, and for the rest, let each one as it behoueth him procure to defend himselfe. Then the beast with a smiling laughter, and as one that did make a iest of all that which was spoken, sayde: Although it will profite thee verye lytle

in

"canst not escape it, for here my owne arme shall be the killer
"of mine owne flesh. Then Damelis answered and sayd: Ah
"my Lord and father, will you be now as cruell vnto me, as
"you were wont to be pittifull, appease your wrath, and with-
"drawe your vnmercifull sword, and harken vnto this which
"I will saie, in discharging my selfe in that you charge mee
"with all: You shall vnderstand my Lord and father, that I
"was ouercome and constrained by loue for to loue, forgetting
"thy fatherly loue, and my duetie, yet for all that hauing pow-
"er to accomplish the same, it was not vnto your dishonour,
"for that therwith I doe liue honourablie with my husband.
"Then the king sayd, oh false traitor and without faith, holde
"thy peace, what reason hast thou to make this excuse, hauing
"committed so great an errour. And in saying this he lifte vp
"his sword for to strike her, the foure damsells ý were there,
"with terrible shrikes they threw themselues vpon that vn-
"happie Damelis, offring their bodies vnto ý furie of that cut-
"ting sword, for to set at libertie their Ladie & mistresse. The
"king who sawe them in this sort make her defence, with his
"left hand he pulled them off from her, some by the haire of ý
"head, and some by the shoulders, for to make waie that hee
"might execute his determined purpose, and none to make a-
"nie resistaunce against him. Floria when she sawe the King
"determined to kil his daughter, like vnto a Lioncsse she hung
"about his necke and sayd: Oh mad dogge, what determina-
"tion is this that thou doest bring for to do euill vnto ý most
"chast and loyall Ladie in all the world, is it a new thing for
"loue to vse such like deedes: vnto thy selfe may be attributed
"the occasion of all this euill, and thou art in the fault thereof,
"for that thou wert so malitious and so full of mischiefe, that
"she durst not giue thee to vnderstand of her sodaine loue. The
"words and teares of Floria did little profit with the king, but
"rather like a wilde Boare in the wildernesse, being compas-
"sed with a companie of dogges doth shake himselfe: euen so
"the king did shake his members, and threw Floria from him,
"and with double wrath he did procure to execute his furie,
"but the damselis with terrible shrikes, sometimes one and

some-

sometimes another did disturbe him, till such time as with his cruell hande betweene the Damosells, he thrust in the poynt of his sharpe sword, and with the force of his wretched arme he thrust it, till it passed through her breast, & came forth at her backe. (The wise Democrites when that he receiued the greatest contentment in his heart, would weepe to thinke vpon the great vnquietnesse and discontentment that should followe: euen so this vnhappie Damelis, when shée was most at quiet and delight with her prosperous life, then fortune did turne it vnto her sodaine death.) At this time the Magitian came into the chamber, and when he saw the king contrary vnto that which he promised him, had done ỹ wilfull act, he began to blaspheme against himselfe, for that hée had bene the occasion of all that euill, and with an yrefull voyce he sayd. O cruell murderer that in this sort hast deceiued me, I will giue thée thy paiment according vnto thy deserts, in placing thy cruell body, whereas thou shalt continually lament this thy daughters death, leauing a lyue the fame of her with thy lamẽtation. And in saying these words he drew a booke out of his bosome, and reading on it, hée made a great cloud to appeare in the skyes very black, which was brought by terrible and hastie windes, the which came with a very great tempest and storme: and when the skies wared clære, then was there sœne bære this fortresse, where in this cruell King of Arabia is inchanted, and this sorrowfull Velegrato and his Damsells: and he that is desirous to sœ how and in what sort, let him blowe this horne, and straight waye the gates shall be open, but bære I dw aduertise him, that the going out will be doubtfull.

And hærewith he made an ende of this lamentable Historie: the rest you shall vnderstand in the chapter that followeth.

¶ How that Claridiano after he had read the historie in the parchment, blew the horne, wherewith the gates wer opened: and how resistaunce was made at the entrie, & of all that passed about the same. Cap. 21.

The

" bæing found, liue peaceably, enioying the one ỹ others loue,
" & not farre from that place there was a small village, from
" whence they might make their prouision of all that was ne-
" ssarie, for the maintaining of their bodies. Great ioye and
" pleasure these two louers received, when they found them-
" selues in such a place whereas they might take their ease, &
" enioye their loues. The Duke delighted in no other thing,
" but to goe a hunting with his Squires and Pages, leauing
" his swæte Damelis, accompanied with her damosells in that
" strong house, aduising them alwayes not to open the gates,
" except they should aunswere vnto a watch word, and many
" times for her contentment, Damelis would goe and mæte
" with the Duke at the gates. So in this order they liued to-
" gether foure yeares: but in the ende, Time who neuer rest-
" eth in one degræ, did take from them their rest, giuing them
" double trauaile and sorrow. For that when the King her fa-
" ther found her missing, the sorrow and griefe was so much
" that he received, that he kept his chamber a long time, and
" would not come forth of it, and if it had not bene for speci-
" all businesse, necessarie for his kingdome, he wold (as I say)
" neuer haue come forth: and although he was occupied very
" much therein, yet could he not forget his great griefe, calling
" many times vpon his welbeloued daughter. All this foure
" yeares he passed the time in great heauinesse, which euerie
" day increased more his sorrow and griefe. Of all which so-
" row, a great Magitian whose name was Demofronte, by his
" learning came to the knowledge off, and straight waye by
" his science he made a chariot to be brought, that was gouer-
" ned by two flying Dragons, and put himselfe therein, who
" in a very short space, was carryed whereas this sorrowfull
" King dwelt, and he chaunced to come at such time as he was
" alone in his chamber with his accustomed sorrowe, and la-
" menting the losse of his Daughter: and without bæing sæne
" of any person, he entred whereas this afflicted King was,
" and sayd.

" King, leaue off this sorrowe and great lamentation, and

prepare thy selfe to seke some other remedye: and if thou wilt doo that which I wil tell thee, I wil not delay but bring thee into the place whereas thy daughter is, with this condition, that thou shalt not giue her nor hers any punishment, for that she hath not offended in any other thing, but in lack of acknowledging her dutie.

The King being greatly troubled when he sawe him, arose from the chaire wherin he was set, and sayd. If I might see my Daughter, I could not but vse the clemencie of a father. This word onely doth suffice me sayd Demofionte, & without speaking any more words, vsing of his learning & Arte, he put the King into his Chariot gouerned by those fliing Dragons, and in a small time he was caried, and put in to the place whereas his daughter was, at such time as the Duke was about his accustomed hunting. This Magitian called at the gate, and gaue the watch word that the Duke was accustomed to giue, and when Damelis heard it, she her selfe went vnto the gate and did open it: and when she went to imbrace him, thinking it to be her louer, she sawe that it was her father, & with a sodayne alteration she gaue a great shrike and retourned and put her selfe within the house. The King her father somewhat angry did folow her saying, It doth little auaile thee Damelis to run away, for that thou shalt dye in my power, paying me with thy death, the greate dishonour which my royall crowne hath receiued. So he followed her till he came vnto the chamber whereas her damosells were, amongst whome this fearefull Lady did hide her selfe, who seeing her to enter in that sort, they arose to see what was the occasion of so great chaunge and trouble. Floria, straight way did know the King, who had a wrathfull countenaunce, & she fearing the harme which shuld happen vnto her Lady put her selfe ouer her & gaue terrible and loud shrikes. The King as one kindeled in great wrath forgetting that which hee had promised vnto the Magitian, laide hande on his sword, saying: It doth not profite thee Damelis to flie from the death, for thy desert is such, y thou

canst

" had for to discouer vn'o her all his heart : but in the end, by
" the great industrie of this Gentlewoman, there was order
" giuen that these two louers should mete together. Yare I
" will not detaine them that shall read this, in telling of the
" great delight which both of them receiued to see themselues
" together, but such it was that she was made a Ladye. This
" faire Damelis, for that she coulde not at her ease enioye her
" Velegrato, she did determine to leaue her own natural coun-
" trey & father, and with this intention, one night being with
" her louer, she cast her armes about his necke and sayde. Oh
" my swete and welbeloued friend, seing that the soueraigne
" Gods haue bene to me so grateful, that I do deserue to haue
" a louer, let me not finde in thee ingratitude, for that I cannot
" passe my time, except continually I enioye thy sight, and do
" not muse my Lord at this that I do say, for that the ouer-
" much loue that I haue to you, doth constrayne me to make
" it manifest, and this beleeue of a certaintie, that if thy sight
" be absent from me, it will be the occasion, that my hart shal
" lacke his vitall recreation. And you do well know how that
" the King my father doth beare you no good will, which will
" be the occasion that we cannot enioye the one the other, as
" my heart desireth : for the which, I haue determined (if you
" do thinke well thereof) to leaue both my father and Coun-
" trey, and to goe and line with you alone in a straunge Coun-
" trey. And if you do denie me this, verye quickly you shall
" se your welbeloued Ladye without life : but I do beleeue
" you wil not denie me this thing, the which I do so much de-
" sire, and in whom doth consist so much vertue, and therwith
" shedding a few teares from her eyes, she helde her peace.
" The Duke seing halfe amased, answered and sayde : Oh
" my loue and swete Mistresse, wherfore haue you any doubt
" that I wil not fulfill & accomplish your desire in all things,
" therefore out of hand put all things in order, that your will
" is to haue done : for what more benefite and contentment
" can I receiue, then to enioye you continually, in such sorte,
" that neither of vs may depart the one from the other: and if
" it so fall out, that Fortune will be so contrary against vs,

that

that we be spied, and we be taken, and suffer death together, ,,
what more glory can ther be vnto me, then to die with the, ,,
Therefore dw not trouble your selfe my swete Lady & Mi- ,,
stresse, but giue me time that I may goe into my Country, ,,
and to giue order in such sort that your whole will may be ,,
accomplished, and in the meane time make your selfe in a re- ,,
dinesse for your departure: and so with this conclusion they ,,
toke their leaue the one of the other, and the Duke wente ,,
into his Countrey, giuing order for to accomplish his deter- ,,
mined thought. So when that all thing was put in good or- ,,
der, the Duke with as much secrecie as might be, returned ,,
vnto the place whereas Damelis was, very well armed, ad- ,,
uertising her, how he was come for to carry her away, who ,,
was in a readinesse for to accomplish her desire, and had in ,,
her company the Gentlewoman her secretarie that was cal- ,,
led Floria, and so in great secret and without making anye ,,
noyse, they departed out of the Kings Pallaice her father, & ,,
went vnto the place whereas the Duke was tarrying their ,,
comming, who when he saw them without any more tarry- ,,
ing, he mounted her vpon an ambling Palfray, and her gen- ,,
tlewoman vpon another, and toke the waie towards Mesa- ,,
potamia with all haste possible. They vsed such diligence, that ,,
without being perceiued, they went out of the kingdome, & ,,
came to a place whereas the Duke had leste certaine dem- ,,
sells and squires, for to beare Damelis company, whom they ,,
found all in a readinesse for to take their iourney, and for ,,
that they were mistrustfull they would not tarrie there, but ,,
passed through Mesapotamia till they came vnto Armenia, ,,
whereas without anie misfortune they came vnto the ri- ,,
uer Derraus, vnto a place whereas the deepe and cleere ,,
waters dw strike continually vpon a mightie Rocke, vpon ,,
the which was an olde and auncient building, and in ,,
some partes it was verye strong, and in other partes by ,,
reason of the antiquitie it was fallen downe. ,,
And for to enter into it, they must of force goe vp certayne ,,
stayres, and being aloft, they thought it a conuenient place ,,
for theyr dwelling, whereas they might without all feare of

being

" had for to discouer vnto her all his heart: but in the end, by
" the great industrie of this Gentlewoman, there was order
" giuen that these two louers should meete together. Yare I
" will not detaine them that shall read this, in telling of the
" great delight which both of them receiued to see themselues
" together, but such it was that she was made a Ladye. This
" faire Damelis, for that she coulde not at her ease enioye her
" Velegrato, she did determine to leaue her own natural coun-
" trey & father, and with this intention, one night being with
" her louer, she cast her armes about his necke and sayde. Oh
" my sweete and welbeloued friend, seeing that the soueraigne
" Gods haue bene to me so grateful, that I do deserue to haue
" a louer, let me not finde in thee ingratitude, for that I cannot
" passe my time, except continually I enioye thy sight, and do
" not muse my Lord at this that I do say, for that the ouer-
" much loue that I haue to you, doth constrayne me to make
" it manifest, and this beleeue of a certaintie, that if thy sight
" be absent from me, it will be the occasion, that my hart shal
" lacke his vitall recreation. And you do well know how that
" the King my father doth beare you no good will, which will
" be the occasion that we cannot enioye the one the other, as
" my heart desireth: for the which, I haue determined (if you
" do thinke well thereof) to leaue both my father and Coun-
" trey, and to goe and liue with you alone in a straunge Coun-
" trey. And if you do denie me this, verye quickly you shall
" se your welbeloued Ladye without life: but I do beleeue
" you wil not denie me this thing, the which I do so much de-
" sire, and in whom doth consist so much vertue, and therwith
" shedding a few teares from her eyes, she helde her peace.
" The Duke being halfe amased, answered and sayde: Oh
" my loue and sweete Mistresse, wherfore haue you any doubt
" that I wil not fulfill & accomplish your desire in all things,
" therefore out of hand put all things in order, that your will
" is to haue done: for what more benefite and contentment
" can I receiue, then to enioye you continually, in such sorte,
" that neither of vs may depart the one from the other: and if
" it so fall out, that Fortune will be so contrary against vs,

that

that we be spied, and we be taken, and suffer death together, what more glory can ther be vnto me, then to die with the. Therefore do not trouble your selfe my swete Lady & Mistresse, but giue me time that I may goe into my Country, and to giue order in such sort that your whole will may be accomplished, and in the meane time make your selfe in a readinesse for your departure: and so with this conclusion they toke their leaue the one of the other, and the Duke went into his Countrey, giuing order for to accomplish his determined thought. So when that all thing was put in good order, the Duke with as much secrecie as might be, returned vnto the place whereas Damelis was, very well armed, advertising her, how he was come for to carry her away, who was in a readinesse for to accomplish her desire, and had in her company the Gentlewoman her secretarie that was called Floria, and so in great secret and without making anye noyse, they departed out of the Kings Pallaice her father, & went vnto the place whereas the Duke was tarrying their comming, who when he saw them without any more tarrying, he mounted her vpon an ambling Palfray, and her gentlewoman vpon another, and toke the waie towards Mesapotamia with all hast possible. They vsed such diligence, that without being perceiued, they went out of the kingdome, & came to a place whereas the Duke had lefte certaine damsells and squires, for to beare Damelis company, whom they found all in a readinesse for to take their iourney, and for that they were mistrustfull they would not tarrie there, but passed through Mesapotamia till they came vnto Armenia, whereas without anie misfortune they came vnto the riuer Derraus, vnto a place whereas the deepe and cleere waters do strike continually vpon a mightie Rocke, vpon the which was an olde and auncient building, and in some partes it was verye strong, and in other partes by reason of the antiquitie it was fallen downe.

And for to enter into it, they must of force goe vp certayne stayres, and being aloft, they thought it a conuenient place for their dwelling, whereas they might without all feare of being

by Armenia the great, whereas happened vnto him many & straunge aduentures.

¶ How that Claridiano trauailed by Armenia, and of the straunge aduentures which hapned him in that countrie. Cap. 20.



THE valiaunt Græke Claridiano trauailed through Armenia the greate, with no companie but his Squire, although his thought was not solitarie, but allwayes representeth in his heart the cause of all his griefe and sorrow. So in this sort he trauailed a while till it chanced one morning at such time as the Sun began his accustomed iourney, that he must passe a great & mightie riuer ouer a bridge, and at the end thereof there was a fortresse wrought after the fashion of a Bulwarke, for that below at the beginning it was verie bigge, hauing in the midst of it a great tower, with a louer hole, and vpon the same was put a standard, which with the winde was moued from the one side to the other. The Prince following his iourney ouer the bridge, without anie impediment would haue passed forwards on his waie, but by anie meanes he could not, by reason of a great, broade, and deepe ditch, which was made on the other side, beginning from the Riuer, and making a compasse lyke a whoope, which inuironed all the whole fortresse, and came againe and ioyned vnto the sayde Riuer, on the one side, so that the fortresse remayned in the middest, and there was no other waye to take, but that they must needes passe through the fortresse. So when the Prince came vnto a verie strong gate of yron, hee tooke the Ring in his hande and gaue three greate blowes, at the noise whereof there was a windowe opened, whereat there appeared a Gentlewoman of a middle age, who seemed to haue her eyes swollen with wepings, who said.

Knight, what is it that thou dost seeke heere in this infernall Castell, if thou wilt haue passage seeke it by some

other

other waye, and it shall bee better for thee, for in procuring to passe this waie thou shalt get no other thing but death, but and if thou wilt not turne backe by reason of the good opinion which thou hast in thy great valour and strength, take and sound that horne which hangeth ther vpon that piller on the right hand, which being heard, the entrie shall bee freely giuen vnto thee, but the going out is vnpossible. And in saying those words she shut the windowe in greate hall and went in. The Prince cast about his horse towards the right hand whereas he sawe a piller of the height of a man, & therat hanged a rich horne, and by it a peece of parchment rowled vp, and laying hand vpon the horne he could not moue it, although he did striue mightely to doe it, and vnderstanding y first he must vndoe the Parchment and read that which was written in it, he toke it and vnrowled it, and saw that it contained that which followeth.

At this present raigneth a King in Arabia, and although he bee a Pagan, yet hee is adorned with noble and vertuous customes, and had onely one daughter that was verie fayre, humble, and chast, and was beloued of the Duke of Fedra, vassall vnto the same king, the Dukes name was Velegrato, a young man, with a seuere and graue countenaunce, who deserued better the gouernment then anie other Pagan, he was verie well esteemed in all the Kingdome, almost equally with the king, for the which there ingendered in the kings heart a secreat rancour and hatred. This Duke did loue the Princesse who was called Damelis, and it was the Gods will that shee should repaie him with the same loue, so that both theyr hearties being wounded with loue, the one to the other, the fire kindled dayly more and more, in such sort, that neither the one nor the other had anie imagination but onely to loue, and not knowing how to manifest theyr griefes, they indured sundrie greate passions. Then loue which continually seeketh occasions, did on a time set before this Duke a Gentlewoman, which thing seemed to be wrought by the power of y Goddesse Venus. Oh what great feare this knight had

So in this contention they endured moze then two houres, in which time these knightes had no patience to loſe, foz that they were cleane voyde thereof. But oh miſerable Pagan, what doth profite thee thy furie, ſtrength, and lightneſſe, foz that thou doeſt deale with the wozthie Claridiano, when as no ſtrength noz foꝛce is to be compared vnto his. The Græke ſeing that with one alone knight the battaile indured ſo long, being moze kindeled in ire and wzath, hee toke faſt holde of his ſwoꝛde in his hande, and ſtroke the Pagan with ſuch ſurmounted furie and ſtrength vppon the healme, that he cloue it and the head in two peeces that he fell dead to the ground, when the king ſawe that terrible blowe, he receiued great contentment therat. Likewiſe the Prince of Chaldæa and the faire Antemiſca, who with great haſt went to embzaſe him, and almoſt beſide themſelues with ioye to be cleere from their captiuitie. Then Claridiano aſked of thē if there were anie moze to bee done to giue them free libertie, the king newlye imbzaced him with the greate delight which he had and ſaid. Oh the ſuſtainer of all the glozie and honour of Meſapotamia, what ſeruice may I doe vnto the Gods to gratifie this goodneſſe which they haue vſed with mee, that in the end of ſo many trauailes and troubles I bee recouer my libertie by the hands of him which is taken heere on earth foꝛ one of the Gods. The Prince Claridiano anſwered and ſayd: Soueraigne king, the Gods did conſent vnto thy iuſtice and right, foꝛ that they could helpe thee, Iupiter being ſo vpꝛight would doe iuſtice, and in eſpeciall in a thing ſo apparaunt as this was, and therefoꝛe thou mayſt attribute the ſame vnto him, and gratifie him, and lykewiſe the great vertue of Antemiſca. And with theſe and ſuch like reaſons they went towardes the Pallaice, and lead the faire Antemiſca by the hand, who was very ioyful, & ſtraight way they vnarmed Claridiano, and gaue him buckets and conſerues, foꝛ to comfoꝛt him of the greate trauaile and trouble which hee hadde paſſed, and ſerued him with ſo greate maieſtie as though they had knowen him to be the ſonne of high and mightie parents.

Antemiſca

Antemisca thanking him for all that he had done for them, sayd: O flower of knighthood, & defender of my royall fame and honestie, what power is sufficient to make satisfaction of so great a benefit, and in especiall where all power doth lacke. Faire Ladie, said Claridiano, your great vertue & honestie caused me to haue the more power and force, for to frustrate this false accusation laide against you, and now being at libertie (noble Ladie) let not these angers and wrongs past be any occasion of disturbance, but rather permit that the bodie of this vnhappie king may be buried according vnto his estate, and in so doing thou shalt shew ỳ great vertue which doth remaine in thee, to frustrate al iniuries past. This I do desire you to consent vnto, in that you are bounde vnto it by your high estate, and not for anie desert, dew vnto such a poore knight as I am. Poore, sayde Antemisca, here I doe I weare vnto you by that which I owe vnto all vertue due vnto mine owne person, that I doe determine in seruing of you to doe as much as in the seruice of Iupiter, for ỳ I take thee to be one of the Gods, as it hath appeared by the greate valour which I haue here shewed by thee. And whatsoeuer your pleasure is to commaund to be done vnto this dead bodie (although he doth not deserue it) it shall be wholy accomplished, and straight waie it was put in vre. This valyaunt knight remained there certaine dayes wherein he was serued with great maiestie, in which time the two louers were married, wherin was made meruailous great feasts and triumphs, the which for auoiding tediousnesse I doe omit and will make no mention thereof, & for that this valiant knight was prisoner to the Pastora he neither received contentment nor ioy in his heart in so long tarrying, which was the occasion ỳ Claridiano toke his leaue for to depart of ỳ Princesse of Chaldea. Which was cleane contrarie vnto the good will of Antemisca, for that she loued him meruailously for his great vertue, and with many teares she toke her leaue of him, giuing him certaine presents and gifts necessarie for his trauaile, so he departed taking his iourney, onely with Fidebio, his squire, towardes the plaines of Ierosolima, and passed

and haſt, they ſtroke the one the other, in ſuch ſort, that thoſe which were loking on many times loſt their ſight with the great brightneſſe and flame of fire that flewe out of their armour and ſtælie helmes. This battaile betwirt them continued a great while without knowing anie aduauntage, or who was the better of them, the which cauſed eyther of them to haue the more furie and anger. The Paleſtinian ſeeing the great reſiſtaunce of his enimie, roaring like a baited Bull, threw his ſhælde at his backe, and toke his ſworde in both his handes, and ſtroke ſo terrible a blowe vppon the fine Magicall armour of the Prince, that hee made him to fall forwardes, and leane his forehead vpon the horſe eares, cauſing his eyes to daſell in his head, and ſtraight way vppon the ſame he ſtrake him another blowe vppon the backe, which did make a ſound through all the Caſtel. The Prince recouered himſelfe agayne, and ſeeing him with his Sworde aloft for to diſcharge the third blowe, he procured to cleere himſelfe from the ſame and from the furie wherewith it did deſcend, the which he did with greate lyghtneſſe in ſpurring his horſe, hee had not ſo ſone paſſed the blowe when that hee returned his horſe verie ſwiftlye and ioyned with the Pagan, having his ſworde aloft, diſcharging it vppon his healme with ſo great furie, that hee made him to fall backwardes vpon his horſe crouper cleane without anie remembraunce, they horſes at that terrible blowe were meruayloufly ſcarred, in ſuch ſorte, that they were ſeparated the one from the other a greate ſpace, which was the occaſion that the Pagan had time to remember himſelfe, and to ſettle himſelfe againe in his ſaddle, and to recouer his ſworde agayne, which was fallen out of his hande and hung by the chaine at his wriſt. The Prince with double furie and force pricked his horſe and ioyned with the Pagan, and ſtroke him a mightie blowe vppon his healme, which glanced and fell vpon his lefte ſhoulder, putting him to ſo greate payne, that it made him to ſhrinke and double his bodie forwards downe to his horſe necke, the Pagan ſtraight way was vp-

right

ight againe, and ſtroke at his aduerſarie ſo terrible a blowe, that hee nothing aduaunced himſelfe of that which was paſt, wherewith the Prince firming himſelfe in his ſtrops, ſtroke at the Pagan a mightie blowe, at ſuch time as his horſe ſomewhat ſtarted, wich was the occaſion that hee coulde not haue his full thereof, but with the point of his ſworde hee hit him on the Beauer of his healme, that many ſparkles flewe out and ſo deſcended vnto his breaſt, till it came and lighted vpon his horſe head, cutting it in two peeces that hee fell dead to the ground, ſo that the Pagan remained on foote without a horſe, and by reaſon that he was a valiant knight, he cléered himſelfe from his dead horſe with a trice and ſaid. Villaine, do not thou thinke that the killing of my horſe ſhall auaile thee anie thing, but that with the ſtrength of my arme I will teare thee in peeces. I doe ſweare vnto thee by the warlike Mars, ſayd Claridiano, that it doth greeue me of that which is done, & that I ſhuld receiue more contentment to ſée thy head in the ſort that thy horſes head is, and vnderſtand, that I am not accuſtomed to ſhew my valiauntneſſe againſt a beaſt, and becauſe thou ſhalt not account mée for a villaine but change my name, tarrie a while & I will alight from my horſe. And saying theſe words with great lightneſſe he left the ſadd'e and put himſelfe on foote, and therewith the one preſſed to the other with great furie, that the battaile began a new, and with more rigour then before, for that ỹ one ſtroke the other in ſuch great haſt that it was a wonder to ſée. And being both inflamed and ouercome wᵭ anger, they could not vſe anie pollicie, but all was by force & ſtrength, being ſo terrible, that each one feared the worthineſſe of his enimie. This they continued a great time, till in the end it was perceiued the aduantage that the Prince had in ſtriking his aduerſarie, & the great lightneſſe which he vſed in entring in to the Pagan, & cléering himſelf againe ſtill continuing his terrible aſſaults & mightie thicke blowes, notwithſtanding the Paleſtinian in this time was not idle nor void of care, but valiantly did make his defence againſt his enimie, and did ſuch deedes as it was ſtraunge and worthie of greate honour.

verie much meruailed, then with a great and lowde voice hée sayd: O God how much hath it pleased thy diuine maiestie to furnish this good knight with all strengthe and prowesse, more then anie in all the world. It could not chuse but that this good Emperour was verie wearie of this his great trauaile, the which was the occasion that he did withdraw himselfe and sate downe in the shadow vnder a great Pine tree, and bad Victorando to giue him of that which he brought to eate, the which was done with a trice. Likewise he brought him freshe water from the Riuer, wherewith he did refreshe himselfe verie much. So when the Emperour had satisfyed himselfe of that which was nédfull, he arose vp, and went towards those houses to beholde them, and he sawe that they were all wrought with blacke stone. Likewise he sawe vpon the sayd Pine tree, vnder which he sat, an Epitaph written, and when he had read it, he knew it to be the place wher as Bramarant did kill himself, and how that was the Epitaph which his brother had put there, for a remembraunce of the Moores armour, at all the which when he sawe, he founde in himselfe a great confusion.

¶ Of the battaile which Claridiano had with the Prince of Palestina, and how he had the victorie, giuing libertie vnto Antimisca, and vnto all the rest, Cap. 19.

WHen this mightie Emperour vnderstood that to be the place and the house which the princesse Tigbasa had made, without anie more tarrying, finding the doore open he entered in thereat, till he came into a verie faire court, in the midst whereof stood a stage, wrought and laide vpon foure pillers, which were likewise of blacke stone, which from the foote to the top went in proportion lesse and lesse, and vpon it there was a tombe, the which was couered all with blacke cloth, and vpon the tombe was there an armed knight all saue the head, the which séemed to bée broken and torne in many places. The Emperour procuring

to

to knowe who it shoulde be, he sawe that it was Zoilo the Tartarian, at which sight he could not let to receiue great sorrowe to see his friend dead, and being in this wise he sawe a doore opened on the one side of the Court, out of the which came forth ỹ vnfortunate Princesse of Tigliafa all in mourning apparell, and her face couered with a black Lawne, and after her came fiue Gentlewomen in the same manner, who neuer staied tyll they came vnto the scaffolde. The Princesse stayed not but went vp the staires (without seeing who was within the court,) but with great sighs and teares, with her countenaunce verie beauti[illegible]ude, and sorrowfull, in such lamentable wise that it wo[illegible] haue moued anie heart to haue had compassion, who began to speake certaine words which in their places shall be rehearsed, for ỹ I am now constrayned to declare of the battaile that was begunne betweene the light of all knighthood and the furious Palestinian. You haue heard how that these two knights were in a readynesse vnto the battaile, and how that with their Speares in their rests the one ranne against the other, and in the middest of theyr course they met the one with the other, neither of them missing his blowe, but it was with so greate furie and strength, that their knotted Speares flewe all to shiuers in the ayre, and they passed the one by ỹ other without meeting, or anye hurt done, and retourning theyr horses, the Palestinian beganne first to strike at this noble warryour, giuing him terrible blowes vppon his strong and stalie helme, with so great furie, that hee made abundaunce of sparkes to flye out thereat. Where the Prince vnderstoode and felt the great and mightie strength of the Moore, but quickly hee gaue him his payment, with a more furious blowe then hee receyued, in such sorte that hee made all the members of the Palestinian to tremble and shake, and his teeth to chatter in his head, this blowe made this barbarous Prince verye much amazed, but by reason that hee was of great valour hee retourned and lyfted vp his sworde, and beganne with the lyke furie to laye vppon his enimie, in such sorte that the battayle beganne to bee verie terrible, and with greate strength

with him then it did, but it was not so little but that it ouerthrewe him to the ground, as one that hadde bene dead, but so much of the club as touched the edge of his sword was cut a sunder, the king Bramidoro when he sawe the Græke so fallen downe to the ground, he prested with his Elephant towards the monster, for to reuenge that terrible blow, who when he sawe him come towardes him, like vnto a whirle winde he made towards the houses that were thereby, and in great hast he threw himselfe into a caue, throwing downe after him a great rocke which did shut vp the entrie, the which was done with so great lightnesse, that the king had no power to strike him, and blessing himselfe to sée so sodaine and so straunge a thing, he returned vnto the place whereas the emperour was, whom he found come vnto himselfe againe and on foote, and was mounting on horse back, and when he saw the king comming, he said: Haue you séene so vgly a thing as that is so quickly ouerthrowne, with that little blow which I gaue him, and ouerthrowne as one woulde ouerthrowe a bird to the ground. Do you account that a little blow sayd ỳ king, then doe not I know what is a greate and a mightye blowe. Then the Emperour sayd: where is that diuellish monster become, tell me if you can, or if you haue séene him goe awaie: he hath throwen himselfe into hell said the king, for hard by yonder houses he put himselfe into a caue whereas I could not follow him, and of truth I doe tell you, if I could enter in where he entered, I would not, for ỳ I thinke he is amongst and in companie with the diuells, & therewith the Emperour was mounted a horse back, and was so furious & so full of cholar, that rockes and mountaines were not sufficient to make resistaunce against his strength, and so with a trice he rode vnto the place whereas the monster entered in, and without anie foresight he alighted frõ his horse, and procured to take awaie that greate stone that was at the mouth of the caue, the which he did without anie difficultnesse, but yet for all that he coulde not finde which ways he might enter in thereat, but like vnto a Lyon with greate anger, fretting and chafing, he went round about that rocke

to

to ſée if he could finde anie entrie, at the laſt he found a great clift in the rocke, and loking in thereat, he ſawe that greate monſter, whereas he lay all along on the flooze, and ſeing him he ſayd: Oh traitoz and a deſtroier by the bigh waies, oh thou infernall diuell, the ſtrong and faſt ſhutting in this rock ſhal little auaile thée, and thinke that thou ſhalt not lie long ther at thine eaſe. So he began with his hands to proue if he could teare that rocke to make waie where he might enter, and put ſo much ſtrength vnto it, and againe with his rage, that hée tooze a great part of it awaie, in ſuch ſoꝛt that the king was verie much amazed at the great fooze & ſtrength ẏ he ſhewed, and when he had done this, he loked againe at the monſter and ſayd: Oh euill and diuelliſh creature, what doeſt thou thinke (although thou art in hell) to eſcape my hands, & going from thence he went round about the rocke againe, to ſée if he could finde where with leſſe difficultneſſe he might enter, but he could not finde anie, in the meane time by reaſon that ther was no noiſe, the monſter had thought that the Emperour had bene gone, and came vnto the clift of the rocke to ſée if he could heare oꝛ ſée him. The Emperour who retourned vnto that ſame place againe, & ſawe the monſter in ſuch ſoꝛt at the clift that he might ſtrike him with his ſwoꝛd, with great haſt & good diligence he caſt at him ſo terrible a thꝛuſt in at the cleft, which chaunced vpon his vnarmed head, that it paſſed thꝛough downe to his thꝛoat, in ſuch ſoꝛt ẏ the great monſter fell downe dead to the ground. The Emperour did well knowe that he had wounded the monſter, but he beléeued it was not with ſo great ſtrength as to ouerthꝛow him, foꝛ that the cleft was verie narowe whereas he thꝛuſt the foine, and foꝛ to ſée what ſucceeded of that blow, he knéeled downe and loked in, and ſawe the monſter lie all along on the flooze ſtarke dead, the Emperour ſeing him in that ſoꝛt, ſayd: What did this diuell thinke that he ſhould not paye me ẏ villanous blowe which he gaue mée. When the king heard him ſaie theſe woꝛdes he alighted from his Elephant to ſée what hadde happened, and he ſawe him lye all along dead vpon the ground, & of his ſtraunge and great ſtature hée

veris

for that I doe not feare him, and I thanke God I never feared neither diuel nor man. These words he spake with great courage and maiestie. The Emperour in hearing him speake these words, he could not refraine himselfe but he must næds laugh. So straight waie they came out of ỹ thickest of that woode, and came vnto a riuer side which was verie dæpe, and was knowne by the Emperour to be that which ranne thorough all the Forrests and wildernesses of Grecia, and trauailing alongst by the riuer, within a little while their horses began againe to stagger and to be afraide, and loking about them to sæ if they coulde perceiue what it should be ỹ made their beasts so afraide, straight waie they might sæ a terrible monster which did crosse ouer the forrest, of a verie greate & straunge making, who was as great as a Gyant, and was so broad that he was almost foure square, his face was thræ spannes long, and had but one eie, and that was in his forehead, and all his body was couered with verie long haire, and in his breast there was as though it had bene a glasse, out of the which there was a greate shining light, this monster directed his waie towards certaine houses which were in the forrest, but by reason of the straggling & the great noise which the horses made, he cast his head aside, and when hæ sawe them, with a diuellish furie he came towards them, and had in his hand in stæde of a clubbe a mightie great and knotted Pine træ. This valiant Græke who was neuer dismaied at the sight of anie such monster, when he sawe so deformed a beast comming towards him, he chæred vp his horse, & pricked him with his spurres, and giuing a great shout he drewe out his mightie cutting sword and did abide the furie of the monster, who came roaring like a Bull, and discharged his great club vpon the Græke, who with a light leape caused by pricking of his horse, he clæred himselfe of that blow, that his club fell downe to the ground, and as wel as he could he chæred his horse againe, and entered in with the monster on the one side, and gaue him so terrible an encounter, that he made him to fall flat to the ground, and by reason that the strength of the monster was terrible, it could not be but that the horse

must

muſt receiue ſome harme, and in paſſing by he tumbled vpon the monſter, that he was forced to fall with his maſter to the ground, but when the Emperour perceiued that his horſe muſt needes fall, with great lightneſſe he left the ſaddle, leaping on the one ſide, and ſaued himſelfe from the danger that might happen, the horſe when he ſawe himſelfe imbraced with the monſter, was ſo ſcarred and amazed, y with great lightneſſe he roſe vp and ranne from him as an arrow out of a bowe. The Emperour looked to ſee where the king was, and he ſaw him beholding the terrible battaile, and alſo how Victorando was on foot throwne downe by his horſe with the great feare he had, but this looking about of ỹ Emperour was quickly forgotten, for that the monſter aroſe and came againſt him againe with his great tree aloft, readie to diſcharge it vpon him, but he determined to let it ſlip by, as before, and therwith to enter in with him and to ſtrike him, and ſo he did, for the blowe was not ſo ſoone paſt as he ſtepped in, and ſtroke a full blowe at his thigh, but he made but a ſmall wound, by reaſon of the hardneſſe of haire ỹ made great defence, which cauſed the Emperour to meruaile much thereat. This diuelliſh monſter when he ſawe his owne blood, in a mad rage he laide about him with his great club, procuring with his terrible and thicke blowes to deſtroye the Emperour. The great haſt which the monſter made to ſtrike the Emperour was ſuch, that he was conſtrained to vſe all his pollicie and lightneſſe for to cleare himſelfe from thoſe terrible blowes, he ſtroke them ſo faſt, and neuer left anie time of vauntage when that he might hurt him, but ſtill continually ſtroke and cut him on thoſe hairie legs, that hee made more then fiue wounds, in ſuch ſort, that the grounde whereas they were was couered with the bloud of the monſter, the monſter ſeeing himſelfe ſo troubled, and onely with one knight, he began to double his blowes in ſo great haſt, that the Emperour was not able to cleare himſelfe from thē, but that needs he muſt receiue one of them, and if it had not bene but that the Emperour did ward it with the edge of his ſworde and with his ſhalpe ſhielde, it had fallen out worſe

with

ties in their Pallaices, but they alwaies had a care vnto the maine chaunce, to ſee if their hoſt did come. Victorando who alſo was eating of the veniſõ, with a verie good grace he ſaid: I do beleue that our hoſt will not like of our ouermuch diligence herin, whẽ he ſhall find lacking ſome of his fleſh, I beleeue they will demaund the more of vs for our ſhot: One for one ſaid ỹ king, my ſtomacke being ſatiſfied, then wil I heare them all, & let them demaund for their reckoning what they pleaſe: I am afraid ſaid the Emperour ỹ it muſt be paid with fiſts, for ỹ we haue ben ſo bold to eate their victuals without liſence. Yet in one thing I do comfort my ſelfe ſaid the king, for I haue nothing to loſe, & againe I am in company with ỹ power of the beſt knight in the world, & in saying this they held their peace, for ỹ they heard a ruſhing amongſt ỹ buſhes, which made them to leaue of their talke, & to put themſelues in a readineſſe, whatſoeuer ſhould happen, ſo they aroſe vp & laced on their helmes, & beholding what it ſhould be ỹ cauſed ỹ great noiſe, they ſawe ỹ it were two great giants as big as two mightie Pine trees, who wõut ſeeing their gueſts went into their caue, ỹ one of them brought vpon his back a mightie great hart, & the other a great briſtled Boze, & when they found fire in the caue & the lack of their fleſh, they gaue great ſhrikes & returned out of their caue. Then the king wõ laughing ſaid: In good faith I do beleeue ỹ they come to demaund of vs the reckoning & to pay ỹ ſhot. And being in this ſpeech ỹ giants came forth of the caue & put themſelues in place wher as they might ſee thẽ, & like beaſts, without saying any word each of them aſſaulted his contrarie. The valiant king drew out his broad cutting ſword, & went forth to receiue him in the way ỹ was comming towards him, the Emperour did ỹ like with his precious ſword in his hand, the Gyants both together diſcharged their heauie & mightie blowes, the Emperour with his accuſtomed diſcreation cauſed the Gyant to loſe his blow, & therewith entred into him with great lightneſſe, & ſtroke him vnder ỹ ſide with the point of his ſword, & by reaſon of his ill armour, it appeared on ỹ other part of his bodie, cauſing him to fal dead to ỹ ground, & loking aſide

for

for his companion the king, he saw ỳ at one blow he cut of ỳ gyants leg, who with no lesse noise then the other fell to the ground, but when they saw this resistance to be so quickly finished, ỳ king laughing said: In good faith, seeing it hath pleased God to help vs so quickly to pay our reckoning, I doe not meane to depart but to carrie with vs some prouision, & therewith cõmanded Victorando to take that venison which they brought, & the bread which remained, & to carry it with him, so they returned their way, not knowing whether they went, for ỳ the more they trauailed the more they put themselues into ỳ forrest, till night drew on, at which time they founde themselues amongest a companie of thicke trees, there they were constrained to alight and lodge themselues vnder those thicke trees, & cõmanded to take out of ỳ which they brought for their supper, which being done they toke their rest till the next morning, which appeared vnto them very faire & cleere, & at such time as the Sun had spread abroad his beames vpon those high & mightie trees they retourned vnto their vnknowen way, till at ỳ last they chaunced into a narow path, not much vsed, the which they followed, the Emperour rode before, & the king next, & Victorando came after them, and in this order they trauailed a good while without mistrusting of anie thing ỳ should happen, & trauailing in this sorte, vpon a sodaine (without knowing ỳ occasion) Cornerino started, and rose vp with his fore fæt, & gaue a turne in ỳ aire backward, likewise the beaule Elephant stretched out his long & broade snout, & began to make a hoarse noise, the horse of Victorando being afraide, had almost throwen his master vnder fæt, wherewith the Emperour and the king looked rounde about them on euery side, to sæ who or what it was that caused so much feare, but they sawe nothing, and it was the occasion that they were somewhat troubled. Then the king said, what a diuell should this be that hath caused so great alteration in our horses, hath hære passed by anie fiend, or doth there any diuell remaine lodged amongest these bushes, well let it bæ what it shall be, for with the fauour of God, if I dœ mæte him I will giue him his paiment, for scarring of our horses,

for

The Emperour finding the aunswere of the Empresse so much to his contentment, he imbraced and kissed her with great loue, and straight he arose and procured to put in order his departure. And arming himselfe with the armour of Meridia, and mounted vpon his great horse, he commaunded to call the King, for to make himselfe ready to beare him cõpany, at the which he receiued great delight: and being in a readinesse, there was brought vnto him an Elephant, vppon the which he mounted. And so taking his leaue of his vassailes and subiects, the Emperour gaue them great charge to haue respect of obedience vnto their naturall Lady. Then the Emperour and Bramidoro departed from the Citie, & toke with them in their company but one young gentleman, who was sonne vnto the Duke of Alafonte, whose name was called Victorando, and he was of a very good disposition: so they trauailed fiue dayes, without finding anye aduenture worth the telling, but the seuenth day they chaunced into a great Forrest, full of meruailous mightie and thicke Trees, and by reason that the way was very narrow and not much vsed, they strayed and lost their right way, & vnawares they were so inclosed amongst ỳ trees and bushes that they could not by any meanes finde, where they had lost their way. So all the rest of the day, they did no other thing but ride here and there in the Forrest amongst the trees, but it was greate ease vnto them, for that the wildernes was very plain grouñd although full of trees. The night came so vpõ them, that they were constrained to alight from their horses, and amongest those trees, did eat of such victuals as Victorãdo had brought with him: and the Emperour and the King did passe ỳ time in such communication as they thought best to their cõtentment. In this order they passed the time till sleepe came vpon them, whereas they rested till next morning, the which being come, the Emperour mounted vpon his horse, and the King vpon his Elephant, and they returned to seeke the way, and going this way and that way, to see if they could happen on the way which should carie them out of that Forrest, they hapned to come vnto a little mountayne all of harde stone,

in the which was a great caue, and thether they went, and alighting from their horses, they entred into the caue, & found that on the one part it was full of haye, and vpon the walls was hãged many quarters of vẽion, & of other wilde beasts, & found no other thing at all. & therewith they returned out againe, & went vnto the top of that rocke ouer the caue, & looked about them on euerie side to see if there were any person thereabouts, but they could see no body. Then the King Bramidoro sayd, it shall be good seeing that we haue flesh to see if there be any fire, that we may roste therof for to eate, for that I promise you I am so hungry, that if they tarry long, they shall see that there hath bene in their lodging those, that haue had good will to eate. Then the Emperour laughed and said, I do promise you of truth that I do finde my selfe with no lesse desire to eate then you, and your counsell doth like me well, and me thinke that our fortune should be the better if we could finde bread. The king sayd, I care not, for that I haue seene flesh, & therewith I do thinke to fill my stomacke, and for any other thing, we shall see what is to be found therin. Well let vs go in sayd ẏ Emperour, for I feare me, that we shall be made to paye the shot. Therefore let vs bee well aduised & looke vnto your selues. Let me haue my bodie and stomacke satisfied, sayd the king, which now with hunger is somewhat troubled, & afterward at the paying of ẏ reckoning they shall see what money I haue, & alighting againe from their horse, they entered into the caue, & seeking if there wer any fire, they found some raked vp in ẏ ashes, at ẏ which the king receiued great ioy, so straight way they made a fire with woode, ẏ they founs there, & put to roast halfe a deere, which they thought to be ẏ fairest amongst all ẏ rest ẏ were ther, & looking about they found in another hole which was in ẏ wall of the caue good store of bread, although it was somewhat browne, & tooke therof ẏ which they thought sufficient. And when their venison was rosted, they tooke it out of the caue, & sat downe vnder certaine trees, which were hard by a little riuer therby, & did eat so sauerly & with so good a tast, as though they had bene furnished with their accustomed dain-

ket, the Gyaunt when he saw it, with an earnest furye hee thrust himselfe in thereat. The worthy Prince seeing him so hastie, with both his hands he thrust at him, and made him to recoyle backe a good way, and sayd. Keepe thee backe thou furious beast, for here thou hast no entring without my license. To whom the Gyant sayd: What dost thou thinke or pretend to do? To make battaile with thee sayd ỹ prince, therfore if thou wilt enter into the battaile, thou must come in alone. I am verye well content sayd the King, the which he spake with a great deale more meekenesse, than his greate pride did giue him license, or could suffer, and all to see him within the castle: for that he was perswaded with himselfe, that if he were once within, there were not in all the world one Knight that could ouercome him, neither make any resistaunce against his power. So Rosicleer commaunded that the gate might be open, whereat the Giaunt entred, and also his great Elephant. When the King was entred, the Troyan had great care and diligence to shut the gate again, whom when the King knew, the more was his griefe: but wt the great anger that he had, he made no stay, till such time as he came into the great Court, and there he mounted vppon his furious and great beast, and Argolio brought vnto his Lord his horse, and without profiting himselfe of the stirrop, he leped into the saddle. So when he was on horse back, he layd hand on his sword, and the Gyant on his great cutting fauchon, & either of them assaulted the other, wt mortal blowes. Here it is requisit & necessary to leaue these two warriors in their battell till time shal serue, and I will tell you of the Emperour of Trapisond, the great and mightie Alfebo, who as you haue heard, when he vnderstood how ỹ proud Brusaldoro without all feare of his Epitaph, had armed himselfe wt the armor of Bramarant, he was straight taken in two extremities, ỹ one for to accomplish ỹ which he had promised, and the other for ỹ he would not leaue his Emperiall Empire, but calling to remembrance, how ỹ the Empres had a great delight in hunting, one morning betimes before that they did arise, he sayd. My Lady & Empres, it is not vnknowen vnto

you,

you,the dutie we owe vnto our noble courages, and howe much we are bounde by our high estates, to maintaine our foregotten honor,ỹ which with great losse of our blood and sweatings of our bodies we haue obtained. And this is of a certaintie, that he is more to be commended,ỹ doth sustaine that which he hath gotten,then he which now doth win it, although ỹ fortune doth fauor him: for many times when a man is in ỹ top of his highnes,he grãteth things,ỹ although he be in the best of his quietnes & rest, taking his ease, yet he is bound to accomplish & performe his promise. It is wel knowen that ỹ armor of Bramarant was put for a Tropheo or memorie,vpon a high and mightie Pine trée, with an Epitaph written,in the which my brother did promise & giue his word,to make defence, against whosoeuer would take them away,and I likewise did make the same promise. It is come now vnto my knowledge,that a More with his bolde courage,hath not only made little accompt of that which we haue promised, but also with the force of his arme, he hath slaine my verye great friende Zoylo the Prince of Tartaria, for the which I am bound to seeke out this More,for that I cannot say against the will of my brother: this is my pretence,(my good Lady and Empres)and I would be very glad that it might be with your good will. The Empresse who was very attentiue vnto ỹ words which ỹ Emperour Alfebo had spoken,she sayd. My Lord and Emperour, from the first time that I heard these newes which you now speake off, I did imagine that which now I haue heard,and I cannot denie that in seeing my selfe without you,it will be welnere my death, for that the heart with the which I now sustaine my life will be absent: but for all that, considering that it is a thing that doth concerne your honor, I will rather suffer the death in your absence, then disturbe you in that,which you are so much bound to fulfill. Therefore you may ordayne your departure when your pleasure is, and I do desire you,that your returne may be with as much brevitie as maye be,and carrye with you in your companye the King Bramidoro.

¶How the King Fangomadan came without knowing of any thing that had happened in the Castle, and how he found the entrie closed, & of the battaile that was betweene him & Rosicleer. Cap. 18.



Exceding was the sorrow & care the Quéene and her daughter passed that night, alwaies loking for the comming of the king Fangomadan, the Princelle likewise was not without some feare, mistrusting some other inconuenience. The Grecke alone was he, that toke no care of those matters. The next day following, whē they wer at diuner, there came vnto them, one of ỹ seruants that were in the Castle, and sayd vnto the Prince. Famous Knight, the King Fangomadan is at the Castle gate, showe vnto vs thy pleasure what we doe. There was not one that were there present but lost their colours at those words, saving onely the Grecke and the Troyan, who rising vp from the table, they commaunded that the draw bridge shoulde be let downe, and Argoho to bring them their armour, which with a trice was brought vnto them, and they armed themselues. The Grecke Prince loked out at one of the windowes which was ouer the gate of the Castle, to sée howe many people he brought with him, and he sawe that he had with him but twentie Knights, and certaine foote men. And the King was mounted vpon a mightie Elephant, who seeing that the bridge was not let downe, neither the gates open he began to call out aloud, making a meruailous noise, and commaunded his people to knocke verye harde at the ring of the gate.

The Grecke Prince, although his monstrous greatnesse did seeme to him terrible, yet he esteemed no more his furie, then as though he had bene very humble and milde, neither feared he anye thing of his greate pride, but with a high voyce he sayde. What a knocking makest thou there, thou monstrous Gyaunt? What haste hast thou to

reuenge

reuenge thy anger vpon the ring of the gate, thou must vnderstand that thou canst not enter in here, but thou must make thy conquest of the entrie with the force of thy strong arme. The Gyant being greatly amazed of that he heard, cast vp his eies to see who he was that was so bolde, and without curtesie spake vnto him those words, and he saw that he was a well set knight, of him vnknowen, and sayde vnto him: What is this that thou sayest, am not I king of this Iland and ouer all this land? Thou wert (sayd Roscleer) but now for thy great pride and foolish hardinesse thou hast lost it, and it is now in my power: Where be my sonnes that kept it, sayd the Gyant, what is become of them? The Drake sayd, one of them is slaine by the strength of my arme, & the other yelded, fulfilling that which he doth owe vnto the order of knighthode, as it becommeth a good knight. Oh immortall Gods, sayd the king, is it possible to be true that I doe heare, that so vile a wretch as thou art should be the occasion of so much harme? O thou traitor and false knight, command the gates to be opened, for that thy great strength shall little auaile thee, if they be opened vnto mee. And if thou dost not command them to be open, I will so vse the matter, that neither the deapth of the moate, nor towers of the castell, shal be able to make anie resistance against me for thy defence. And with the great madnesse which he had, he drew out his great and broad cutting sword, and with both his hands he stroke at the gate, as though he would cut it in peces, but all his labour was in vaine, for that the gates were verie strong, and therewith the Prince Roscleer determined to descende downe into the Court, and commaunded the Troyan that in the meane time that the battaile endured, that he should haue great care of the keeping of the gate. And tooke his healme of Argolio and laced it on, and also a strong and well seeled shield, and when he came vnto the gate, he saw that the king was a foote, & beating at the gate with all his strength, to whom the Prince sayd,

Tarrie a while and I will open the gate vnto thee, make not so much hast. And in saying these words he opened a wic-

¶How the King Fangomadan came without knowing of any thing that had happened in the Castle, and how he found the entrie closed, & of the battaile that was betweene him & Rosicleer. Cap. 18.



Ereding was the sorrow & care the Quéene and her daughter passed that night, alwaies looking for the comming of the king Fangomadan, the Princelle likewise was not without some feare, mistrusting some other inconuenience. The Greeke alone was he, that toke no care of those matters. The next day following, whē they wer at dinner, there came vnto them, one of ỹ seruants that were in the Castle, and sayd vnto the Prince. Famous Knight, the King Fangomadan is at the Castle gate, showe vnto vs thy pleasure what we doe. There was not one that were there present but lost their colours at those words, saving onely the Greeke and the Troyan, who rising vp from the table, they commaunded that the draw bridge should be let downe, and Argolio to bring them their armour, which with a trice was brought vnto them, and they armed themselues. The Greeke Prince loked out at one of the windowes which was ouer the gate of the Castle, to see howe many people he brought with him, and he sawe that he had with him but twentie Knights, and certaine foote men. And the King was mounted vpon a mightie Elephant, who seeing that the bridge was not let downe, neither the gates open, he began to call out aloud, making a marueilous noise, and commaunded his people to knocke verye harde at the ring of the gate.

The Greeke Prince, although his monstrous greatnesse did seeme to him terrible, yet he esteemed no more his furie, then as though he had bene very humble and milde, neither feared he anye thing of his greate pride, but with a high voyce he sayde. What a knocking makest thou there, thou monstrous Gyaunt? What haste hast thou to

reuenge

reuenge thy anger vpon the ring of the gate, thou must vnderstand that thou canst not enter in here, but thou must make thy conquest of the entrie with the force of thy strong arme. The Gyant being greatly amazed of that he heard, cast vp his eies to see who he was that was so bolde, and without curtesie spake vnto him these words, and he saw that he was a well set knight, of him vnknowen, and sayde vnto him: What is this that thou sayest, am not I king of this Iland and ouer all this land? Thou wert (sayd Rosicleer) but now for thy great pride and foolish hardinesse thou hast lost it, and it is now in my power: Where be my sonnes that kept it, sayd the Gyant, what is become of them? The Drake sayd, one of them is slaine by the strength of my arme, & the other yelded, fulfilling that which he doth owe vnto the order of knighthode, as it becommeth a good knight. Oh immortall Gods, sayd the king, is it possible to be true that I doe heare, that so vile a wretch as thou art should be the occasion of so much harme? O thou traitor and false knight, command the gates to be opened, for that thy great strength shall little auaile thee, if they be opened vnto mee. And if thou dost not command them to be open, I will so vse the matter, that neither the deapth of the moate, nor towers of the castell, shal be able to make anie resistance against me for thy defence. And with the great madnesse which he had, he drew out his great and broad cutting sword, and with both his hands he stroke at the gate, as though he would cut it in peces, but all his labour was in vaine, for that the gates were verie strong, and therewith the Prince Rosicleer determined to descende downe into the Court, and commaunded the Troyan that in the meane time that the battaile endured, that he should haue great care of the keeping of the gate, and take his healme of Argolio and laced it on, and also a strong and well staeled shield, and when he came vnto the gate, he saw that the king was a foote, & beating at the gate with all his strength, to whom the Prince sayd.

Tarrie a while and I will open the gate vnto thee, make not so much hast. And in saying these words he opened a wic-

the same and like vpon this vnfortunate Quéene, whose power hath profited her very little. This good Græke béing tender harted, when he heard so great lamentation he sayde: Quéene, dw not meruaile, for those which dw offend God, dw hope of no other thing, but punishment for their sinnes, & so those that liue with pride, cannot let but to be payed with the like. I dw desire thée to commaund the Princesse to bée giuen vnto me, whom thou hast in prison, for that she doth not deserue to be intreated amongest you as a prisoner, but as a Lady. The Quéene without giuing him any aunswer, threw vnto him two keyes which she had tied at her girdle, and afterward sayd vnto him: Vnder these thou shalt finde that which thou sékest, and enioye the glory which thou hast got by this occasion, til such time as he doth come, who with his mightie arme, will reuenge the great wrong, which thy good fortune hath brought to passe. The Gréek take ỳ keies, and being led by that Gentlewoman (who wold neuer leaue him) they went out of that parler, and went vp a payre of staires, which brought them vnto another hall of no lesse bignesse then the first, and with the keye she opened a dwre, and sayd: Enter O Knight, which hast as much cruelitie as prowesse and strength, and there thou shalt finde her whome thou sékest. Faire Gentlewoman sayd Rosicleer, I dw not determine to enter, but that your highnesse shall goe before. This Princesse giuing a grieuous sigh entered in first, and brought him into a faire chamber, and then opened another dwre, wherin they entred into another hall, very well garnished with many and faire windowes, which was towardes the Sea: at one of the which, there sate the Princesse, who was combing of her faire haire, and with her there was a Damsell, the which helde the glasse in her hands before her. When Rosicleer saw her, he receiued great pleasure and delyght, and for that the Princesse shoulde knowe him, he pulled off his healme, and straight waye she knewe him, and with great alteration she arose vp against him, and sayde. O Græke Prince, the flower of all Knighthoode in the

worlde, hath Fortune so much fauoured me, that all my griefes and sorrowes be finished, and likewise those of the prince my spouse, to whom ỹ Prince answered with great reioycing and sayd. Most mightie Princesse, God of his bountifull mercie, hath deliuered thée from so great care and trouble: wherefore know that you are clére of all thraldome for this present. The sister of the Gyant, when she heard that the knight was one of the Grécke Princes, whose valour was blazed throughout all the world, her paine & griefe was so much the more, hauing before her so worthy an aduersaric, greatly fearing the comming of her father, lest ther shuld happen vnto him some inconuenience. So Rosicleer and the Princesses went out of that chamber, & the faire Gianteſſe folowed them, the Princesse had great desire to sée Meridian, but it was not long after, that in the case as before was told you he came. I cannot hére declare the great delight which the two receiued when they saw themselues together. Wherfore I do leaue the consideration thereof vnto them, that firmly and truly do loue, and hath bene absent with like succession of troubles and sorrow. The Grécke was not forgetfull, to command that the Prince Meridian, should be put into a faire bed, and when he had ordayned that which was necessarie for all things, he asked for somewhat to eate, the which straight way was done, and the Tables layde in the chamber, where, Meridian laye, and all them of the Castle, were very much amazed, at the lybertie of Meridian, farre much more then of all that which happened before in the Castle.

The Grécke Prince with amorous words and swéte persuasions, caused the Quéene and her Daughter to sit downe at the Table to eate, béeing somewhat comforted, for that they knewe howe that Brandafidel was without daunger of death, for that of them and of all the rest that were in the Castle, he was verye well beloued for his great vertue.

with great trouble, but the Græke who was verie angrie to se himselfe so intreated with boies and seruants, with a trice he was with the Gyant, and before that he could put himselfe on foote, he stroke him so terrible a blow with both his hands vpon the head, that he cut it in two peeces, and he fell dead to the ground. These seruantes when they sawe that their Lord was slaine, they all ranne awaie making a great noise. This worthie Græke when he saw that the fierce giant was dead, and that he was cleere from that conflict, hee went towards that place whereas he left the first Gyant, & when he came vnto him he pulled off his healme, at which time he heard one which from the windowes made a greate noise and sayd: O cruell knight, let this suffice thee, cease thy furie, with the great harme which thou hast done, and do not shew thy wrath vpon that Gyant, who hath no power for to make his defence, and if that his valour is not sufficient for to abate thy ire, let this sorrowfull infant moue thee to compassion, whom thou hast caused to suffer great paine & griefe: The Prince loked vp and procured to see who it was that spake vnto him, and he perceiued that it was a maide of a meruailous great disposition of bodie and verie faire of face, and weeping, vnto whom he sayd: Faire Gentlewoman, the cause of my cruelitie hath bene for to disturbe the great cruelitie which you haue vsed with the sonnes of the Emperour Alicandro within this Castell, and touching this knight, you may beleeue me, that his death will be as much griefe vnto me as vnto you, for the great curtesie which I haue seene in him. At that time the Gyant was somewhat come to himselfe, for by reason that the aire had catched him, he had some remembraunce, of the which the Prince was verie gladde, and turning vnto the Ladie he sayd. Faire Gentlewoman, if there be anie seruants in this castell, commaund them to put this knight into some place that he maye be cured of his woundes, and therewith he heard great knocking at ý gate, and for to see who it was, he left the Gyaunt and went thether, and asking who was there that with such hast did call, he did vnderstand by his wordes that it was Orillides the

Tur-

Troyan, who could not come thether anie sooner, for that he went a foote. To whome the Greeke did open the gate with great reioycing, and shutting the gate againe they returned into the Court. When the Troyan sawe so greate slaughter which was done there, he straight waie understode that the knight was not come thether for nothing. This Gentlewoman was with her brother, and did greatly lamente bewaile his unhappie misfortune, who although he was somewhat come to his remembrance, yet had he not so much strength to arise vpon his feete. The Prince commaunded, that with great discretion, he shoulde be taken vp by force of armes, and so carryed vnto his chamber, whereas without causing him for to receiue griefe, he shuld be vnarmed, ỹ which was done with great diligence, and he was cured by the hands of his sister, who made great lamentation for him, whom Brandafidel (for so was the Gyaunt called) did comfort with verye sweete and amorous words, the which caused the Prince to haue a great affection towards him, and it was with greate reason, for that the gyaunt was adorned with very much vertue. Orillides seeing all things in so good order, left ỹ Prince who was seeking of the Princesse, and toke a horse of the Giants, and a palfray, and returned to fetch Meridian. So after that Brandafidel was cured, the Prince demaunded in great hast for the Princesse, and the Giants sister was constrained to go with him to bring him whereas she was. So they entred into a faire large hal, which led them into a parler, whereas was an old gianteese of a marueilous good proportion, who made great lamentation, for that it was tolde her of all that had passed in the Castle, who had in her company more then thirtie Ladyes and Gentlewomen, which did comfort her: to whom the sister of the Giant sayd, Lady, this knight, to whom the Gods hath giuen so much power, doth demaund the Princesse of the Scitas our prisoner, for whose cause, all this harme and euill happened vnto vs. This Lady with a grieuous sigh beholding the Prince said. O cruell murderer of my welbeloued sonnes, and faithfull seruaunts: make an ende to execute thy crueltie, shewing

him in great haſt, he ſtroke him vpon one of his legs, that his harneſſe deceiued him, and he wounded him vnto the bone, but for all that the giant did not leaue to lay vpon him very thicke blowes, as one that was very expert in that exerciſe. It was great delight to ſée how the Grécke did cléere himſelf with great lightneſſe from his blowes without féeling anie wearineſſe. The Gyaunt with the greate furie that he had, made great haſt in ſtriking at the Prince, which was the occaſion that he wared wearie, and was verie ſore vexed and troubled, and when the Grécke perceiued his faint and troubled ſtomacke, he entred in & out with him with great lightneſſe, procuring for to hurt the Gyant, and did it with greate eaſe, although the Gyant did not let likewiſe with great haſt to ſtrike mightie and terrible blowes at him. This Prince procured ſtill to ſée if he could finde time, that alonely with one blow he might make an end of the battaile without any perill to himſelfe, notwithſtanding he did not let to wounde him where he might, in many places the Gyant was all imbrued with bloud which iſſued out of the woundes he had, and although they were not greate, yet they were troubleſome. This battaile indured a long time, for which cauſe, and the greate loſſe of bloud, this Gyaunt beganne to ware fæble and weake. When the Grécke perceiued this, and ſéeing that he did not make his aſſault with ſo great haſt as before, and although he was wearie with ſtriking ſo manye blowes, which brought him almoſt to an ende, yet nowe againe with great haſt he ſtroke the Gyant many and terrible blowes, then the Gyant ſéeing himſelfe ſo ill intreated, and knowing his end to be at hand, he cryed out making a great noiſe, which range through the aire, blaſpheming againſt his Gods, and called all his Pages and houſehold ſeruaunts, and ſayd: O you loſt creatures why doe you not come and helpe me? At whoſe noiſe and calling there came together aboue thirtie ſeruaunts, ſome with clubbes and ſtaues, and ſome with ſtones, and compaſſed him rounde about, throwing ſtones at him ſo thicke, that hée coulde not approch vnto them, for they durſt not come nigh vnto him, the ſtones rayned

ned more thicker vpon the Greeke, then ỹ frosen haile stones doth in the moneth of March, throwne downe by force out of obscure and tempestuous clouds, and although his armour were verie strong, yet for all that he did not let to receiue greate trouble by reason of those thicke blowes. The Greeke went towards them for to hurt them, but they ran in at the doores to saue themselues, as commonly they who doth baite a Bull with dartes in a trenched place, after they haue gored him, they hide themselues in corners to saue them from the furie of his hornes, and tourning himselfe they straight waye torment him behinde: in this sorte did his seruaunts intreate this Greeke, till such time that hee was constrained by his ire to goe againſt them, shaking off his sworde, then as before they ranne awaie. So the Greeke returned whereas the Gyaunt was, who was so wearie, that hee could not remoue out of the place where hee had lefte him, who clearing himselfe from one terrible blowe which the furyous Gyant stroke at him, presently retourned the lyke blowe, which lighted vpon his left shoulder, that hee opened the hard harneſſe and the flesh vnto the bone. This blowe was not so soone giuen him, when that with great haſt he stroke him with both his handes on his breaſt, and by reason that hee was weake and wearie, hee needed not much strength to ouerthrowe him to the ground, who receiued on his backe a terrible fall. The Greeke lykewise with the great strength that hee put to ouerthrowe him, fell to the grounde, but it fell out better with him then hee thought, for that falling, he rowled a good waye from the place whereas the Gyant fell, and straight waie with a trice hee arose vp againe, and found himselfe all to be compaſſed againe with the seruants, who battered at him with staues and stones, as many times a wall is battered with Artillerie. Some of them woulde haue runne and embraſed themselues with him, thinking that he had not beene so nimble as he was, but when they saw him on foote, they retyred backe againe with greate feare. At this time the Gyaunt beganne to arise, although it was

with

wounds great aboundance of bloud, ſo in the ende, whether with werineſſe of the long contempt, or with the loſſe of ſo much bloud, the Gyaunt could not kæpe himſelf on fote, but fell downe vnto the ground, as one ẏ were dead. The prince who had thought he had bene dead, did not receue much delight, for that he was a reaſonable Gyant, and of much vertue and courteſie. But yet in great haſt he went to pul of his helme, and then he hard that out of the Caſtel they began to crye out and ſayde, holde thy hande euill knight, and doe not make an ende to kill our naturall Lord, for in doing it thou ſhalt dye the death. And loking about him to ſæ who it was that ſpake vnto him thoſe threatning wordes, he ſaw deſending downe at a broade payre of ſtayres to the number of fiftene knights, who with a great ruſhing and noyſe, being all very well armed, and ſemed to be very good knights, for that they were of a good diſpoſition. And as he ſaw them cõming, with a furious courage, he encountred them and ſayde. The name which you haue giuen me, I will make that hereafter you ſhall vſe it no more, or els I will loſe my lyfe. And therwith he put himſelfe amongſt them, with ſo great furye, as the cruell and hongery Wolfe doeth amongſt a company of ſimple ſhæpe, and ſtroke the firſt with ſo great ſtrength, that with the fury of his arme, he cloue his head a ſunder in the middeſt, but yet he could not let but receue great hurt of his perſon, for that he was aſſalted by them, who deſired to reuenge the death of theyr Lorde. The other Gyant cryed out againſt them, reuiling them with marualous foule wordes, for that one alone knight ſhould ſo long endure aliue in their handes. But this miſerable people did not know with whom they made this contenſion, for if they had knowne & vnderſtode who was before them, they would not haue hilde this battaile, for they did not know how they had to do with the ſonne of ẏ Emperor Trebatio, againſt whome the Diamant Rockes doe ſeme weake, as it apeared by the great ſtrength he had in wounding of them. For ſome he ſlew out right, and ſome were very ſore hurt, but notwithſtãding of thoſe which did remaine, he was aſſalted very deſperately, but this Greke

ſæing ſtill their contention, his courage the more increaſed, and toke his ſworde in both his hands, & ſtroke one of them ſo terrible a blow vpon the ſhoulder, that his ſworde paſſed downe vnto his waſt: ſo there remained but fiue of them, who altogether did ſtrike at him ſuch fiue blowes, ỹ it made him to ſtoope with both his knees to the ground, the which the Prince did ſæle verye much, neuertheleſſe with greate ſtrength he aroſe vp againe, in ſpite of all them that ſtroke him, and it was vnto their harme, for that he was not ſo ſoone vp, when he ſtroke him that was next hand ſo terrible a blow vpon his helme, that he cut him downe vnto the ſtomacke in two peeces, and caſting about his ſworde ouer his head, he ſtroke another on the necke, that he made his heade flye from his ſhoulders, to the ground, the other three which remained, ſæing the great ſlaughter that was made on their companions, and likewiſe themſelues to be hurt and werye, they procured to runne away vp the ſtaires, and they thinking to flye from their death, fell into the like daunger, and rather worſe, for that at the head of the ſtaires, they met with the other Giant who was deſcending downe, giuing terrible ſtrikes, and meeting them with his mightie cutting ſworde, he cut them all to peeces ſaying. Take the payment ỹ ſuch cowardes do deſerue. So leauing them dead, he deſcended downe the ſtaires, and found this ſtrong Roſicleer, leaning with his breaſt vpon the pomell of his ſworde, eaſing himſelfe ſomwhat of the great trauaile paſſed, but it indured with him but a ſmall time, for that the Gyant lift vp his broade and mightie ſworde, and went toward him to ſtrike him, but the Prince ſtode ſtill tarrying his comming, and was determined to make ỹ battaile more by pollicie then by ſtrength, fearing that the wearineſſe which he had receiued ſhould bee the occaſion that his force ſhould faile him and his courage abate, if that peraduenture he ſhould haue to doe with more then he had at that preſent before him. So when the Gyant came whereas the Prince was, he diſcharged his mightie ſtroke for to wound the Greeke, but he with a light leap cleered himſelfe from the furie of that blowe, and cloſing with

him

withdrawe himſelfe from the windowe, leauing Roſicleer verie well ſatiſfied with his courteſie. So within a lyttle while after he heard them opening the gates of the Caſtle, & letting downe the draw bridge. Then the couragious Græke toke the bridge and put himſelf within the caſtel into a very faire & large court, all adorned round about with rich windowes, and on the one ſide a verie faire Orchard, accompanied with verie ſwæte & odoriferous flowers, & all manner of ſwæte hearbs, in the which were many that were dreſſing thoſe træs and hearbes, & putting them in order, ſome were occupyed in making of fine hedges and arbours, & others in huſbanding the træs and cutting of them, others in digging of the ground, & others in ſetting of hearbes, who when they ſawe Roſicleer, they all ſtayed from their worke, & imputed that knight to be verie vnwiſe to giue that enterpriſe, and amongſt them was the Gyant who laſt of all ſpake vnto Roſicleer at the windowe, with a mightie great club in his hand, and for the defence of his bodie a ſimple harneſſe, who ſayde vnto Roſicleer: Come in, come in, thou hardie fœle, for that thou ſhalt receiue the paiment of thy vndiſcræt & fœlish boldneſſe. The Prince without making anie aunſwere went on forwards, & entering in at the other gate, he came into a very faire and paued Court, the which was compaſſed about with thræ faire galleries one aboue another, the Prince received great delight to ſæ the excellent worke of them. So not long after there deſcended downe a paire of ſtaires the firſt giant, armed with ſtrong armour, his ſhælde on his arme, and a great broad cutting ſword in his hand, who without ſpeaking anie word aſſaulted him with mortall battaile. The worthie Græke was in a readineſſe for to make his defence with his ſword in his hand. The Gyant ſtroke at him a terrible blow right downe, but the Græke with a light leap made him to miſſe his blow, and his ſword fell downe vpon the pauement, in ſuch ſort, that it made a great number of ſparkes of fire to flie out, as ſoone as the blowe was paſſed, the Græke ſtroke him vpon the arme, which blow was not verie great, for that he could not verie well reach him vnto his content-

ment,

ment, yet for all that it did not let to cut his armour, flesh and all vnto the hard bone, and although the Gyant did fele the wound somewhat greuous, yet did he procure to dissemble the feling of the paine and griefe, and with the great anger he had to fele himselfe hurt, he threwe his sheelde from him to the ground, and toke his greate sworde fast in both his handes, and returned thinking to haue stroke the Greke with double force more thē before, but he did procure to clere himselfe as he did at the first, striking a blow at the Gyant, thinking to haue stroke him againe on his armes, but hee could not reach him, but it lighted vpon the Gyants sworde, and the blowe was such, that the force of the stelie blade was not sufficient to make resistaunce, but that the sworde of the Greke did enter in and made a great gappe, but the Gyauntes third blowe was such, that without resistaunce it chaunced vppon the Grekes sheelde, and all that euer it bit it carryed to the grounde, and parte of it lyghted on his healme, in such sort that Rosicleer was constrained to stoope with his knees to the grounde, but with greate lyghtnesse he arose vp againe, and being verie wrathfull that he had receyued such a blowe, hee let lose his sheelde, and stepped to the Gyaunt with his sworde in both his handes, and stroke him vpon his left shoulder, and the blowe glaunced, but if it had chaunced to haue stroke him full, at that blowe hee had made an ende of the battaile, but for all that hee remayned verie sore hurt, and his sworde fell to the grounde, and raised manye sparkes of fire. The Gyaunt was verye much amazed at the power and strength of his enimie, but not in such sorte, that it shoulde cause in him anie weaknesse, but rather with a newe courage hee retourned vnto his begunne battaile, with so greate courage as though he had receiued no hurt at all, at that time both of them stroke the one at the other with great strength & power, although the Gyaunt was verie much disturbed by reason of his wounds, but yet for all that he shewed greate prowesse. This battayle and contencion betweene them continued more then two long houres, in which time there went from his

wounds

I would haue bene very glad, ſayd Roſicleer, to haue founde the king thy Father, for that I doe vnderſtand, that it ſhould be he, who dyd aſſalt and take the Prince of the Scitas, & the worthy Troyan. And I am come to giue him to vnderſtand, how he ſhould entertaine and intreate, ſuch knights as they are, and not with ſo great pryde to put them vnto ſuch ſorow and paine, & kepe the princes in priſon, vſing them as though they were his vaſſailes, who had done ſome cruel & haynous offence againſt his owne perſon, or as rebells againſt their naturall Lorde and Prince, but he hath bene the bolder, for that he doth knowe they are a great waye from their owne countries. And I doe much maruaile, that ſuch a perſon as thou art, wilt conſent to the doing of ſuch crueltie, for that it doth apeare, thou art ſufficiently furniſhed with ſtature and ſtrength. And thou ſemeſt vnto me, to be a very good knight, which doth bynde thée to acknowledge great modeſtie, & not to miniſter or conſent vnto ſuch crueltie. But I doe ſée that thou art voide of all, and that thou haſt no knowledge of the goodneſſe whereunto thou art bound. Therefore if thou doeſt maintaine that which thy Father doth vpholde and ſuſtaine in this Caſtell and Iland, is not euill: I will make thée to ſay the contrary, both of vs being to gether, therefore chuſe whether thou wilt graunt me frée entry into the Caſtell, or whether thou wilt come forth where as I am. The Gyant dyd not ſhew anye kinde of alteration in his countenance, neither did he aunſwere with any proude wordes, but rather mittigating his yre, he ſayde. Doe not beleue knight, that I am ſo blynde and ſo voyd of knowledge, that I doe not know what is good and what is euill. Neither will I conſent that thou ſhalt ſpeake euill of that which my father hath done, but rather I tell thée, ỹ I will venter my perſon in his defence: therefore I bid thée to abyde, & thou ſhalt ſée how I am not afrayde of the perill, for it ſhalbe more death vnto me to remayne aliue, with my honour blemiſhed, then to dye in his quarell and defence. And I will commaund that the gates of the Caſtel ſhalbe open, and I do warrant that ſo long as our battaile ſhall indure, thou ſhalt not receue any harme. And if

if be ſo that fortune doth runne on thy ſide, then can I not aſſure the any farther, for that I haue a brother, who is not ſo great a friend vnto courteſie as I am. Cauſe the gates to be open, ſayde Roſicleer, and with ẏ help of God I wil make my part good w̄ all. But yet certes Giant beleue me, it doth greatly greue me to ſee thee maintaine ſuch euill, as it doth apeare in theſe thy wordes. And therewith he withdrew him ſelfe from the window, & called for his apparaile, & lykewiſe for his armour. His brother when he heard him ſpeake with ſo great alteration, he loked out at the ſame wyndow, for to ſee who he was that gaue the occaſion. This Gyant loked out with a diueliſh ſemblaunce, and ſeing the knight he ſayd. Art thou he that haſt defyed my brother, wherefore haſt thou accuſed my Father for a traytour, and an euill and naughtie knight. I am he, ſayde Roſicleer, who doe pretend to reuenge the wrong and force done vnto the Prince Meridian. O vile coward, ſayde the Gyant, what diuel hath made thee ſo hardy to make an enterprife, that Mars himſelfe durſt not giue the like attempt. Oh ye Gods, how doe you conſent ẏ one poore knight ſhould haue ſo much boldneſſe, to put himſelfe before me, with ſuch a demaund. It grieued Roſicleer very much, to ſee himſelf ſo intreated, of a proude Giant, & aunſwering him he ſayde. In truth I haue defyed thy brother, who ſemeth to haue more diſcretion then thou haſt. And in ẏ ſame demaund I doe defie thee to mortall battaile. In the which I think to make thee know, the vyleneſſe of thy reaſons, & the baſeneſſe vſed in thy wordes. And take from that huge membred body, thy head, with the force of this my ſtronge arme. At which wordes the Gyant who firſt apeared, and was putting on his armour, ſayde vnto his brother: This knight of his owne vertue and bountie doth come to be ſlayne, or els procure lybertie to the Princes, and he ſemeth to haue ſouerayne hardineſſe and ſtrength, and there is no reaſon, to ſhew thy valour in ſpeaking ſo proudly & vnſemely words, but with the fury of thy vntamed arme. And if the Gods doe graunt vnto him to haue the victory ouer me, there ſhal remayne time for thee to ſhowe thy valoure. And there with he made him to

by two ſonnes of the Gyant, & other knightes, beléeuing that the Prince ſhuld neuer be deliuered out of that terrible torment, and herewith they drew nigh vnto the foote of the Caſtell, whereas they vnhorſed the Prince Meridian, and determined there to take their eaſe and reſt. Orgalio went vnto their barke for to bring prouiſion, for that they had ther great ſtore, at whoſe returne they did eate & refreſhed themſelues, & Meridian recouered ſomewhat more ſtrength, as one ỳ had his ſtomacke cleane voide of victualls, the like did his companion Oriſtedes. So all that night they remained ther, reſting themſelues, and communed of all things what was beſt to be done in their enterpriſe. So they determined ỳ the nert daie the Gréeke ſhuld go alone to the caſtle, for if the Troyan ſhould goe with him, it would poſſible be the occaſion ỳ they would not open the gates, becauſe they knewe the Troyan. So with this determination when the morning was come, the Gréeke aroſe vp and trimmed his armour, & laced on his helme, & put his ſhéeld on his ſhoulder, and toke his leaue of the knights, & toke a narow way which lead him vp the hill vnto the caſtle, he wold not that his Squire ſhuld beare him company, but commanded him to remaine in the ſeruice of ỳ Pagan Prince. Not long after the Troyan being moued of compaſſion, his heart could not ſuffer but néeds he muſt follow the Prince. And being in this determination he laced on his helme and toke his ſhéeld, and with great trauaile for ỳ he was a foote, he began to follow, and toke the waye which the Gréeke went.

¶ How that Roſicleer entered into the caſtle, and of the battaile he had therin, for to bring out of priſon the princeſſe, ſpouſe vnto the Prince Meridian who was in great tormẽt. Cap. 17.



Roſicleer was a great while going vp that little hil, yet at length, although with great trauaile, one houre before that the Sunne did ſhew forth her ſhining beames, he got to the toppe of that hill, from whence he diſcerned

a great and mightie broad plaine, and in it there was a fayre castel, wrought with verie many towers, whose battlements were of so great faireneſſe, that with the Sun they shewed a very faire sight, on the one side the maine sea did beate on it, whose waters striking vpon ỹ rockes did make a meruailous noise, which was causeb by that bastie & furious wind Borias, and on that side whereas the Prince was, it was all compassed about with a verie broade & deepe ditch or moate, and had in it but one entering, and that was verie narrow. The sight of that Castell did giue great contentment vnto them which beheld it, by reason it was so faire, and being so early in the morning, the windowes were not open. The Greeke being all alone musing to himselfe, vppon a sodaine he heard ouer the gate of the Castle a window to be open, wherat looked out a Gyant of so great height as he had not seene the lyke, he was in his shirt, and couered with a night gowne of black veluet, and seeing Rosicleer, he knew by his deuice that he was none of them of the castle, and when he saw and was certified that he was none of his knightes, he said: Knight, what doest thou seeke in this countrie, for as it doth appeare by thy straunge demeanour, thou shouldest be a stranger. To whom the Greeke answered and sayd: Thou saiest truth Gyant I am a straunger, for I neuer dwelt in it, but my fortune hath brought mee hether, beeing driuen by the great furie and tempests of the sea, and beeing a shoare I found in it a verie straunge aduenture, which hath giuen me occasion to come and speake with thee, if it bee thy pleasure to heare mee, eyther within the Castle or without it. At such time as this valyaunt Rosicleer was saying these wordes, hee had a sight of his face, his healme beeing vp, whereat might be seene his faire face, on whom the Gyant did very much behold, and answered.

If thou doest seeke mee I will heare thee in what sorte thou wilt, but if thou doest aske for the King my father, thou shalt vnderstand that he is not in the Iland, but is abroad about businesse, forced of necessitie touching his kingdome.

and the Vulter giuing great and terrible strikes went awaie and was neuer seene after. This Greeke did procure to couer his naked bodie with certaine leaues which he cut from the trees, lamentablie beholding his leane face, which diede well shew the great sorrowe & paine that he had receiued. At this time the Greeke Princes Squire came whereas they were, forasmuch as the inchauntment was ended by the death of the last serpent, and pulling from his backe the cloake which he ware, he put it on the Pagan, therewith the better to couer himselfe. Also the valiaunt Troyan was come againe vnto himselfe, and cast his eies towardes the place whereas the Prince was hanged, to see if he were stil in the same torment, who when he sawe him not, he looked whether he was fallen downe to the ground, supposing that he had ended his life with that torment, but when he saw ỹ furious monster dead, and how the Greeke was contemplating himselfe vppon the Pagan, then with great ioy he went towards them, but much more pleasure he receiued when he knew him to be the sonne of Trebatio, neuertheless all his mirth was mittigated whē he sawe the deadly force of this Prince Meridian, and seeing him in that plight, he could not but lament his beaute & cruell fortune. The Greeke did comfort him, praying him to leaue off his sorrowfull lamentation, giuing him to vnderstand that he was not dead: Orgalio toke his masters helme and ranne vnto the water side which was there at hand, and brought it ful of water, & when he came vnto them, he threw thereof vpon the Pagans face, and being therewith refreshed he came somewhat vnto himselfe, & opening his eies he sawe there his friend Oriltedes, & looking about he beheld another knight, who he likewise knew to be Rosicleer, & straight way he vnderstood ỹ he was the occasion of his libertie, & with a greeuous grone he sayd: O renowmed sonne of the worthie Trebatio, how God doth in all things exalt thy fame, & now seeing ỹ thou hast succoured me in this torment, likewise I beseech thee aide and succour me in one other thing, ỹ I may receiue my full delight, which is, that my louing spouse may likewise be set at libertie, who is captiue in this Iland.

The

The Greke aunſwerid: woꝛthy Pꝛince, my power & ſtrength is ready at your commaundement, & I will imploy all my foꝛce and poleſie in your ſeruice, oꝛ loſe my life in it. Therfoꝛe let vs pꝛocure to depart from hence, & giue me to vnderſtand the occaſion of all this your ſoꝛow and toꝛment: and when that my ſtrong arme cannot ſatiſſie your will, my lyfe ſhall remaine in recompence of my large pꝛomis. So ſtraight way they put the Pagan vpon the Squires Hoꝛſe, & couered him with the ſame cloake, that firſt he had, and toke the Squyꝛe behind him feꝛ to holde him vp, foꝛ that he was ſo leane, that he could not kẽpe himſelfe vp-right in the ſaddle. And therewith they retourned, & toke the way wherin Roſicleer came, & following an other path vnder the hills ſide which bꝛought them vnto a faire Caſtell. And in trauailing by ẏ way, Roſicleer dyd demaund of Oriſtedes the cauſe and increaſing of all his ſoꝛow, to whome he began to tell as followeth.

You ſhall vnderſtand, woꝛthy Pꝛince, that this Iland belonged vnto a very great and monſtrous Gyant, whom the Pꝛince ſlew, foꝛ to ſet at libertie certaine Ladies, the which he caryed captiue. So a ſonne of this Gyant many dayes after, dyd pꝛocure to be reuenged of the death of his father, and followed it ſo hard, that in ẏ ende he founde ſuch occaſion, that he met wt̃ the Pꝛince, hauing no other defence but his ſwoꝛd, without any armour, foꝛ that he was ſpoꝛtinge himſelfe at the ſea ſide, and in his company was I, & a few other knights, the Gyant with them that were with him, aſſalted vs with ſo great power and ſtrength, that in ſpight of all that euer we could doe to make our defence, they bꝛought vs vnto this Iſlande, wherein we were a great time pꝛiſoners. So one moꝛning, not knowing how and which way, we found our ſelues in ſuch oꝛder as you did finde vs, inchanted. He did not onely make this inchauntment to be of great ſtrength, but alſo he laboured foꝛ no other thing, but to make defence, ẏ the pꝛince might not be ſet at lybertie. The oꝛdeiner of this inchauntment, was a ſiſter vnto Fangomadan, and foꝛ to puniſh him with moꝛe toꝛmẽt, ſhe put him in this ſoꝛt as you haue ſene, leauing the Pꝛinces in the Caſtel, in faſt pꝛiſon, being kept

who was not without great care of his defence, did abide her comming, and stood still, and the wounded Serpent seing her selfe nigh vnto the Knight, with great beating of her wings arose vp in the aire, thinking thereby to gripe fast hold with her sharpe nayles, and to carry him into the aire, and from thence to let him fall downe to the ground to destroye him. The courage of this Knight was very much, and likewise his iudgement, for that this Serpent had not so sone began to beate with his wings when that he suspected in what ouer she would assault him, but he lifted vp the poynt of his sword on high, and likewise his strong shield, that she might thereof make her praye. This furious serpent assaulted him to take her holde in such sort, that the sharpe sword ran into her belly and guts, and so the heart: but if that wound had not chaunced in the same place, at that time the Knight had bene meruailous ill intreated, for that the serpent toke her hold with her long clawes in the midst of his body in such sort, that by her great strength she made his bones to crack: but by reason of the sharpnesse of the sworde which opened the wound wide, and cloue her heart asunder, the Serpent fell downe dead to the ground, leauing the Greeke verye sore troubled and amazed. When the Knight sawe that she was dead, he gaue great thankes vnto God, for his aide and succour herein. So straight waye he went to see who was the Knight that was bound at the tree with the Snakes, & comming nigh him, he knewe him to be the Prince Meridian, for the which he receiued great sorrow. There he remained a while, thinking how he might vnlose him and set him at libertie, and comming vnto the serpents, with his Herculine hand, he layde holde on the necke of them that were at his feete, in such sort ẏ he made him to lose his strength, & to forget the vse of his cruell office, leauing ẏ others feete & winding about his arme, that he was constrained to procure to cleere himselfe: but all was in vaine, for that it was so firmly fastened about him, that of necessitie he must vnlose it as he would vndo a company of knots, and the more he vndid,

the

the more it wounde about with ſuch wreathings from one place vnto another, that it was very ſtraunge, that if it had not bene by the great ſtrength he vſed in quæſing of the ſerpent, he could neuer haue clæred himſelfe thereof, but in the ende it fell downe dead to the ground. Then he laide holde of the other, hauing no leſſe trouble with it, then he had with the firſt, and ſlew it lykewiſe, ſo that the feet of this tormented Barbarian were at libertie of his greate paine, who gaue meruaylous and grieuous ſhrikes. Then that cruell Vulture which was vppon one of thoſe trees, ſeing what the knight was a doing, with greate haſt ſhe deſcended downe for to ſtrike and wounde the knight vnbelwares, which was executed with ſuch furie, ſtriking him with her ſharpe bill ſo terrible a blowe, at ſuch time as he went to lay holde on the Serpents that were at the wriſtes of the tormented Prince, that almoſt it made him to fall backwardes: then the Græke incenſed with furie toke hold on his ſworde and woulde haue ſtroke the Vulture, but he coulde not for that ſhe was aſcended into the ayre. Then the knight let goe his ſhælde, and with his lefte hande he layde holde on one of thoſe Serpents (hauing alwayes his eye to the Vulture) and by reaſon that he did queaſe the Serpent ſo hard, he was conſtrayned by the greate paine which he receyued to let loſe his holde, and in the ende he ſlew it, wherewith the Barbarian Prince did hang but by his right arme, giuing greate and ſorrowfull ſhrikes and grones, the Vulture woulde haue deſcended to haue ſtroke the knight, but for that ſhe ſawe the ſworde put with the poynt vpwards for a defence, ſhe durſt not giue the enterpriſe, but flying rounde about from one place vnto another, to ſee if ſhe coulde finde anie place whereas ſhe might enter for to ſtrike him, without being hurt her ſelfe. In this ſpace he had time for to laye holde with his lefte hande vppon the other Serpent, and in the ſame ſorte as with the other he did kill her, wherewith the Pagan fell downe to the ground without anie remembraunce.

Oriſtedes, and Roſicleer anſwered him & ſayde: Thy wordes are not agreable vnto thy perſon and eſtate, worthy Troyan, neither is it for ſuch a knight as thou arte, to perſwade me to take this counſell, and to leaue to ſhow my ſelfe of what lynage and bloud I doe deſend, & likewiſe what I am bound by order of knighthood to dee. The feare of death ſhall not cauſe me to moue backe one foote. This Troyan dyd laugh at that which Roſicleer dyd ſaye, & ſayde, well ſeing that thou doſt eſteme thy ſelfe of ſo great valoure, procure to ouercome me. And in ſaying theſe wordes, with great lightneſſe this Troyan leapt in with Roſicleer, and with his ſtrong armes, he claſped him about the middle, and procured by caſting him about to ouerthrow him, in ſuch ſort, that he had almoſt ouer throwne himſelfe, but the Prince layde ſuch holde with his hands, embracing the Troyan, that betwixt them there began a terrible wraſtling, eche one procuring by poliſie to ouerthrow the other. The Troyan dyd force himſelfe by little & little to cary Roſicleer towards the place whereas the Serpent was, but Roſicleer perſeuing it, dyd procure to make reſiſtance, vſing policies for to clere himſelfe from that perill. But alwayes he found that the Troyans ſtrength did not increaſe. And by reaſon that the mightie ſtrength of Roſicleer was ſuch, the Troyan could not by his force make any reſiſtance, but that he muſt nedes be caryed out of a compaſſe that was marked, of iuſt thirtie paces from the place where as the Serpent was. And when that he had brought him out of that compaſſe, not being able to make reſiſtance, the Troyan fell to the ground without any feeling, leauing Roſicleer ſomewhat diſcomforted. But yet he ſawe that for to go forwardes in his enterprize, it was requiſite to ioyne battayle with that flying Serpent. And without reſting himſelfe, he ſtrayte wayes toke a great and mightie ſpeare, and with a valyant courage he went towards the place wheras the Serpent was, who ſeing him comming, and that he was within the compaſſe, ſhe put hir ſelfe on foote, and beating with hyr wynges, ſhe gaue two wonderfull ſhrykes, and with greate lightneſſe lyke a byrd, ſhe came towards Roſicleer, puffing

out

out of that terrible mouth a mightie thicke ſmoake like vnto a miſt. This valiant and couragious knight when he ſawe her cõming he put the great end of his ſpeare vnto ỳ ground, and firming it faſt with both his hands, the point forwards, he tarried her comming. This furious Serpent without making any account of the ſpere, with the great deſire ſhe had to lay hold on the knight, put her ſelfe forwards with great furie, ſo that the ſpeare chaunced into one of her great & wide noſethrills, that almoſt it ranne vp into her braines, but if he had held the point of the Speare a little lower, he had giuen the moſt worthieſt blow in all the world, but yet for all that it did not let to make a mortall wound. This furious ſerpent with the great fierceneſſe ſhe had ſhe brake the ſpeare, ſo that there remained in her head more then two ſpans thereof, and therewith ſhe ſtroke at the knight with her nailes ſo terrible a blow, that ſhe ouerthrew him, in ſuch ſort, that he tumbled on the ground. The beaſt who was troubled and aſtonied with that cruell wound, & againe by reaſon of ỳ great ſwiftneſſe and furie ſhe could not take anie holde of his armour, but paſſed forwards on, inſomuch that the knight had time to ariſe and put himſelfe on foote, and finding by him the tronchon that remained of the ſpeare, he turned and firmed himſelfe therewith, procuring as he did at the firſt to receiue the blow, which he ſaw comming with great ſwiftneſſe, and fortune was ſo fauourable vnto him, that he chaunced with the tronchon of ~~hir~~ his Speare vpon one of ~~his~~ her ſtrong hornes, and by reaſon that his ſpeare was ſtrong and ful of knots, it was faſt vpon one of them, and by her great ſwiftneſſe broke it cleane from her head, wherwith ſhe remained with that great blow aſtonied and amazed with ỳ terrible paine. The tronchon of the Speare was driuen out of his hande, ſo that hee was conſtrained to laie hand on his ſword, and to ſhroude himſelfe vnder his hard and ſtæle ſhæld, to make his defence againſt the blowes that might come. This cruell Serpent being verie much troubled with the greate paine of the woundes, with double furie giuing wonderfull ſhrikes and grones the aſſaulted this knight. The couragious Knight

neſſe therof, they wer conſtrained to ſtay, & not to trauaile any farther. But in a little plain place that they found, they alighted, whereas they found a caue, and in it the manner of a bedde, declaring that ſome body had bene ther, ſo ther they remained all ỹ night, till ỹ morning. The day being come, they retourned to proſecute their new begun iourney, & neuer reſted till ſuch time as they came to the top of the mountaine: from whẽce they did diſcouer a very great & delectable plaine: & in ỹ midſt therof, ther was two great an high Pine trées, towards which place they went. But they had not gon far, wher they ſaw a pillar, in the which was grauen certain letters, which ſaid. The glory of Fangamadan, vpon the ſubiection of the Prince, ſonne vnto the mightie Emperor of the Scitas, & of the couragious Troyan: Let none be ſo hardie as to loke vpon it, for that for ſo doing, he ſhal loſe his lyfe. Roſicleer, was in a great cõfuſion, not vnderſtãding what ſhold be ment there-by, but trauailing in ỹ path forwards, he had ſcãt paſſed ỹ place, when ỹ he hard a terrible & fearful ſhryke of a beaſt, ſuch, that his horſe was ſcared, & began to ſtruggle in ſuch ſort, ỹ he was conſtrained to retourne againe and to lyght on foot, & gaue him vnto Argolio, & the knight did proſecute his way on foote. Within a ſmall while after, he heard ỹ they tourned & gaue ſuch an other ſhryke, ỹ it made him for to ſtay. And as you do ſée ỹ feareful Hart, when he doth heare the noyſe of the hunters, doth hold vp his head, deuiſing on euery ſide to heare from which part the noyſe ſhould come: euen ſo dyd this knight, but he coulde not deuiſe nor ſée any creature, but went forwardes on his way in the ſame path, till he came vnto a little mountaine, whereas he founde an other piller, ſuch a one as the ſame before, in the which was written a tytle wõ theſe words. He who doth fynde himſelfe of ſo great courage & ſtrength, & doth procure to paſſe forwards, for to deliuer the worthy Meridian, & the mighty Troyan: vnderſtãd, that in payment of his folly & hardineſſe, he ſhall loſe his lyfe. Let ther chaunce what will happen, ſayde Roſicleer, for this feare ſhall not cauſe me to ſtaye the vſing of all my power & ſtrength, for ſo high a prince. And ſo without

out any staying, he went forwards. He had not gon far, whē he came to ỹ sight of a thing of great cōpassion & grief, wher as was done the greatest crueltie ỹ euer was hard done to any person: which was, that in ỹ middest of ỹ plaine, ther was two high & mightie trees, a little distāce the one from ỹ other: & in the midst betwen them, ther was hanged a man, hauing each arme tyed vnto one of the trees, by the wrystes, and the cords wherwith he was boūd, was two long & small serpēts, the which did not onely serue for to tye his wrists, but also w̄ their heads they reached vnto his neck & breasts, whereas they dyd byte him in such sort, ỹ they made him ful of holes. His fete likwise was tyed vnto those trees, w̄ other two serpents, who entreated him as ỹ others did. Likewise ther was vpon one of those trees, a Vulter, who at sundry times descēded down, & w̄ hir sharp & hard bill, she picked his belly, & opened it vnto ỹ guts, whereon she fed, which was ỹ occasion ỹ this vnhappy man gaue this terrible shrikes, w̄ out resting. At the fote of those trees ther was a fierce serpent w̄ wings, who was the keper of ỹ tormented man. The which serpent was of more then. xv. fote of lēgth, & had but two fete, which was in ỹ midst of hir body, & eche fote had fiue clawes, which were great & sharp. She had on hir head two great hornes & sharp, & gored with them as a Bull doth, & out of hir mouth she had two great tusks, hir wings shewed hir to be of great lightnesse. And about. xxx. paces frō hir was an armed knight, of a large & high stature, he lacked no armour from the head vnto ỹ fote. He had hanging at his neck by a string of gold, a very rich and wel garnished sword, who when he saw Rosicleer, with a hasty & large pase, he came towards him, and when he came nigh him he sayde: Tell me gentle knight, what doest thou seke here in this place of great harme and daunger: therefore retourne backe againe, for that thou canst not finde here any other thinge but death. Rosicleer in the meane tyme that he was saying these wordes, he was beholding his face, for by reason that he brought the visor of his Helme vp, he might well perceiue, and dyd playnely see and perfectly know him, to be the courageous Prince,

Oristedes:

And for that this muste be concluded by armes, and not by wordes, se that thou doest make no tarying, but arme thy selfe and come forth vnto the battaile, & then thou shalt se how I will make thee to vnderstand in the field, that I am none of them of whome thou hast hetherto gotten honour. I will not make thee any aunswere sayde Brandemoran, for that I think very quickly to reuenge my selfe of thee, and to pluck out ỳ tongue which hath bene so bolde to speake these wordes vnto me. And therwith he went straight out of the pallace, and went vnto his lodging for to arme himself vnto the battaile. The Greeke at his answere was somewhat yrefull, but retourning vnto the king he sayde, mightie king and Lorde, I doe desyre your highnesse that you would commaund, that your daughter may be set in a place, where as she may well se the restoring of hir honour. The King sayde this shalbe done with a very good wil, without any tarying. The Greke dyd take his leaue of the King and of the Ladyes that were in the great hall. And went downe the stayres where as he left his page and his horse, and without the helpe of his stirrup, he leapt into the saddle, & hauing his healme on, and his speare in his hand, he commaunded his page to tary, and not to go with him. So he went straight vnto the place appointed for the battaile, with so gentle a grace and good disposition, that all who dyd behold him, receiued great contentment. Ther was appointed a scaffold for two Judges, for to Judge the right of this controuersie, and dyd appoint the place conuenient for their battaile. They taryed not long, when that Brandemoran entered ỳ place, accompanied w̄ many knights, at which tyme the Judges put them-selues on their Scaffold. And being all readie and the people in quiet, ther was commaunded a Trompet to be sounded, to giue them to vnderstand, that they must prepare themselues to the battaile. At which sound they moued their com[illegible], the one againste the other, with so great swiftnesse, tha[illegible]med ỳ they flew in the Ayre, whereas I will leaue the[illegible]ll time doe serue, for that at the same present, the wynde Borias dyd blowe in my care, constrayning me to speake of the mightie deedes of

that

that valiant Rosicleer. You dw well remember, that for to succour his Horse, he leapt into his barke, & was not so soone therein, but that it sailed and made such waye as the arrow which is forced out of ỹ bowe. And one of the two knights which entred the barke, leapt into the Sea for feare, and the other remained, and yelded himselfe vnto the mercie of the Knight, which afterward did serue him for Squire, and very faithfully vsed his office, who was called Argolio. Rosicleer went trauailing to sea-wards, in his Barcke, very heauy and sorowfull, for that he was departed from his cosin so quickly. In this sort they trauailed fyre dayes, & the seuenth they discouered lande very far of, but the swiftnesse of the Barcke was such, that in a short time it brought them to the waters side. And being a land, he saw that it was an Iland, and very fragrant, for that towards the Occident, there appeared but little playne ground, and towards the Orient, a verye high & sharpe Mountaine. So when the Barcke had fyred it selfe a shore, he vnderstode, that there he must go a land, and taking his horse, with great lightnesse, he leapt into the saddle, and Argolio followed him. And they trauailed into a narrow way which led them vp vnto that croked Mountaine, & followed that way till they came to the height thereof, whereas they alighted for to refresh themselues, with that which the squire brought. And for that I haue great nede of fauour & helpe, to go forwardes with this history, here I doe desire the Muses to graunt it vnto me, that I may with more courage, declare that which followeth in the other Chapter.

¶How that Rosicleer founde in that Iland, the sonne of Alicandro, leading a troublesome lyfe, with his faire and welbeloued wyfe, who was set at libertie by Rosicleer. Cap. 16.

After the noble Rosicleer had somewhat refreshed himselfe, he toke his horse, and by little and little, he began to go vp that fragrant hill, till such time as night came vpon them, and for the great darkenesse-

in the chãber of preſence, accompanied with all his nobles & knights of prowes. And when he ſaw his daughter to enter all couered with mourning apparel, his royal highneſſe could not ſhow the great loue he had vnto his daughter, but made ſhowes of great ſorow, ſhedding many teares from his eyes, which ran down vpon his chækes, & al to be waſhed his gray haires. This faultleſſe lady dyd proſtrate hir ſelfe at hir fathers fæte, but Claridiano remained a fote, with ſo great maieſtie, as though he had known whoſe ſonne he was. This painefull & weried lady, did aſke hir fathers hands to kiſſe them, but neither the king nor his daughter could ſpeake any word more. They remained ſo a great while, til ſuch time as the king conſtraining his princely courage, ſayde. I know not what wil fal out, for that I ſée before me, ỹ which of long time I haue deſired, & yet I do not know it to be myne. The lady vnderſtode ỹ words of hir father, gathered ſtomack vnto hir ſelfe & ſaid: I am Antemiſca, your welbeloued daughter, although at this time I am abhorred, I am ſhe who vniuſtly hath gone wandring, paying ſuch debts as I neuer made, for that I did neuer let but to be ỹ lady I ought to be. I am ſhe that by ỹ valour of this mightie & worthy warriour, do liue, and not by the compaſſion that thou haſt had of thyne owne proper daughter. And I do thank my Gods, that they haue ſo much fauoured me, in giuing me his mightie & ſtrong arme, for to defend my truth, and for to puniſh that euill, the which that traytour Brandemoran, hath layde and rayſed vpon me. The braue Paleſtina, who was preſent at the words which the Princes layde, was ſo full of pryde and yre, that without any reſpect vnto the kings highneſſe, he layde: Oh falſe adultereſſe, wherfore wilt thou deny ỹ the prince of Chaldea, had thy virginitie, and that with thy conſent. And what knight is he that is ſo hardie & hath ſo much courage, to ſaye vnto the contrary. The Greke dyd very much beholde the Paleſtiniã, perceuing by his wordes, that to be he that had procured all this harm againſt Antemiſca. And although his proud words dyd moue his pacience, yet would he not make any outward ſhow, neither aunſ were vnto him, but rather with great ſe-

ueritie,

neritie, he tourned vnto the King and sayde: High and mightie Lorde, in this controuersie there is no nede of disputation, neither farther rehearsal. But may it please your highnesse to commaund, that the Prince of Chaldea may come in presence, and to know of him, if he be content, to referre all his right into my handes. The King who (was considering and beholding his mightie prowesse, in the demonstration of his person) straight wayes commaunded to be brought thether ỳ Chaldean, with sufficient kepers with him, which was straight wayes done.

And when he came in presence, the King sayde vnto him: prince Gelerosio, my daughter hath brought hether this knight, for to defend her and thy right, (if thou haue any.) Here would I know of thee, if that thou art content to referre all thy right and iustice into his handes. The prince Gelerosio somewhat heauy, aunswered the king and sayd, Vnto the soueraigne Goddes and vnto him, I doe commit all my right although I had rather with ỳ strength of myne owne armes make my defence: and tourning vnto the Greeke, he sayde. And for that gentle knight, thou shalt be certified that thou defende the truth: Here I doe sweare vnto thee by the high & mightie Iupiter, that the Prince of Chaldea, did neuer commit ỳ which with great falsehood he is accused. Then Brandemoran did replye, and sayde. All that euer thou doest saye, I will suffer, for that I doe thinke before the Sunne hath made an ende of his accustomed course, to haue satisfaction. And likewise to punishe the pryde of this fole, who by ignorannce or rather foolish hardienesse, commeth to seeke his owne death.

This valiaunt and couragious Greeke coulde no longer suffer his proude and slaunderous speaches, but sayde vnto him: Iupiter hath power to giue the death vnto whome he pleaseth, and I doe thinke that which thou doest pretende vnto me, will fall vpon thy selfe, for to punish thee for this thy false and surmised treason which thou most dispightfully hast raysed, against this noble Princes, who is guiltlesse of this crime.

And

For that the new wound would not ſuffer him to take any reſt, which cauſed him to take his leaue of the king and his daughter, and departed, and toke the way towards Meſopotamia, with great deſyre to be there. So trauailing, they left behinde them the Citie of Damaſco, & paſſed by the one ſyde of Armenia the great, and ſo entred into the great playne of Meſopotamia, and from thence without taking any reſt, they came within ten myles of the citie of Meſos. From which place they ſent the olde Squyre, which was with them, to giue the king to vnderſtand of the comming of the Prince, who with great care trauailed in ſuch ſort, that he entred into the pallas, at ſuch tyme as the king was accõpanied with all his knights, not with lyttle ſorow for the abſence of his daughter, for that the tyme appointed for hir defence, drewe on. On his one ſyde was the prince of Paleſtina, who was as merry and glad, as the King heauy and ſorowfull. But whan Libernio entred into the great hall, the king knew him to be a man of great eſtimation in his kingedome. And hauing no power to diſcemble his great ioye, in ſeing him, he forgot his royall authoritie, and roſe vp againſt him, & ſayd: Ah my friende where haſt thou left my daughter Antemiſca, tell me quickly, as thou wouldeſt that the Goddes ſhould fauour thæ. Then Libernio with a cherefull countenaunce ſayde, mightie King and Lorde, thy daughter the Prince is very well, although very wery of . long and troubleſome iourney, and miſfortunes which hath happened, but yet now with great delight, for that ſhe doth bring with hir a knight for to defend hir honour. And if it be ſo that your highneſſe doth accept thereof, and giue them liſence, he will come hether, and defend hir right. The prince of Paleſtina when he hard that which was ſpoken, with great laughter, although not very well content, ſayde. And who is he that is ſo ſimple & fole-hardie, to come, and gaine-ſaye my fury, the truth being on my ſyde. Libernio ſayde, it is he that will make thee to acknowledge thy falſehod, and will make thæ forget thy fury & mightie ſtrength, by vſing of his valiant prowes. Whereat Brandemoran was ſo full of wrath, and his eyes

ſparke-

ſparkling lyke fyer, he ſayde: If it were not for that I am before the royall preſence of the King, I would giue thee to vnderſtand, ỳ thy gray haires had not ſpake with ỳ diſcretion, which thou oughteſt to haue. Then the King ſayd, prince pacifie your courage, & be quiet, and thou Libernio retourne, & tell them that they may come when their pleaſure is. And for the right of my daughter, (if ſhe haue any) he ſhall haue ſafe conduct to come and make hir defence. And if it be ſo that they haue nede of any thing, ſpeake that they may haue all furniſhed that is requiſite. Go thy wayes and tary not, for that I haue great deſire to ſee either my ſhame or honour. For I am in ſuch a ſtay, to ſe my ſelfe ſo diſhonoured, that I think it better that I were dead. Ah what a goodly thing is it for a man to dye when he is in ſo great troubles. So Libernio put in order his departure out of hand, leauing the king ſomewhat content, & almoſt without ſuſpection of any euill, ſeing that his daughter was returned to defend hir right. Libernio when he had got mourning apparell for the Princes, departed to the place whereas he left them, declaring vnto hir all that hir father had ſayde, and what paſſed in his preſence. So therewith they procured and made haſt, to finiſhe their iourney. And they made ſo much haſt, that before it was night they came within two myles of the citie wher as they reſted all that night, with great deſire that the morning wer come. So verye earely in the morning at the breake of the day, they put them ſelues on horſeback, and went forwards on theyr iourney. So that one houre after the Sunne had ſtretched forth his golden beames vpon the moyſt earth and fragrant flowers, this Grake knight and the Princes entred into the citie of Meſos, not reſting in any place, til they came vnto the kinges pallaice, wheras they alighted and went vp into the great hall. Claridiano led Antemiſca by the hande, his Helme faſt vpon his head, and his purple Shylde on his ſhoulder, but the viſor of his Helme was vp, ſo that all people might ſee his fayre & great viſage, and all that ſaw him, dyd iudge him to be of a high lynage. Then the King was aduertiſed of theyr comming, and dyd abyde theyr comming

his complaints, but rather with a smiling laughter, made of it as a iest, which caused vnto the Shepehard more torment. Then Cupide who was tarying his tyme & opportunitie, at ỳ time discharged his golden Arrow, with great furie, in such sort, that the heart of the Prince, who aforetime was voyd & at libertie, was now brought in subiection & made subiect vnto his lawes & customes. For so sone as he had sæne this Pastora, he straight way remembred the Pastora which ỳ Princes of Ierosolima had told him of, & also of ỳ which he saw in the inchanted Castle, leaning on hir breast at the Pyon grate. And remẽbring himselfe, he cast his head a side to behold hir that was ỳ occasion of his new harme, but for ỳ she was passed alongst with hir shæp, he could not sæ hir. Then he began to complaine against his vnhappie fortune, saying, Ah heauy hart, that in the time ỳ thou wert a knight & at libertie, thou diddest subdue and hadst power to ouercome so many strong warriors: wher is now thy strength become, wherwith thou didst ouercome thẽ. Art not thou he who did ouercome those two mightie giants in Trapobana? Art not thou he which w̃ thy fury didst abate ỳ strength & courage of ỳ mightie Geredion? what is become of thy potensie, wherwith thou diddest bring down ỳ pride of ỳ two Tartaros? what is become of the fury wher with thy fystes thou slewest ỳ great giant of the moũtaines Nabatea? wher is thy strẽgth wherwith thou didst win thy mightie horse Zefiro. I do sæ ỳ it is all yelded vnto a poore & simple Pastora. Oh hart, it doth not greue me, for ỳ thou art brought in subiectiõ, but only for ỳ thou art at ỳ wil & power of a Pastora. It is a signe ỳ my lignage is not of such valour & estimation, as I was perswaded by my friend Galtenor. But what do I say, do I finde fault in the desert of my Pastora. And although I wer of ỳ most highest lynage in the world, yet that faire face is more then any humaine creature doth deserue. And in saying these words, he fell in a sownd to the ground. And forsomuch as he was absent & taried a long time, & ỳ ladies saw he came not, they went out to seke him, & found him in ỳ sort as I haue told you, which caused great disturbance vnto them. Notwithstanding in the best maner

they

they could, with bowing of his finger, & other diligences, they brought him againe to his remembraunce, but not in so perfect sort, that he knew who was with him in presence. And therwith he gaue a greuous sigh, & sayd: Oh merciful Iupiter, show vpon me thy power, & do not permit that Cupide, may haue so much might against this sorowful knight. And therwith a new he fel down in a sownd, as at the first. Both the princes wer greatly amased, not knowing what it should be, which hath caused so much alteration. And therwith Fidelio ran vnto the riuer for water, wherwith they all to be bathed his face, that he came againe to himselfe. The Ladies musing betwen thẽselues, from whẽce should procede this his griefe. Straight way they suspected ẏ he had sene that faire Pastora, which a little before they saw passe amõgst those grene trees. Antemisca who had more care of the princes griefe then the other, when she saw him somewhat come to himself, she said: What is this worthy knight, is it now time to leaue me afflicted, the time being so nigh at hand to make my defence, & almost at ẏ gates of the citie, pul vp your hart, & let not your valiant courage at this time faint. The knight when he perceued ẏ the ladies wer ther, he procured to raise vp his body, & to sit down, for ẏ before he was layde all a long. And dissembling in ẏ best wise he could, he said. I do not know what should be ẏ occasiõ of a marualous great grief which stroke me to the hart, ẏ without any power to make resistance, it ouerthrew me to ẏ ground, in such sort as you foũd me. I do wel beleue, said Antemisca, ẏ the occasion of this grief is in ẏ hart, & ẏ eies are in most fault. For if thou hadst not sene the faire Pastora, thy hart should not haue felt ẏ passed paine. To this Claridiano answered nothing at all, seing ẏ they vnderstode ẏ occasion of his griefe. But he made hast to make all things in a redines to go onwards on their iourney, & being all on horsback they hasted towardes Ieroſolima, where they were receiued wõ great triumph, mæt for such worthy Princes. The olde king & Quæne gaue great thanks vnto their gods for ẏ retorne of their lost daughter. Claridiano remained ther in ẏ citie of Ieroſolima, fiue daies, greatly aginst his wil.

Repay me loue, for that it is most meete,
And let not rigor in thy heart preuaile.
Behold myne eyes, with flouds of teares that flow,
Forst by the griefe that from my hart doth grow.

Make soft thy hart, and do not him disdaine,
That doth adore thy beautie so diuine:
Pittie my plaints, abate my grieuous paine,
With scoffes and scornes constraine me not to pine.
Either graunt grace, els flatly nay reply,
That I may know if I shall liue or dye.

When he had made an ende of this song, he let the Rebeck fall out of his hand, & stretching himself on the grene grasse, crossing his hands, he put them to his mouth as a man ful of passions & griefes, & began to say w̄ a weping voice, O my Pastora, let thy cruelty now suffise thée, it is now time that thou helpest thy Pastor out of so long and great sorow. Consider mistresse, that thou dost intreate me very euil, for ẏ thou dost wel vnderstand ẏ I am wholly thine, & not mine owne, & as thyne own thou maist ordaine & dispose me. I am wholly subiect vnto thy will, whether it be good or ill, what so euer thy pleasure is, vnto either of them I am agreable, for ẏ I am wholly thyne. The Prince saw ẏ with this shepard was an other in his company, who whan he saw ẏ the other held his peace, he toke an other Rebeke which he had, & w̄ no lesse musicke then ẏ other, he began to play & sing, as followeth, by ẏ which he did show to be clere & at libertie of ẏ paines of loue.

That tyrant Loue shall neuer wound my brest,
I will not loue, nor yet beloued be:
The louers lyfe I doe in hart detest,
which now in myrth, are straight in misery.
¶ I being free doe Cupids customes scorne,
Reiect his lawes, disdaine his wounding dart:
And let who will, be with his passions torne,
He neither can nor shall possesse my hart.

This

This shepheard left off his song & playing all at one time, as one ỹ made no reckoning nor esteemed loue, but the amorous shepheard gaue so terrible a sigh ỹ it sounded throughout all the field. Then making a heauie sound, he said: O happie shepheard, that loue hath giuen so much libertie vnto, great is thy good fortune, that thou maist frely publish thy lybertie and blame my captiuitie. Let the Gods vnderstand, & let it be published, that I am brought vnto that estate, that in my songes & sonets I doe delight to vtter the swete conuersation that I haue with my loue. But how much more ioy should I receiue, if I could sing as thou doest, in seing my selfe at lybertie. Oh mightie Iupiter, doe not take away this excellent ioy, which I doe feele in louing, lyke wyse I do desire thee, that thou wouldest giue me strẽgth for to passe ouer my payne and griefe, & therewith he toke againe the Rebick, and soung this song as followeth.

EXcept I loue I cannot haue delight,
It is a care that doth to lyfe belong:
For why, I hold that lyfe in great despight,
That hath not sower mixt with sweete among.
And though the torments which I feele be strong:
Yet had I rather thus for to remaine,
Then laugh, and liue, not feling louers paine.

This Shepard was troubled in his song, & could not procede any farther, for that he hard a great rushing & noyse amongst the bushes and trees. And loking who it should be he saw that it was a Pastora, who was apparaled with a white peticoate of very course cloth. She had hir golden haire dyspersed abroade on hir backe, behind hir eares, and had in hir hand a shepheards hooke, very well wrought, with the which she gouerned a fewe sheepe, that she had the charge of. Hir face semed so faire as Diana, at such time as hir beames hath most force. And when the Shepard saw hir, he began a new to make vnto hir pitifull lamentations. But for all that the Pastora made no rekoning to giue any eare vnto him, nor to

to Meſopotamia, for ẏ it was all one way. Then they followed on theyr iourney, till they had paſſed all the kingedome of Nabatea, without any aduenture worth the telling. Likewiſe they paſſed all the mount Libano, where as they founde many great and fayre Citics. Alſo they paſſed ouer the riuer Iordan, leauing behinde them part of Siria, trauailing alongſt by part of the edge of Palleſtina, which boordereth vpon Arabia. And paſſed through Fenicia, without any queſtion or demaund aſked of them. So they came vnto ẏ populus riuer of Eufrates, and trauailed alongſt ẏ riuers ſyde, till ſuch time as they were conſtrained to go vpon a high & mightie mountayne, from whence they might diſcouer Ieroſolima. All theſe coũtries aforeſaid, they paſſed & trauailed, in little more then two monethes, and at that tyme ther lacked little more then two monethes vnto ẏ time appointed, for Antemiſca to make hir defence. In all this iourney there chaunſed ſome aduentures, but for that they were not of any great importance, I let them paſſe, & make no mencion of them. Although ẏ fame of his heroycall dædes, was hard into Grecia. And for ẏ my author will not ſeme to be tedious, he doth let paſſe many, although they are worthy to be hard, and to giue good example vnto all thoſe that doe weare armour, to make them hardy & couragious in their dædes.

¶How the heroycall Greke was taken priſoner, by the dart of Cupide, in beholding the beautie of a very fayre Paſtora, and of the greate anguiſh and griefe that he ſuſtained. Cap. 15.



That adultreſſe Venus, the key of all libertie, not hauing forgotten hir olde miſchife and ill will, which ſhe toke vpon the mountaine Citareo, came to take counſaile of hir ſonne Cupide, to determine what order ſhe might vſe for to ſubiect & bring vnder hir amorous yoke, the ſtiffe neck of that ſtoute & vntamed Greke. And the better for to forge & to bring to paſſe to hir content, ẏ worke which ſhe had ordained, ſhe ſhewed hir ſelf very friendly & louengly

ningly vnto ỹ glittering Apollo,for ỹ at hir request he should with more clerenesse spred abrode his bright beams ouer the grene feldes,nigh vnto the riuer Eufrates. Who being moued by the disceitfull words of Venus,did disperse abrode his burning beames:showing forth marueious enamelled coulours, vpon ỹ flowred harbes,being filled with ỹ clere dew,such as seldome hath bene sene in the fælde. And the mightie riuer w̃ milde & quiet running,did passe his accustomed iourney,making a fine noise,w̃ ỹ delicate breaking of his stremes. Then this false & crafty Cupide,seing oportunitie,by ỹ good disposition of ỹ place:& being aduertised by his disceitful mother, toke his way with his accustomed lightnesse, vnto the riuer wher as ỹ mightie Claridiano was refreshing himself vnder a company of very faire & grene Pertil trees,with the rest of his company,tarying the comming of the night,wher as w̃ out all feare, they reioysed & sported themselues,ỹ faire,peasable & quiet day. And for to be more at his ease,he pulled of his strong helme,& slacked ỹ buckles of his armour. And for that the damsels might ỹ better recreate themselues,he put him selfe out of ỹ way, somewhat apart from them, for ỹ he was very curteous & honest. And parting himselfe,he came into a place wher as he heard the noise of a Flute,which did sound very swetly:& for that it was very pleasant,and gaue him great contentment in ỹ hearing,ỹ better to delight himselfe,he drew nere wher as it was,in such sorte,ỹ he might delight himself of the song & musicke,without being spyde of any. He approched so nigh,ỹ he might wel discern who it was that made that Flute so swetly to sound. And he saw that it was a sheperd which lay a longst vnder a grene willow tre, who being wery in playing on the Flute,layde it downe by him,& toke a Rebick & began to play on it with very swete harmonie,accõpanying it with delicate & amorous songs. At the which the Prince receued great contẽtment,being attentiue,he heard him sing as followeth.

SInce by thy sight,O Pastora so sweete,
My former freedome and my lyfe doth fayle:

Gods for to take away his great pride and arrogancie. At this time the two warriours tarryed the signe to be made by the trumpets: which being giuen, these Knights mooued their coursers, with their speares in their rests, with so great yre and desire the one to hurt the other, that they both fayled in their incounter. The Giant who was very proude, when he saw that he had erred his blow, he returned against Claridiano, carrieng his speare vppon his shoulder, and comming nigh him, vpon a sodaine and with great fury he toke it from his shoulder, and before the Greke could cleare him selfe, he strake him a mightie blow vpon the armour, so that his staffe broke by reason of the fineneſſe of the armour, and made the good warriour to double his body backwards vpon the Horse crupper. But when he saw the great villany which the Giaunt vsed with him, his anger increased very much, & taking his speare in the same sort, he went towards the Giant and sayd. Thou furious and proude beast, what didst thou thinke to goare me lyke as thou wouldest do a wilde Boare, tarrie, and I will make thee to vnderstand, if I can make my knottie speare to flye in the aire, and therewith he threw his speare at him with so great furie, that he stroke him on the breast in such sort, that the speare passed through his body, and showed it selfe at his backe, so that this Giant fell downe dead to the ground, and all that were there present, were very much amazed at the great strength and force of this Knight. At this time the Sunne had finished his course, hauing nothing aboue the Horizon but his glistering beames, then the Iudges of the feastes commaunded with sound of trumpets that the Iusts should cease, & make an ende of the day. So the King descended from the place where he was into the Court with all his Knights for to receiue that good warriour, and desired him that he wold go with them vnto his pallaice, to ỹ which he could not make denial. And when he should enter into the great gate of the Pallaice, he saw the Serpent, and the heads of the Gyants, and when the King perceiued that he did beholde them, he sayd.

This

This remembraunce (good knight) I commaunded to be put here in thy name, for to be a perpetuall memorie of thy high and mightie Chiualrie. The Prince there at would not aunſwere making as though he did not eſteme it much, for that he had with himſelfe no pryde. And therewith they aſcendid vp into the great hall, where as they were maruailouſly wel receiued of the Ladies and damſells. And leauing Antemiſca, and Belia, with the Bryde, and with the Quæne hir mother in lawe, he retourned and went with the King, wheras they dyd intreate him with great maieſtie. So he remained eight dayes in company with the King in his courte, for to take his eaſe, in which tyme the moſt part of the kings, princes and knightes were departed, and the King of Silicia, with the dead bodie of his brother. Theſe eight dayes paſt this Græke prince dyd take his leaue of the King, for that ỹ time to make defence in the quarrell of the Princeſſe Drewe on, the which he had great care thereof. It grieued the king very much for his departure, but ſeing that he was conſtrained therevnto, he would not hinder him, but offered him verye great and rich giftes, but the prince would not receue any. Lykewiſe he toke his leaue of the Quæne, and of the Dutches and hir daughter, who with great ſorow dyd ſolemniſe his departure. The King brought him vnto the foote of the ſtayre, whereas Fidelio was tarying for him, with a mightie and rich Horſe, one of the furious that was to be founde in all the countrie. He was a Rone coulored, without any kinde of marke, and trapped with very rich trapping of Golde and precious ſtones of great price. There came forth of the horſe mouth two tuſkes lyke vnto an Elophant, his noſethrills were very large and great, his head very little, his breaſt very broade, well pitched and ſo hard, that no ſword were it neuer ſo ſharp, was able to enter in thereat. So whan he came vnto the foote of the ſtayres, without letting foote in his ſtirrup, he leaped vpon the beſt Horſe that euer was. The horſe was called Zefiro, for his great lightneſſe. When he had taken his leaue of all, they departed, determining not to ſtaye in any place, till they came vnto Ieroſolima, & ſo ſtraight way

but the prince was caryed ouer his horſe buttocks, & caryed the ſaddle with him betwixt his legges, which was a great griefe vnto all them that vyd ſee him, for that he was welbeloued of them all. This arrogant gyant was ſo encouraged, & ſo furyous that in a ſmall tyme he left not a knight remaining in their ſaddles on horſeback. And being in this great pryde, there was hard a great noyſe and ruſhing, in maner of a tumult in the place. And loking what it ſhould be, they ſaw that it was the knight of the Damſells which entred, who was armed with his riche and ſtrong Armour, all of Purple, full of golden Starres. And before him came the two Damſells, which alwayes were in his company. The Princes of Ieroſolima, caryed his ſhield, & the Princes of Meſopotamia. his Speare. Showing by his perſon the highneſſe of his diſcent. Who paſſed by the royal ſeat wheras the good King was, in whoſe company was his ſonne the prince, armed with very rich armour, alſo the lord of mount Libano, a very auncient knight and of great authoritie. So on the other ſide was the princes, the daughter of the King of Nabatea, who was the bryde, a very fayre and comely gentlewoman, and with her the Dutches of the valley and her Daughter. And behinde them, was the Earle of the deepe Lake, who was ſtill very weake of the paſſed battaile, and was richly apparelled with blew cloth of Gold. And as this knight paſſed by, the knight aroſe vp and ſhowed him courteſie. The Dutches of the Valley could not refraine hir ſelfe but that with a high voyce ſhe ſayd vnto the King. Mightie king, this is the knight in whom the gods hath put all their power & ſtrength, that his valour may be more then theirs. This warlike knight, although he heard very well what the Dutches had ſayde, paſſed on, and deſcembled as though he had hard nothing. And when he came to the Juſt, he toke his ſhylde and his ſpeare, and prepared himſelfe redy to the Juſt. So ſtraycht wayes being in a readineſſe, they ſowned the Trumpets, where at with great fury, they moued their Courſers, & neither of them miſſed theyr blow at theyr incounter, but by reaſon that the Greke had great good will to

er-

ertol his fame, he ſtroke the gyant ſo mightie a blow, that he ouerthrew him to the ground. So the prince paſſed alongeſt, wᵗ great mageſtie, without any ſhow of diſdaine. The people with a great ſhout sayde. The great mightie & royal Agilao is ouerthrowen to the ground, ſo that his mightie ſtrength hath little auailed him. Then the prince of Fenicia, would proue his aduenture with the Greke, but with great eaſe he was turned to the ground. So all the reſt of ẏ knights that were of any eſtimation, made their Juſt, but they were all wᵗ great eaſe ouerthrowen to the ground, in leſſe then the ſpace of two houres. So at ſuch time as the bright Febus would make an ende of his long iourney, there apeared to enter in to the place the braue and mightie Gyant, brother vnto the king of Silicia, wᵗ a mightie great ſpeare in his hand, whoſe glyſtering poynt of Steele ſhowed through all the field. He brought with him but one only ſquyer, which brought with him another ſpeare, and without any care of courteſie due, he put himſelfe into the place. And ẏ Squire which brought his other Speare, went vnto Claridiano, & ſayd: Knight, yonder valiant gyant doth ſend vnto thee this Speare, and willeth thee that thou doſt procure to do the vttermoſt of thy power before that the Sunne doth ſet, for that he will do the like: & likewiſe he ſaith, that he doth not only defie thee in the Juſt, but alſo to mortall battaile. To whom Claridiano, ſaid: Friend, go thy waies & tell this giant ẏ ſent thee, ẏ I doe accept his demaund, although it doth greeue me verie much, for that without ame occaſion he maketh this deffiance in time of ſo great ioy and pleaſure, which is done in the honour of ſo mightie a king, but ſeeing his will is moued with ſo great pride, tell him ẏ I am readie to make my defence, & alſo ẏ ſhortly he ſhall repent him of this enterpriſe, & in ſaying theſe words he toke the ſpeare of ẏ ſquire, & put himſelf in ẏ ſtanding: at ẏ time he was verie nigh ẏ place where the king was, who heard ẏ anſwere which ẏ Greeke made, for ẏ which he receiued great anger, for ẏ the Giant in ſuch ſort ſhuld defie ẏ Knight wᵗout any occaſion: but it was no time as then to ſpeake, but to hold his peace, & prayed vnto his

Gods

maiestie, and with no lesse maiestie came the king of Silicia, and a brother of his, who were both Gyants. So likewise came thether the king of Cappadocia, all these be Prouinces that both border the one with the other, & the most part of these Princes are vassalls vnto the Prince of Palestino, all these Princes came thether for to honour that good king of Nabatea, for that he was very well estæmed of them all: and as they came to honour the King, so likewise they came to proue themselues, and to get fame and name, & the praise that belongeth therevnto. It was supposed of all the companie the king of Silicia would haue the prowesse and praise of all the rest, for that he was a gyant of verie bigge members, although his brother was taken to be more furious, who determined not to iust, for that his brother shuld get the honour & praise, but it fell out otherwise, as hereafter you shal vnderstand. So when the daie was come all the Ladies and Damsells put themselues in places for to beholde ỳ feasts, and everie one procured to set out her selfe with the greatest brauerie ỳ might be, and the great court full of people which came thether for to see the feasts and triumphs. What shall I saie here of the daughter of the Dutchesse of the valley, who was of so great beautie ỳ she was noted amongst them all. So the knights began to enter into the place of iust, and he which was the first that entered was the Prince of Camogenia, who was mounted vpon a verie faire and well adorned courser, he was armed with blacke armour all to bee spotted full of Martines, & brought with him fiftie knightes all apparelled with the same liverey, and with great maiestie he went round about the place, making obedience vnto all the Ladyes and Damsells: after him entered a Pagan knight, who was Lord of Siria, and armed with armour of a Lyons coulour, accompanied with an hundreth knights, all apparelled in veluet of the same coulour, and passed round about the place, shewing great curtesie as the other did, which being done, he sawe that the Prince of Camogenia was tarying to receiue him at the iust, and straight way they began to sound the instruments, giuing to vnderstand, that they

must

must make themselues ready. These Knights were nothing vnwilling, but spurred their coursers with great fury. The Prince of Camogenia made his encounter whole, & stroke the Pagan without missing any poynt: but the pagan stroke the other in such sort that he beaued him out of the saddle, & he fell to the ground, wherewith the Pagan Knight remayned with great pride and gladnesse. In the meane time that these twe wer in the Iust, there entred in a Knight of Phenicia, who entred in with great pompe and pride, who when he saw that the Prince of Camogenia was ouerthrowen, he put himselfe vnto the Iust. Little did profite him his great pride and arrogancie, & outward show to be a strong knight against him of Siria, for that at the first encounter he ouerthrew him to the ground: in like sort did he vse other fifténe Knights of diuers Prouinces. So straight way entred the Prince of Phœnicia, who was a meruailous well proportioned knight, armed all in white armour, wrought with excellent knots of gold, and he brought in his companye an hundred Knights, all apparailed in white satten, and riding about the place, he shewed his obedience vnto the King and all the Ladies. Then he put himselfe at his standing, for at that time ther was not a knight to iust withall. So straight way they sounded the trumpets, at which noyse the Knights mooued themselues to the Iust with their horses, and made their encounter so strong, & with so great fury, ỹ the strong Pagan was cast to the grounde, and the like he did to other fiue ventrous Knights, which entred into the place. Straight way entred the braue King of Silicia, who was armed with glistering armour of very fine stæle, and was mounted vpon a very mightie and rich courser, and brought in his cõpany two hundred Knights all apparailed with rich cloth of golde, accompanied with greate musicke of minstrelles which was a pleasaunt noyse to be heard, and after that he had made the accustomed compasse and curtesie in the place, he put himselfe at the Iust. So when signs were made, they spurred their horses, and made their incounter so strong, that it was great griefe vnto him, to put himselfe vpright again,

but

rable soule was scant out of ỹ vnhappie bodie when ỹ all the Castell began to shake, and with the noise of a terrible thunder clap it vanished awaie, in such sort that all those ỹ were there present remained in the plaine field without anie signe or token of castel to be there or anie other kind of buildings, for that you shall vnderstand, that this Castle was made by Art of inchauntment by that olde Witch. Surely it caused great admiration to all them that remained a liue: but much more was the griefe of the Ladies which tarried for ỹ comming of ỹ Prince, when they saw ỹ he tarried so long, & also afterward when they heard that great noyse of thunder, at the breaking vp of that inchaunted Castle. It was no lesse to be wondred at, to sée the huge and mightie Serpent, & the great giant with his mother, and the fiue knights that were slaine, vnderstanding that the Prince had made all that destruction. So the fiue Knights which yelded thẽselues, gaue the Prince to vnderstand who the Giants wer, and how the olde Gianteſſe had ordained that Castle for to take reuengement on him, for the death of her two sonnes. The Græke Prince gaue thankes vnto his Gods, for that they had deliuered him out of that terrible snare, and gaue the Knightes frée libertie to departe, and goe whether they would.

Then the Prince and his company retourned onwards to their iourney, making greate hast in their trauayling, that they might get out of that great Wode, before that the night shoulde come vpon them, whereby they might get to some towne nigh at hand. And at such time as the glistering Apollo began to hide his face, and to couer himselfe, according to his accustomed order, they came vnto a fayre Castle, which was a little without the wode, whereas of the Lorde thereof, they were verye well receiued: yet much more royal was their entertainment, and farre greater was his affection towards them, when he knew of ỹ destruction of that inchaunted Castle, for that he had felte and known the inconuenience of that ill neighbour.

¶ How

¶How that the king of Nabatea had vnderſtanding of the great deſtruction that the Greeke Prince made in the caſtle, and how he commaunded that the ſerpent and the heads of the Gyants ſhould be ſet at the entrie of the gate of the Pallaice for a perpetuall memorie, and how that the triumph began that was ordeined, and of all that paſſed in the time of the feaſts. Cap. 14.



THE fame of the valiant knight Claridiano, with his accuſtomed gentillitie was noiſed throughout all thoſe Prouinces of Nabatea, publiſhing his heroicall actes and feates of armes, naming him to be the knight of the damſells, and when he drew nigh vnto Nabatea, there did not lacke them which gaue the king to vnderſtand of all that paſſed. When the king heard of ſo mightie and valiant dædes, and in ſpeciall of that which was done in the inchaunted caſtell, and of the furiouſneſſe of the ſerpent, he commanded ſtraight ẏ men ſhuld be ſent thether, for to bring them vnto his preſence which ſtraight way was accompliſhed, and when the King ſaw, ſo great worthineſſe, he commaunded that forthwith for a perpetuall memory of ẏ knight, they ſhuld be hanged at ẏ pallaice gate, deſirous to know ẏ knight, & to haue him in his court for to do him honor: but they which had more deſire to ſée him, wer ẏ Dutcheſſe of the valley and her Daughter. Who were at that time come to the Court, and declared the greate proweſſe of the Prince, and thought long for the daye of the Triumphes, for as then hée promiſed without faile to be at Nabatea, ſo the daie of the feaſtes were come, at the fame wherof, reſorted thether a great number of great valour and ſtrength. Amongſt whom was the prince of Phœnicia with a goodly company of noble perſons, and the Prince of Camogenia with many and very well proportioned knightes. Likewiſe came thether the King of Arabia, with greate

maieſtie.

and make thy reuengement as thy heart desireth, and do not thou thinke that I will glorie in the abating of thy courage, but with the great valour the which my high minde doth demaund. The Gyant when he sawe himselfe derided and that the knight made little account of him, was with the greate anger which he receiued almost beside himselfe, and sayd: Oh vile and miserable creature, is it possible that the Gods will doo me so great outrage, as to consent that I shall take armour against thee, and that thou hast so much force, as to driue me vnto that necessitie. And in saying these words, he lift vp againe his broad & mightie sword against the prince, who lykewise cleered himselfe of that blow as he did of the first. Then the Prince sayd vnto him: Thou deformed beast without any humane reason, doo not procure by thy greate pride to spot or staine the nobilitie of my person, to cause me to strike thee, without hauing any armour, to make thy defence. The Giant made little accompt of ỹ counsell he gaue him, but rather assalted him with more terrible blowes. But all that euer he did was in vaine, for that the Prince with great experience and lightnesse cleered himselfe from them, and tarried ỹ time, that he might haue opportunitie to close with him, for to shew him the fruites of his fists, for at that time he had not drawen his sword. A good while they were in this contention, till such time as those Knights which ran away (which was to the number of ten) had time to arme themselues, and to returne againe into that place whereas they were eating, who came all in a readinesse with theyr swords in their hands. When the Prince saw the great perill which was towards him, he was constrained to drawe out his sword for to make his defence against that wicked company. The olde Witch called with a mightie voyce vnto her sonne, that he should enter in and arme himselfe, for that she suspected as a Deuine, what should happen. (O cursed heart, that is so great a friend vnto cruell reuengment: how dost thou procure to heape vpon thy selfe such shame & reproch, seeking without all Iustice to doo that, which it wer better for thee to haue left vndone.) Full little did it profit

this

this olde Witch her great crying out, and inchauntments, for that the Giant would not hearken vnto her, but followed his pretẽce vnarmed as he was, against him, who although he had bene armed, his furie would little haue profited him, so by reson that ẏ other armed Knights did so much trouble him with their blowes, it was the occasion that the Giant did the more molest him, causing him many times with the fury of their blowes to bow his knees to the grounde, the which did constraine him to vse all his power against them, striking about him on the one side and on the other, that in a small time he ouerthrew fiue of them dead to the ground, yet for all that the other fiue which remained did not let to vse all the extremitie they could against the Grake, and likewise that furious Gyant whom the knight would neuer offer to strike with his cutting sword, but alwayes waiting opportunitie that he might close with him, for to giue him one blowe with the pomell therof, and when time did serue, he would not lose it, but being verie nigh him, he stroke him so mightie a blow with the pomell of his sword vnder his eare, that he droue it into his braines, wherewith the Gyant fell dead to ẏ ground. The other fiue knights when they sawe that terrible blowe, they threw their swords vnto the ground, and yelded themselues vnto the curtesie of ẏ Grake knight. The olde Gyantesse when she sawe her sonne dead, and those knights yelded, with great furie and terrible shriking she put her selfe before the knight and sayd: O cruell Butcher, the destroyer of my welbeloued sonnes, make now an end of her who doth more deserue the death then they, and doe not thinke that thou shalt obtaine so much victorie as to carrie me awaie with thee aliue, and if that with thy cruell hand thou wilt not make an end of her that is without all good fortune, I promise thee that I will procure to giue it my selfe with my owne hands. And in saying these wordes shee went vnto the place whereas her sonne lay dead, and layde holde on his sharpe sword, and with a trice she thrust it into her bodie, that none that were there present had anie time to withdraw her from doing it, which being done, her mise-

rable

warriour would neuer let her loſe, but ſtil remained holding her faſt betweene his armes, continuing this perillous wraſtling, being all imbrued with her beaſtiall bloud ẏ iſſued out of the wound, which was a great helpe vnto him againſt ẏ furious fiend, which was the occaſion ẏ ſhe loſt a great part of her ſtrength. Long time indured this great & daungerous wraſtling, & that infernall beaſt faſt vnto the noble and valiant breaſt of the Græke Prince, till ſuch time as he plainly perceiued ẏ this monſter begane to ware faint & to loſe hir ſtrength: likewiſe it could not be otherwiſe but ẏ the prince ware ſomewhat wearie, notwithſtanding he did animate himſelfe ſeing ẏ great weakneſſe of ẏ Serpent, which was by reaſon of the great quantitie of bloud which came frõ her wound, & hauing opportunitie he toke his ſword wherwith he thruſt her into the heart with ſo great ſtrength ẏ he cloue it in two peces, and ſo this infernall monſter fell downe dead to the ground, and carried the Prince with her, for that they wer ſtill faſt together, and by reaſon that ſhe lacked her ſtrength to make her defence he quickly cleered himſelfe out of her clawes, and recouered his ſword, and when he ſawe certainly that he was cleere from ẏ cruell monſter, he knéeled downe and gaue great thankes vnto his Gods, the poyſon was great which this monſter threw out for to infect the knight, but by reaſon of the greate vertue which was in the armour that Galtenor gaue him, there was nothing ẏ could hurt him, although he remained verie wearie & vnquiet, and was conſtrained to ſit & cole and refreſh himſelfe by a well which was full of water there hard by, whereas ẏ furious beaſt came forth, & when he found himſelfe ſomwhat refreſhed he looked about him and ſawe a paire of ſtaires, wherat he determined to go vp: he had not aſcended many ſteps, but at the clift of a doore which he found, he ſaw ſitting at a great table many people eating and drinking, and at the vpper end ther ſate the gyanteſſe, and next vnto her by her ſide a mightie great & furious Gyant, ſuch a one as he had neuer ſéene the like, & hearkning what they did ſay, he heard ẏ the gianteſſe ſaid: Now hath our reuenger his dinner betweene his

clawes,

clawes, for that bee is so quiet, although he hath bene a great while in making of it ready, then ỹ gyant asked & said: Was ther anie of you which saw what armor this knight brought & what recognices he had, then one which was there eating said: I did see what recognices he had, then the old magicall witch said vnto her sonne, now that you certainly know he is dead, I wil tell you who it was: You shall vnderstand ỹ it was the knight that slew my two sonnes & thy brothers. The gyant when he heard this, stroke with his hand a great blow vpon the table, saying: Oh Gods, & wherefore did you not tel me thereof before, that I with my own hands might haue taken the reuengment, cursed be thine inchantments, for ỹ they are the occasion ỹ the mightie force of my armes do lose the glorie ỹ they do deserue. All this which was spoken the knight heard, & by their reasons he knew that they were all of the lineall desent of those gyants which he slew, for to set at libertie ỹ Princesse of the valley, & hearing himselfe so vilely spoken of he could not indure to stand there long, for his cholar did so ouercome him, ỹ he could not longer refraine, but set his shulder vnto the dore with so terrible strength, ỹ he threw it downe to the ground, at which fal it made a terrible noise, which caused al them that were ther to be greatly amazed, but yet their wonder was much more to see that the knight was at libertie & cleere from that vgly beast, who they thought had ben dead and deuoured by her, but when they sawe him they all procured to hide themselues and to runne away, so that the Gyant remained all alone in that place, & rising vp from the bord, stretching himselfe on his feet, he said: O my Gods I do giue thanks for ỹ you haue deliuered this vile knight frõ ỹ power of ỹ furious beast, that I with my hands may take reuengment of him. And in saying these wordes hee drew out a mightie sword which he had hanging at his side, & went towards the prince striking at him a terrible blow, from ỹ which this Greek did cleere himselfe with his accustomed lightnesse, & being past ỹ blow he sayd: Gyant, goe & arme thy selfe, and heere I will tarrie for thee, by which meanes thou maist defend thy selfe,

All that thou doeſt and wilt doe ſayd the olde woman, I wil ſuffer at thy handes, onely for the reuengement I will take of thee, and that verie quickly, and therewith ſhe went from that windowe and ſhut it faſt againe. So not long after at his backe he heard a noiſe, as though they were opening of a doore little and little, whereas there appeared a little light, the Prince procuring to go thether, ſaw that the bones whereon he trode were of two humane bodies, which appeared not to be verie long ſince their fleſh was torne of with hard and cruel teeth, but this conſideration could not indure long with him, for that he heard a great rumor, & looking what it ſhould be, he ſawe that there was comming forth of another den a mightie Serpent with wings, as great in bodie as an Elephant, which had onely two feete which appeared out of that monſtrous bodie but a ſpan in length, and each foot had three clawes of three ſpans in length, ſhe came with her mouth open of ſo monſtrous and huge bigneſſe, and ſo deformed, that a whole armed knight might enter in therat, and ſhe had on her iawes two tuſkes, which ſeemed to be of two palmes, as ſharpe as any needles, and all her bodie was couered with hard ſhells of diuerſe colours, and with great furie ſhe came forth with her wings all abroad, the Prince could not but receiue ſome feare in ſeeing ſo furious a beaſt, but ſeeing it was then time and great need to haue courage and to be expert and valiant for to make his defence, he toke his good cutting ſworde in his hand, and ſhrouded himſelfe with his hard and ſtrong ſhield, and tarryed the comming of that vgly monſter, and when the furious beaſt ſawe that there was whereon ſhe might imploie her ſharpe teeth, ſhe ſtroke with her wings, and with her clawes ſhe griped and laid faſt hold vpon his hard ſhelde, pretending to haue ſwallowed whole this couragious warriour, & faſtning her ſharpe tuſks vpon his helme, which when ſhe found ſo hard, ſhe let go her hold, & pulled at his ſhield with ſo great ſtrength ý ſhe pulled it frõ his arme, but the knight ſtroke at her a mightie blow vpon ý head with his ſworde, but could not hurt her by reaſon of ý the hard ſhels wherwith it was armed, & though he gaue hir

no

no wound, yet for all that she felt the blow in such sort, that it made her to recoyle to the ground, & to fall vpon her long taile. This oppressed Knight made great hast to strike her another blow, but he could not, for ỳ she stretched her selfe of so great height before him. But fortune was so fauourable vnto him, that he might strike her on the belly, whereas she had no defence with shells nor any other thing but feathers, whereas he gaue her a great wound: but if ỳ blowe had bene ouerthwart as it was right downe, he had surelye slaine her at that time, but yet it was not so little, but that it was mortall, whereout issued much bloud. This great Serpent when she felt her selfe wounded, stroake at the Knight with her tayle so terrible a blow, that if he had not seene it comming, it had bene sufficient to haue parted him in peeces, and by reason of the narrownes of that place, they could not apart themselues the one from the other, but she leaped in the aire with so great lightnesse, that it seemed to be ten paces from the ground, which was the occasion that her furious blow did not hurt him. She was scant descended to the ground, when that with both his hands he stroke her so terrible a blow vpon those hard shels, that it made her to fal with her breast to the ground: but straight way she raysed her selfe vp againe, and would haue stroken the Knight againe with her vnmercifull taile. The Knight for to cleere himselfe thereof, fell downe flat on the ground, for that hee had no time to make any other defence. But that terrible blow was not so soone passed ouer him, but straight waies he was on his feete, at such time as the furious beast came towards him. Heere the Prince hauing a great confidence in his owne strength, did so high and valiant prowesse, that you may put in oblition, all the valiantnes that euer was done by his predecessors, and put this in perpetuall memorie. For that he threw his sword out of his hand, and went vnto this monster, and imbraced himselfe with her, & did so quease her betwixt his mightie armes, with so much strength ỳ the furious beast could not profit her self of her sharp clawes, but only with her wings, she beat him on euery side, this valiant

darkneſſe, that ſcarce he could diſcerne any light: and ſo gro-ping by the walls, he did kepe his going downe that nar-row and turning ſtaires, which were very long, and of ſuch length, that he thought he deſcended into the middeſt of the earth. He ſpent a great time in deſcending thoſe ſtaires: but in the ende he came into a very faire and large Courte, all cõpaſſed about with yron grates, very faire & wel wrought, and at the one of them there was a Paſtora leaning on her breaſt, who ſæmed to be of a meruailous and faire beautie: who leaned her faire face vpon her white hand, being verye penſiue, and diſtilled from her Chriſtalline eyes great aboũ-daunce of teares. When this græke knight ſaw this beauti-full creature, he remayned in great admiration, conſidering with him-ſelfe, if that by aduenture ſhe ſhould be the ſame Paſtora, which the princes of Ieroſolima had told him of. Then this Paſtora did open hir faire and chriſtalyne eyes, loking earneſtly vpon the knight, and giuing a greuous and ſorowfull ſigh, ſhe withdrew hir ſelfe from the grate, which cauſed the græke knight to haue great deſire to know who it ſhould be, ſuſpecting that by force of ſome inchantment, ſhe ſhould be put therein, where-with there kindled in his heart a new Fyer of loue: And caſting vp his eyes agayne to ſæ if he might ſæ her, he could not, but ſaw in the very ſame place, a woman, of a very great ſtature, who was all armed, with a ſword gyrt at hir waſt, & had hanging at her neck a bowe, and a gylt Quiuer, this lady was of ſo greate beautie, that ſhe ſæmed almoſt to excell the Paſtora, ſo that the Prince, with ỹ ſight which he had before him, forgot that which was paſt, and fired his eyes en hir. But in the ſame ſort vpon a ſodayne, ſhe went away as the firſt dyd, leuing the knight with no leſſe trouble in his thought, then before he was. This knight had not much tyme to bewayle the abſence of that Ladie, for that without ſæing any body, he was ſtroken ſuch a blow with ſo great fury vpon his back, that he was conſtrained to ſtoop with one knæ to the groũd. Yet with a tryſe he aroſe vp agayne: and loking about him to ſæ who it was that ſtroke him, he perceiued that it was

a knight, which with great haſt ran in at a doꝛe which was at one of the coꝛners of the court. And with the great anger which the Pꝛince reſeiued, to ſee him ſelfe in ſuch ſoꝛt ſo ill intreated, he followed him with his accuſtomed lightneſſe, following after that Knight in at the doꝛe. He was not two ſteppes in at the doꝛe, when that he fell downe into a deepe caue, which was couered ouer in ſuch ſubtyl ſoꝛt, that whoſoeuer dyd treade on it, he ſtraight-way fell down into the caue, except he were aduertiſed thereof. And within the caue it was very darke, and no light appeared. The Knight ſeeing himſelfe ſo betrayed in that trappe, he feared to receiue ſome harme in the fall. But yet verye lightlie he put him ſelfe on foote, with his Swoꝛd dꝛawen in his hand, foꝛ to make his defence, againſte whatſoeuer ſhould happen. But by reaſon of the great darkneſſe, he could not ſee any thing, neither diſcouer wherein he was fallen, but determined to ſettle himſelfe againſte ſomewhat, if he might fynde where, groping to ſee if he might fynde any other doꝛe of entrie into that darke Denne.

And as the knight went groping and feeling, he found that he trode on no other thing but dead mennes bones, which cauſed him to ſtand ſtill. And not long after there was open a louer hole, at the which entred much clearenеſſe, and gaue great light into the place whereas he was: whereat appeared a very olde woman, who was ſo leane & ſo ful of wꝛinkels, that it ſeemed ſhe had nothing but ſkin and bones on hir, who ſayd vnto the Pꝛince, in an euill houre thou cameſt hether, & ſo ſhall thy lodging be, and thine entertainment, foꝛ that thou art now in place, that thou maiſt looke foꝛ no other thing, but to be meate vnto a furious beaſt. And thy ſurmoũted ſtrength ſhal not be able to make any defence. The pꝛince who was very wꝛath, anſwered, Oh falſe & curſed Witch, whom ẏ gods confound, who hath taught thee to vſe ſo great diſceit, ẏ wt thy falſe & diuliſh vnderſtãding, thou doſt woꝛk ſo much euil againſt all traueling & vẽtrous knights. I hope to come foꝛth out of this caue, in ſpight of al thy miſchiefe, & with my ſtrong arme to bꝛeake all thy bones a ſunder.

puniſhing rapes and extremities offered, in ſuch ſort, and ſo many, that his fame was exalted vnto the cloudes, ſome called him the Knight of the Ladies, and other ſome the Knight with the Purple armour. And when they vnderſtode that the time of the Triumphes drew nere, they toke the waye which led them ſtraight vnto the Citie of Nabatea: and for to goe thether, they muſt nedes paſſe thorough a wode of eight miles long, in the which they trauailed til it was none time, and therein they diſcouered a very faire caſtle, and feeling themſelues somewhat weary, they went thether for to refreſh themſelues, the which chanced vnto them otherwiſe, as in the chapter following you ſhall vnderſtand.

¶How the Knight of the Ladies went vnto the Caſtle, and of the great treaſon which was there ordained by Arte Magicke, and of the ſucceſſe thereof. Cap. 13.

THe Greeke Prince for to take ſome refreſhing, toke his way towards the Caſtle, that he ſaw in the wod with all his companye, but yet it fel not out with them as they hoped, for that when they came thether they found the gates faſt ſhut, & for all that they gaue mightie blowes thereat, and called, yet there was no body that made them any aunſwere, and ſeeing this, they determined to goe round about the Caſtle, to ſee if there were any other part wheras they might call that they might be heard, but in all parts they found it a like, for the which the Prince was very ſorrowfull, and pretended to departe some other waye: and turning about with his horſe, he ſawe a pillar, which was made of ſtone, on the which was written in the Chaldean tongue, theſe wordes. Let none be ſo hardie as to enter into this Caſtle, except he will for his boldeneſſe die the death. The Prince when he had read this title, laughed thereat and ſayd. I knowe none that is ſo hardie to enter into the Caſtle, ſeeing before his eyes the incon-

uenience

ueniences and harme that will thereof procéde: and againe, hauing the gates shut, in such sorte, that vnto no bodie they will open them, neuertheleſſe although the perill be great, yet if they would open the gates, I know not whether I should feare the entrie or not, & if it were but onely to know what he is ý is of so great power: & nigh vnto the sayd piller was there another of the same making, at the which there hung a Bugle horne, and thereby was written these words, which said: He which is of so great hardines, & hath confidence in his power and strength, and will enter into the height of this castell, let him blow this horne, and the entrie therein shal be in safetie, but the comming forth shall be doubtfull. If I wer once within said the knight, I wold procure ý my comming forth should be without trouble, and therewith he take the horne in his hand, and before that he beganne to sound it he sayd vnto the damsells: Faire Ladies I am determined to procure the entrie of this fortresse, to sée what there is within, and likewise him that doth proclaime so great feare, in ý meane time I desire you to tarrie for me amongest these gréene trées, for that the castell is small and will quickly bée looked ouer, so that in short time we shall know who & what there is within, and making an end of desiring them to tarrie, he blew the horne, and made it to sound verie strongly, in such sort, that it might be heard verie far. There was no long tarrying after when ý out of a window from ý highest part of the castell, there was let downe a basket which was made verie fast aboue with a strong rope. The Prince did wel vnderstand that if he would go in, he must enter in by that basket, and so without anie tarrying he put himselfe therein, he was not as yet scarce setled when that with great swiftnes he was drawen vp, and when he was at the highest, with a trice he left the basket and put himselfe in at the windowe, and coulde sée no bodie, neyther those which did helpe to pull him vp in the Basket, at the which he neyther meruailed nor hadde anye feare, but loking about hée sawe a paire of winding stayres, whereat hée descended, and hée had not descended many steppes, when as there was so greate

pardie,and therewith he ſtroke with all his force ſo terrible a blow at the prince,that he made him to fall vpon his horſe crupper,but ſtraight waye he was ſetled againe in his ſaddle,and ſtriking his horſe with the ſpurs, he came vnto the Gyant,at ſuch time as he had his ſword aloft, to diſcharge it vpon the Prince,but he thruſt at him a foyne at the ſight of his healme,which was very large,in ſuch ſort,ỹ he ſtroke him betwixt both his eyes,and the ſword paſſed through to his necke,ſo that the Gyant fell downe dead to the ground, which was no ſmall ioye vnto all the Priſoners that were in the Chariot. The other three Knights when they ſaw all things to goe ſo ill on their parts, they let looſe their horſe bridles,and with great haſt they procured to hide themſelues in the thickeſt of the forreſt . The Prince made no reckoning of them,but let them goe,and went ſtraight waye vnto the Chariot,and lighted from his horſe, and went vp into it for to vnloſe thoſe priſoners which were bounde , and ſayd vnto thoſe Ladyes. Receiue this ſeruice of me, not for any courteſie that I found in your Knights,but for the great bountie and vertue,which is in the Dutches and her daughter. The Earle of the deepe lake aunſwered and ſayde . Of truth,gentle Knight, it had bene better that you had accepted our demaund, which we aſked in the ſeruice of the Ladies : for that being ſubdued by your great valour, we had not come into ſo great miſerie and trouble in the which we haue ſæne our ſelues.Sir Earle aunſwered the prince Claridiano,my heart is ſo cleane voyd of the ſubiection of loue, (putting apart my bounden dutie towards thē) that by the oath that I haue ſworne to the order of Knighthood, that it is not to be meruailed if I did denie your demaund, putting for intercelloor that,which my heart was neuer ſubiect vnto. Then the Dutcheſſe with a goodly grace ſayd : Yet I do certeſie you gentle Knight, that at this time you ſhall not remaine ſo much at your owne libertie,but that by me you ſhal be conſtrained to be my guide to the Citie of Nabatea. With condition ſayd the Prince,that the day of the tuſting, you do not manifeſt my perſon,vnto any creature.I do accept

cept to be your kæper and defender. The condition aunſwered the Dutcheſſe daughter, is graunted and accepted, but yet I muſt nædes charge you with another requeſt, which I will aſke of you, and it is, that in my name, and as my knight, you will carrye with you a Jewell of mine, and enter into the iuſting at Nabatea, with the Earle in your company. I cannot deny anything ẏ you dœ aſke of me, ſaid Claridiano, for that you haue polwer to commaund me, and therefore I dœ accept, and graunt vnto all things that your highneſſe ſhall demaund. And being in this communication, the Princeſſes thet remained at their Hoſtes, came whereas they were, and in their companye the knight of the houſe, who was almoſt in an extaſie with the great ioye and pleaſure he had, to ſæ the two Giants and his company dead, and requeſted them inſtantly, that they would goe vnto his Caſtle to take their reſt: to the which they did graunt, for the neceſſitie which did mœue them. Galtenor did declare vnto vs what ſhuld be done vnto theſe Giants, and ſaid that they were Lords of the faire Ilands, enemies vnto the King of the Nabateos, and as they had vnderſtanding of the greate triumphs and feaſts which was proclaimed in Nabatea, thræ of thoſe Giaunts, which were all bretheren, went forth to dœ all the harme they might, in company with their mother who was a great inchaunter. The one of the Giants who was more furious and of a mightier ſtrength then the other two, wold goe alone, and theſe two came together of whom we haue tolde you. The knights of the Dutcheſſe wer merualiouſly ill intreated in the battaile which they had with Claridiano, and it was requiſite that they ſhould remaine a few daies in the caſtle, for to eaſe & comfort themſelues: but the Prince his hart could not in any wiſe ſuffer to tarry ſo long to eaſe himſelfe, but toke his leaue of ẏ Dutcheſſe for to depart, who did graunt it vnto him with a very gœd wil, for that ſhe would remaine in ẏ Caſtle, till ſuch time as her knights wer better cõforted & amended. So ẏ Prince & his company toke ẏ way which they thought beſt, wheras they trauailed eight daies, in which time he did wõders in arms,

puniſh-

The Giant did not remaine content after that he had giuen him this blow, but did follow him for to double it, with the which he thought to make an ende of that worke: but this thought lasted not long, for that this Greeke Knight was come againe to himselfe, and as he was setlyng himselfe in his saddle, he perceiued very well the great daunger, wherein he was lodged that he thought verely that he had bene slaine with that terrible blowe, which hee receiued: there was neuer Serpent went out of the Lidian sea, to take their pray, with more yre and fury, then this Greeke warriour did at this time against his enimies to see himselfe so ill intreated, and that with one onely blow, and therewith drew out his sword, and went towards the Gyaunt saying. Tarie, tarie thou furious beast, for here I sweare vnto thee by the immortal Gods, that very quickly I meane to giue thee thy paiment, which thy terrible blow doth deserue. The Prince at that time was so full of wrath, that he might well haue bene counted hardie, that durst at that time come to him face to face. And when he came whereas the Giant was, he stretched himselfe vpon his stirrops, and stroke so terrible a blow vpon the giants shoulder, which was with so great strength, that all that quarter he cut cleane awaye, and threwe him dead to the ground: which caused great contentment vnto all those, that were in the house beholding them. The other Giant when he saw his companion dead, with great wrathe he commaunded the fifténe Knightes, that altogether they should assault that mortall enimye, who were not slacke in accomplishing his commaundement. Oh vnhappy people, if you had considered, how that this young Knight had lost the reynes of his patience, you would not haue bene so hardy to assault him, for that strong mountaines were not sufficient to make resistance against him, neither would ye haue ben so bold, to giue him any occasion of offence. This worthy warriour when he saw this his shamefull assault, without losing any part of his courage, he went and encountred them, laying about him, striking on the right hand, and on the left hand, with so much fury, as a Lyon, when he is compassed about

with

with expert hunters, euen so he vsed himself. These knights were all stout and chosen knights, and of the lineall descent of Gyants, and did not let to strike him manye and furious blowes, which made him many times almost to lose his wittes, which was caused by his great ire and wrathe, for it was such, that he felt in himselfe no increasing of force: yet for all that, he did so imploye his blowes, that ten of them, some with their heads cloven in peces, and other some with their armes cut off, he ouerthrew dead to the ground. The other Giant was merueilously amazed to see so incredible a thing, but puffing and blowing like to a Bull, he set hand to his mightie and great cutting sword, and with great furye he likewise assaulted the valiant Knight on the one side, and stroke at him such a blow, that he made him to stoope & incline his body to his horse necke, but quickly he raised himselfe vp againe, and with great lightnesse he cleared himselfe from the second blow, which he sawe descending vpon him, and therewith he stroke two blowes at two of those fiue Knights which remained, so that he brought them both dead to the ground. The Gyant when he saw so much strength in one Knight, being very much kindeled in wrath, he commaunded the three Knights which remained, to withdrawe themselues a parte, so that the Giaunt and the Knight made their assault together with such terrible blowes, that it was wonderfull to see. The Knight with both his hands stroake at the Giant, so that both their blowes descended together, with so great strength and noyse, that it made a merueilous sound throughout all the mountaints. The Giaunt was he which receceiued the most harme, by reason that his armor made but small resistance against the terrible blowes of the Knight, which was the occasion that he was hurt and wounded in many places. The Giant seeing his great resistaunce roared like a baighted Bul, procuring with all the power he had to hurt the Prince. In this sort they indured more then an houre without taking any rest, at which time the Giant did feele in himselfe some wearinesse, and would with one blow make an ende of this battaile, or put his life in ieo-

pardie,

doſt beare vnto the Gods, gentle Knight, ſayd the Hoſte of the houſe, dw not put theſe thy tender yeares in perill to bæ ſlaine, oꝛ carried away pꝛiſoner by thoſe furious beaſts. To whom Claridiano aunſwered, It will be rather a ſhamefull repꝛoch vnto my fame, if there ſhuld lack in me, that which I am bound by the oꝛder of Knighthwd to perfoꝛme. Therefoꝛe my gwd Hoſt, let this ſuffice, that neither your requeſt noꝛ any others peticions, ſhall perſwade me to the contrarie, but that I will goe foꝛth and pꝛocure to abate ſo greate pꝛide and harme, foꝛ that in making an ende of my dayes, in defence againſt theſe cruell people, then haue I perfoꝛmed that I am bound to, & haue pꝛomiſed to dw, therfoꝛe I pꝛay thæ commaund that the gates may be opened. When the Hoſt ſaw his determined purpoſe and will, he commaunded the gates to be opened. The two Ladyes receiued great foꝛrowe and griefe, foꝛ that which the Knight did: but much moꝛe was the griefe of Fidelio, although he was thꝛoughlie certified of ẏ valour of his Loꝛd, yet he letted not but greatly to feare his returne, foꝛ ẏ the enterpꝛiſe was very daungerous and doubtfull, and would very faine haue gone with his Loꝛd, but he wold in no caſe conſent therunto, but wold alone goe foꝛth vpon this enterpꝛiſe. So this noble warrioꝛ rode foꝛth with the viſoꝛ of his helme vp, and his ſhield on his arme, and a mightie cutting ſwoꝛd in his hand, and put himſelfe in the middeſt of the high waye, and in a ſmal time after, he ſaw a chariot which was dꝛawen with fiue hoꝛſes, in the which they bꝛought the Dutcheſſe of the Valley, and all the company ẏ remained with her, who by reaſon ẏ they wer euill intreted in ẏ battaile befoꝛe, they had not ſtrength to make reſiſtaunce, but ẏ they were taken pꝛiſoners by the Giants, and bound very faſt, and put into that Chariot. The Pꝛince at ẏ time did greatly reioice, foꝛ ẏ he had ſo gwd oppoꝛtunitie foꝛ to make ſatiſfaction vnto the Dutcheſſe and her knights of the great harme the which by him they had receiued, and being ready to the battaile, he put himſelfe in the high waye, tarrying their comming.

When the Giants ſaw his great hardines, one of them, which

which by reaſon of his deformed members, trauailed on a mightie great horſe, came forth before all the reſt, whereas this Greke was: and when he came nigh him, he ſayde in the Chaldean tongue. Thou Knight, what diuell hath cauſed thee to commit ſo great folly, for to abide my fury, arte thou ſo certified of thy great valor, ỳ thou wilt ſee the proſe therof. Then the valiant ſonne of the great Alphebo anſwered. Neither my folly, nor yet the truſt which thou ſaiſt I haue, hath moued me, but onely this thy crueltie & euill cuſtomes which thou doſt vſe, for that the immortall Gods are verye angry, that they haue indued you with ſo mightie members and ſtrength, and you thus implore them, exerciſing nothing but vilenelle and crueltie, and therefore they dow ſend me, as their meſſenger, to make manifeſt vnto you their great anger and wrath, promiſing great puniſhment, if you dow not leaue to follow theſe peruerſe cuſtomes which you dow vſe, & if it be ſo that you are determined not to leaue this euill cuſtome and amend your life, here in their names I dow defie you in mortall battaile. The Giant with the great pride he had, and with the anger that he receiued, when he heard the ſpeech of the Prince, the words doubled ſo in his mouth, that he could not make any aunſwere, but threwe out from his mouth and noſe great abundaunce of ſmoake, which almoſt toke away their ſights like a myſt, and ſpurring forwardes his great beaſt, who was very light, that with a trice he was with the Prince, and before he could make any reſiſtaunce, he ſtroke him ſo terrible a blow with both his handes with his heauie clubbe vpon his fine and hard ſteeled helme that it made him to ſtagger, and to fall down vpon his horſe neck, and his ſpeare fell out of his hande, and his armes hanged downe, as though he had bene dead and out of his noſe and mouth proceeded great quantitie of blood.

His horſe who was verye ſwifte and ſtrong, gaue a ſpring in the aire, and tourned about, carrying his maſter a long time about the fielde, ſprinkeling with blood all the waye whereas he went.

The

that enterprise, for the Prince so behaued himself, that at three blowes he brought three of them dead to the ground, and for that they were all chosen knightes, for the losse of those that were slaine, they would not leaue to persuer against ỹ mighty warriour. The Prince when he perceiued that they dyd still procure to intreate him euill, with great ire and wrath he beganne a new to plague them with his strong and furyous arme, in such sort, that in a small time he made that the halfe of them had lost their strength for to strike at him, the rest which remained when they sawe that there they should looke for no other but death, except they made theyr defence better, or else procure to kill him, ỹ which straight way they did put in vre. Then the Prince when he perceiued that still with great furie they did persecute him, he let slip his shælde and threw it on his backe, and toke fast holde of his sword in both his handes, and stroke so terrible a blowe at him which came first to hand, that hitting him on the shoulder, he cut him downe vnto the waste and he fell dead to the ground, then casting his sword about, with an ouerthwart blowe he stroke another on the throate, that he made his head to flye from his shoulders, & in that furie he brought other two dead to the ground, the other fire which remained seeing his diuelish furie began to withdrawe themselues. Then the daughter of the Dutchesse seeing the other knights to retire, came vnto the Prince, and with great grace and curtesie she said: Valiant knight of the Ladies, I doe desire thee for curtesies sake to cease thy furie, & let not the force of thy strong arme procede farther, but let this my desire and request moue thee to that which twentie knightes of valour could not obtaine. This noble warriour although he was blind and ouercome with anger and wrath, yet could he not but pacifie himselfe, seeing with what humilitie this faire Gentlewoman did desire him, and without anie more replying he did withdrawe himselfe, and leapt vpon the horse of the knight of the passage, for that Fidelio did take and brought after that ỹ horse of his master was slaine, and therewith he passed ouer the bridge, and began to take his iourney forwards, leauing all

them

them which saw the battaile, very much amazed at his great prowesse. So they trauailed with great haste, because they would come vnto their lodging before night, & making hast, they came vnto a mans house, who did lodge them, being in great feare, the occasion shall be told you in the next chapter following.

¶How that Claridiano was assaulted with two furious Gyants, and with xv. Knightes that came with them, and of the battaile that he had with them all. Cap. 12.



AT such time as the bright Apollo, woulde spread abroad his beames vpon the cold and moyst earth, was that valiaunt knight Claridiano on horseback, with all his company, for to prosecute his iourney, and vppon a sodaine, he heard with a great noyse & rushing, that they shut the gates of the house. Then the Prince asked what was the occasion of that great noyse, and it was told him by his boast, how that it was for to kepe out two great Gyants, which of late dayes did vse all those wayes & fields, doing all the harme possible, in taking and killing all that euer they might, and they do carrye with them fiftene Knights, for to help them to do all this euill, for which cause all this Countrey standeth in great feare, and dare not trauaile by the wayes, and vnderstanding that many doe come this way, to goe se the triumphs and feasts at Nabatea, they do vse here great pride and arrogancie, carrying away with them many prisoners, as well men as women. So when the Prince heard this, as one that did procure no other thing, but to augment his honour, and increase his fame, he sayd. Commaund that the gates may be open, for that I will neuer accompt my selfe in the number of Knights, but that I will cause them to leaue off doing such harme, and also set them at libertie, whom they do carry captiues, and ease the of this great feare in the which thou art. O for the loue thou

that now at her requeſt thou wouldeſt make frée this paſſage, & do that which her knights could not. Friend ſayd Claridiano, goe and tell vnto thy Ladie the Dutcheſſe, that I will procure to make the way ſure for me and my companie, and will her highneſſe likewiſe to bring knights that can defende her, as well as they can with theyr ſcoffes knowe how to make a ieſt at one they know not. The damſell ſaid: Curſed be the reaſons & excuſes of ſo euill a knight, that neither for Ladie of eſtimation, nor knight of proweſſe, will bée moued to vertue, and herewith ſhe returned to giue her Lady the aunſwere. So ſtraight way came forth many men for to pull off the armour of thoſe ouercome knights, the which when Claridiano ſaw, he ſpurred forwardes his horſe with his ſpeare in his hand, ready at all aſſayes to the iuſt, and went towards the Dutcheſſe ſaying. Lady, now will I ſhew vnto you, whether I can better kéepe my whole armor, then your knights their broken, and therewith he called vnto that knight which kept the paſſage, that he ſhould make himſelfe ready & come to him, and being both ſet in their places, they moued their horſes the one againſt the other with great fury, and in the middeſt of theyr courſe they met together, and neither of them did miſſe his blow, but met with ſo greate force, that the ſpeare of the knight of the paſſage was ſhiuered all to péeces, and made the Prince to encline his body vpon the ſaddle, but ỹ knight of ỹ paſſage receiued ỹ blow in ſuch ſort, ỹ neither his ſhield, nor his armour could make any reſiſtance, but ỹ the head of ỹ ſpeare ſhowed it ſelfe at his back, wherewith he fell from his horſe dead to ỹ groũd. The Dutcheſſe when ſhe ſaw it, receiued great ioy, although the folly of her knights was a griefe vnto her, in ſuch ſorte ỹ ſhe ſayd. Oh what deſerue they, ỹ without knowing ỹ valour of a perſon will haue him in deriſion, for we may well conſider that the Gods can beſtow their gifts on perſons of ſmall valour, at the leaſt on them ỹ haue ſmall capacitie for to vſe it, for héere you may ſée this knight, ỹ thoſe knights which did beare me companie, déemed ỹ he did refuſe ỹ iuſt with thē of verie cowardneſſe, & yet he is ỹ partie ỹ deliuereth them,

that

that they might not altogether be ſhamed: Oh diſordinate pride, enimie to all vertue, ſuch is it that doth remaine in our eſtates, that altogether it doth make vs to forget all goodnes, yet in our ſubiects meaner perſons we may learne that which is requiſite for our commoditie and honour, and yet we doe thinke that all which the Gods doth giue vs, we doe deſerue, and yet we finde not our ſelues ſatiſfied. At which reaſons of the Dutcheſſe, Claridiano was verie attentiue, & thought wel of her repentance, for that which her knightes had done against him, and was verie well content, & had her in reputation to be verie honourable, & drawing nigh vnto her he ſaid: Faire Ladie, here you doe ſee ỹ with great reaſon the horſe & armour of theſe your knights is mine, & doth pertaine vnto me, for ỹ their experience was ſuch to be lanched out of their ſaddles, as alſo to mock and teſt at trauailing and venterous knights, therefore your pleaſure may be to commaund them to be deliuered vnto me, for ỹ they knew not how to defend them. The Dutcheſſe was cut off from her anſwere by reaſon of the comming of a knight with great pride that ſayde: The horſe and armour is none of thine, firſt I do giue thee to vnderſtand ỹ we will defend them with the loſſe of thy life. And in saying theſe words he drew out his ſword, & before that the Prince could make anie reſiſtance, he cut off one of his horſe legs, and the Prince perceiuing it, before his horſe did fall, with great lightneſſe he cleered himſelfe from ỹ ſaddle, and like vnto the winde he went againſt that vncourteous knight, with his ſword in his hande, he ſtroke him ſuch a blow vpon the head, that he cut it in two parts, and he fel dead to the earth. The reſt of the knights which ſaw this, came vnto him with their ſwords in their hands, and for all the crying out of the Dutcheſſe & her daughter to withdraw them, they did compaſſe him about altogether, ſtriking him with terrible blowes on euery ſide: but yet they found him not ſo weake and without courage as they thought, but rather with a valiant hart he made his defence, & did intreate them in ſuch ſort, that afterward it grieued thē to haue begun

and her daughter. And when they were all paſt by, the prince Claridiano turned vnto his former iourney, it was not long after that there came a Damſell towards him with as great haſt as euer ſhe could make her palfraie to goe, and when ſhe came nigh vnto him, ſhe did ſalute him verie curteouſly, ſaying: Knight of the Ladyes, Don Petildo Earle of the deepe Lake doth ſend me vnto thee, to aſke thee what was the occaſion that thou diddeſt apart thy ſelfe out of the waie, conſidering they were men which did paſſe by, whether thou diddeſt it for that thou wouldeſt not iuſt with them, he ſayth ỹ thou maiſt goe whether thy pleaſure is, neuertheleſſe if that there be in thée ſo much valour as doth appeare by thy diſpoſition, he would be verie glad to breake a ſpeare with thée in the ſeruice of his Ladie. To whom the Prince ſayd: Fayre Damſell and friend, I woulde be verie gladde to ſatiſfie this his requeſt, if that I did finde my ſelfe ſubiect to loue, as it doth appeare that he is, therefore tell vnto this knight that I haue no will to iuſt neyther to be in loue. Then the Damoſell ſayd: I doe well beléeue, that it is more thy will to take thy eaſe and reſt, then to take anie paines, and this is ỹ cauſe that thou wilt be cléere from amorous delights, and ſo ſhe returned with this aunſwere, and when ſhe hadde tolde them, ther was a great laughter amongſt them, in mocking of Claridiano, & determined amongſt themſelues to ſend the damoſell backe againe, to tell him, for that he was not determined to iuſt in the ſeruice of his Ladyes, ỹ he would iuſt with one of thoſe knights, for ỹ it doth touch much the order of knighthoode, and is alſo his dutie, with condition that if he be ouerthrowen, onely to loſe his armour, for that it ſéemeth vnto vs to be verie good, & if ỹ other be ouercome, likewiſe to loſe his armour, & when the damſel had declared her meſſage, Claridiano anſwered: Faire damſel, tel thoſe knights ỹ I am not determined to iuſt, neither with condition nor without, for if I ſhuld loſe my armor, I ſhuld not ſo quickly get other, & if they haue ſuch a deſire to iuſt, in Nabatea they ſhal find them ỹ will accompliſh their deſire by iuſtice: Curſed be theſe thy excuſes, ſayd the damſell, which are ſo much to thy diſhonor,

how

how ill is ỳ rich armour bestowed on thæ, it is not without cause I perceiue, that they are so whole vppon thy bone, for thou doest shew that thy warre is more with wordes then with armes and feates of knighthood. Let it be what it will be, sayd Claridiano, for I will not meddle in this iust. Well, adew knight of small reputation, said the Damsell, happie be those Ladies that doth trauaile with such a kæper and defender, and therewith she returned backe to her companie, but the Ladies that were with Claridiano made great laughter, for that they were certified of the valour of their knight, what he was, but Fidelio when he heard the excuses of his master, thought verilie that he did it for feare, and for this cause hæ was verie heauie and sadde, and the Ladies perceiuing, had thereat greate pleasure and sport. So trauailing forwards, they came vnto a bridge which was ouer the riuer Tygris, & on the other side there was a Tent armed which was verie rich, wherein was a knight armed which did defend that passage, and there were set vp against a træ a greate number of Speares, and when the dutchesse with all her knights & companie entered the bridge, there appeared vnto them a knight of a gentle disposition, who with great lightnesse leapt vpon his horse, and sent a Squire vnto them to tell them that they could not passe that waie, but first they should confesse themselues to be ouercome by the best knight of all the world, but if they will stand vnto the iust, he that receiueth the foyle to lose both his horse and armour, so in a trice they put themselues in order, at which time the Prince Claridiano came vnto that place, and when he sawe that they did make readie and addresse themselues vnto the iust, hee stayed on the one side whereas he might verie well at his pleasure sæ them. It so fell out, that in twentie iusts all these twentie knights were ouerthrowen and fayled, at which the Dutchesse receiued great sorrow and griefe, and sent the same damsel (which the other had sent before) vnto the Prince, and when she came vnto him, she sayd: Knight, entmie vnto iusts and trauaile, my Ladie, the dutchesse of the valley doth desire thæ, for that it was not thy pleasure for her knights to shew thy bounty,

uing great contentment thereat, he declared vnto them of meruailous and great feaſts & triumphes ẏ were preparing to be made in the citie of Nabatea, at the marriage of ẏ prince of Nabatea, with the Princeſſe of the mount Libano, to the which there wer come manie Lords & knights of all ẏ kingdome, and from moſt parts of all the kingdomes hereabouts, but in eſpecial from Phœnicia, Camogenia, Paleſtina, and Siria, therefore gentle knight, let your comming be to ſée theſe feaſts, for that you ſhall vnderſtand that there is put for the price to him who doth beſt, a meruailous faire & great horſe, ſuch a one as is ſuppoſed in al ẏ world not to be the like. Claridiano had a great deſire to goe thether, & he told it vnto the Ladies, who were not diſcontent therewith. So with that determination they went to bed into verie faire and well dreſſed chambers, whereas they toke their reſt and eaſe for that they had great neede thereof, ſo they ſoiourned & reſted themſelues in this caſtle eight daies, wheras ẏ olde knight Marmariton did make much of them, and gaue vnto the Ladyes all things that was neceſſarie for to apparel themſelues, and likewiſe verie faire Palfraies, alſo he did deſire the Prince to take one of his ſonnes to ſerue him, that he might learne of him his good manners and accuſtomed conditions, which were paſſing aboue all other, the Prince did accept the offer, with a verie good will, his ſonnes name was Fidelio, whoſe doings were conformable and agreeable therevnto in all fidelitie and truth, he had a verie good countenaunce and modeſt diſpoſition, & verie gentle of ſpeech, and when they ſaw that it was time to depart for Nabatea, verie much againſt ẏ will of Marmariton, they toke their leaue and went the way towards Nabatea, and what happened to them in the ſaid iourney, ſhall bee declared vnto you in the next Chapter following.

¶ How Claridiano and his companie went vnto the triumph of Nabatea, and of all that happened vnto them in the way. Cap. 11.



THE valiant and heroicall Prince after that he had taken leaue of the knight of ỹ caſtle, wᵗ all his companie they departed their way toward the citie of Nabatea, for to ſee ỹ great feaſts and triumphs, for that Claridiano had a great deſire to finde himſelfe therein. So they trauailed through a narow and ſtraight waye, which brought them into a broad & common beaten way which led them ſtraight vnto one of the gates of the citie, wherin much people & many knightes trauailed, and they thus trauailing, ſawe come forth of a narowe waye which entered into that broad way, a company of Knights to the number of twentie, who were all armed with very faire and riche armour, and in their company came a Ladye ſomewhat in yeares, and with her a verie faire Damoſell, and very well apparailed, who brought with them fiue Gentlewomen to beare them companye, who were all apparailed in purple veluet, all to be ſpotted with theſe two letters, F.F. all of golde, which did ſhow and ſhine meruailous faire: & it did appeare that this ancient Ladie was Lady & miſtres ouer all ỹ companie, & it was true, for that ſhe was the Dutches of the valley, and the Damſell was her daughter, who went to the feaſts and triumphs in companie of thoſe knights, and amongſt them there was one a verie young man, who was Earle of the Lake, who was verie deſirous to ſhew his valiantneſſe, this young knight was verie much in loue with ỹ young damſell that came in their companie, his deſire was to enter into the citie of Nabatea, with only foure knights, who pretended and beléued to do ſuch feats of armes, ỹ the young Ladie ſhould haue great reaſon to requite him his loue. Don Claridiano when he ſaw thē ſo wel apparelled & proportioned he put himſelfe apart to giue them way ỹ they might paſſe by: but yet he could not dow it ſo ſecretly, but ỹ he muſt nēds be ſéene of ỹ other, & for ỹ Claridiano was well proportioned, & armed with purple armor, hauing alſo in his company two faire ladies, all ỹ other cōpany did much behold him, meruailing much who it ſhuld be, the like did the Dutcheſſe

The Prince ſayd vnto the Ladie which he releaſed out of pri-ſon: It ſhall be good faire Ladie now that you are at liberty and out of all daunger, that you doe tell vs the occaſion of your impriſonment, and how it hath bene, if ſo be that the de-claring doth not trouble you. The Damſell aunſwered: Of truth my Lord, this will I doe with a verie good will, and if it were but onely for to giue you contentment, and it is great reaſon and iuſtice, for that you did put your perſon in greate daunger for my deliueraunce: You ſhall vnderſtand, gentle knight, that along the huge and mightie riuer of Euphrates, towards the Orientall partes, there is a mightie Citie called Ieroſolima, the which is not far from the head of the ſaid ri-uer, on the other ſide of the riuer towards the Sunne ſetting is there another Citie called Sabioſa, of theſe and of other ci-ties and townes there about, my Father is king and Lorde ouer. The Gods who were ſo pleaſed for to inrich mée, not onely of goods, but alſo of beautie & faireneſſe, more then anie other in all the kingdome, or in a great part there abouts, the fame of my great beautie was publiſhed in all places, which was the occaſion that there repaired vnto my fathers Court many Lords & knights of great eſtimation, amongſt whome there came one young knight and a ſtraunger, who was na-turall of the kingdome of Tigliaſa, and Lord of the Citye of Zina, and he béeing in loue with me and I lykewiſe of him, and before that eyther of vs could manifeſt our loue the one vnto the other, ther paſſed a long time, but onely by our out-wards ſhowes, we did declare each to other the abundance of our hearts and ſignes of loue, the which indured many daies. So it happened vpon a daie going to recreate my ſelfe in a Forreſt there by, amongeſt the ſweete hearbes and odori-ferous flowers, harde by the riuer ſide of Euphrates, which cau-ſed in my minde all kinde of amorous thoughts, and I carri-eng my yeolow golde haire, all diſpearſed behinde my eares couering my backe, vpon a ſodaine amongeſt the thicke trées I ſawe a verie faire Paſtora, which was combing of her haire, ſitting vnder a faire and gréene Myrtle-trée. And héere my Lord I doe certifie you of a truth, that in all the worlde

hath

hath not bene ſæne the lyke,ſhe hadde ſæding by her a fewe ſhæpe,& by her lay her ſhepheards hœke,and her bagge hung vpon the Wyrtle træ,I know not what to ſaye,but that the træs and hearbes did reioyce to ſæ her beautie, I coulde not but ſtaie and reioyce my ſelfe in beholding ſo gœdly a creature,with her yeolow golden haire diſpearſed all abroade, which did reach vnto her fœt,& for that ſhe was ſet down,her golden haire did couer all the ſwœt hearbs there about her, & by reaſon of the great heat of the Sun,ſhe had her necken-ger turned downe vpon her ſhoulders,whereout did appeare her verie white and chriſtalline necke,my Ladyes and damſells were no leſſe amazed to ſæ her great beautie, belæuing that ſhe ſhould be daughter vnto the Gods,& no earthly creature,but fortune who is ſo mutable would not ſuffer me to inioy long ſo beautifull and ioyfull a ſight,but being without feare in this ſort as I haue tolde you, vppon a ſodaine there came behinde me ỳ Prince of Nicea,& before ỳ I could make any meanes for to diſturbe him,in great haſt he tœke me faſt by the arme,and with a trice he lift me vp and ſet me before him on the ſaddle bowe of his horſe,and in great haſt he put himſelfe into the thickeſt of the Forreſt, my Gentlewomen and maidens remained giuing great ſhrikes,but it little profited,for that the prince of Nicea made ſuch diligent haſt,that in a verie ſhort time he entered with me into a barke in the riuer of Euphrates,who carried vs ſo far,as we came wheras he ioyned vnto the riuer Tygris,wheras we went a land, and creſſed ouer the mountaines of Libanos,wheras we were taken of that furious Gyant which was firſt ſlaine,& at one terrible blow he ſlew the Prince,and me he carried vnto ỳ priſon,whereas you(gentle knight) did finde me,& herewith ſhe helde her peace,giuing a great ſigh, in remembring her euill fortune, and all the reſt remained with great ſorrow & griefe to heare this lamentable diſcourſe,but Claridiano was more attentiue vnto the report of the faireneſſe & beautie of the Paſtora,then vnto all the reſt.At this time was ỳ houre of the gyants comming paſt,which made the Lord of the caſtle beléeue the death of his cruell enimie to be true, & recei-

they came thether, and their horses ware̅d very wearie, and by reason that it was night, all the gates and doores of the Castle were shut. Then Libernio toke holde of the ring of the gate and began to knocke with great fury, as though he would haue beaten the gate downe, at which knocking, a man of the Castle loked out of a window, and sayd. Who is ỹ, which calleth and knocketh at ỹ gate with so great rigor, at this time of the night? To whom Claridiano aunswered. A Knight, and two faire damosells, whom fortune hath brought hether, and would if it were so your pleasure, enter in, and take some rest, for that we do come very wery and troubled with this our long & solitary iourney. Tarry a little, aunswered the man, for that I will giue the Lord of this Castle to vnderstand thereof, and therewith he withdrew himselfe from the window, and went in: but he tarried not long, when that the same man opened another window somwhat lower, and put out thereat a light torch, and straight way there loked out an olde Knight, whose heade was all graye, which sayd. Who be you that do saye, that you haue passed the Mountaynes Nabateos, without anye perill to your persons. To whom Claridiano sayde, We are straungers, whose fortune hath brought vs hether, and we do desire thee to doe vs so much pleasure as to receiue vs into your castell this night, that we may take some rest: Friends, aunswered the knight of the Castell, we are here so feared with a grat diuell, whose habitation is in the height of the mountaine, that not onely in the night, we dare not open our gates, but also we kœpe them shut all day. Who is this ỹ so much trouble and vere you, sayd Libernio. The Knight sayd. A mightie great Giant, and of a maruelous height, & formed like vnto a diuell. I do sweare vnto thee by Iupiter sayd Libernio, that from this daie forwards thou needst not to feare him, for that this daie verie much against his will we were his guests, & did eate of that which he ordeined for himself, paying first for our victuals with two buffets, wherwith he lost his life. When the Lorde of the Castell heard this he commaunded the gates to be opened, although with

some

some feare, for that he was not certaine of that he had heard spoken. But when ỳ knight & his company were within the Castle, he commanded that the gate shuld be shut again: so they altogether entred into a faire & large court, & were by the Lord of ỳ Castle receiued wt great loue, & whē he saw ỳ Claridiano was of so godly proportiō, he greatly merualled. To whom Libernio sayd: Lord & friend, from this date forwards thou shalt not nod to haue anie feare of this thy enemie, for that he will no more returne to trouble you, for this knight whom thou seest before thee hath slain him & made an end of his daies, & not this giant alone, but also those furious gyants Tartaros. Oh soueraigne Gods sayd the olde knight of the Castell, is this possible to be true which I doe heare, and that my fortune is so good to receiue into my house the knight that hath done so valyaunt actes. We shall quickly see whether it be true or not, for ỳ euerie night this diuell commeth, giuing terrible shrikes, & for that he should quickly depart, I do command to throw him prouision, out at ỳ highest window of this Castle, and yet he is not content therewith by reason of his great pride, but he is so euill inclined, that if he mæt anie of our people he pardoneth none, but killeth them. You may from hence forth cease your feare, sayd Claridiano, for I promise you that he will neuer more trouble nor greeue you. So with such reasonings they went vp into ỳ castle where they wer meruailously well receiued by a Gentlewoman wife vnto the knight of the Castle, whose name was Marmariton, & likewise of two sons, which he had, proper young men. So straight way the table was commaunded to be couered, and that they shuld sitte downe to supper, whereas they were serued very abundantly, for the Knight of the Castle was a very rich man, none richer in all the kingdome of Nabatea, who could not satisfie himselfe in beholding the great grauitie and seuere countenaunce of the Prince, and his faire and well proportioned body. So when they had made an end of their supper, for to passe away the time, till they should goe to take their rest,

the

and not now, that you are ſo liuely and liberall in eating. Then Claridiano ſayd, God olde man, it ſhall be better that thou doeſt put thy iawes to worke and let thy tongue bee in quiet: I will beleeue your highneſſe ſayde the olde man, for that you doe giue me good counſell, and therewith hee toke the reſt of the Deere from the fire, and beganne to cut and to eate with great haſt, ſuch haſt they made that in a ſmal time they had beſtowed all the Deere and the bread, and a greate part of the Beere, whith gaue occaſion vnto Antemiſca to ſay as followeth. Oh how kings and Princes be meruailouſly deceiued, beleeuing that with theyr delycate meates & drinks they ſhall bring to themſelues new and better complections, and expell all groſe humours, and maintaine vnto themſelues a great ſtate of health, and to obtaine thereby a better diſgeſture and taſt, then they which doe liue in poore and miſerable eſtate, we doe ſee that the ſimple paſtor or ſhepheard keeping of his ſheepe, is better content with a peece of brown bread and an Onion, then mightie kings and Princes with all their delycate fare, and I doe certifie you that the Shepheards are more fortunate then kings. It is a vale of miſeries to be a king, and greate eaſe and ſecuritie to be a Shepheard, for that the king muſt foreſee to put good gouernment in his kingdome and miniſter iuſtice, and the ſhepheard onely to his ſheepe: Oh what great contentment ſhouldeſt thou receiue, Princeſſe Antemiſca, if it had pleaſed ỳ Gods to haue made thee the poreſt Paſtora in all the worlde, and not to haue put thee in ſo highe eſtate, whereas thy fortune hath brought thee to trauaile, & to ſee the experience of ſuch proues as theſe be, & that thou whith doeſt pretend, for if thou wert of a baſe lignage, & that they had imputed vnto thee this fait, (of which wout all truth I am charged) I ſhuld not eſteeme more of my honour then as a Paſtora, but now being daughter vnto him whom I am, I muſt make of it according vnto my eſtate, therefore nowe I dos ſaye that a ſhepheardes eſtate is better then to be Queene of Meſopotamia: Oh my euill fortune and deſtinie, I cannot but needes I muſt complaine and crie out with a lowde voyce againſt thee, for that

thou

thou doeſt not giue mée the contentment that the ſilly Paſtora hath, in following her ſhéepe and lambes, and not ſo highe eſtate and Lordſhip. With ſhedding of many teares did Antemiſca in this ſort complaine againſt fortune. Libernio who was very attentiue vnto ỳ words of the Princeſſe, ſaid with a ſmiling & laughter: Miſtreſſe, at ſuch time as you were with your fingers pinching & pulling at the roaſted Déere, I would you had put your ſelfe in this diſputation, & not now, for when the belly is full, euerie one of vs is a good preacher. Ah Libernio, anſwered Antemiſca, at that time I did not remember that which I now féele, for if I did I ſhoulde haue receyued the ſelfe ſame ſorrowe which I now doe. Then the olde man ſayd: Well, let all paſſe, and let vs conſider of that which is moſt conuenient for vs, and let vs departe from hence out of this place, and procure to come to ſome towne or dwelling place, for that it cannot bée without daunger to remaine héere with this dead Gyaunt, and that there is more of his fraternitie nigh this his habitation, and again, I would be verie loth that we ſhould fall into ſo great daunger as that which is paſt, for lacke of victuails, for peraduenture we ſhal not méete with another hoſt as good as this for to ſatiſfie our hunger, the Prince was verie quiet and held his peace at all that he heard betwixt the Princeſſe and Libernio, and did verie much reioyce to heare the diſcréte reaſons of Antemiſca, and ſéeing that Libernio his counſell was the beſt, he made haſt that the Ladyes ſhould take their palfray, and leaped on his horſe, and toke the waie and trauailed through a narowe path which ſéemed to be vſed by the Gyant, and ſo with great diligence they trauailed all the reſt of that daie till it was night, at which time they had wonne the top of that mountaine, frome whence they did diſcouer meruailous greate and faire plaines, the which were inhabited with verie faire Cities and townes, at which ſight theſe trauailers receiued great contentment and ioy, and without anie ſtaying they made haſt onwards on their iourney, tyll ſuch time as they came vnto a caſtle which was in the middeſt of the waie, halfe the hill downewards, it was one a clocke at midde night before

they

lodging, I dw paye the ſhot. At this inſtant the Ladies came to that place, with as much ioy at that preſent, as before they were ſad and ſorrowfull. When the Princes Antemiſca did ſée the greatneſſe of the Gyant, and the deformitie of his body, ſhe ſayd vnto the Prince: If thou ſhouldeſt giue like payment (worthy Trapobanian) vnto all them that ſhould receiue thée for gueſt, I dw not know, nor I cannot beléeue, that they woulde take the paine to ſerue them that ſhoulde come after thée. I know not what will happen aunſwered Claridiano, but I am ſure that I haue giuen this his payment according vnto the intertainment he gaue me, & ſomewhat better cheape then that Gyant which was in ỹ mountaine, who thought with his owne body to haue quéſed més to the death: but yet I dw certefie you, that after his death, I receiued greater battaile, then when he was a liue. Then ſayd the Gentlewoman that was releaſed out of priſon, if I had not feared a farther perill, with the great ioye which I receiued when I ſawe him fall downe, I promiſe you I could haue laughed hartely, to ſée how he trauailed to catch holde of you. Tuſh, all this was nothing ſayd Antemiſca, neyther did I eſtéeme of it: but had it not bene for the great ſorow which I receiued, when I ſaw him faſt in his clawes tumbling and toſſing from one place to another, I promiſe you if the perill had not bene ſo great, I could not but haue reioyced ioy to ſée how he rolled him vp & down, and by reaſon that the armour was very iuſt vnto his body, and lykewiſe very hard, it was a pleaſure to ſée him biting at it with his téeth: and when he ſawe that all his greate labour was loſt, he tourned vnto his firſt office, rolling and tumbling our Knight, as though he wold haue rocked him a ſléep. I dw promiſe you of my faith Ladies ſayd Libernio, with greate feare that I had, to haue receiued ſome knocke or blowe, I neither receiued pleaſure in the one, nor griefe in the other. Then the Princeſſe ſaid vnto the Gentlewoman her companion, it ſhall be better for vs to goe and ſée, what victualles, our hoſt hath prepared for vs to eate, for the good hope that I haue to proue of that which he hath ordayned for vs.,

hath

hath taken from me the great care and sorrow which I had, as you may see, and in this sorte as they were they went towards theyr hostes house the Gyant, and they sawe that it was a great barne cut out of the hard stone and wrought of the rocke. And entring therein they saw that he had put to rost a whole Dære, which was a very great one, and seeing that which should giue them comfort, euery one of them fell to worke, hoping for their trauaile to eate part of that dære. The olde Squire tourned the spit, and the Ladyes made the fire, and the Prince pulled out coales, so that there was none idle, in hope of the benefit to come: and with the great hunger they had, and desire to eate, that when the dære was scant hot on the spit, they thought it ouer rosted and halfe burned, likewise they procured to see if they could finde any breade. Claridiano descended into a rome, he had vnder the caue, whereas he found two great loues, so great in compasse as the eyrbe of a well, and two great flagons full of bære, with great ioy and pleasure the Prince came forth out of the caue, and for to giue contentment vnto the Ladyes, he brought it forth, & shewed them what he had found. And when the Ladies saw so good prouision, they made hast of the dære, and hauing nothing wherewith to cut their victualls, the Prince vsed his sword at that time in stéd of a knife. So ỹ Prince and the Ladies began to cut and to eate at their will: but Libernio by reason that he was occupied in tourning and rosting, he could not profit himselfe with his hands for to eate, and when he saw, that the dære was almost halfe eaten, he sayd. Of truth if I make long tarrying, I shalbe made Lord ouer the bones, and not of any flesh, if you goe forwards in eating as you do begin. Tarrie a while longer sayd Antemisca, and then you shall see how it will fall out, for ỹ nowe in this time of hunger, we do not remember any curtesie, therefore procure to catch and eate whereas thou canst or maist, for thou didst very well shift to hide thy selfe amongst the bushes when as thou didst see the Gyant: to whom Libernio, sayd.

I would this morning you had giuen vs some counsell, and

O Iupiter, the mightieſt amongſt all the Gods, thou which diddeſt ſet at libertie thoſe of Trapobana, by my power and ſtrength by thée giuen, and ſéeing it came downe from thy emperiall ſeate, ſhew me now ſome fauour, and doe not conſent that I and my companie doe periſh héere with hunger and lacke of victualls: Oh Lord, doe not make anie delay in putting remedie in this my neceſſitie, except it be thy will that we be all meate to the Birdes, and if it be ſo that my déedes doe deſerue it, and thou doeſt giue thy conſentment, wherefore diddeſt thou put me in ſuch eſtate, and wherefore diddeſt thou appoint me amongeſt other knightes, to bée the defender and vpholder of afflicted Ladyes and Damoſells, & if it be ſo that I muſt néeds die, let me die by the hands of the moſt ſtrongeſt warriour in all the world, and not to die with hunger. Theſe and ſuch like reaſons vttered this good Gréekiſh knight till ſuch time as the daie drew on, and comming vnto the place whereas his companie were, he found them that they were verie weake and féeble, but incouraging them in the beſt wiſe he coulde be cauſed them to take their horſes, and ſo did he and alſo Alibernio the olde Squire, and trauailed on their waie with ſo great féeblenéſſe that they thought verily that the Ladies would die by the waie. This worthie Gréeke was in a great confuſion, yet he did not let to go firſt to one and then to another, comforting them, and made them to ride a pace, which they might doe verie well, for that their their horſes were not ſo vnprouided as the maſters, by reaſon of the goodly graſſe that was there in thoſe woods, wherwith they filled themſelues euerie night. The Sunne had well paſſed two partes of her iourney when they came into a great field verie plaine, and in the middeſt of it was a lyttle mountaine, out of the which there appeared ſmoake to come forth, which gaue them to vnderſtand that there ſhoulde bée fire in that place. Then the Prince ſayd vnto Alibernio, procure to comfort and incourage forwardes theſe Ladies, and come by little and little, for that I will ride before for to ſée who ſhall be our hoſt this night, and of this thou ſhalt bée aſſured, that whoſoeuer it is, whether he be pleaſed or not, he

ſhall

shall giue vs lodging, and ther with he set spurres vnto his horse, and in great hast he rode towards the mountaine, and at the furie and rushing of the horse in his running, there arose vp from the ground a mightie Gyant, of so great height, that he seemed to be a great træ, and when he saw the knight he layde hand on a mightie great club which he had by him, and with great lightnesse he went towardes him, and sayd in the Chaldæan tongue. O vnhappie trauailer, what diddest thinke, that hære was no bodie for to defend thæ this way? What was it the smell of the roasted Hare in thy nose, which caused thæ to make so greate hast hether. The Prince when he sawe him stayed his horse and sayde: Holde thy hand thou furious Gyant and stale, for that I haue not procured thæ anie euill, but rather I doe desire thæ that of thine owne free will thou wouldest giue vs whatsoeuer thy pleasure is to bestow vpon vs: O man of small valour, answered the Gyant, what dost thou thinke by craft and subtiltie to aduantage thy selfe of me: Well, for that thou shalt see how little I doe esteeme thee, tarrie a while, for with my fists and buffets I will beate out thy braines, without the helpe of my club. And in saying these words he threwe his heauie club from him, and came towardes the Prince with his fist bent for to strike him, in the like sorte did this noble warriour, and for to strike him at his ease he was constrained to raise vp himselfe in his stirops, otherwise he could not reach his head, but yet he lent him so terrible a blowe vpon the forehad, that he drone the bone to the braines, and being therewith amazed he fell downe to the ground, and with the great force and strength that he put to strike that blowe, it lacked little that he fell not from his horse, but incontinent he stroke him againe the second blowe, wherewith he made an end to beate out his braines, and there remayned dead. The Prince was greatly amazed in beholding him, for as he lay along vpon the ground he seemed to be a greate Oake blowen downe with the winde, the knight could not refraine himselfe but that he must nædes laugh, and sayd: Of truth I am a notable guest, for that before I doe enter into my

tall enimie dead before thē, & neuer reſted in giuing thanks vnto their Gods, for the deliuerance of their knight from ſo huge and monſtrous a beaſt. Claridiano when hee hadde made an end of this enterprize, he ſate him downe amongeſt thoſe trees for to reſt himſelfe, for that he had greate neede thereof, and demanded of them ſomewhat to eate, which was giuen vnto him of ſuch as they had, and when he had eaten and reſted himſelfe well, they beganne to trauaile their former iourney, and for that they ſhoulde goe vp a greate and mightie mountaine, they determined to aſcend by little and little for the eaſing of their horſe, and when they were halfe waie vp the night came vpon them, that they were conſtrained to put themſelues a part out of the high waie amongeſt the trees, and there to reſt themſelues all the whole night, ſo when the morning was come they followed their former trauaile vp the hill, it was well none before they could get vnto the toppe of the mountaine, whereas they did diſcouer on the other ſide meruailous great and mightie plaines, adorned with trees of all ſortes and great hearbes, and being wearie of their long iourney vp the hill, they ſate downe to take their reſt, and to eate of that which they had left the day before, and then made an end of all, ſo that there remayned behinde no more victualls, which greeued them verie much, and for that the waie was ſomewhat ſharpe and ragged, they made the more haſt to get to ſome towne and there to take their eaſe, but their haſtie trauaile was all in vaine, for that there was no towne nigh them by a greate waie, ſo that the warre which they ſuſtained with hunger was more greater then the battaile of the Gyants, as ſhall be tolde you in the chapter following.

Of the great trauaile that the Greeke knight had & the Ladies for lacke of victualls, by reaſon of their long iourny, & how they found a Giant, with whom the Prince had battaile and ſlew him, and what order they had to helpe themſelues with victualls. Cap. 10.

AT ſuch time as the Sunne of Tona began to ſpread abroade his golden haire ouer and amongſt the græne and freſh boughs of the high and mightie Pine apples, Cedrons, and other trées, which were in that fragrant mountaine, whereas all kinde of ſmall birds flew round abouf, recreating themſelues in the beautie of the daie, and with their well tuned notes, making a ſweete and heauenly melodie. At that time the mightie and well eſtéemed knight Claridiano, of the Speare, the vnknowne Prince of the Grækiſh Empire was on horſe backe with his amorous companie, and taking the waie which they thought to be moſt vſed, that they followed, the ladyes were meruailouſly troubled for lacke of their accuſtomed and dayly victualls, and could not hide nor diſſemble their great hunger, for the which the knight of the Speare was verie much troubled & ſorrowfull. So in this great extremitie they paſſed all that daie, and trauailing in and out amongſt thoſe mightie trées, ỹ night drew on, and although by reaſon of the Mœne it was verie light, yet vnto them it ſæmed to bée verie darke, for that they were verie ſore troubled for lacke of that which ſhould ſuſtaine them, and their faces did ſhew and declare the perpleritie of their ſtomackes. So they ſate them downe vpon the græne and freſh hearbes, verie penſiue of their extreame neceſſitie, procuring to take their reſt that night, but all was in vaine, for that their corporall neceſſitie would not conſent therevnto, but without ſléeping they walked vp and downe all that night, till the next daie in the morning, that they turned to their accuſtomed trauaile and iourney, procuring by all meanes to ſée if they could finde anie thing for the eaſing of their ſtomackes, and had their eyes allwayes attendant to ſée if they might diſcouer anie village, whereas they might ſatisfie their hunger & take their reſt, but all did profit thẽ verie little, & with this the night came on them, & theſe afflicted Ladies fell to ỹ ground wt feeblenes: Oh what ſorrow was this vnto the Prince to ſée thẽ in this caſe, being not able to helpe them, & parting a little from them, he lamented ſaying:

it did profit him much, for ſo ſoone as the arrow did ſtrike on it, it recoyled backe againe a great waie, at this preſent time did the knight finde himſelfe in greate perill and daunger, for that he muſt make his defence againſt that infernall monſter, and likewiſe againſt that diuellyſh and furious woman, who continually aſſaulted him with her arrowes, and then he could not profit himſelfe of his force and ſtrength, but onely of his great lightneſſe, ſhunning the furie of his mighthie blowes, ſo by little and little he drew nigh vnto the place whereas the Gyaunteſſe was, who hauing ſpent all her arrowes, ſhe toke in her hande a mightie clubbe and came towards her furious huſband to helpe him. This valyaunt Græke founde himſelfe in greate extremitie, and with the greate anger which he had, it changed his eyes into ſanguine coulour, and was determined to clære himſelfe of that infernall woman, and with that purpoſe he tourned towardes her, and letting her blowe to paſſe by, he ſtepped in to her on the left ſide, and thruſt ſo terrible a foine at her breſt, that his ſword entered in vp to the hard hiltes, and ſhe fell downe dead to the ground. The Gyaunt who at that inſtaunt was not idle, ſtroke the Græke ſuch a monſtrous blowe vppon his backe, that hée ouerthrewe him to the grounde as dead, without anie remembraunce or token of mouing, the Gyant ſeeing him in this caſe threw from him his clubbe, and toke the knight in his furious nayles, and with the greate rage and wrath which hée had he woulde haue eaten him vp at ỹ inſtaunt, but it fell not out with him as he thought it would, for that hée found the armour which hée had on was verye harde, and when the Gyaunt ſawe that his ſharpe téth did lyttle profite him, hée beganne to tumble and toſſe him vp and downe from one place to another, and by reaſon that he was not expert in the lacinges and buckeling of armour, hée did nothing but tumble and toſſe him hére and there, to ſée if hée coulde finde a place where hée might beginne to teare him in peeces. Whoſoeuer ſhould at that inſtaunt haue ſéene the greate affliction of thoſe two Damoſells, might verye well haue iudged in himſelfe the anguiſh and ſorrowe

which

which they receiued, iudging themselues to be wholly lost & destroyed. But the Princesse Antemisca, lifted vp her eyes vnto heauen and sayd. I doo see O Iupiter, that thou art very well pleased, that I doo suffer this grieuous pain and sorow. Ah Fortune, it is now great reason to leaue me, and not to persecute me any farther, and if it be so, that as yet thou hast not accomplished thy whole desire. Oh Iupiter make sharpe thy cutting sword, and therewith take awaye my life. Oh Mars, behold that now thy strength doth faile, if thou dost permit that this Knight doo perish. O what woman amongst all women hath bene so infortunate as I? Oh Gods, I doo not know wherefore you doo thus persecute me, for ý I haue bene alwayes obedient vnto you, and now seeing that you had giuen me a Knight for to be my defence, (against ý vniust cause, which was laid against me) you shoulde likewise haue suffered me to giue testimonie of my truth, and their false accusation? Oh thou chast Goddesse, be fauourable vnto me, seeing that Iupiter hath forgotten me, turne and take my cause vpon thee, and be fauourable, for that I neuer offended thee. These and such like complaintes vttered this afflicted Princesse, and hauing concluded, the Prince was come again to himselfe and recouered his memorie, and seeing himselfe in that perplexitie, he did procure by all meanes and pollicie to cleere himselfe out of the Gyants clawes, and beeing cleere hee put himselfe on foote, and recouered againe his sword, blaspheming against the smal power of his Gods, and was meruailously kindled with wrath and anger, the Gyant likewise recouered his mightie club, and stroke at the Prince a mightie blow, who seeing it comming did procure to cleere himselfe from the furie thereof, and letting it passe, he stepped in to the Gyant, and stroke at him so terrible a blowe on the waste, that it little did profit anie defence that he had, but that his mightie sword must needs cut him a sunder in the middest of his body, and he fell a sunder, each part from ý other dead to the ground. The great paine and sorow which those timerous damsells receiued was not before so much as their ioy and contentment now was, when they sawe their mor-

lightneſſe leapt from his horſe leauing the ſaddle, and being on foote he quickly tourned towardes the Gyaunt, and ſawe that at one blowe he had broke all to peces one of the Ladyes Squires, whereat the Prince toke greate griefe to ſee ſo great an outrage done and without all reaſon, and with an irefull voice he ſayd: Thou furious beaſt without lawe or reaſon, come to me, for I am he which hath bene the occaſion of thy anger, if thou haſt anie. This infernall monſter went towardes Claridiano with his club all aloft, and with great furie he did aſſault him: Oh almightie God, ſaue, keepe, and deliuer thy knight from this infernall furie, and doe not permit that he dye in the handes of ſo cruell an enimie, but firſt he knowe that thou art his true and perfect God. This valiant Greeke ſtode ſtill when he ſaw that terrible blow coming, till ſuch time as he beganne to diſcharge it, at which time with a ſtraunge lightneſſe he made him to loſe the furie thereof, and with his ſword in both his handes he ſtroke at the Gyaunt a mightie blowe, which chaunced vppon his clubbe with ſo great force that he cut it a ſunder in the middle, this furious diuell when he ſawe that he had erred his blowe, with much more furie and double ſtrength hee lift vp his mightie clubbe againe and diſcharged it at the Greeke, who in the ſame ſorte as before he cleered himſelfe from the force thereof, making him to ſtrike in vaine that terrible blowe vpon the ground, and with the great ſtrength wherewith it was ſtroke, the reſt of the clubbe which remained did breake in peces, at which time the Prince was not idle, but with greate lightneſſe he entered in to him, and with both his handes he ſtroke him a terrible blowe vppon the waſt, which made his armour to faile, but by reaſon of the huge and long haire which he had vpon his bodie, he coulde not hurt his fleſh, which made ỳ Greeke verie much to meruaile at it, but ſeing that the Gyant was diſcharging at him another blow, it made him to ſtep aſide, and although the club was cut and broken, yet there remained a greate tronchon thereof in his handes. Yere you might ſee begin ſo terrible and furious battaile, that it ſeemed that all the warryours of

Mars,

Mars, were there assembled together in fight. This valiant and courageous Knight had here great nede of all his force and lightnesse to make his defence against his enimie, here might you see the valiantnesse of Gyaunts and their infernal force and furie: likewise the incomperable force of the Greekish bloud of chiualrie, here might you see the greate hast that the one made vnto the other in doubling of their blowes, and procuring the one to hurt the other, trauailing grounde and moouing from place and place, seeking whereas most aduauntage might be found. In this sorte they trauailed for the space of two houres, not knowing betweene them anye aduauntage. But who should haue seene there the great lightnesse and prowesse of this young knight, would haue iudged him to be one of the best knightes of all the worlde, for that in all the time of the battaile, and all the terrible blowes which the giant did strike at him, yet he neuer brake maile, nor hurt anie part of his armour, and yet he hurt his contrarie in more then tenne places, although they were not verye greate, yet did they trouble him, and it was by reason of the greate hast he made in the striking of his blowes, but when the Gyaunt sawe himselfe to be so euill intreated, he begenne to puffe, bluster, and blowe, much lyke vnto a bayted Bull, and doubled his blowes with so greate hast, that the Prince coulde not haue anie time of aduauntage to hurt him, but had inough to doe for to cleere and defend himselfe from his furie. And being in this greate extremitie he hearde those two Damosells which he had brought with him crie out, making a greate noyse, aduertising him to take hede and loke vnto himselfe, and being verie desirous to knowe the occasion thereof, he sawe that it was that fierce and vglye woman which he hadde lefte before in the caue without anie remembraunce, and for dead, who came with her Bowe bent in her hande, & shot at him with her sharpe and vnmercifull arrowes, the which he was constrained to beare off with his armour, for with his shield he could litle profit himselfe, and by reason ý his armor was made by art of inchantment,

it cleane a ſunder, with ſo great eaſe as though it had bene a Glaſſe or ſuch like, wherewith the monſtrous Gyaunt fell downe to the ground, with ſo great ſtrength and weight, as though it had beene a mightie tower, he was not ſo fallen downe, but the knight put the point of his ſworde into his mouth, the Gyant ſeing him ſo nigh, he toke holde vpon the ſkirt of his ſhirt of maile with ſo great ſtrength, ẏ he made him perforce to come nære him, and as he had his ſworde fixed in the Gyants mouth, what with the ſtrength that the gyant vſed to pull him towardes him, and likewiſe ẏ ſtrength which the knight forced, it cauſed the ſworde to paſſe through his throate, in ſuch ſort, that ſtraight waie he remained dead, and voyded a great ſtreame of bloud. Oh that I were hære able to declare vnto you the great ioye that thoſe Damoſels receiued when they ſawe that greate diuell dead, and with chærefull countenances they went and receiued the knight, although the great feare which remained in that naked damſell would not let her wholy to inioye and reioyce in her lybertie, who ſayd vnto the Prince: Valiant knight and our ſuccour, now doth it ſtand vs in hand to make the more haſt before the ſonne of this great diuell come vnto vs, for that he is more terrible & of more ſtrength then his Father is, to whome this couragious knight ſayd: Feare not faire Ladie, for that the Gods will helpe and ſuccour vs, in ſuch ſort, that his great furie and force ſhall little anaile him. Theſe words he ſpake with a chærfull countenance, & lifting vp his helme, did ſhew his great ſeueritie. So he toke them by the hand, and went their waie towards the place where they left their ſquires kæping of their horſes, and at his comming thether, he ſtraight waie mounted the two damſells vpon their Palfraies, and he and the reſt vpon their other horſes, and began to trauaile their former iourney, they had not trauailed verie farre, when as they heard a great ruſhing, which ſæmed to be of many people amongſt thoſe thicke trees, which cauſed them to ſtaie to ſee what it ſhould be, as you ſhall vnderſtand in the nert chapter following.

¶ Of the battaile that Claridiano had with the fierce and timerous Gyant, ſonne vnto the other Gyant which he had ſlaine, and of all that happened in the battaile. Chap. 9.

THE great noiſe which the valiant Knight heard, was no leſſe then that which Fauonio made in the Antartike ſea, nigh vnto ꝧ Tartarian coaſt, which is all repleniſhed with high and mightie trées of Pine apples, ſo the Prince and all the reſt ſtaied to ſée what it was that cauſed all that noiſe and ruſhing, and they ſawe that it was a furious, fierce, and terrible Gyaunt that came from the thickeſt of the woode, hée was thirténe cubites of height, all full of rough and thicke haire, and hée had in his hande a greate and heauie club, which ſéemed to bée the maſt of a mightie ſhippe, but whoſoeuer had ſéene the faces of the Damſells at that time, woulde haue iudged their alteration to be lyke vnto the Sunne, when he is eclipſed with ꝧ Moone at nœne dayes, but this inuincible Claridiano made no ſigne of anie mutation, but rather did make himſelfe readie vnto the battaile, ſéeing that the Gyant did make towards him, the great blaring noiſe which the Gyant made was ſo terrible, that it cauſed great feare in all them that heard it, ſauing onely in him who put himſelfe in defence, and tarrying for the comming of the enimie, the great pride which this Gyant did vſe, hauing his club in the aire comming towards the knight was much more then that which Belona vſed when ſhe ſate in her armed chariot, being gouerned with furious Dragons, ouer all the fields: the horſe whereon the Prince rode ſéeing ſo ſtraunge and ſeldome ſeene a monſter before him, raged in ſuch ſorte, that this couragious warriour hadde not ſo much ſtrength to gouerne him, but that by pure force he caſt himſelfe about in the ayre, flying from the preſence of that vglie beaſt, but the valyaunt Prince fearing the greate perill which might happen vnto thoſe Damoſelles, with greate

bly did complaine, saying: Come forth if you can and ꝑ without anie delaie. And presently there was one which answered, and sayd. Here is one of the most vnfortunatest Damsells in all the world, who without helpe cannot moue hir selfe. Then the knight went straight waie forth, and sawe that there was fire, the which he blew, and lighted a Rosin sticke, that did burne verye well, and went into the place where the Damosell had aunswered him, and in the farthest end of that chamber he found the damosell that did so greatly complaine, who lay a long on the ground verie evill apparelled, and that which she had was all torne in pæces, in such sort that her skinne was sæne in many places, and beholding her cruell visage it mœued the knight to haue great compassion, and without speaking anie worde, with his owne hands he brake all the yrons & chaines wherewith shæ was bound, and toke her by the hand and brought her out of that darke rœme, into the great hall where it was verie light. This Damosell when she vnderstoode that he toke her out to set her at libertie, she knæled downe on her knæs before him, and sayd: O Knight, the comfort of my grœuous paine, tell mæ I praie you if that foule butcherly gyant be dead or not, or how you had power to come hether into this place, without bæing disturbed by him or his cruell sonne. The Prince answered and sayd: Hetherto I haue not sæne anie, but onely I haue heard thy grieuous complaintes. Then the Lady with great wæping sayd: Worthie Knight, put strength and courage in thy heart that thou maist depart with great lightnesse before these fierce diuells doe mæt with you, for if they doe mæte with you, you may be assured, that we shall not haue anie fauour of them, but ꝑ they will fill their stomacks with our flesh as they haue done with many others. The Prince replied: If it so fall out that they will tast of my flesh, they shall finde it hard and ill in the chawing, worse then anie that hetherto they haue eaten, and therefore I doe determine not to mœue my selfe from hence more nowe then at anie other times I haue bæne accustomed to do. And in saying these wordes they went out of the cave, whereas they

found

found the Princeſſe Antemiſca, who was comming to enter in at the doꝛe, by reaſon that the Knight tarried ſo long, and when ſhe ſawe the nakednesſe of the Damoſell, vſing her royall clemencie, ſhæ toke off the blacke roabe that ſhæ had on her, and couered her therewith, ſhedding from her chriſtaline eyes many teares, with the great compaſſion ſhe had of that Damoſell, and ſtraight way ſhe toke her by the hand and with great haſt went with her towards the place whꝛeas ſhe had left her Squires, and going on theyꝛ waie, in the middeſt of the plaine they heard amongeſt the træs a greate rumour and noyſe, and looking about to ſæ what it ſhould be, they ſawe comming forth of the woode a furious monſter, of ſo great bigneſſe, that he was almoſt equall with the highe and mightie træs, and was of a verie greate and boyſtrous making of his bodie and members, and as you doe ſæ the hungrie Lyon who is verie deſirous of his prate, ſpringeth & leapeth amongſt the græne hearbes, complaining of his great hunger and emptie belllie: in ſuch ſoꝛt came this monſter, ~~all~~ all armed with ſkinnes of wilde beaſtes, which were verye ſtrong and hard, and brought in his hande a Pine aple træ, full of knots, and when he ſawe the knight, and knew that he carryed with him his priſoner, he gaue ſo terrible a ſhꝛike, that it ſounded throughout all the mountaines, and lyfting vp his greate and mightie clubbe hæ preſſed towardes this couragious knight, who when hæ ſawe him comming, did abide him wꝫ ſuch courage as his valiant heart did conſtraine him, and hauing his ſwoꝛd in his hand he commaunded the damſells to put themſelues a part on the one ſide. This furious diuel hauing his club in the aire faſt with both his hands he did diſcharge the ſame at the pꝛince, who with great lightneſſe did clære himſelfe from the furie thereof, and cauſed it in vaine to fall vppon the grounde, which was with ſo greate ſtrength, that it made the Pꝛince and all the ground there aabouts to tremble like an Earthquake, but in this time the Pꝛince did not ſlæpe, but ſeing himſelfe clære from ỹ blow, preſſed vnto that monſter on the one ſide, & ſtroke him ſuch an ouerthwart blow vpon his knæ in the very ioynt, that he cut

it

The departing of the Prince was verie grœuous vnto the Princes Antemiſca, and ſhe vnderſtanding that it was in vaine to ſay to the contrarie by reaſon of his determination ſhe pretended to beare him companie, and ſayd vnto him. Sir knight, know this for a truth, that your departure is vnto me verie grœuous, but in that you deſire me that I doe remaine hœre, I doe not admit the ſame, for that ſurely wherſoeuer you goe, thether will I alſo with you, for I am not determined to loſe your companie. The Prince Claridiano could not diſſemble, but that he muſt nœdes laugh at ỹ ſpœch of Antemiſca, and with a pleaſaunt countenaunce he ſayde. Ladie, I will not bœ againſt your determination in anye thing, for that it ſhall be vnto me great honour that you bœ in preſence, whatſoeuer aduenture doe happen vnto me, for ỹ in beholding of you my valour ſhal increaſe, and taking her by the hande (leauing the two Squires to kœpe their horſes) they went into the thickeſt of the wode towards the place whereas he had heard thoſe great ſighs and complaints, but they had not gone verie farre, when they heard that heauie voice, and going ſtraight waie towardes the place whereas they thought it was, the farther they went forwardes, the nœrer they heard the voyce, ſo that they might clœrely perceiue that it was the voice of a woman bœing in ſome great griefe, the which the occaſion that they made the more haſt on their waie, till they found themſelues in a greate plaine where grew no trœs, and on the other ſide of the plaine was there a mountaine, and at the foote therof, there ſœmed to be the mouth of a great caue, out of the which iſſued that lamẽtable ſound, and when they drew nigh vnto it they ſawe that it was verie darke, and for to enter into it they muſt nœdes deſcend downe certaine ſteps which were of ſtone verie ill wrought. At this time the Prince woulde haue bene verie gladde that the Princeſſe Antemiſca had not bene with him, for that he found himſelfe greatly troubled with her, and thẽ deſired her that ſhe would remaine and kœpe her ſelfe ſecret amongeſt certain buſhes that were there, the which ſhe was conſtrained to doe, more for to giue contentment vnto the

knight

knight, then for anie desire she had of her selfe. This courageous knight when he sawe himselfe alone (after that hee had left the Princesse) with great haste he put himselfe into the caue, and going about from one place to another, he chanced into a great hall, which was made in manner like vnto a great court, sauing the place where the light entered, was a a louer hole, which was in the middest thereof, and going round about the same, he chaunced into a place where manie bones & skulls of dead men were, which did amaze much the Prince, and caused in him a newe desire to knowe what it should be. And going farther in where the light shewed most, he sawe where was a woman laide along vpon a bed, who was the most deformedst person that could be seene, and by her laie a young child which seemed to be of a yeare olde, who was of the stature of a meane man, and on the one side hee sawe a dore, which was verie strong and all of yron, out of the which came forth that sorrowfull voyce. The Gyantesse when she sawe the knight there within, she with great haste laide holde on a bow which lay at her beds side, and straight waies bent it and nocked a sharpe arrowe therein, and drew the bow with so great strength, that almost she brought both ends together, the knight who remained with great care, whē he sawe the arrow comming, clered himselfe thereof, but the arrowe had not so soone passed by him, when as like vnto the winde he went vnto her, and with his close fist he stroke her such a mightie blow vpon her mouth, that without remembraunce she fell downe vpon the ground, & without making farther reckoning of her, he went vnto the yron dore, and looked which waie he might open it, and hauing proued ỹ same he sawe ỹ it was all in vaine, by reason of the great strength therof, so that he was constrained to returne againe vnto the place where the Gyantesse was, and in looking about him he found that she had tied at her girdle the keie of that dore, the which he toke and did open it, and went in thereat, but hee could not see anie thing therein, by reason of the greate darkenesse that was there, and for to see if anie woulde make him answere, he asked who was there within, that so lamenta-

bly

So vpon this matter there passed betwixt those verie many reasons, but the marriners which gouerned the Foyst were greatlye amazed, and mernailed verie much to see the greate swiftnesse of the Foyst, and the great way that it made, because they knew not the occasion, but the Prince did well vnderstand how that Galtenor who helped him was the occasion of the great swiftnesse. In the end of ten dayes trauaile vpon the sea, they did ariue in a Port or Hauen of the Nabateos, whereas they did determine to goe a shoare, and from thence to take their waie vnto the place whether they shoulde goe, and with this determination he commanded to take out two horses which they brought with them in their Foyst, and a palfraie, and likewise the fardell which Galtenor brought him, and commaunding it to be vndone, he sawe that there was in it verie faire purple armour, all to be spotted with starres of golde, much after the sort of the armour he was wont to weare, and the sheild was of the same sorte, sauing that in the purple field there was no deuice made, and there the Prince proued the armour, and it was so iust and fit for his bodie as they had bene made by measure, and being therwith armed, he seemed to be of a faire disposition vnto all them that loked on him, by reason that he was of a goodly stature and proportion, then straight waye he set the Ladie vpon her palfray, and he leaped vpon one of the horses, and the two squires vpon the other, and in that sort they began to trauaile, and commaunded the Marriners to returne the same waie they came, and they toke their waie through a narrowe path which lead them vpon an high mountaine, & by reason of the great quantitie of huge & mightie trees & the great companie of them ý were there, they were constrained to go one after another, for ý otherwise they thought it vnpossible to attaine vnto the top thereof, and the thicknesse of the trees were such, ý they withstood the Sunne, that it could not enter in to warme & comfort the cold ground: in this sort they trauailed with greate care till such time as the darke night approched, although the Moone did shine vpon them, yet by reason of the great thickneſſe of trees, they thought they

trauai-

trauailed in a darke land, & were constrained to alight from their horses, & put themselues apart out of the high waie, and chaunced nigh vnto a faire fountaine which was vnto them a delightfull hospitalitie, for that it was in the spring of the yeare, & there they sate downe vpon the græne grasse, wherwith the ground was adorned, and called for some thing to eate, ỹ which was straight waies giuen vnto them, although it was not eaten with such contentment as their hearts required, so their stomackes being satisfied, euerie one of them withdrew himselfe into his place to take his rest, this newe knight toke vp his helme and shæld, and went to rest in that part which lead towards the mountaine, and making of his shæld a pillow he laide him downe to rest, without hauing care of anie other thing, but onely to sæke out his lineall descent from whence he came, and what he was, and therewith he fell a slæpe, but his rest indured but a small time, for that in the beginning of his rest or first slæpe he heard a verys lamentable complaint, which seemed not to be farre from the place where he had chosen to take his rest, the which complained at sundrie times, and not haskely, so the breake of the daie drew on, & being desirous to knowe what it should be ỹ made so great complaint and heauinesse, he arose vp and laced on his healme, and threw his shield on his shoulder, and went vnto the place where the Princesse Antemisca was at her rest, and sayd vnto her: I haue heard this night a meruailous greate lamentation, which hath bene the occasion ỹ I haue not had anie rest at all, and therefore I do determine to goe and procure to know if I can who it is that doeth so lamentably complaine, and the occasion of their great griefe, for that my heart cannot suffer me to heare so great lamentation: but nædes I must procure to sæke remedye for the same, if it be possible to be had. Therefore in the meane time, I doe desire your highnesse, to take your rest in the the thickest of this Forrest, that you may be sæne of no body, for that I am sure that my returne shal be very quickly, for that this complaint doth sounde verie nigh vnto the same place whereas I laie to take my rest all the last night.

The

When Brandemoran (the Prince of Paleſtina, who was ſo called) when he vnderſtood thereof was in a great confuſion, and receiued greate griefe, in ſuch ſort, that he determined no other thing, but with his miſchieuous heart to perſecute mee: it ſo fell out that the Prince of Chaldea whoſe name was Geleroſio béing ouercome and forced by loue, hauing opportunitie and place conuenient, with doloꝛous reaſons he did diſcouer vnto me all his whole heart, but whether it was his ill hap oꝛ my froward foꝛtune, I knowe not, but at ſuch time as he vttered vnto me his minde, it chaunced that Brandemoran had his eares attentiue vnto all that was ſpoken betwirt vs, and when he heard that my anſwere was ſuch, that it cauſed great ioye and comfoꝛt vnto Geleroſio, & vnto him great paine and toꝛment, with a miſchieuous heart he went vnto my Father the king, and befoꝛe him he did accuſe mée of whoꝛedome. When the king my father heard it, the great ire and wꝛath which he receiued was ſo farre out of reaſon, that without taking anie farther counſell, he cauſed mée to be apprehended, and lykewiſe the Prince Geleroſia, and both of vs to be put in pꝛiſon, but after a while when his cholar and anger wared colder, he commaunded to call together all the nobles of his counſell and men of honour, who did perſwade with my father, that by reaſon of the greate pꝛide and miſchieuous ſtomacke of the Prince Brandemoran, he might doo it of pꝛeſumption, oꝛ elſe by the greate ill will which he bare vnto his contrarie Geleroſio, he had raiſed vp this ſlaunder, & that they thought it good to be put into the triall of armes, with condition, that in the ſpace of thirtie dayes I ſhoulde bꝛing a knight that ſhould defend my honour, and by reaſon the valour of my cruell enimie is ſo mightie, there is not one in all the kingdome that dares take in hande to defend my cauſe, and I ſeeing that the time paſſed awaie, with a loude voice I began to complaine againſt foꝛtune, and reuiled Brandemoran, calling him coward and wꝛetch, ỹ againſt a Damſell he hath raiſed ſo great treaſon and falſehoode, who hearing me to reuile him, he anſwered and ſayd: Pꝛinceſſe, foꝛ that thou ſhalt ſée how little I do eſtéeme all the knights

of the worlde, I will giue thée one whole yeares ſpace, that thou thy ſelfe in thine owne perſon goe and ſéke him who hath the beſt fame in armes that may be found, and bring him bether to defend this accuſation which I haue laide againſt thée, and ſo lykewiſe I deſire the king thy Father to conſent and graunt vnto the ſame, of whome it was graunted and conſented, and lykewiſe of all the knights that were counſelers of my cauſe, beléeuing that it might be the occaſion of ſome remedie. And therewith I take leaue and licence and departed from Meſos, with onely theſe two Squires, committing my ſelfe into the great riuer Euphrates in this Foiſt, and ſo long we ſayled that we entered into the Mediterraneo ſea, wherein was giuen vnto vs knowledge of your great valour and mightie force, which was the cauſe ꝑ made vs take our waie towards the place of your abode, ſomtimes with great torments, and ſometimes with faire weather, in ſuch ſort, that in the ende we ariued whereas you were, in ſo good time and order, as mine owne deſire coulde not haue wiſhed better. Héere you may ſée and vnderſtand, worthie knight, the extremitie of my euill, and the cauſe of my ſéking for you. At the which relation of this ſorrowfull Ladie, the Prince remained verie penſiue, and had great pittie on her, & aunſwered, ſaying: Ladie, I am verie much bound vnto your highneſſe, that you haue taken ſo much trauaile and paine to ſéke me, for that ther are other a great number of more valour, that are bound to defend your greate iuſtice and make your defence, notwithſtanding, for that it hath ben your pleaſure to attribute vnto me the honour, héere I doe promiſe you to take vpon me your iuſtice and defence, with the ſmall valour of my perſon, vntill I put my life in daunger for the ſmall experience done in your ſeruice, I looked for no other thing at your hande gentle knight, anſwered the Princeſſe, and for that thou haſt recouered ſo greate fame & renowne onely in doing of one great déede of armes, it is not without great reaſon, ꝑ although I haue ben hetherto infortunate in all my aduentures, yet now I do finde my ſelfe happie, for that I haue found ſuch a worthie knight to remedy my euill.

nede of armor, here I do bring it vnto thee, for that before many daies come to an ende, thou shalt haue nede thereof. Also I do bring thee a meruailous precious sword, forged and made by my great skill, such a one as in all the worlde there is not a better. And this shall continue & indure with thee, till such time as thou shalt be in battaile with the Bastard Lyon, then shall it lose his vertue and valor, for that thou shalt recouer another of no lesse price, and of a greater fame, ioyntly with thy honor in the acknowledging of thy vnknowen parents, and in that time thou shalt lose all thy seruice, that euer thou hast done in the honour of Cupide, beeing in company with the disguised Hinde, all though altogether thou shalt not lose thy great loue, till such time as by the Goddesse Venus shal be throwen at thee the African launce, which shall peerce thy heart cleane through. Then did he declare vnto him, how he was stoln out from his mothers lap, certefieng him that he was sonne vnto the mightiest Emperour in all the world: but more light then this, hee would not giue him, neither the place wheras his sister was lost, and therwith he toke out from vnder the hatches of the barke, a fardle which was bound vp, the which he did delyuer vnto the Marriners, that they should laye it vp safe, and imbrace him againe with great loue, and put vpon the finger of the heart, on his left hand a King, which had in it a precious Diamond, that was of so great clearnesse, that in a darke night it gaue as great a light wher it was, as though a torch were lighted. This did he straightly charge him to keepe, for that it was of so great vertue, that so long time as he had it about him there was no inchauntment that should hurt him. This excellent young Knight woulde haue surrendered greate thankes for his precious giftes, but at such time as he wold haue giuen it, Galtenor was departed vpon a sodaine a greate space from them, who made so much hast, that in a verie small time he lost the sight of him. This young knight remayned with greate contentment, in knowing that hee did descende from so high a generation:

and

and lykewiſe for the ſuccour he receiued in the armour hée had brought him, the which he commaunded to bée very well kept till ſuch time as occaſion ſhoulde ſerue that he had néede of them: in this ſort he paſſed away all the nighte, thinking vpon the wordes of Galtenor. So the next morning this young knight ſitting on the poupe of the Foyſt, with this faire Lady, he requeſted her to tell him the whole occaſion of her comming to ſéeke for him. The which this Lady with great lamentation began to tell him, ſaying. Gentle Knight you ſhall vnderſtand that I am daughter vnto the King of Meſapotamia, which is a prouince ſcituated betwéen the two great riuers Euphrates and Tigris. Of long time was I of him welbeloued and made very much on, till ſuch time as my fathers Court was in great beauineſſe, for ỹ they could not heare any newes of a brother of mine, who was prince of that kingdome, whoſe abſence at this time is verye grieuous vnto me. There came from the other ſide of the riuer Euphrates, a prince, whoſe dominion was ouer the Prouince Paleſtina. He was the proudeſt and arroganteſt Knight that euer hath bene ſéene, in ſuch ſort, that by reaſon of his fierceneſſe, he was not onely feared of them, who of dutie did owe it him, but alſo of all the Prouinces that ioyned with his kingdome, which extended from that riuer vnto the mayne ſea of Phœnicia, the mount Libano, Gamogenia, and the high and mightie cragged rockes and mountaines Nabateos. To conclude, almoſt all Aſia did trēble at his furie. This knight at the great fame which was vttered of my beautie, came vnto the famous and large Prouince of Meſapotamia, vnto the great citie of Meſos, whereas I was of him meruailouſly intreated and requeſted of loue, but yet all that euer hée did or could do, did little profit him, for that by any meanes I coulde not admit him into my ſeruice, and the occaſion was, becauſe of his great and vnmeaſurable pride. So likewiſe came thether the Prince of Chaldæa, a Knight of great price, and adorned with many vertues, vnto whom I alwayes ſhowed a better countenaunce, and made acceptation of his ſeruice.

comely grace and gentle diſpoſition, ſhe layd. Gentle knight, if thou doeſt deſire to knowe the occaſion of all my harme, bring me beſore that worthie young knight who ſlew Geredion Bendambul, and ther thou ſhalt vnderſtand the greateſt wrong without all reaſon that euer was done to ſo noble a Damſell as I am. The Prince taking pittie of her great ſorrow aunſwered: I doe not not knowe for what effect & purpoſe you doe aſke after this knight, but be it what it will be, you ſhall vnderſtand gentle Ladie, that he whō you doe aſke for is beſore you, and ſeing that it is ſo, you may be bolde to declare your pleaſure, and heere I doe ſaie vnto you, that if it be requiſite and neceſſarie in your ſeruice, I will venture my life without putting anie excuſe for to remedie this your great ſorrow and griefe which you doe ſhew to haue. And you ſhal vnderſtand that I will do it without taking anie leaue of my Lord, the king Delfo, and there is nothing that doth ſo much greeue mee, as that I am not armed. This ſorrowfull Ladie ſeing her good fortune would not loſe the occaſion, but with a new lamentation and complaint ſhee kneeled downe beſore him and kiſſed his handes for the great offers which he made vnto her, the Prince did take her vp from the ground with great reuerence, then the Ladie with amorous wordes sayde. If that by the occaſion of king Delfo (gentle knight) we ſhall receiue anie diſturbaunce: heere I doe deſire thee by the honour which thou doſt owe vnto all vertue, that we make no farther delaie nor detainment, for heere I doe giue you to vnderſtande that there remaineth but a ſmall time for the remedying of my ſorrowe and griefe. Well, let it bee out of hand anſwered this valiant Creeke, and at our comming a land, the firſt knight that we do meet, either with his good will or ill will ſhall lend me his armour, and therewith taking that faire Ladie by the hand, they put themſelues into the Foiſt, commaunding ſtraight waye that they ſhould retourne their voyage vnto the Sea, ſo finding the time and winde fauourable, in a verye ſhort ſpace they were paſſed on their waie ſo farre that they cleane loſt the ſight of anye land.

What

What shall I saie of the king Delfo and the Princes nurse, when they could not heare of the Prince what was becom̃e of him, but onely that he was departed awaie. But if I did not put before me the great duetie which I do owe, and consider the grauitie of a Prince, I might saie that he did things more lyker a mad man, then a Prince, & surely he had great reason, for he had lost the companie of the best knight in all the world: so this warlyke Greke did saile vppon the Sea with an indifferent thought, being in companie with ỳ faire Ladie who likewise went verie well content, for that with so great ease she had found and obtained him that she sought for. But this I can certifie you of Claridiano, that he had not forgot ỳ words which the dwarfe had tolde him, but alwaies remembring the same, it put him in great confusion, in such sort, ỳ he did not remember to demand of the Damsel the occasion of her griefe, who with such dilligence went to seke him. At such time as Diana did spred abroad her golden haire ouer all those troublesome waters, he discouered that there came towards them a barke, in such hast, that in a smal time they were come vnto them, the which barke came without anie gouernment, and he sawe sitting on the pœpe of ỳ barke a gyant, who had his head and beard verie white, and apparelled with roabes of estate, who was straight wayes knowen by Claridiano to be Galtenor, for the which he receiued great ioy. When the barkes were ioyned together Galtenor went and imbraced the Prince, saying: Sonne do not thinke to depart awaie in such sort, but that first I will reioyce my selfe with the presence, for it shal be more profitable vnto thee then thou doest thinke for, as well for the remedie and ease of thy thought, as for the adorning and sauegard of thy bodie. To whom the Prince answered and sayd: I do verie well know my Lord, that from you can proceede nothing but that which is good, as alwaies hath bene the vse and custome hetherto. Then the Gyant sayd vnto him: This thou maist perfectly beleeue, that so long as my soule is ioyned and knit with my bodie, that it shall not exercise it selfe in anie other thing but in thy seruice. And now for that thou standest in

LOng time haue wée forgotten to ſpeake of that valiant Prince Claridiano, ſonne vnto that famous Emperour Alphebo, and of the excellent Claridiana, who in the Ilands of Trapobana we left ſomwhat troubled, which was the occaſion that his couragious heart did finde it ſelfe greatly oppreſſed, and eſpecially for that his valyant dæds ſhould be kept cloſe and not come to light and be ſpread abroad in ỹ world, for to ſhow his mightie ſtrength and worthy courage, ỹ the occaſion of his let was, the greate perſwaſion of the king Delfo, who would not loſe his compante, putting before him for excuſe his young and tender age, procuring him to tarrie and not to trie himſelfe in adventures, till ſuch time as he ſhould haue the full age of eighteene yeares. This young knight thought the time to be verie long, which was the occaſion that he was verie ſadde and ſorrowfull, in ſuch ſort, that his fayre and beautifull face had loſt part of his naturall and liuely coulour, and dayly hée did exerciſe himſelfe in no other thing but to goe to the ſea ſide, and there to ſet himſelfe vpon a rocke, hauing no other contemplation but to beholde how the water with greate furie and force did ſtrike and beate vpon the ſayd rocke. So after long time vſing this diſport, it chanced on a daie at ſuch time as the Sunne had made an ende of his iourney, hée ſaw at the foote of that Rocke a Dwarfe, who with an outragious and irefull voyce ſayde: Don Claridiano of Grecia, what doeſt thou thinke that the hardneſſe of that Rocke is ſufficient to blaze thy fame and to get vnto thée honour? No of verye truth, but with thy armour, and trauailing through the worlde thou ſhalt obtaine valour as thy predeceſſours haue done before thée: it had bæne better thou haddeſt neuer bene an armed Knight, if that onely in one valyaunt dæde of armes thou doeſt imploye thy time. Therefore I ſaye aryſe vp O Græke, and procure to finde out thy royall bloud and generation from whence thou doeſt procæde, and let not thy deſcent lye hidde, neyther thy proweſſe vnknowen. Hée

had no ſoner made an ende of his ſpæches, but that vppon a ſodaine hæ vaniſhed cleane awaie, and was not anie moze ſæne. The ſozrowe and heauineſſe was verie much which the Pzince then felt in himſelfe, in hearing the wozdes and reaſons of the Dwarfe, and the moze, when that hæ vnderſtoode that hæ was not ſonne vnto him whome he allwaies thought he had bæne, the which cauſed his courage greatly to alter within him, and made him to ſaie: Unfoztunate that I am, what doe I make hære amongeſt thoſe which are not of my lignage, I had thought foz certainetie that I had bæne with my Father and kindzed, and nowe I doe ſee that it is to the contrarie, and that I am kept in this Ilande lyke a weake and ſillie woman: O Galtenor, ſæing that it was thy pleaſure that by my handes thou ſhouldeſt hæ reſtozed vnto thy kingdome, and foz that effect thou haſt had mæ hetherto in thy kæping: Why doeſt thou now conſent that my fame periſh and decaie, I remaining in this Ilande. O immoztall Mars, to thæ I do inuocate, that being by thæ holpen and with thy fauour I may ſtretch fozth the bzight beame, which with thy partiall hande thou gaueſt me. So vttering theſe and ſuch like complaints, he paſſed a few daies, till that vpon a certaine daie, following his accuſtomed exerciſe, hee ſaw comming towards the ſhoze a Foyſt, which was gouerned with foure martiners, and beholding who was therein, he ſaw come from vnder the hatches, a very faire Damoſell, who was all apparailed with mourning apparaile, and with her two auncient Squires, who led her by the armes, apparailed in the ſame manner and guiſe. This Ladies face was all to bedewed with teares, and her countenaunce did declare and ſhowe, that ſhe ſuffered great ſozrow and anguiſh. This valyaunt and wozthy young knight very deſirous to knowe the occaſion of her greate lamentation, mowed himſelfe towards her, and hauing ſaluted her, he deſired her if it were her pleſure, to declare vnto him the occaſion of hir complaint. The Lady turning vnto him who had demaunded the occaſion of her ſozrow, and being greatly amazed in viewing his

This wil I declare vnto you with a verie good will answered this fayre Ladie. You shall vnderstand that I am daughter vnto the king of the Ilandes of Spaine, my parents had no more daughters but I alone, the which was the occasion that I was the more made off and estæmed of them. And by reason of my beutie, they put me into a strong tower, which was nigh the sea side, whereout many times for my recreation I issued in companie with many Ladyes and Damselis, which were with me to beare me companie: so it chaunced one day when I was abroad in my accustomed recreation & sport, I was beset with this infernall companie, who carried me into their mightie and strong shippe in this order as you doe see me, whereas I did no other thing but lament and bewaile my sadde and beaute misfortune. So the first Gyaunt which you did kill, seing me make so great lamētation, with louing and amorous wordes did procure to comfort me, and did offer me, that all which was my will to be done, he wold fulfill the same, and I seing his greate curtesie, and agayne, that my remedie was so farre from me, vpon a sodaine ther came a thought into my minde, which I supposed to be verie good and requisite for to redresse my harme & griefe, and I desired of him to graunt me a bone, this gyant did graunt me my request, and the rest did promise to fulfill all that I would aske them, and my demaund was, that they shoulde carrie me vnto Grecia, vnto the court of the Emperour Trebatio, and that they should for the space of twentie dayes defend my beautie and faireneſſe, making a challenge agaynſt all other. These Gyants by reason of theyr great pride, didde thinke it good to accomplish my request, the which they did graunt vnto me in such sort ỳ no other thing coulde disturbe them. And straight waie commaunded them of the shippe to take the way towards Grecia, wheras fortune hath brought vs, and this morning we did disimbarke our selues at the point of a land which is here at hande, and for that they did seme verie wearie and ouertraualled by sea, they did determin. to carrie me all the rest of ỳ waie by land, till we shuld come vnto Constantinople, but now whether it was my good

fortune

fortune, or their great pride I know not, that wold not consent that they should come thether, but first they should heare end their dayes. And being in this discourse, they saw a great number of people comming towardes them, which seemed to be household seruants or such like, who came with all their beastes laden with victualls and other necessaries, who were all seruants vnto those Gyaunts, and when they came nigh the place and sawe that wonderful spectacle of their masters: euen as you see the small birdes howe they will hide themselues amongest the bushes, briers, and thicke trees, from the sight of anie rauenous foule: euen so did all these seruants of those vile Gyaunts, hide themselues in the thickest of the woods and mountaines of the Forrest, fearing the like intertainment. This valiant Moze when he sawe the sodaine flying of them, without hauing anie care of them, and making little reckoning, he toke that gentle Ladie in his armes and set her vpon her palfraie, and he himselfe without putting foot in his stirop, leapt vpon his horse backe with great lightnes, and toke their iourney towards the place whereas ỹ others had left their ship, into the which he entered with great spaduerie ioyfull of his good hap, & straight waie he commanded to hoise vp their sailes, & to take the waie towards Mauritania, whereas we will leaue them for to tell you the great discontentment that the valiant knight Claridiano had, by reason of his long tarrying in the Iland of Trapobana. O omnipotent God, I doe desire thee to giue me wisdome & discretion to declare the great worthinesse of this young knight, for without thy helpe I do not finde my selfe able for to set forth so many and so mernailous feates of armes as was done by this worthie knight, as in this chapter following and in all the rest shall be declared.

¶ How Claridiano was verie sad and sorrowfull to see that he was an armed Knight, onely for to doo one worthie feate of armes, and what pollicie he did vse for to absent himselfe from the king Delfo. Chap. 8.

bout to shake as though they woulde haue fallen downe: When Brusaldoro saw that the foure gyants were dead, who wer the kæpers of that faire ladie, he went towards her, who was alreadie on foote abiding his comming. The valyaunt Wyze did pull of his healme, and did discouer his face, which did representa great maiestie & seueritie, such as his state did require, and although he wes of a great stature & bignesse of bodie, yet his faire face did giue greate delight vnto all them that did beholde it, and when he came nigh vnto the faire ladie, he knæled downe on the ground and said: Faire Ladie, I know not whether you are discontented, or haue receiued a small benefit or seruice in this which I haue done, but of this be you assured, that my determined thought was to doe you seruice, beléeuing that so faire a Ladie shoulde not with her good will kæpe companie with so monstrous people: she with with great curtesie did answ were him & sayd: Gentle knight I cannot denie but that I was constrained by force to kæpe companie with these proude and ill conditioned Gyants, and much lesse can I kæpe in secret the great ioy which I haue to finde my selfe at libertie and cléere from them, but one thing there is which I doe greatly feare, that is, that nowe I falling into thy hands and power, I dread to come into a new prison, therefore I beséech you to giue me frée libertie, with the seguritie which belongeth vnto my honour. The Pagan who was verie attentiue vnto the words of the Ladie, would haue made her answere, but this faire lady did disturbe him, desiring him first to sit downe by her, for that she was perswaded that with the great trauaile which he had taken in the battaile with the Gyants, it could not be but that he was wearie, and therewith taking him fast by both the hands she made him to sit downe, to whom Brusaldoro sayd: Ah fayre Ladie if I did knowe that my heart were as frée and cléere of your loue, as you are sure of me for offering you anie violence, then with great reason I might account my selfe happie, as well in the doing of your seruice, as in giuing you libertie, but I am he Ladie that must aske libertie of your beautie, desiring you not to haue anie doubt of me. So with

deepe & sorrowful sighs this Moze did giue her to vnderstand how his troubled heart was tormented with excessiue loue. The Ladie when she vnderstoode and knewe that she had of him so sure a pawne, was nothing discontent with all, for that he seemed vnto her to be a knight of a verie good disposition and of great value, more then anie other, and for that he shuld receiue some contentment, she answered and sayd: Sir, I am verie well satisfied, that a knight in whom is comprehended so great beautie, cannot be without the curteste requisite in so worthie a warriour, for the which cause I doe deliberate and put all my honour into your handes, and beleeue me that time shall not lacke to put remedie in this your new griefe and paine, without incurring vnto my selfe anie rebuke, but to maintaine and keepe my honour, as belongeth vnto the royall bloud from whence I do descend, in ỹ meane time gentle knight, I would craue one bone at your hands, which in telling you I would not haue it denied me: Oh how great was the ioye that this valyant Pagan receiued when he vnderstoode so good hope which she pronounced vnto him, and therewith he turned vnto the Ladie, and whether shee would or not, he kissed her handes, with great thanks for the grace and fauour which she shewed him, and therewith remembring the wordes which passed by the Nymph at the riuer, he sayd vnto himselfe: How is it that not long sinces I made a mocke and a iest of the aduice the which was giuan me, and now I do see that I made a mocke & a iest of the aduice which is turned into good earnest. And in saying these words he returned vnto the Ladie and sayde: What is that faire Ladie that I should binde my selfe vnto you to do, nay what is it, that lying in my power to accomplish, I woulde not do, being wholy yours, for ỹ my heart is your prisoner, & my libertie subiect to your wil, so ỹ there is no occasion ỹ you shuld desire the graunt of me, but commaund me to fulfil all your will and request, but yet saye Ladie, before that you doe proceede to your request, I doe desire you that I maye know the occasion of your haying companie and trauailing with these foure furious Gyants in this Countrie of Grecia.

This

great ioy that her heart receiued to ſée two of thoſe of her e-nimes dead before her, and did not let to praie vnto her Gods for the accomplishment of the whole victorie againſt ỹ other two which remained. And therewith the other Gyant lyke a furious Lyon blaſpheming againſt his curſed Gods, not tarrying to arme himſelfe with more armour then at that preſent he had, for that there they were all with their healmes vnlaſed and from their heads, he toke holde of a great & beauie club that was there with both his hands, and preſſed forwards with a large pace againſt the Pagan, with determination to take reuengement of the others death, but this young furious Brufaldoro did tarrie and receiue him with his accuſtomed courage and valiauntneſſe, the fearefull Gyaunt did ſtrike at him ſo terrible a blow with his club, that ſwinging with it in the aire it made a fearefull ſounde, but the Pagan, who without all feare did abide the comming of the blowe, determined with himſelfe to let it paſſe in vaine, as hée hadde all the reſt before, and ſo it fell out, that when he ſawe the blowe deſcend he ſtepped on the one ſide, in ſuch ſort, that the club fell to the ground, with ſo terrible a waight & ſtrength, that the blowe made all the trées that were nigh at hande to tremble. This terrible blowe was no ſoner paſſed to ỹ earth when that this valiant Mauritanian ſtroke a blowe at his armes, which was with ſo great ſtrength, that he cut them both off by the wriſtes, and his hands béeing fall to ỹ club, they fell all to ỹ ground. The Gyant who felt himſelfe wounded & lame, would haue imbraced with the Pagan, thinking vp his great ſtrength to haue cruſhed him to death, but this Mauritanian with great valiantneſſe did put himſelfe before him, his ſword in his hand with the point forwardes, ſo that the Gyant (with the great paine that he felt of his wounds, and the great anger he had in his heart,) without anie conſideration he preſſed himſelfe forwardes, & the Pagan followed in his determination in ſuch ſort, that the ſword entered into the Gyants bodie vp to the hard hilts, falling downe dead to the ground, with no leſſe noiſe then the reſt. Then ỹ fourth Gyant which remained, did put himſelfe on foote, who was

of

of a greater and huger ſtature and bigneſſe then the other which were dead, and taking in his hand a great and mighty ſpeare which laie on the ground by him, with a terrible and fearefull voice he ſayd: O thou infernall diuell, for that thou canſt not be other, ſeeing thou haſt ſlaine my three companions, for I tell thee that the Gods in the heauens did tremble for feare of them. Here I doe promiſe thee that thou ſhalt not depart without thy reward and puniſhment, neyther I without taking vengeaunce of thee. The valiant Moore who verie well heard and vnderſtoode his woordes, made little account of his proude ſpeech, but ſayd: Make an end thou furious diuell and come vnto the battaile, delaie not I ſaye, that thou mayſt beare theſe thy companions companie. Then the Gyant lifted vp his arme aboue his head, hauing faſt in his hande that greate and mightie Speare, which was all full of knots, with the barke remaining ſtill thereon, and threw it at him with ſo great ſtrength, that it made a meruailous ſound in the aire, but this valyant Mauritanian was not without great care of the comming thereof, but with a counter pace he put himſelfe on the one ſide, with ſo greate pollicie, that the blowe paſſed on the one ſide, and the Speare ſtuck faſt in the ground, and by reaſon of the greate force wherewith it was throwen, it made it to ſhake as though it would haue flowen in a thouſand peeces, and turning round like a Snake when ſhe doth make haſt to goe awaie from him that woulde kill her. Then the ſtrong and ſtout Mauritanian being very irefull, to ſee ſo great villanie, he ranne vnto the ſpeare, and with great ſtrength he pulled it out of the ground, and in throwing it againe at the gyant, he ſaid: O thou furious beaſt, take vnto thee thy dart. It did wel appeare that it was not throwen by a ſluggiſh arme, for that by reaſon of the great ſtrength ſtriking on his ſheeld it pearced it through, yet it did not ther remaine, but likewiſe pearced his armour and ſhirt of maile and neuer ſtayed till ſuch time as it ſhewed it ſelfe at his backe all to be bathed with bloud, wherewith the Gyant fell downe dead to the ground, whoſe fall was ſo terrible that it made the earth tremble, and all the trees that were there a-

bout

owne libertie, whether he would, without gouerning him. So his horſe brought him into a great plaine, where a farre off he diſcouered an armed Tent pitched, which ſeemed to be faire and rich, and by it vpon the greene graſſe, ther lay foure great Giants, who had in the midſt among them, a verye faire Damſell, who was very beauie and ſorrowfull, leaning her cheeke vpon her hand. The Pagan being nothing afraid of the Giants, did keepe his way, till ſuch time as hee came whereas the Giants were laid, and he came ſo nigh, that he might ſee the face of the Damſell, which ſeemed not to be any humane creature, by reaſon of her excellent beautie, with hir golde yeolow haire diſperſed all vpon her backe, and her Lilly white hand whereon ſhe leaned her cheeke, diſcouering her faire face, with her eyes ſhut, which ſhowed her well ſet browes, from vnder which, diſtilled many teares which ſeemed to be orientall pearles, diſperſed vpon her faire and white face, and ſundry times giuing deep and ſorrowfull ſighes, which declared the great paine and griefe that ſhe did ſuffer. The Pagan when he ſaw her great beautie and fairneſſe, vpon a ſodaine his hart wounded with the cruell dart of Cupide, in ſuch ſort, and with ſo great fury, that nothing could giue him eaſe thereof, but onely death: wherewith hee ſtraight remembred, that which of late he heard the Nimph to ſing, and conſidered within himſelfe, how her words and threatenings chaunced to fall out true, which cauſed him to giue a terrible ſigh, whereat one of the Giants did awake, & ſetting himſelfe vppon the grounde, he ſayd. How haſt thou bene ſo hardie, that thou dareſt to put thy ſelfe before vs, & without any feare of our great ſtrength, thou haſt ſhewed ſignes and tokens of loue. At theſe words which the Giant ſpake, this Lady did open her eyes, and when ſhe ſaw ỳ Pagan, ſhe coulde not refraine her ſelfe ſo much to holde her peace, but that ſhe muſt needes giue a ſigh, wherat this fierce Giant was fully certified that ſhe was forced by thoſe Gyants, and with that thought he ſayd.

Gyaunt, my deedes ſhall beare witneſſe of theſe thy proud words: therefore, for that the time ſhall not paſſe a-

way,

way, and be spent in reasonings, one thing I do demaund of thee, whether this sorrowfull and weeping Lady goeth with you, of her owne proper good will, or els constrained by your force and violence. The Gyaunt with greate pride put himselfe on foote, and in lacing and making fast his helme, he sayd. My sword shall wholly and fully certifie thee, of all that which thou dost demaund, and in speaking these words, the one pressed towards the other. But the Pagan for that he would not that he should kill his horse, was constrained to put himselfe somewhat on the one side, and lighting from the saddle, he lefte his horse alone, and layde hold vppon his sword, wherewith his enimie stroke at him a mightie & terrible blow, who with a strange lightnesse caused it to be stroken in vaine, in stepping on the one side, and therewith hee closed with the Giant, and threw at his breast so terrible & strong a foyne, that his armour was not sufficient for to make resistaunce, but that the fury thereof must be executed, and pearced him thorough vnto the backe, wherewith ỹ Giant gaue a terrible fal to the ground, at which noyse ỹ other three Giants did awake, and one of them put himself quickly on foote, and without tarrying for to put on his healme, or to take his shield, but blaspheming against his Gods, he ran against the Pagan, who abode his comming with such like courage, as his presumption did require. The Giaunt with both his hands, stroke at him so monstrous a blow, that if it had chaunced on him, it would haue put his life in great ieopardie. But this valiant Brusaldoro with his accustomed pollicie, did cleare himselfe from the same. The great & broad sword of ỹ Giant had not so soone passed downe, when ỹ Pagan pressed vnto the Giant, before he had any leasure to lift it vp again, & with an ouerthwart blow, he stroke him with so great strength vpon the head, that all from the eares vpwardes, he brought vnto the earth, wherewith the Gyaunt fell downe dead to the ground, whose fall was so terrible and made so great a noyse, that it seemed a mightye towre had tumbled downe: whosoeuer at that time hadde seene that faire Ladie, might verie wellehaue discouered the

great

The Dutcheſſe did then prouide for her departure, as it was determined, leauing the Court in great heauines The death of the Prince Zoylo was publiſhed all about, and the occaſion thereof, inſomuch that it came vnto the knowledge of the Emperour Alphebo of Trapiſond, which was the occaſion of great griefe in the Emperour: but he did diſſemble it in the beſt wiſe he could, with intent to reuenge the ſame. Whereas we will leaue them vntill time ſhall ſerue: and I will alſo omit at this time the great worke which ỳ princes Tigliafa cauſed to be made, for that heere I will tell you what the Pagan Brufaldoro did.

¶How the fierce Brufaldoro, hauing ſpoken euill of women, and of them that are louers, was taken in the ſnares of loue with a Ladye that hee met, after that he finiſhed the battaile with Zoylo. Cap. 7.

ALl the day after that Brufaldoro had finiſhed the battaile with Zoylo, he trauailed through the thickeſt of the forreſt, being very wearye of the troubleſome iourney, till ſuch time as the darke night drew on, and what with weerines, and with the great deſire he had to eate which did trouble him very much, he was conſtrained to alight from his horſe by the riuers ſide, whereas he remayned till ſuch time as the morning came, and riſing on foote for to begin to take his iourney, being halfe amazed in beholding the great calme and quietneſſe, which was in the riuer, and the little noyſe which it made, by reſon of ỳ great depth thereof in that part, vpon a ſodaine in the midſt of the riuer he ſaw that the waues did increaſe & ariſe vp, like as though it had bene taken with a whirlwinde or tempeſt, which cauſed the water to make a great noyſe, and being verye deſirous to ſée what was the occaſion of that great and ſodaine change in the water, he behelo that it was a Nymph, which appeared in his ſight from vnder the water, who did ſhowe her ſelfe to the breaſts, in diſcouring them vnto him, and her

face

face was so faire, that in his life, he had not seene the like, and the whiteneſſe of her flesh was such, that the snowe in comparison to her, was obscure and darke. The Pagan receiued no alteration at this sodaine sight, but the Nymph with a meruailous sweete and delicate voyce, began to sing these few verses following.

WHo thinks himselfe at freedome most of all,
and least esteemes of Lady Venus fire:
Let him not boast, for he may soonest fall,
and quickly feele the furie of her ire.
Her blinded sonne such sodaine shafts lets fly,
That freest hearts are first inthrald thereby.

There is not one which may himselfe defend
by strength nor wit, from mightie Cupides dart:
For that vnseene he doth his arrowes send,
and vperceiude, with paine doth pearce the hart.
Bereauing wholly all delight and ioye.
Leauing behinde, distresse and great annoye.

The wonted weale He into woe doth turne
of him, that once despised hath his power:
His cold affection He doth cause to burne,
and turnes his sweete to most detested sower.
Triumphing most with terror to torment
The man, that earst against his will was bent.

When she had made an ende of her song, without anye more tarrying, with a furious force, she threw her selfe into the water againe, from whence she came, leauing the Pagan much amazed: but by reason that the force of his stomacke was such, he determined to let it passe, & to thinke no more thereof, beleeuing that it was some inchauntment, and hauing his heart at libertie, with a light courage, without putting his foote in the stirrop, he leapt vpon his light horse, and laying the bridle vpon his necke, he let him goe at his

finde héere no ioye noꝛ comfoꝛt at all foꝛ me, neyther yet any eaſe of this my great griefe, ſo that I ſhall thinke it foꝛ the beſt to loſe all my ioye, and now I doe finde in my ſelfe that death will be my friend. Ah my ſweét loue and Loꝛd, ioyne thy face vnto mine, let vs kiſſe together, and let vs make our departure both together. The Pꝛince béeing troubled with the anguiſh of his haſtie death, ſayd: Héere I doo deſire thée my Tigliaſa, by ỹ firme & faithfull loue which thou doeſt beare me, not to conſent that I be the occaſion, that with a cruell death thou doeſt finiſh thy life, but to ſuſtaine & maintaine it ſo long as the Gods doth permit the ſame, and when that I am dead (which ſhall be verie quickly) let me receiue this fauour at thy handes, that thou wouldeſt vouchſafe to giue a Sepulchꝛe vnto this my bodie, foꝛ with great eaſe and comfoꝛt ſhall I depart, ſéeing that I die in the armes of my Ladie and miſtres, and a greate deale moꝛe comfoꝛt ſhall I receiue if I knew of a certaintie that thou woldeſt perfoꝛme this, that I doe craue and deſire at thy hands: Oh my loue, doe not denie this my ſupplication, and foꝛ that I am certified that thou wilt perfoꝛme the ſame, héere I take my leaue of thée, farewell, the Gods pꝛeſerue thée, and take me to theyꝛ mercies. And when he ſayde theſe woꝛdes, he inclined his necke vpon the face of the Pꝛinceſſe. When this ſoꝛrowfull Ladie ſawe that the ſoule had got the victoꝛie and departed from the bodie, ſhe kiſſed the mouth of the dead bodie, and giuing déepe and doloꝛous ſighes, ſhe beganne a meruailous and heauie lamentation, calling her ſelfe vnhappie and vnfoꝛtunate, and laide her ſelfe vppon the dead bodie, curſing her ſelfe ſo that it was lamentable to heare. All her Damoſells (who did beare her companie in that great ſoꝛrowe) when they ſawe theyꝛ Ladie in a ſound, they toke the healme of the dead knight, & bꝛought water in it from the Riuer ſide, and in thꝛowing of it in her face, and all to be bathed her therewith, they bꝛought her againe vnto her remembꝛaunce, who beganne a newe to make greate lamentation, and to bewaile her ill foꝛtune, vttering woꝛdes of greate doloꝛ and griefe,

griefe, which proceeded from the bottome of her heart, and sayde: Ah my good friend, what small benefite haue I receyued for all my trauaile and paine, the which I haue suffered in seeking of thee, and nowe in finding of thée it is the more for my griefe, for that I came to see thée die: Ah most vnhappie that I am, where was I when I sawe descend vpon thée that mortall stroke? Whereon was my thought? Wherefore did I stand still, and did not with great lightnesse make resistaunce against that terrible blowe? And if my strength woulde not haue serued me, yet at the least I shoulde haue borne thée companie: Ah you furious beastes, that now are hidde in your dennes and dæpe caues, where are you nowe? Why doe you not come and take pittie of my griefe, and put remedie therein, in taking awaie my life, for in so doing you shall shewe your selues pittifull, for that I doe abhorre this dolorous lyfe. Yet she did not forget the promise the which she made vnto her welbeloued Zoylo, which was the occasion that she did somewhat cease her lamentation. And taking vnto her selfe more courage then her dolorous griefe did consent vnto. With the helpe of her Damselles, she put the dead bodie vnder that greate and mightie Pine apple træ, where the armour did hang, commanding some of those that were with her, that they should goe vnto those villages that lyer nigh at hand, to cause some people to come thether, that they might with as greate spæde as was possible, make a verie sumptuous pæce of worke, in the which they shoulde burie the dead bodie of Zoylo, the which was the occasion that in Constantinople they did knowe of the death of this vnhappie knight, and when the Emperour and all those that were in the court did knowe of it, they were meruaylous sorrowful for the same, for that hée was welbeloued of them all. That same daie came likewise newes to the Court of the restoring againe of the kingdome of Lyra, which cost the lyfe of the Prince Brandimardo, which was the occasion that they made no triumph nor reioycing of that greate victorie, but rather a double lamentation for the death of the Prince.

would that it ſhould be for the more increaſing of my dolour and griefe, in finding thee in this ſort, as now thou art. Oh cruell Fortune, I haue not deſerued to be thus ingratefully vſed at thy hands: for when I thought to be cleere of all ſorrow and trouble, now I finde my ſelfe moſt afflicted therewith. Ah my Lord, ſeeing that in thy lyfe time thou gaueſt me ſo bitter and euill a life, for that thou didſt hate & abhorre me, now in thy death giue me ſome comfort. Open theſe ſweete eyes and behold me, lift vp this wounded head and giue me ſome comfort before thou dyeſt. Ah Zoylo my ioye, if euer thou didſt beare me any loue, it is now time to giue me to vnderſtand thereof, before thy ſoule depart from thy body, and in ſaying theſe lamentable words, ſhe was conſtrained to hold her peace, for that ſhe ſaw that this woũded Tartarian recouered ſome ſtrength: who opened his eyes, and when he ſawe himſelfe in the armes of her, who at that time he ſo much loued, & before by force of inchauntment he hated, he ſodainly aroſe vp, and recouering ſtrength he ſate himſelfe on the ground, and caſt his armes aboute the white necke of the Princeſſe, and they ioyned theyr faces the one with the other, diſtilling betwirt them manye ſalt and bitter teares, in ſuch ſort, that it would haue moued the wilde beaſts vnto compaſſion, and with a feeble & weake voice this vnfortunate Prince ſayde: Ah my Ladie and miſtres, let me recreate and comfort my ſelfe in inioyeng this thy mouth, the time that I ſhall remaine aliue, and before that my ſoule doth depart the company of this my body: giue me my Lady ſome comfort, doe not make any excuſe, although without all reaſon, I haue bene pitileſſe vnto thee, in making thee to trauaile with great ſorow, ſeeking him, ỳ becauſe he would not ſee thee fled alwaies in ſhunning thee, & now I come to deſire thee. Heere muſt you ſhew me in what eſtimation you had me in, in gining me ſuccour, before that I do leaue thee in this wilderneſſe alone, with my dead bodie colde and wan: Oh my loue giue me a thouſand kiſſes, let me onely haue this delight, for the little time I haue to ſary, & afterward I deſire thee, to giue my body his ſepulchar.

The

This ſad and diſcomforted Ladie anſwered: Ah Zoilo, what doeſt aſke of me, what wouldeſt that I ſhuld giue thée, I alwayes was thine, I haue nothing of mine owne, I am all thine, it were now a ſtraunge thing to beginne a new to loue thée, for all that euer I could giue thée, I gaue it thée long ere this, oh my loue, why doeſt thou not vnderſtand this: alaſſe what ſhall I ſaie, I that am without all good fortune, for now I ſée that thy time draweth on, & that my contentment, ioy, and comfort is verie ſhort: Ah my Lord, doſt thou requeſt of me to giue thy bodie a Sepulchre: well, I ſée that it is requiſite to ſéeke ſome to giue it vnto vs both. And without ſtrēgth to proceéde anie farther in ſpeéches, ſhe kiſſed the face of her welbeloued & ſo long deſired Zoilo, with great ſobbing & ſighs making within her ſelfe a terrible conflict, tarrying for the anſwere of her welbeloued friend, who with no leſſe paine & anguiſh of death ſayd: Ah my Ladie and miſtres, I do know that thou wert alwaies mine, & I thine. That which I will now deſire of thée, is, for that I was beloued of thée in my life time, that now in my death I may be fauoured of thée. Oh cruell loue, oh what a wiſh is this, a caſe neuer the like heard of before, that I ſhuld deſire the death of her that ſo long time hath trauailed and taken paines and ſorrowes with terrible weépings and ſighs for my ſake. Ah my miſtres, how happie ſhoulde I be, that thus imbracing one in the others armes we might depart together: Oh what a happie death would it be, oh ſweéte Fortune, I haue no other griefe with me but to leaue thée behinde me: Oh vnhappie that I am, I neuer determined to deſire thy death, but nowe, and onely for that I woulde not leaue thy compame. The Princeſſe beéing very much troubled with griefe and ſorrowe, anſwered him and ſayde: Oh my loue, therein take thou neyther griefe nor care, for here I doe promiſe thée by the greate loue that I doe beare vnto thée, that if death doe ſhew himſelfe any thing contrarie vnto mée, that I will procure it with mine owns handes, for that the Gods will not conſent that I ſhould liue and thou die, therefore I ſaye, that if hée doe contrarie mée, I will giue thée this contentment, for that without thée I ſhall

ceiue him, and when they met together, they diſcharged their blowes at once, but it fortuned that the Mauritanians blow did firſt laſten, with ſo great ſtrength, that for all the helme which Zoylo had was ſo good, it was not ſufficient to make defence, but that with the diuelliſh furie wherwith it was diſcharged, it bended, in ſuch ſorte, that it brake all to péces the ſcalpe of that vnhappie Tartarian, wherewith he gaue a terrible fall to the ground. So when the Pagon ſawe his enimie on the earth, with a loude voyce he ſayde: Nowe ſhalt not thou bée he that ſhall diſturbe mée, that I carrie not this armour with mée. This ſadde and beauie Princeſſe when ſhe ſawe her ſwéte and welbeloued friende on the earth, with great ſuſpition what was happened, beganne to wéepe bitterly. And as a Lyon who séing before her her young Lyon ſtill intreated of the hunter: euen ſo ſhe leapt from her Palfraie and ranne vnto her welbeloued Zoylo, and with greate ſpéed ſhé pulled off the healme from that wounded head, and with a fayre linnen cloth ſhe wiped of the bloud from his mortall face, and when ſhe was certaine that it was hé that coſt her ſo déere the séking, and that he was without lyfe, with furious madneſſe ſhe tore her attire from her head, and all to rent her golden haire, tearing it in péces, and retourned againe and wiped that infernall face, making ſuch ſorrowfull lamentation, that whoſoeuer had séene her woulde haue bene moued to haue had compaſſion. Then ſhé toke the head betwéene her handes, and did procure without doing it anie harme to lifte it vp, and to put it vpon her lappe, and séing for all this that there was no moouing in him, ſhe ioyned her face vnto the face of that vnfortunate Zoylo, and with ſorowfull wordes ſhé ſayd: Oh my loue, open thine eyes and beholde me, open them, I ſaie, and loke vppon this thy Ladie moſt vnfortunate, and while lyfe remaineth giue mée ſome contentment, if fortune be ſo fauourable: Oh my Lorde, ſtrengthen thy ſelfe to loke vpon me, wherein I ſhall receiue ſuch delight, that willinglye I will beare thé companie: Ah Zoylo and my onely loue, séeing that in former time my teares were not ſufficient to reclaime

claime thée in anie parte, make me satisfaction for the greate trauaile which I haue taken in séeking thée out, come nowe in death and inioye this thy vnfortunate louer, and dye not without séeing me, open thefe eyes and beholde mée, giue me I praie thée some comfort: Ah my Lorde, I know not whether in séeing me thou shalt receiue paine, or no, for that at anie time thou neuer delightedst in anie thing that was mine, but now I will gratifie thée in dying with thée, and séeing that in thy lyfe time I coulde not reioyce in thée, nor haue anie companie with thée, I will now in thy death séeke thée, and peraduenture thou wilt nowe haue more pittie on mée. The Princesse sorrowfull lamentations and greate weepings were such, that she almost sounded. But this discomforted Ladie comming to her selfe and sawe that her loue made no appearaunce of lyfe, shée begannie againe to wipe his face, for that it was againe all to bée bathed with bloud, and with her white hande she felt his eyes and mouth and all his face and his head, till such time as shée chaunced to put her hande on the mortall wounde, and when shée knew that there was all the harme, she held her hand still, and looking on him whether he moued or no, with the greate feare which she had that he woulde die, without giuing her anye comfort to speake vnto her, she made a meruailous and great lamentation, and cryed out with terrible shrikes, the which did augement much heauinesse and sorrowe in them which were in companye with the Princesse, and she sayd. Ah my loue, how many troubles and great trauailes haue I passed in seeking thee, by mountaines and hils, by vallies, wilde fields and high wayes, watering them with my amorous teares, alwayes demaunding for thee, and alwayes in vaine calling thée, yet was I neuer desolate of the true loue which I bare vnto thée: Oh howe many times in calling for thée, haue I bene answered by the ecko, which was vnto me great dolor and griefe, and nowe that fortune hath brought me into the same place whereas thou art, for to recreate and reioyce my selfe with thy beutie, the same fortune

when that he felt in himſelfe a new thought of loue, and repenting himſelfe of all hatred paſt, being ouercome by ẏ water, and fired in that new loue, he determined to retourne againe vnto Conſtantinople, and craue pardon of the Princeſſe, but that cruell Atropos who had his blow readie, wold not graunt vnto him anie time for the ſame, neither was the wiſe Lyrgandeo able to deliuer him from the death. And ſo it fell out, that when he woulde haue made his retourne to Conſtantinople, he chaunced to come to that place whereas Bramarant did kill himſelfe, and whereas Brufaldoro did diſarme himſelfe, and armed himſelfe againe with the armour of the Tropheo. And the valiaunt Tartarian knowing the great harme that would procæde vnto them which did procure to come vnto the Tropheo, he woulde giue aduiſement vnto him that was ſo bolde to giue the attempt, ẏ he might vnderſtand, that it would be demaunded at his hand. And ſo he did aduiſe Brufaldoro in that ſort as you haue heard, who without anie aunſwering came againſt him with his ſword in his hand, inuiting him to mortall battaile. Zoylo who ſawe his determination, did procure to defend himſelfe and offend his enimie. Oh my Muſe, that nowe I had ſo much diſcreation and eloquence for to ſet out and declare the greate harme that this daie happened in this vnfortunate Forreſt. This valiant Tartarian when his enimie came vnto him, ſtroke him ſo terrible a blowe vpon the viſour of his helme that with the furie thereof he made ſparkles of fire to iſſue out thereof with great abundaunce, and to bowe downe his head vpon his breaſt. The Pagan did returne vnto him his ſalutation, and ſtroke him ſuch a blowe vpon his helme, that with the great noiſe therof it made a ſound in all the mountaines. Now began betwæne them a meruailous and fearefull battaile, at the great noiſe whereof, Fortune willing to vſe her extremitie, for to amplifie a farther euill, cauſed the Princeſſe Tigliafa in the companie of her Ladyes and Damſells to come vnto that place whereas theſe knightes were, in battaile, and ſtraight waie ſhe did knowe her welbeloued Tartarian, and ſeing him in ſo dangerous a battaile, ſhe was

in

in great anguish with hee selfe. These knights thought on no other thing, but either of them procured to bring his aduersarie to his ende, striking at eache other suche terrible blows, and with so great fury, that many times it made eyther of them to lose his saling: and both seing the greate force of one another, were meruailously incensed with anger. This fierce Tartarian threw his shield at his backe, that with more force he might strike and hurt his enemie, and therewith gaue him so strong a blow vpon his helme, that all astonied he forced him to fall vpon the crupper of his horse, who carried him a great space round about the fielde, without any saling. But when he came againe vnto himselfe, this fierce Mauritanian setling himselfe in his saddle, stroke at ꝑ Tartarian so terrible a blow, that if it had chanced on him, it would haue turned him to much griefe, but with great discretion he clered himselfe therof, in such sort, that it was stroken in vaine, and with great lightnesse, hee returned, and stroke the Mauritanian so, that he made him once againe to fall vpon the crouper of his horse all astonyed, and there appeared by the visour of his helme, the abundaunce of bloud that issued out of his mouth, and his horse being greeued with that blow, stoped with his forefete to the ground, and being amazed, with great fury he rose vp: with his great kicking and flinging backwards, he did defend, that the Tartarian could not come nigh to hurt ꝑ Mauritanian, which was the occasion that he could not haue any time for to giue him the second blowe, although he neuer left to follow him, to see if he could make an end of ꝑ enterprise, which would haue made much of his part, not to haue giuen way that this fierce Mauritanian should haue returned to himselfe so quickly which was in so short time, and with so great anger, that the smoake which came from his mouth, seemed like a myst about his helme, so that almost it could not be seene. Then this furious diuell set spurres to his horse, & blaspheming against his Gods, hauing his mortall sword very fast in his hande, he ranne towards his enimie, who without any feare of his fury, went forth to re-

men be borne of you: if you doe well consider thereof, for the verie same occasion you shoulde abate your greate pride and pranking iestures, for that we doe plainely see and perfectly know, that from and out of an vnprofitable & pricking stalke doth spring and grow a faire and pleasant rose. Also from that venimous Basilisk, doe they not take a stone of an innumerable value: and this beleeue of a certeintie, that the cruellest men doth all procæde from you: Oh wretches, when you see your opportunitie, what is the knight that cannc make resistaunce, but is straight ouercome by you so vile and base creatures, here I doe sweare to you by all the Gods, that I do not honour you, neyther wil I reuerence you, although that Mahomet doe commaund me, for that I haue him in estimation as vile and base and of no value, and for the great hatred which I doe beare vnto you, if I did thinke that my heart should be subiect vnto you, I woulde pull it out of my bodie with great cruelitie, to punish my selfe and it for committing so great follishnesse. The sighs of this Moze were so great & terrible, that all the woodes and mountaines did sound thereof. O thou outragious and hardie Pagan, how strong and stout doest thou shew thy selfe, thou shalt quickly know and haue thy payment for these thy reuiling wordes, in subiecting thy selfe vnto them, that nowe thou doest publish for false. O Ladyes and Damsells aske reuengement of so cruell an enimie, that with so many reasons doth reuile you all to naught. So with these lamentations the which I haue tolde you the Pagan passed awaie the night till the morning, that Apollo began with his glistering beames to couer all the earth, the which being seene by the Pagan, with a trise he arose vp, and toke his horse for to prosecute his iourney begun, and lifting vp his eyes towardes the heauens, he did discouer hanging vpon a high and mightie pine apple tree which was nigh him the armour of Bramarant, which was put there for a remembraunce, as hath bene tolde you in the first part of this historie. The armour had all lost their coulour, yet for all that, it did shewe the great value of them, and looking about, he sawe the Epitaph which the two brethren had made there. And vn-

vnderſtanding the reaſon thereof, it gaue him a farther deſire to take them downe, without reſpecting the harme that might thereof proceed, not making anie reckoning of ỹ words that were there manifeſted. And for that he might the better bring to paſſe his pretence, he vnarmed himſelfe, and climbed vpon the tree, and toke them from the place where they wer and brought them downe, and when he was below, and ſaw the armour to be ſo good, he armed himſelfe with them, and when he lacked no more to put on but his healme, he hearde ỹ voyce of a knight which ſayd: Be not ſo hardie thou knight as to vndoo this Tropheo, erected by the Greeke Princes, and take well to thy ſelfe for thou ſhalt die for the ſame. The Moore at the noiſe which he made, caſt his head on the one ſide and ſawe that he that ſpake thoſe words was a well ſet and armed knight, but for all this he did not let to make an ende of arming himſelfe, and without ſetting his foote into the ſtirrop he leapt into the ſaddle, and ſetteling himſelfe therein hee went towards the demaunder with his ſword in his hande. You ſhall vnderſtand, that he which did threaten him was the Tartarian Zoylo, who if you do remẽber departed in great haſt from the amorous Tigliafa, and vnawares entered into this wilderneſſe, and by reaſon of his wearineſſe in making ſo great haſt in his trauaile, it cauſed him to be verie drie, and hauing great deſire to drinke, he croſſed hãre and ther in the forreſt, at laſt there appeared before him a verie anncient old man, who had his beard and haire all white with age, who did ſuccour him with water, and gaue him a great cup full, & with the great thirſt that Zoylo had he dranke well thereof, till ſuch time as he felt himſelfe ſatisfied, and returned the cup againe vnto him, and when he thought to haue giuen thanks for his curteſie ſhewed, he was vaniſhed cleane out of his ſight, ſo that he ſawe him no more. For you ſhall vnderſtand that it was ỹ wiſe Lirgandeo, which brought ỹ cup ful of water from ỹ fountain of Merlin, who vnderſtanding by his inchantments ỹ thirſt Zoilo had, brought him of ỹ water, for to mitigate his drineſſe, increaſing in him a new deſire to the loue of Tigliafa. He had ſcant made an ende of drinking

when

men be borne of you: if you doe well consider thereof, for the verie same occasion you shoulde abate your greate pride and pranking iestures, for that we doe plainely see and perfectly know, that from and out of an vnprofitable & pricking stalke doth spring and growe a faire and pleasant rose. Also from that venimous Basilisk, doe they not take a stone of an innumerable value: and this beleeue of a certeintie, that the cruellest men doth all procæde from you: Oh wretches, when you see your opportunitie, what is the knight that canne make resistaunce, but is straight ouercome by you so vile and base creatures, heere I doe sweare to you by all the Gods, that I do not honour you, neyther wil I reuerence you, although that Mahomet doe commaund me, for that I haue him in estimation as vile and base and of no value, and for the great hatred which I doe beare vnto you, if I did thinke that my heart should be subiect vnto you, I woulde pull it out of my bodie with great cruelties, to punish my selfe and it for committing so great follishnesse. The sighs of this Moore were so great & terrible, that all the woodes and mountaines did sound thereof. O thou outragious and hardie Pagan, how strong and stout doest thou shew thy selfe, thou shalt quickly know and haue thy payment for these thy reuiling wordes, in subiecting thy selfe vnto them, that nowe thou doest publish for false. O Ladyes and Damsells aske reuengement of so cruell an enimie, that with so many reasons doth reuile you all to naught. So with these lamentations the which I haue tolde you the Pagan passed awaie the night till the morning, that Apollo began with his glistering beames to couer all the earth, the which beeing seene by the Pagan, with a trise he arose vp, and toke his horse for to prosecute his iourney begun, and lifting vp his eyes towardes the heauens, he did discouer hanging vpon a high and mightie pine apple tree which was nigh him the armour of Bramarant, which was put there for a remembraunce, as hath bene tolde you in the first part of this historie. The armour had all lost their coulour, yet for all that, it did shewe the great value of them, and looking about, he sawe the Epitaph which the two brethren had made there. And vn-

vnderſtanding the reaſon thereof, it gaue him a farther deſire to take them downe, without reſpecting the harme that might thereof proceed, not making anie reckoning of ỹ words that were there manifeſted. And for that he might the better bring to paſſe his pretence, he vnarmed himſelfe, and climbed vpon the tree, and toke them from the place where they wer and brought them downe, and when he was below, and ſaw the armour to be ſo good, he armed himſelfe with them, and when he lacked no more to put on but his healme, he hearde ỹ voyce of a knight which ſayd: Be not ſo hardie thou knight as to vndo this Tropheo, erected by the Greeke Princes, and loke well to thy ſelfe for thou ſhalt die for the ſame. The More at the noiſe which he made, caſt his head on the one ſide and ſawe that he that ſpake thoſe words was a well ſet and armed knight, but for all this he did not let to make an ende of arming himſelfe, and without ſetting his foote into the ſtirrop he leapt into the ſaddle, and ſetteling himſelfe therein hee went towards the demaunder with his ſword in his hande. You ſhall vnderſtand, that he which did threaten him was the Tartarian Zoylo, who if you do remẽber departed in great haſt from the amorous Tigliafa, and vnawares entered into this wilderneſſe, and by reaſon of his wearineſſe in making ſo great haſt in his trauaile, it cauſed him to be verie drie, and hauing great deſire to drinke, he croſſed hãre and ther in the forreſt, at laſt there appeared before him a verie anncient old man, who had his beard and haire all white with age, who did ſuccour him with water, and gaue him a great cup full, ỹ with the great thirſt that Zoylo had he dranke well thereof, till ſuch time as he felt himſelfe ſatiſfied, and returned the cup againe vnto him, and when he thought to haue giuen thanks for his curteſie ſhewed, he was vaniſhed cleane out of his ſight, ſo that he ſawe him no more. For you ſhall vnderſtand that it was ỹ wiſe Lirgandeo, which brought ỹ cup ful of water from ỹ fountain of Merlin, who vnderſtanding by his inchantments ỹ thirſt Zoilo had, brought him of ỹ water, for to mitigate his drineſſe, increaſing in him a new deſire to the loue of Tigliafa. He had ſcant made an ende of drinking

when

hauing anie power to make resistaunce against so terrible a Knowe: she did shew verie plainely and clearely what she felt in her, and giuing a great sigh which proceeded from ỹ bottome of her heart, she sayd: Alasse for me, O fortune, canne this be true, that that which I receiued for glorie, is conuerted into a troublesome paine. So she sayd no more, for that she was disturbed by a great noise which a damsell made, by reason of two men, who when they sawe ỹ Rosicleer & Don Eleno were occupied in talking with the quœne, they went running to put themselues into the barke of the Prince, and procured to put it from ỹ shoare, thinking to saue their liues in rowing awaie with the Barke. And when Rosicleer sawe them, not hauing anie time to put on his helme, he carried it in his hand, and leapt out of the waggen, as light as a Hart amongest the cragged mountaines, and in a trice hee was with them, yet the strength of those two men was not sufficient to launch the barke from the shoare, the which Rosicleer had forgotten, and for couetousnesse that he would not lose his horse, he went to disturbe them, and leapt into the Barke: he was no sooner within it, when that with his accustomed swiftnesse the barke began to moue it selfe from the shoare, the which when these two men sawe, they woulde haue leapt into the water, but Rosicleer caught fast holde of the one, and staide him, but the other he could not, for that it was so quickly done. Whereas we will leaue them for to tell you of his cousin, who when he sawe that the Barke so sodeinely did departe awaie, I cannot heere declare the great heauinesse and sorow that he receiued, because he could not delight himselfe in his good companie. The like sorowe made the Quœne (although she did procure to hide her desire) yet her sorow was great, and because Don Eleno was the first that did begin the battaile for to set them at libertie, they did honour and worshippe him as a diuine thing. And heerewith they determined to returne vnto the Citie, whereas I will leaue them with the successe of the quœnes imprisonment, and the occasion thereof, for that hereafter I will declare it, being now constrained to tell you of the worthye

deedes

deedes of the Mauritanian.

How when the valiant Mauritanian had slaine the Tartarian Zoylo, he put on the armour of Bramarant, for that he would not be knowen, and of all that happened therein. Chap. 6.

YOU doe well remember when that the furious young man Brusaldoro fled away from the battaile, not for anie feare that he had, but for anger to finde himselfe in place whereas he could get but little honour, like a whirle winde he crossed ouer all those plaines, & put himselfe into the thickest of the forrest, trauailing in vaine his faultlesse horse, and neuer rested till he came vnto the mightie great riuer the which before he had passed, & there he alighted off from his horse, and for to refresh himselfe he pulled off his healme, and toke water with his handes and washed his face, and dronke thereof, refreshing himselfe, and as he found himselfe all alone, there came vnto him manye thoughts, amongst all he was greatly grieued at the remembraunce of that which had past, and the more, for that a woman was the cause of all that harme, and with great anger giuing terrible sighs, he began to curse, not alone the houre of his birth, but also the quæne of Tinacria, accounting women to be all the occasion therof: lykewise he considered the great trauaile and sorrow that most knights doe passe for their respects. At that time Phœbus began to withdrawe himselfe into his accustomed lodging, and hiding himselfe in the occidentall partes, and therewith drewe on the darke and tenebrous night, which was the occasion that his paine did the more increase, and caused him to saie: Oh cruell and vile women, the causers and authors of all euill, what doo you see in your selues, that you doe make so much thereof, I see that you are good for no other thing, but to cause murthers and great treasons. It is possible that you doe esteeme so of your selues, and the occasion of your high lookes is, for that wee

men

worthy Lord and cousin, if the deuice of your shielde, and the great strength of your person do not deceiue me, you are Rosicleer sonne vnto the Emperour Trebatio, my good vncle. The Greeke was very attentiue vnto the wordes that Eleno spake, and when he sawe his face discouered and his his helme off, it seemed vnto him, that he saw the proportion of his owne naturall face, as though he were loking of him selfe in a glasse, and he receiued great contentment at ỹ sight of him, although he did very much meruaile to see him in that place, and therewith he pulled off his healme, and discouered that seuere and faire face, with great delight vnto all them that did beholde him, and it was the more to be reioyced at, for that they were the one so like the other (that except it were for the little bearde that Rosicleer had) not without great difficultie they could know, which was the one, and which was the other. The two Knights could not perseuer in their communication, for that they were disturbed by the lamentable noyse of those Ladies which were prisoners, for that some of them had their hands bound, & some both hands and feete, and they cryed out for succour and helpe to those Knights, and for that they did see them to prolong the time, they made ỹ more haste in crying for their libertie, at whose pitifull cryes they were constrained to goe vnto them, & to cut asunder the cords wherwith they wer bound. The great ioye which they receiued when they sawe themselues at libertie, I do refer it vnto the iudgement and consideration of them, which haue bene themselues in captiuitie, & afterward obtained like libertie. The Ladye which had the two children in her lap, seeing hir selfe at libertie, with the great ioy thereof, she chaunged a newe coulour, so that the bloud that entred into her face, caused her to appeare to be very faire, & with a seuere Maiestie, she did surrender vnto them greate thanks, for the goodnes, which by them they had recouered. This faire Lady did not let in the meane time whilest they were talking to behold the countenance of the two knights and in her owne imagination did consider, that she saw the naturall proportion and gesture of him, whom she carryed

pictu

pictured in her heart: and suspecting what it should be, shée gaue very attentiue eare vnto the wordes which Rosicleer vttered, remaining with as great delight of his curtesie and discretion, as when she was wholly yélded vnto the loue of his father: and for that in the ende of all their talke Rosicleer did demaund of her who she was, she could not in any wise do other then tell them, and with great curtesie she aunswered and said. Worthy knightes, in whom the Gods hath made so great equalitie and likenesse, you shall vnderstand, that I am Quæne and Lady of this Iland called Tinacria, who without all good fortune was mocked by ỹ false Emperour of Grecia. Rosicleer, when he heard his father so euill spoken off, could not take it in good part, yet remẽbring himself that it was a woman, and that she spake it with anger, he therefore accordingly did frame himselfe to answere her, and sayd. High and mightie Lady, ther is no reason that I do aunswere you vnto those wordes, which your troubled heart hath pronounced against him, that I am sure, and do right well know, in your seruice would lose his lyfe, & not he alone, but also all his sonnes and subiects, for the greate good wil ỹ to you we haue, as it doth appeare in this ayde & succour which now we haue made. And if you do well consider (high and mightie Lady) the great seruice which the noble Knight of the Sunne, and sonne vnto the Emperour my father, being accompanied with the Prince Don Eleno our Cousin, who is héere now present before thée. If as I saye, it were well considered, the seruice which they haue done vnto you, it wer great reason and with desart, that the error of the father should be forgiuen, if ye haue committed any. And if these be not sufficient to make satisfaction, take in company with ỹ rest, ỹ which now at this present, was shewed vnto thé, whereof part of it was done likewise by his sonne Rosicleer. And if it be so, that still your hart be hardened with the desire to take reuengement. Behold hœre Lady my head ỹ which I do yæld into thy power, that thou maist therewith set the father at libertie, from thy fury.

The Quæne had her eyes fixed on ỹ Prince, & without

any

But at this inſtant came vnto his minde his beloued Lidia, and he ſayd with a déepe and profound ſigh. Ah my Lidia, what great delight doo I feele in my ſelfe, héere to make my ende, and to ſet me at libertie of ſo great ſorrow and care, which I doo ſuffer in not ſéeing thée: but therewith remembring himſelfe, he ſayd. O Lord what is this, what haue I ſayd? I doo finde my ſelfe at the poynt to be ſlaine, and doo I now call to remembrance her, that I know is in the depth of the earth. Am not I a Chriſtian? It is better for me to returne vnto thée my God, vnto whom I doo commit my ſoule: and Lord, for thy mercies ſake, doo not looke vpon this my weakneſſe, but according vnto thy great mercie take pitie vpon me. And although he was weary, yet was not his valiant armes at this time vnoccupied, but rather with a more ſtrength he did procure to defende himſelfe, working ſuch wondrous feates, that ſéemed euen impoſſible, but vnto them that ſawe it. And he recouered vnto himſelfe a newe courage and force, in ſuch ſort, that the water of the Sea did giue teſtimoniall of his great proweſſe, for that vnto more then ten of them which did purſue him, hée gaue the ſea for their ſepulchar: and if it had not bene for the Gyaunt that did trouble him very much, he would before he hadde bene ſlaine, made that very few of the reſt ſhould haue remained, for to brag themſelues of their victory. But I promiſe you, he was in ſuch plight, that of very féebleneſſe he was forced to make his ſtrength. This wearied Eleno was in this ſorte as you haue heard in great weakneſſe, and voyde of all humane ſtrength, although he lacked no courage in his heart. At which time there arriued in great haſt a barke at ẏ ſhore ſide, in the which came one alone Knight, armed with very rich armor, who (if you doo remember) was the valiant Roſicleer, that after he had made an ende of that perillous battaile at Lira, in the which he loſt the company of that good Knight Brandimardo, he full of ſorrow and griefe, retourned vnto the ſea, whereas by fortune he found his light and inchaunted barke, which with her accuſtomed ſwiftnes did carry him, whereas he ſaw was made a fearefull battaile, the

which

which was this that heere before I haue tolde you that the afflicted Prince did make. So that when Rosileer sawe that one alone Knight with so great courage did make resistance against so many, who did molest him without all pitie, it moued in him a desire to helpe him, which straight way he put in vre, and leping a shore with his accustomed courage, he went towards the place whereas they were in battaile, and hauing his sword fast in both his hands, he pressed in amongst those vile people, and when he saw that he which did most trouble the Knight, was that furious and diuelish Giant, he stroke him such a blow vpon his left shoulder ý harnesse and body altogether he cut downe to the wast, ꝛ made him fall dead into the water where he was. Yet his fury rested not with this, but striking about him, at foure blowes he brought foure Knights to their end. And as the watered bearbes or flowers doth recreate themselues when they are couered with the beames of the sonne of Tona, in such sort did the Prince Don Eleno reioyce at the comming of this new succour vnlooked for, and therewith recouering newe strength, with one leape he sprong out of the water, and put himselfe by the side of Rosicleer, and layd vpon his enimies, with great and mightie blowes. The worthy Rosicleer being moued with the great outrage that those vile people did, wrought such valiant wonders, that it was to be meruailed at, and vnhappy might he account himselfe, who chaunced to receiue a blow at his hande. They made so great hast in cutting, wounding and killing of those vile people, that leauing some dead, and other sore wounded, others running away to deliuer themselues from the furie of their vnmercifull blowes, these knights wer frę ꝛ at libertie of all their former perill. This valyant Eleno would haue gratified the Prince for his good succour and ayde, and went towards him for the same effect: and when he woulde haue spoken, he knewe that it was Rosicleer his Cousin, by the deuice that he had in his shielde which was Cupide painted in it, and therewith in greate hast hee pulled off his healme, and sayd.

were, for being come againe vnto himselfe, and saw ye great perill wherein he was brought, I cannot nor am not able to declare heere the great and vnmeasurable furie the which he had, and it did the more increase in him when he saw so many knights slaine and dead, onely by the power and strength of that one knight: his wrath was so greate, that he began to cry out against his Gods, and alighted from his beast, & toke his sword into his hand, and with a furious pace hee went towards whereas the Prince was, but when the valiant Eleno saw him, he could not but thinke that he shoulde passe great trouble with him, notwithstanding for that he saw no other thing but death amongest those barbarous and rude people, he did determine to sell his life verie deere, & had good regard vnto the blows which the Gyant shuld strike at him, and in the best wise he could he cleered himselfe from them. In this sort went this valiant knight maintaining his quarrell, & dammifieng his enimies when opportunitie did serue, and allwayes had a good hope to cleere himselfe of that battaile, although that there were come a land three and twenty other knights, against whom he made his defence at his pleasure, for that they feared his terrible blowes, and had hurt & wounded them in many parts, although the wounds wer not very great, for that he could neuer fasten on them one blow to his contentment. At this time there came another Gyant a shore out of the barke, which had remained in the ship, and with him came other twentie knights, and thirtie men with hatchets and other weapons, which made great hast to come a land. At such time as this warlyke Dacian was intangled & in battaile with the other, this gyant came before all ye rest and stroke this knight behinde him so terrible a blow that it made him to bow both his knees to the ground, but his mightie courage which in such like chaunces alwaies recouered strength with great hast & a valiaunt heart, he put himselfe a foote againe, and loking about him to see who it was that so tormented him, he saw that it was a mightie and terrible Gyaunt, who with a greate clubbe was readie to giue him the second blowe, the Prince with good aduisement did put him-

himselfe a part from the force thereof, and made him to spend his blowe in vaine, and toke his sworde in his handes, and pressed vnto the Gyant before he could defend himselfe, and stroke him such a terryble blowe vpon the right knee, that he cut it a sunder in the middest, and the heanie and fierce Gyant fell dead to the ground. At this time all those that came out of the ship pressed on him for to kill him, that by reason of their thicke and mightie blowes, so many together, he was constrained to fall downe to the earth, but when he saw himselfe in this great perill, he did procure to kill all that euer he could of them that put themselues before him, which was the occasion that he had space to arise vp againe on foote, and seing himselfe in this great daunger, he began to call vpon Jesus Christ, committing vnto him his soule, and besought him that he would take mercie on it, and therwith he pressed vnto his enimies, and with double force he laide on them on euerie side, but all was in vaine for him to make resistance, for that the companie was so great that did compasse him about, striking at him as though they were desperate men, so that this good knight was constrained to retire vnto the sea side, and to put himselfe into the water vp to the wast, whereas he made his backe sure, that they could not come behind him, & there he made his defence somewhat with lesse trauaile against them that did procure to offend him. the Gyant which sawe so great a slaughter of men committed by one knight, with a furious voyce returned vnto the people, and reuiled them, calling them cowardes, and cursing himselfe for that hee woulde accompanie himselfe with so naughtie and vile a generation, and sayde vnto them: Enter into the water and followe him, for it is but [illegible] knight that is before you. And therewith he put himself into the water, then all the rest for verie shame were constrayned to doe the lyke. At this time this valiant knight sawe himselfe in the greatest daunger that euer before that time in all his life he had bene in, and made not anie reckoning to liue longer, yet neuertheless he thought to sell his lyfe verie deare, with the death of all such as hee might possiblie fasten one blowe vppon:

And when they ſaw and knew that it was the Knight that remained with the Giaunt, and ſeing him come in ſuch order, they were all meruailouſly aſtonied. The other Giaunt which was yet ſtill vpon his beaſt, and was not alighted, returned againſt him, more furious than a Tiger, and vttering a thouſand varieties, he aſked where he remained that made battaile with him. Don Eleno ſayd: Put at libertye theſe Ladyes which thou doſt carry away by force, and aſke not for him: for he wanting life, hath finiſhed all his euill dædes and workes, and without tarrying for an aunſwere, he lifte vp his ſword, all to be bathed with the bloud of the dead Gyant, and ſtroke at him ſo terrible a blowe, that he gaue him to vnderſtand very well, the ſtrength of his mightie arme. The Giant who felt the blowe to be very ſtrong drew out from his ſide, a broad and heauie ſword, and ſtroke at him ſuch a blow, that almoſt it brought him to ẏ ground, if it had not bene for the great force, which he put in firming himſelfe in his ſtiroppes, which was the occaſion that in a trice he ſetled himſelfe againe in the ſaddle, & ſeing himſelfe ſo euill intreated he preſſed towards him, and began to laye on him ſo ſharpe and ſtrong blowes, that he made the ſparks of fire flie out of his armour, and although he was meruailouſly occupied in ſtriking of the Gyant, yet did he not forget to haue alwayes an eie vnto Chariot wheras the captiue Ladies were, to ſee if they did procure by anie meanes to do them harme or damage, and he ſawe that they went about to take them out of the waggen, and to put them a land, for to imbarke them, which made him to make more haſt in his battaile, and knowing the ſtrong enimie, that he had before him, and inraged with that ſodaine ſight, to ſee them imbarking, and that if they ſhould carry them to ſea, then by no meanes he could neither fauour nor ſuccour them, he receiued ſo great wrath, that he threw his ſhield at his backe and toke his cutting ſword in both his hands, and went vnto the Giant on his left ſide, and firming himſelfe in his ſtirrops, he ſtroke him ſo terrible a blow, that he made him to fall vppon his beaſtes necke, without anye remembraunce,

and

and to void at his mouth and nose great abundance of blood, and without anie tarrying he spurred his horse and in great hast he went towards those knights that had those Ladies in kéeping, & began to sturre himselfe amongst thē, in such sort, that when they remembred themselues to make resistance, there was three of them slaine, then all the rest ioyned themselues together, & put backe to backe, & made a round circle, with their swords in their hands to make their defence. At this time the prince Eleno had forgot the great vertue which his horse had, but because he wold not ý they shuld kill him, he alighted from him, the which was the occasion that he put himselfe in great trauaile and perill, notwithstanding with the great anger which he had, he presséd in amongst them, & stroke & wounded them on euery side, without taking anie rest, ý it was a wonder to sée, and he so besturred & tossed his cutting sword vpon them that made resistaunce, ý he made them to know and séele his great strength, although that they were chosen & valiant knights, & they did not let to intreate him very euill, in such sort, that many times they made him to stoope & séele the griefe of their blowes: notwithstanding the courage & strength of Eleno was such, ý in a very short time he brought twelue of them to the ground before him. The marriners which sawe the great furie that was in that one knight, in great hast put of their barke from the waters side, and with the feare which they had likewise to be there slaine, returned vnto their shippe, forcing their barke with the great strength of their armes, striking in the water with their oares, and when they came to the ship they called aloud giuing & making a great noise vnto the rest of the knightes that were in the ship, which was to the number of twentie, that they shoulde come and giue aide and succour to those which were a land, for that some of them were slaine, & some verie sore hurt, and other some standing stil in their defence. In the meane time this furious Dacian did so behaue himselfe amongst them, & in such sort, that quickly he had clered himselfe of all those, if at ý present time ý Gyant which was before astonied & beside himselfe, had not come wheras they

AT ſuch time as the cléere Apollo had paſſed one part of his iourney, ỳ Dacian prince iſſued out of the foreſt, to ſée what it ſhuld be, that made all that noyſe vnder the foreſt ſide. And there he diſcouered thirtie Knights, which rode before a chariot, that was drawen with foure horſes, and therein a companye of Ladies and damſels, apparailed with meruailous rich robes, making great lamentation and ſorrowe: and in the midſt amongſt them, ther was a very faire Lady, who had before her two children: and before the Chariot rode a Giant of a fierce and furious countenaunce mounted on a wonderful beaſt, and after the ſame went another giant, not altogether ſo furious as the firſt, that was mounted on a mightie horſe: theſe made great haſt to trauaile forwards. When this valiant Dacian ſaw this aduenture, he was in a great confuſion, for that he found himſelfe ſo leare and weake, yet for all that, the great valour of his perſon, and courage of his hart, would not ſuffer anye ſluggiſhneſſe, but determined to ſet them at libertie, and to puniſh ſo great outrage, or els to die in the demaunde. And with this determination he ſaid. Let life ſuffer the paine, and let not the honour be blotted with cowardneſſe, and peruſing well his armour, he committed himſelfe vnto God, and iſſued out of the forreſt with a ſwift pace, at ſuch time as the Chariot with the great haſt that it made, had paſſed by a good ſpace, and ſetting ſpurres, vnto his horſe, he made him to flye lyke the winde, and with a high voyce he bad them tarrie. At which calling, the Giant that was hindermoſt looked backe, and when he ſawe that it was a Knight that called him, and that he came running towards him with great ſwiftneſſe, he ſaid vnto thoſe that gouerned the Chariot, Goe and kéepe on your waye, and let me alone to ſée what that vnhappie creature would haue: and he turned about his horſe, at ſuch time as that warlike Dacian, was come nigh vnto him, the Gyant ſayd vnto him: Knight what haſt is this that thou makeſt. The Dacian anſwered: It is to amend if I maye this outrage which I

ſuppoſe thou doſt vnto thoſe Ladyes, which thou doſt carrie away with thée in the waggon. The Giant ſmiling, and as it wer, ſæming to haue him in deriſion, diſdainfully ſayd. I dow tell thée of a truth knight, that if I did not beléeue, that folly doth make thée to ſpeake that which thou haſt vttered, thou mighteſt well take me to be the vileſt perſon in the worlde, to haue ſo ſmall courage, to put my ſelfe before one alone knight in this demand. The Dacian did well perceiue that theſe words proceeded of great pride & preſumption, and without giuing him any aunſwere, he drew out his ſharpe ſworde, and then without anye more tarrying, he ſtroke him vpon his helme ſo great a blowe, that it ſounded like a bell, and made him to decline his head downe to his breaſt. But ſtraight way he had his payment for the ſame, for that the Gyant layd hold on his great and cutting ſworde, & with ſtraunge ſwiftneſſe, he ſtroke him vppon the fine and harde helme, that he almoſt made him to loſe his ſæling. By which blow, this couragious Eleno perceiued, that it ſtode him in hand, not to be idle, and hauing great feare, that in ỹ meane time while they made their battaile, the reſt would go away with their praye, and then all his labour and trauayle ſhould be in vaine, he let his ſhield hang at his backe, and claſped his ſworde faſt with both his hands, & ſtroke him ſo furious a blow vpon his helme, that the ſtrength therof did litle profit him, for that it was not able to make any defence, but it was cut in peces with the head, and the Giant fell dead to the ground, & without any more tarying, he followed after the waggon, and did procure to diſturbe them, that they ſhould not goe forwards on their way. So all thoſe ỹ went with the waggon, were alighted from their horſes, ready to imbarke themſelues into a ſmall barke which they tarried for, to carry them vnto a great and faire ſhippe, which was there, a litle farther from the ſhore. This Dacian called with a loud voice, & ſaid. Tarrie, tarrie, & do not thinke, ſo much at your eaſe to carry away your praye, for that I hope firſt to take away your liues, or els to be ſlaine in their defence.

but with an inward lamentatiõ, which did torment his hart, he called continually vpon Lidia, and with that dinelliſh fury wherin he was, he drew out his dagger, and lifting vp the ſkirte of his ſhirt of mayle, he thruſt it into his body, and giuing himſelf this vnhappy death, with calling vpon Lidia, he finiſhed his life. The Dacian knight remained in a great confuſion to ſee this ſodayne chaunce, and that in ſuch ſort, that he could put no remedy therein, but with the great heauines and ſorrow, that he receiued, he fell downe in a ſounde, without any remembraunce of himſelfe. The Page which Eleno brought with him, did then procure all remedies that were poſſible for to bring him againe vnto his remembrance, and laboured to doe it with great loue, but yet for all ỹ he could do or procure, ther was no poſſibilitie of his recouery, til ſuch time as Phœbus had made an end of his iourney, & that Diana had begun hir gouernment, thẽ he began to come a litle to himſelfe, & looking on the one ſide, and ſawe that Brenio lay dead by his ſide, with a dolorous voice he ſaid vnto his page. Ah Fabio, wherefore haſt thou procured to put remedy vnto my bodye, and conſented that it ſhoulde indure ſo terrible paine and euill, thou ſhouldeſt haue ſuffered me to haue dyed, and not to haue ben the occaſion that now I liue dying, and hauing no more power to ſpeake, he held his peace. At this time he had great nede of the force and ſtrength of his chriſtian courage, for to aſſiſt him that he did not that, which ſhould cauſe him to beare company with this dead Brenio. His Page Fabio did very much comfort him, and did procure by all meanes to giue him eaſe: but all that euer he could do did profit very little, or giue any contentment vnto his paine, till ſuch time as he hearde a greate noyſe of armed knights, which was the occaſion that he came vnto himſelfe, and for that he would not be diſcouered, he put himſelfe into the thickeſt of the buſhes, & with the helpe of Fabio, he carryed Brenio, drawing him from the place wher he was, and couered him with boughes and leaues, till ſuch time as they might haue opportunitie to burie him, as hereafter you ſhall vnderſtand. So there he continued all that night till the

morning, with great sorrow and paine, lamenting much his vnhappy lot, in a place whereas he could not be discouerd or heard, not for any feare that was in him, but onely to haue time to lament, weepe & bewaile his vnhappy fortune. Then at such time as the bright Apollo, did spred abroade his golden beames, ouer all the fields and cragged mountaines, he did perceiue that those which did lodge themselues nigh vnto the place wheras he was, did procure to depart, he let them goe, without any desire to know who they were, but rather being still, did let them passe forwards on their way, procuring to put in execution his former intent. But first of all he caused to vnarme Brenio of his armour, the which was according vnto his passion, in colour and all things, and as strong as a Diamond, & made by Arte Magicke, with great lamentation he armed himselfe with them, and toke also his shield, which was all of a russet field, and in the midst therof was put Cupide with two faces, the one was very faire and bound with a cloath about his eyes, and the other was made meruailous fierce and furious. He continued and was so long in arming himselfe, that he heard a great number of Knights, which passed along by the sides of the forrest, and amongst them there was a dolorous lamentation, which seemed to be of Ladyes and Damsels, and it seemed that they were forced and constrained against their wills, which moued the courage of this Dacian, to desire to know what it was. And leaping vpon his horse, his Page toke the horse of Brenio, which was very good, & with as little noyse as was possible, they went out of the forrest into the high waye, whereas they might see all that which in the chapter following shall be told you.

¶How that Eleno went out of the forrest to see the aduenture of those Knightes which passed by the forrest, and how he incountered with them, and of the battaile, that happened therevppon. Cap. 5.

" true loue which I bare to thée shuld bée accounted vaine, and
" wouldest not perfoꝛme the faith which without asking in
" a verie shoꝛt time thou diddest grant vnto me, oh cruell Bre-
" nio, oh hard heart, is this the firme loue that so fainedly thou
" diddest pꝛofesse to me, what is he that hath ben moꝛe vnmer-
" cifull then thou hast bene. There is no furious beast, Tiger,
" noꝛ Lyon, vnto whom at theyꝛ will thou diddest deliuer me,
" that with theyꝛ vnmercifull nailes they might cruellye in-
" treat my flesh, but would haue accompanied me with moꝛe
" pittie, and haue holpen me to lament my cruell destinie. Ah
" Brenio, the great paine which I suffer will not consent to de-
" clare the vnreasonable toꝛments, troubles, and soꝛrowes the
" which foꝛ thée I haue passed, so that I nède not to referre it
" vnto them who doth know it very well: but of one thing a-
" lone I will giue thée to vnderstand, that in the ende when
" thou diddest leaue all alone, and at my waking I could not
" finde thée, my dolоꝛous paine was so great, ꝑ I did not think
" to escape with my life. But my mishap, (which hath bene al-
" waies vnto me contrarie, and the moꝛe to increase my paine)
" was such, that my lamentation was heard by a knight, who
" bёing moued with compassion, did aske of me the occasion
" of all this my harme and griefe, and when ꝑ I had told him
" (whether it was by motion of loue, the which I had wholy
" giuen vnto thée, oꝛ by the ouermuch compassion which he had
" of my paine) he bꝛought me out of that solitarie place wher-
" as thou diddest leaue me, and carried me wheras I made an
" end of all my great paines and passions. Ah Brenio when I
" wꝛote these fewe lines, my body was almost colde and with-
" out all strength, redie to yéeld vp my soule, which is (I know)
" to thée great contentment, and foꝛ that thou thouldest bée sa-
" tisfied of thy desire, I did determine to aduertise thée, in gi-
" uing thée to vnderstand of my desired death, thou bёing the
" onely occasion thereof: Oh Brenio, now are the Fates cut-
" ting of the thꝛid of my life asunder, & I can giue thée know-
" ledge of no moꝛe. But yet I doo desire thée by the true loue
" which I bare thée, ꝑ thou wilt read these fewe lines wꝫ some
" soꝛow: & bёre of ꝑ Gods I do desire, ꝑ they do make thée to

passe the same euill which thou hast ben the occasion of vnto me, till such time as it bringeth thée to die the like death that for thée I now die. And if thou doest desire to know any farther of this matter, he which bringeth thée this can informe thée of the whole state thereof, for that now I haue no more time, neither my strength will consent vnto it.

The teares were in so great abundance which this sad & heauy knight did shed in the time that he was a reading this dolorous letter, that he all to wet the same, ỹ messenger likewise did not let to beare him companie, and to solempne his heauinesse with so many more teares distilling frõ his eyes. The great sorrow & lamentation was such & so much, that in a great space the one could not speake vnto the other, but afterward their paine being somewhat appeased, Brenio began to speake & say. Oh messenger from her, with the remẽbrance of whose wrong my soule is wounded, being vndeseruedly, of me euill rewarded. Tell me for Gods loue if thou doest know where she is, shew vnto me her abiding place, that I may go thether, & giue a discharge of this my great fault, in yelding my selfe to death: Oh cruell & without all loue, answered Don Eleno, what discharge canst thou giue vnto her ỹ already through thy crueltie is dead & buried: thou shalt do much better to arise & take vnto thée thy armor, & defend thy selfe from him that will procure thy death, to make satisfaction of the debt, ỹ she without anie dutie did pay. Is it possible answered Brenio, that Lidia is dead: it is possible answered Eleno, and she is dead, by the occasion of such a forsworne knight as thou art. This penitent & pained knight when he vnderstood the certaintie of all this euill, with a sodaine and hastie furie stroke himselfe on the breast a great stroke with his fist, and lifting his eyes vnto the heauens in manner of exclamation against his Gods, giuing dèepe and sorrowfull sighes, he threw himselfe to the ground, and tumbled & wallowed from the one part vnto the other, without taking anie ease, or hauing anie power or strength to declare his inwarde paine and griefe the which at that time he felte,

but

" true loue which I bare to thée shuld bée accounted vaine, and
" wouldest not perfoꝛme the faith which without asking in
" a verie shoꝛt time thou diddest grant vnto me, oh cruell Bre-
" nio, oh hard heart, is this the firme loue that so fainedly thou
" diddest pꝛofesse to me, what is he that hath ben moꝛe vnmer-
" cifull then thou hast bene. There is no furious beast, Tiger,
" noꝛ Lyon, vnto whom at theyꝛ will thou diddest deliuer me,
" that with theyꝛ vnmercifull nailes they might cruellye in-
" treat my flesh, but would haue accompanied me with moꝛe
" pittie, and haue holpen me to lament my cruell destinie. Ah
" Brenio, the great paine which I suffer will not consent to de-
" clare the vnreasonable toꝛments, troubles, and soꝛrowes the
" which foꝛ thée I haue passed, so that I nède not to referre it
" vnto them who doth know it very well: but of one thing a-
" lone I will giue thée to vnderstand, that in the ende when
" thou diddest leaue all alone, and at my waking I could not
" finde thée, my doloꝛous paine was so great, ꝑ I did not think
" to escape with my life. But my mishap, (which hath bene al-
" waies vnto me contrarie, and the moꝛe to increase my paine)
" was such, that my lamentation was heard by a knight, who
" bæing moued with compassion, did aske of me the occasion
" of all this my harme and griefe, and when ꝑ I had told him
" (whether it was by motion of loue, the which I had wholy
" giuen vnto thée, oꝛ by the ouermuch compassion which he had
" of my paine) he bꝛought me out of that solitarie place wher-
" as thou diddest leaue me, and carried me wheras I made an
" end of all my great paines and passions. Ah Brenio when I
" wꝛote these fewe lines, my body was almost colde and with-
" out all strength, redie to yéld vp my soule, which is (I know)
" to thée great contentment, and foꝛ that thou shouldest bæ sa-
" tisfied of thy desire, I did determine to aduertise thée, in gi-
" uing thée to vnderstand of my desired death, thou bæing the
" onely occasion thereof: Oh Brenio, now are the Fates cut-
" ting of the thꝛid of my life asunder, & I can giue thée know-
" ledge of no moꝛe. But yet I doo desire thée by the true loue
" which I bare thée, ꝑ thou wilt read these fewe lines wꝭ some
" soꝛrowꝭ hære of ꝑ Gods I do desire, ꝑ they do make thée to

passe the same euill which thou hast ben the occasion of vnto me, till such time as it bringeth thée to die the like death that for thée I now die. And if thou doest desire to know any farther of this matter, he which bringeth thée this can informe thée of the whole state thereof, for that now I haue no more time, neither my strength will consent vnto it.

The teares were in so great abundance which this sad & heauy knight did shed in the time that he was a reading this dolorous letter, that he all to wet the same, ý messenger likewise did not let to beare him companie, and to solempne his heauinesse with so many more teares distilling frõ his eyes. The great sorrow & lamentation was such & so much, that in a great space the one could not speake vnto the other, but afterward their paine being somewhat appeased, Brenio began to speake & say. Oh messenger from her, with the remẽbrance of whose wrong my soule is wounded, being vndeseruedly, of me euill rewarded. Tell me for Gods loue if thou doest know where she is, shew vnto me her abiding place, that I may go thether, & giue a discharge of this my great fault, in yelding my selfe to death: Oh cruell & without all loue, answered Don Eleno, what discharge canst thou giue vnto her ý already through thy cruelty is dead & buried: thou shalt do much better to arise & take vnto thée thy armor, & defend thy selfe from him that will procure thy death, to make satisfaction of the debt, ý she without ante dutie did pay. Is it possible answered Brenio, that Lidia is dead: it is possible answered Eleno, and she is dead, by the occasion of such a forsworne knight as thou art. This penitent & pained knight when he vnderstood the certainty of all this euill, with a sodaine and hastie furie stroke himselfe on the breast a great stroke with his fist, and lifting his eyes vnto the heauens in manner of exclamation against his Gods, giuing dèepe and sorrowfull sighes, he threw himselfe to the ground, and tumbled & wallowed from the one part vnto the other, without taking anie ease, or hauing ante power or strength to declare his inwarde paine and griefe the which at that time he felte,

but

"thee to commyt so great euill, in leauing all alone and with-
"out comfort, the thing, of whome thou wert most beloued in
"the world, giuing and leauing her, vnto the will of the wilde
"and furious beasts. It is possible indeede that they will haue
"more compassion on thee my Lidia, then he who had more
"reason to comfort and loue thee. Oh cruell, and without all
"faith, thou wert born into this world, for thy own torment,
"when with thy selfe thou didst consent to commit so greate
"treason. Where was thy vnderstanding that thou couldest
"not remember thy selfe, & take pitie on her, that did forsake
"her affinitie and Countrey, for thee and thy loue. O Lidia,
"who made me to forget all the great paines and trauaile
"which thou tookest, in wandring by lande alone lamenting,
"and sometimes by sea sorrowing, and all for to set at liber-
"tie him, who lefte thee prisoner amongst the wilde beastes.
"Oh happy beast is he, that chaunceth to bury thee in his bel-
"ly: and woe be vnto me traitor, without any knowledge of
"vertue or pittie. What doth it now profite me to fill ỹ aire
"with my lamentations, seeing that the harme and euill is
"alreadie past, and without all remedy or hope of comfort: &
hereuith he gaue a terrible and grieuous sigh, & so held his
peace. Don Eleno by those beaute and sorrowfull wepings
together with his reasons which he heard, knewe him to bee
that Brenio, whom so long time he had laboured to seeke and
find out with so great trauaile, and knew him to be the cau-
ser of the death of his Lady and Mistresse, the paine and so-
rowe was so extreame the which he felt, that he was con-
strained without anie feeling to fall down to the ground, but
yet the furie of his couragious heart woulde not giue place
that he shoulde so remaine long, but straight wayes with the
great anguish that he had, he arose vp againe on foote, with
great desire to fight with Brenio, but calling to remẽbrance
all that which was commanded him, he would first perfourme
the same, in giuing him the letter, and then when hee hadde
made an ende of reading the same, to demaunde of him bat-
taile. So with this thought and determination, he went vn-
to the place whereas Brenio was, who, when he heard the
noyse,

noyſe, ſtraight wayes on his feete: then Eleno did ſalute him with a voyce ſomewhat heauie. And Brenio did return vnto him his ſalutation, with no leſſe ſhowe of griefe. When this amorous Eleno, toke forth the letter out of the place, whereas ſo long time he had kept it, and taking it into his hand he ſayd. Is it poſſible that thou art ỳ forgetful and diſ- „
loyall Brenio, the which left Lidia, with ſo great paine and „
ſorrow, all alone in the power, of the wilde beaſts. Brenio „
when he heard him to ſaye theſe words, he began to behold him, although his eyes were all to be blabbered and wearie with weepings, he aunſwered him and ſayd. I will not de- „
ny thee gentle Knight, that which the high heauens doth cõ- „
plaine of. Thou ſhalt vnderſtand that I am the ſame Bre- „
nio, whom thou haſt demaunded for. Tell me what is your „
will, and what it is that you would haue. Eleno aunſwered „
him. Oh ingratefull Knight without all knowledge and vn- „
derſtanding, what diuel was that, which put in thy thought „
to commit ſo great villanie, take heere vnto thee, and reade „
this letter, the laſt worke of the faire and white hand of Li- „
dia. The prince was ſo troubled in his thought, and ſo much „
grieued, that it was almoſt the occaſion, to diſſolue the ſoule „
from his body. This penitent and ſorrowfull Luſitanian, „
put forth his hand somewhat trembling, in ſuch ſort, that „
beeing conſtrained, by force to take the letter, the ſame force
by weary meanes, did conſtraine him to ſit downe, on the
ground, without any farther power to the contrarie: & whẽ
he opened the letter, he knew it to be written by his Lidia:
who with great alteration of heart and minde, did read it,
the which was as hereafter followeth.

The Letter.

THe infortunate Lidia, and thy mortall enimie Brenio, do- „
eth ſend thee health, although of her part there is no po- „
wer to giue it thee neither able to moue her ſelfe, for that in „
thy reſpect, ſhe hath it not, neither hath ſhe any hope there- „
of. Oh Brenio, wherefore didſt thou conſent, that ſo perfect & „

trus

But rather Fortune, Time, and Loue agree,
With cruell paines ceaſleſſe to puniſh me.

O rare report, yet too too common found,
that Loue ſhould murther man with ſuch deſpight,
Thou blinded boie which doſt ſo aimeleſſe wound,
and in the griefe of louers haſt delight:
Ceaſe off to ſhoote, and though thy eyes be blinde,
Let mercie now at laſt poſſeſſe thy minde,

I neuer heard of anie yet ſo praiſde
for conſtantneſſe, that might thy force gainſaie,
I cannot ſhew the miſchiefe thou haſt raiſde,
nor bring one proofe my paſsions to allay:
For by thy furie kingdomes are ſubdude,
And trenchant blades in peoples blouds imbrude,

Wherefore all you that heare my mournfull ſong,
and taſted haue the griefe that I ſuſtaine,
Complaine with me gainſt cruell Cupids wrong,
whoſe ſlights almoſt my louing heart hath ſlaine:
Shunne his deceipts, ſo ſubtill, falſe, and ſlie,
His poiſoned baits for euer ſeeke to flie.

With the great paine and ſorrow that Eleno felt, he was not able to goe forwardes with his ſong, for that there came to his remembraunce the ſodaine departure of Lidia, which conſtrained him to leaue it of, and one of the ſhepheards that was there ſayd: Oh gentle knight, how the queene our Lady would reioyce to heare you, for that ſhe is likewiſe afflicted by loue, for which cauſe and for that ſhe would at ſome time take eaſe of her ſorrowe and paine, ſhe doth commaund vs to ſing our louing and amorous ſongs, who doth ſolempniſe our ſweet and lotung vearſes, with teares diſtilling from her ſorrowfull eies: Then Eleno aſked of them who was the occaſion, that the queene, without hauing anie power to remedie her ſelfe ſhould ſuffer ſuch like torment. The ſhepheard

did declare vnto him all that hath bene tolde you in the storie past of the Emperour Trebatio, and of all that passed with the Queene. Tarido, who of all this had no care, but onely to the feeding of his cattell, did breake off this conuersation, in rising vp to put abroad his Cattel into the greene medowes, the other shepheardes that were in companie with Tarido, desired that the night wer come, for to returne and to reioyce themselues in hearing the sweet and well consorted musicke of the Prince, & so they made agreement to returne to ỹ same place, but it fell not out as they had determined, for that vpon a sodaine and vnawares Eleno heard a verie dolorous sigh towards his left hand, which was so terrible, heauy, and bitter, that it made him giue attentiue care to see if he could vnderstand what it should be, and with the quiet care that he gaue, he might discerne that the occasion of all that euill was loue, which caused him to say: Oh almightie God, I suppose that this is the place wher in olde time they reported to bee planted the dwelling of the Goddesse Venus, for that since my comming hether to take my rest, I haue heard no other thing but lamentations, and so with making the least noise possible, he arose vp and began to goe towards the place whereas he might see what it was, and there hee beheld a knight verie well armed, which then didde alight from his horse, vnder a fayre and greene Myrtle tree, his armour was all russet, and full of barres of blacke steele, which shewed to be a verie sadde, sorrowfull, and beauie enamelling, hee was somewhat of a bigge stature of bodie and well proportioned, and there seemed by his disposition to bee in him greate vertue, and with sorrowfull sighes hee laide himselfe downe on the greene grasse, and with sadde and heauy words he sayd.

Ah beauie and peruerse fortune why doest thou consent that so naughtie and euill a man as I am doe liue so long: Oh my Lidia, with how much reason maist thou complaine of the cruell outrage that thou receiuedst at the handes of Brenio, beeing nothing of him considered: O Brenio, Brenio, whereon was thy thought & vnderstanding, which did induce

thee

of glorie and paine, and paine and glorie, as though we should mixe honnie and gall together: and if I should let them contend much, they would goe about to make me beléeue that which neuer chanced: but remaine you with these your amorous thoughtes, or as I might better saie, with your foolish conceits, and let me haue continually my cattell well fed and gouerned, and in as good plight as now they are, béeing so fat as the skinne may holde, and not to be as you are, that hath lost all your owne reason and vnderstanding, and therewith forget and lose the care that you should haue of yours, who for lacke of looking vnto, be so leane. And making an end in saying these words, he sate himselfe downe, and séemed to bée verie angrie to sée his cõpanions so without reason & vnderstanding, and blinded with loue. The which words was the occasion, that the Prince Eleno was constrained to doe that, which since his departure out of Dacia he did not, which was, that he laughed to heare the simplicitie of this shepheard, and taking in hand to aunswere him, he sayd: Friend, I doe tell thée that thy resistaunce is great: likewise thy vnderstanding is verie much, that being conuersant dayly and hearing the great complaints and communication of so amorous sheapheards, thou art not intangled with the same. And hére I do desire thée, that thou hold thy selfe firme in the same, and kéep thy selfe still as thou art, least peraduenture that which thou doest now call follie, hereafter thou wilt call discreation and wisedome. Thou mayst now well account thy selfe happie, for that without all care and sorrow, thou mayst reuile them who doth complaine of so manie miseries. With a greate laughter this shepheard aunswered and sayd: Nowe gentle Knight, I doe tell thée, that I will as little contend with thée as with thy companions, for that it séemeth vnto mée that thou art also a vassall vnto that foolish loue, and I doe more estéeme my libertie, thus simple as thou doest sée mée, then all the wisedome which thou doest presume to haue: it is much better for the shepheard to haue care and kéepe of his cattell, to guide them in good féeding, and not euerie small time to call for his crowde, and singing two thousand songes, the

which

which the Diuell cannot vnderſtand, and although they ſing them, yet I thinke they vnderſtand them not themſelues. So one of his companions cut off his reaſons and ſayde: Tarido, doeſt thou not know, how at mine owne libertie, in times paſt I did gouerne my ſelfe, and mocking and ieſting at them who did publiſh the lyke complaintes. Here I doe deſire the Gods to maintaine thee in this eſtate, and to keepe thee y loue do not extend his furie vpon thee, for if he do, he will make thee repent a thouſand times theſe wordes which thou haſt ſayde. And here gentle Knight (without giuing anye attenſion vnto this Ruſticall ſhepheарde) here I doe deſire you, for that I ſee you bring that which is neceſſarye, that you would plaie and ſing, for that the manifeſting of thy ſorrowe in ſome verſe, may be an occaſion to mitigate ſomewhat of our paine. The Prince to ſhew pleaſure vnto the ſhepheards, and vſing his accuſtomed magnificence, toke his Lute in his hande and played and ſong theſe verſes following.

CAliope from Pernaſſe hill proceede,
and ſhew thy ſacred face with teares bedewd,
Let Gods and Nymphes prepare themſelues with ſpeed,
to heare my plaints that are by loue renewd:
And with thy moanes, O mournfull Muſe aſsiſt
My wailing ſong, which doth on woe conſiſt.

And then may I at large paint out my paine,
amongſt theſe paſtors which deſire the ſame:
And after I haue ended, to complaine,
gainſt him whom iuſtly I haue cauſe to blame:
Except theſe ſhepheards too vnciuill be,
They will with ſobs aſsiſt the ſighs of me.

Time weares out loue, it is reported ſo,
and ſo it may, I will it not denie,
Yet I haue tride long time, and this I know,
Time giues no eaſe vnto my miſerie:

But Cupide vſeth ſuch delaies,
ſuch ſpites for to oppreſſe
The heart: that one may pine alwaies,
and neuer finde redreſſe.

Yet if the parties firmly loue,
his ſpite cannot preuaile,
My minde therefore ſhall neuer moue,
vntill my life doo faile.

With great paine, and with a gracious countenaunce in his muſicke, this ſhepheard did ſing his ſong: and when he had made an ende, he ſaid. Ah knight, if you did knowe the cauſe of this my ſong, you would take as much griefe & ſorrow at it, as of my paine: you ſhall vnderſtande that I did loue a Paſtora very much, and do beléeue ſhe repayed me againe with the ſame loue, and no longer agoe, but yeſterdaye ſhe was taken out of theſe fieldes, and carried vnto Tinacria, vnto the Quéene Garrofilea. The ſhepheard vttered this with ſo great abundance of teares, that he could not ſpeak a worde more: ſo one of the other ſhepheardes toke the Kebecke, and began to ſing as followeth.

THe troubled minde afflicted is,
when changed thoughts appeare,
Of paine and glory, bale and bliſſe,
which ſtill diſturbe mans cheere.

And if that griefe the goale doth win,
the heart doth then remaine,
By this debate incloſed in,
with thought of paſſed paine.

Euen ſo my hart afflicted is,
I no defence can make:
My wonted mirth I ſo doo miſſe,
I no delight can take.

My heauie minde is clogd with care,
my glory ouerthrowen:
And ſorrowe lotted for my ſhare,
my griefe ſo great is growen.

Yeeld wounded hart in ſunder torne,
ſith thou no gaine canſt get,
Ceaſe off thy ſute thou art forlorne,
by thee ſhe naught doth ſet.

Let Death diſſolue thy bitter griefe,
and glory in the ſame:
For therein thou ſhalt finde reliefe,
and blaze thy Faith by Fame.

This louing ſhepheard when he had made an ende of his ſong, giuing a great and ſorowfull ſigh, let the Rebeck fall out of his hande. The third ſhephearde with a diſſembling laughter, aroſe vpon his feete and ſayd. Oh ſoueraigne gods, that this Loue might be ſeene, whom all you do account to be a God & Lord, that you might at your eaſe reioyce in his ſimplenes, & know him that hath brought you out of all vnderſtanding & remẽbrance, as it doth appeare by your variable reſons, & ill placed words, which without anye order be vttered: ſo ỹ I promiſe you, if we ſhuld turne & make reherſall at night, of all ỹ which you do talk on in ỹ day, you ſhal not finde ỹ ther is any agreement therein, as by their ſongs gentle Knight you may know, & with what Philoſphie they wold giue vs to vnderſtand, ỹ two bodies haue but one hart. And heere I ſweare vnto you, by ỹ might & power of Alfebo, ỹ reſtorer of our Countryes, & by the great valor of the Dacian Prince, ỹ in what ſort ſoeuer you will tumble and toſſe theſe variable reaſons, ther is no vnderſtanding of man can cauſe me to beleeue, ỹ two bodies are gouerned by one heart alone, at leaſt wayes I would not be he that ſhould be without a heart. Likewiſe heare the reaſons of my other companion, who tumbleth together and maketh a mixture

in the ſhadow from the heate of the Sunne. The Prince ſate downe vnder the Walnut træ, and aſked of them if they had anie thing to eate, the which was giuen him with a verye good will, being ſuch as they had prouided themſelues, and he eate of it for that he had a verie good ſtomacke, ſo here to take ſome eaſe, I doe referre the reſt till the next Chapter.

¶ How the Dacian Prince did meete with Brenio, to whom he gaue the Letter of Lidia, and what Brenio did aunſwere therevnto. Chap. 4.

IN the meane time that the Prince and his Page did eate of ỹ which ỹ ſhepheardes had giuen them, they neuer withdrew their eyes from the Princé, but did verie much behold him, and reioyced to ſée him ſo well proportioned and ſo fayre, but yet they merualled to ſée him ſo ſadde and penſiue, muſing what ſhould bée the occaſion of his great heauineſſe, and one of the ſhepheardes did aſke him, and ſayd: Knight, what great heauineſſe is this which you ſéeme to haue, for according vnto the outwarde ſhew it ſéemeth to procéede of loue. Ah my friend, aunſwered Eleno, is it poſſible that thou doeſt know anie parte of thoſe euil's, for that me thinketh loue ought not to be remembred of them that doe dwell ſo farre from anie townes or companie, as you which in theſe ſharpe and cragged mountaines doe make your habitation. How do we know, anſwered the ſhepheard: he is of ſuch ſtrength and ſubtiltie, that he doth not onely ſhew his force vpon vs, but alſo he is the occaſion that we do occupie our imaginations in his delights (which is ſo greate a torment that we cannot receiue a greater) he maketh that our cattell (that doe not deſerue anye ſuch harme) lacke their good féeding which wée ſhoulde procure, the which our ſmall regarde doeth appeare in their weake and leane bodyes, lowing more time for hunger thē for too much féeding or good paſture.

Ah knight, what shoulde I tell you of that which he hath caused all vs that be heere to suffer, and when we do talke of it, there is not one of vs, but doth muse at the other, how he hath the force & strength to beare it. The Dacian knight sayd: I know well that he doth pardon none, neither is ther any that doth escape from his power, such is his pryde and ambition: therefore it is not much to be meruailed at, seeing that he doth as well walke the fieldes as the dwelling townes. But sith it hath pleased Fortune (the more for my paine and griefe) to meete with them that are wounded with loue, I do desire you that I may take some pleasure in your musicke, and in hearing some songs that you haue made to publish your true and perfect loue withall. This we will do with a very good will aunswered the shepheard: and for that you do seeme vnto vs, for to be of high estate, we will playe on our instruments, to giue you some comfort, and we will publish our paines and griefes, with our own mouths: and taking the Rebeck in his hand, which was meruailously well wrought, he beganne to playe vppon the same very swetely, and likewise did associate the musicke with these pastorall verses.

YOu Louers all assist my song,
and helpe me to declare
The slights of craftie Cupide strong,
the worker of my care.

Whose shafts and shifts be of such might,
they make one heart to guide
Two bodies: and by outward sight,
two soules in one doo bide.

O vnion sweete by loue so knit,
O life adorde to be:
If this were all the harme of it,
it could not hurtfull be.

him a mightie blow vpon his helme with all his ſtrength: but this Dacian Prince made little account thereof: and paſſing by he ſtroke him a blow vpon his ſhield, and for that his blow could extend no farther, he remained with his life, otherwiſe it had coſt him the price thereof, for it parted his ſhield in two peeces. The Knight returned, and gaue him another blow, that it made the ſparks of fire to fly out of his healme. Then the Dacian full of yre, let goe his ſhield, and claſped faſt his ſword in both his hands, and ſtroke him ſo terrible a blow vpon his helme, that he cut helme and heade in two peeces, and he fell down dead to the earth. The other ſeeing their companion dead, all three together ſet vpon him: but this valiant Dacian who in ſuch like aduentures neuer had any feare, did receiue them with his accuſtomed furye, ſtriking on them both on the right and lefte hand with mortall blowes. In the meane time, this afflicted Lady, when ſhe ſawe the Knight dead, which cauſed her diſhonour, lyke a furious Lioneſſe ſhe went towards him and ſayd. Oh howe the gods haue giuen thee thy paiment for the diſhonor, which thou haſt done me: yet ſhe ſaid. O beaute Felina, what doth this reuengement profite thy honour, being loſt, it were very great riches vnto me, that by the death of him which hath robbed me of it, it might be reſtored me again. Oh my gods, I am in no fault, in the loſing of my chaſtitie, for that it was violently taken from me, in the thicke forreſt. There ſhall be none able to diſturbe, but that I will execute my fury vpon my ſelfe, although I do not deſerue the ſame: and in ſaying theſe words, ſhe toke the ſword of that dead knight, and put the poynt to her breaſt, and threw her ſelfe thereon, in ſuch ſort, that Fabio could not ſuccour her, although with great haſt he would haue done it. The Dacian Knight caſting his head on the one ſide, and ſaw the harme done, he preſſed forwards with great furie and yrefull wrath, and lifte vp his ſword, and ſtroke ſuch a blow at one of them vppon his right arme, that arme and ſworde together fell to the ground, and ſtrayght tourned vnto another, and with an ouerthwart blowe, he ſtroke him on the making faſt of his

helme,

helme, that head and all came to the ground. Then he which remained, seeing the fiercenesse of his aduersary, would haue runne away. But the Dacian perceiuing it, before that hee could put in execution his desire, he stroke him such a blow vpon his helme, that being parted in peeces with the head, he made him to beare company with his dead companions. So when he had concluded this battaile, he went vnto the dead Lady, and hauing great sorrow to see her he pulled the bloudie sword out of her body, and commaunded Fabio that in the best manner he could to make a graue, and to bury her. The Dacian did helpe him all that he could, and beeing done vnto their contentment, he put an Epitaph ouer her, which was in this wise.

Luckleſſe Felina heere interd doth lie,
whom traitor falſe within this forreſt wide,
Defloured firſt of hir virginitie.
She loathing after, long a liue to bide:
Vpon his blade her tender breaſt did caſt,
A bloudie offring to Diana chaſt.

So when he had written this Epitaph, ioyning this great sorrowe vnto that which he had before, he leapt vppon his horse, and put himselfe amongst a companie of troublesome trees, among the which he had not trauailed long, when hee heard one playing on a shephardes Rebucke, which made a very sweete sounde, and tourning his horse that waye from whence the sound came, hee chaunced to come whereas hee founde certaine Shepheardes, who by theyr countenaunces appeared to bee verye sadde, and they sate vnder a Walnut tree, where they passed awaye the great heate of the daye. These Shepheards when they saw the Prince, arose vp, and with great ioye they did salute him: The Prince retourned vnto them their salutations, and did alyghte from his horse, which he gaue vnto Fabio his Page, that he might put him into some voyde Pasture, together with his Palfraie, whereas they might feede on the greene grasse,

" he was one of them that was slaine by the handes of Bra-
" marandus, whom afterwardes the Emperour Trebatio slew
" in battaile. So I remained all alone, very much made off, &
" well beloued of the widdowe my mother, and we kepte our
" selues in a very faire castle of ours, not far from this place,
" whereas we did passe our solitary liues. So I was required
" of loue, of a Gentleman, more richer in goodes and landes,
" than in linage or vertue, and I vnderstanding his litle esti-
" mation, did alwayes esteeme him as little, and neuer made
" any reckoning of his messages: the which was the occasi-
" on that his desire was the more stronger, in such sorte, that
" he seeing himselfe by me not esteemed, but put off, with the
" great griefe that he receiued for my loue, he dyed, and at the
" houre of his death, he neuer left naming of, Felina, the cause
" of all my harme. At such time as he dyed there was a bro-
" ther of his present: and hearing him to declare the causer of
" his death, there kindeled in him so much anger and wrath,
" that he bare vnto me a perpetuall hatred and did procure to
" haue amends for the death of his brother. So it hapned on
" a time, that I went out of the Castle without any mistrust,
" in the company of other two damsells, at which time I was
" stole away by him, and other foure Knightes, who broughte
" me vnto this place, which is to my great sorrow and greefe,
" whereas they bound me in that sort as thou hast found me
" gentle Knight, and not content herewith (but for my more
" paine and sorrow) they left me naked, with greater desire to
" die then to liue. This Ladye coulde not let but to associate
her tale with great lamentations, wherein this Dacian did
beare her company, and sayd. Of truth sorowfull Lady, for-
tune hath vsed with me great liberalitie, to bring me hether
in this time, for to set you at libertie from this great capti-
nitie, and to make reuengement of thy honour: and here I
do offer my selfe, and do giue vnto thee my fayth of knight-
hood to performe it, or to lose my lyfe. This faire Ladye
was somewhat comforted with the offer of the Knight, and
gaue him great thanks for the fauor which he did offer her.
In this sort they passed the rest of the night that remained,

till

till such time as the Sunne of Tona did shew his glistering face, spreading all abroad his golden beames, accompanyed with ỹ swæt and rosalyke Aurora, at which time they were all readie a foote for to goe onwards on their waie, & straight wayes they heard amongest the thickest of those trées a still sound. The Prince being verie desirous to knowe what it was, and comming thether, he saw that it was his horse, the which was brought thether by the order of the wise Lyrgandeo, from the place whereas he lefte him, at such time as hée did imbarke himselfe. The Prince receiued great delight at the sight of him, and taking him by the bridle, he leaped on his back, and went to séeke the Ladyes Palfraie, which was let lose amongst those thicke trées, and they found him féeding in a faire and gréene medowe, adorned with many fresh and swéete flowers. So his page leapt on his backe, & tooke the Ladie behinde him, and trauailed through a narow and well beaten path which brought them into a broad waie that carried them into a verie great and large plaine, at ỹ ende thereof there was a verie faire Castell, and in the middest of the plaine they sawe foure knightes which came towards them, and when they were nigh together, the one of them sayd: Tell me knight, who made thée so bolde, as for to vnlose this Ladie from thé place whereas she was made fast. What is this that thou askest, sayd Eleno, is it possible that thou art hér, that forgetting all the honour that thou doest owe vnto the order of knighthood, madest fast this Ladie. The knight answered & sayd: I am he that did it, & hé that will take awaie thy life from thée, in recompence of thy great boldnesse to vnlose her. So without anie more tarrying the Prince Eleno turned about his horse towards him. When this sorrowful Ladie sawe him ỹ was the occasion of all her euill, she leapt downe from her Palfray, & began with a new sorow, her grieuous lamentation. Those foure knights came all against ỹ prince, some with their speares, & he ỹ had none, came wt his sword in his hand with great furie, one of the foure, who thought himselfe to be more valiant thē all ỹ rest, came formost with his sword in his hand all a high, & stroke

his page, who as you haue heard, that by reason of the great hast that the barke made, he coulde not retourne a lande to Numidia. His name was called Fabio, who was to his master such companye that many times he would comforte the Prince, when he was most troubled with very comfortable words and perswasions, and did serue him with great loue and fidelitie. The Prince and his Page began to trauayle a foote with an easie pace through a narow and straight path, and with a meruailous and diligent eye, he did beholde that countrey, and it seemed vnto him, that he should know it, & that before that time he had passed by that waye: but the firme loue that he had to Lidia, was the occasion that it was out of his remembraunce. So with this sorrowe he trauayled, till such time as Phœbus had passed the fourth parte of his iourney, when that being wery with the long way, & the great waight of his armor, he was forced to take some rest & ease, vnder the fresh & grëne mirtle trées, whose leaues did bath themselues in a faire & clére fountaine, whereas he began a new to haue in remembrance his former paine, & complaining of Fortune, he published his great griefe, making show of the great sorrow that he felt, & although he was wery of complaining, & seing himselfe so without all remedye, he called for his lute, for that Fabio did alwayes carry with him, & taking it in his hands, onely to giue some ease vnto his tormented hart, he began to sing these verses following.

SInce heauens accord for to increase my care,
what hope haue I for to enioy delight?
Sith Fates and Fortune doo themselues prepare,
fully to worke gainst me their worst despight.
I know no meanes that may yeeld me relefe,
But onely Death, which can dissolue my griefe.

I muse, and may, my sorrowes being such,
that my poore heart can longer life sustaine,
For that (God wot) I finde my griefe so much,
as euerie day, I feele a dying paine.

But yet (alas) I liue afflicted ſtill,
And haue no helpe to heale me of my ill.

When as I minde my paine and pleaſure paſt
together mixt,it makes me mone my ſtate;
And ſince my weale with woe is ouercaſt,
O Death giue ende to my vnhappie fate.
For onely death will laſting life prouide,
Where liuing thus,I ſundry deaths abide.

His Page Fabio did cauſe him to leaue off his ſinging, for with the great attention that he gaue to heare his Maſter,he likewiſe heard a lamentable ſound, which ſeemed to be of a Lady. Likewiſe the Prince,when he had ended his ſweete muſicke, did hearken to heare it: and giuing a very attentiue eare, that although ſhe did complaine with a lowe voyce,yet he might heare that the ſound of the voice, came forth of the thickeſt from amongſt thoſe trees: and without any more tarrying,he left his lute with his Page,and went that way from which he thought the voyce came,and the farther he went,the better he might heare that weake and feeble voyce. Still he went forwards,til ſuch time as he might ſee who it was that made that lamentation. And he ſaw that it was a very faire Lady,that was bound vnto a tree, all naked to the ſkin,ſhe had all her haire ſpred abroad vppon her naked backe. The Prince came vnto her, and before that he ſayd any word, he did vntie her, and cut the cordes wherewith ſhe was bound, and toke a gowne which was there of the Ladyes, and couered her delicate and white bodye. The Ladie was very much aſhamed to ſee her ſelfe lowſe and at libertie: and ſitting downe vnder a greene Oake, the Prince aſked of her who he was, that without reſpect of his owne honeſtie and honour, had lefte her in that ſort. This fayre Lady ſayd: Knight, thou ſhalt vnderſtand that I am Daughter vnto a verye good Knight and Gentleman, who was Lorde ouer three Caſtles of the beſt in all this Countrey. My Fathers name was Coſdros,

he

« ſhe ſawe that he had made an ende of reading it, ſhe ſayde :
« Wherefore wilt thou giue me to vnderſtand O cruell Tre-
« batio, that thou doeſt receiue great ſorrow of that, which wi-
« thou mighteſt haue redreſſed thou wouldeſt not, and doe not
« make me beleeue that theſe outward ſhewes do proceed from
« thy heart. Doſt thou thinke that it is ſufficient to excuſe thee
« from the paine that is pretended to be giuen thee. Doſt thou
« not ſee, that when thou couldeſt giue remedie (thou wouldeſt
« not) vnto them, who now are without all hope, and tarryeth
« for no other ſatisfaction but w̄ thy head. O falſe Emperour,
« diddeſt thou not ſee that ſhe was not a ladie to be thus mo-
« cked and deceiued. Surely thou haſt recouered to thy ſelfe a
« verie good name, for the exalting of thy lygnage. Thy ſonne
« whom we honour there for a God, may well prayſe himſelfe
« for his deſcent, in hauing thee for his father. O falſe and cru-
« ell, is this the inheritaunce which thou diddeſt inherit of thy
« moſt famous blood? Is this the great loyaltie which thou do-
« eſt ſhew vnto thy ſonnes? O vile Greeke, how doe the Gods
« conſent that ſo diſloyall a Knight ſhould liue in the world. Is
« it not poſſible that theſe ſorrowfull & continuall complaints
« of Timacria doe not open your eares, and cauſe you to ſende
« downe puniſhment, for this greate offence. O ingratefull
« Gods, receiue the ſacrifice of my chaſtitie in paiment of the
« reuengement which from your high heauens I hope ſhall bee
« done vpon this counterfait without all fayth, and make that
« my blood here ſhed vpon this flowre, maye ſhewe the ſingle-
« neſſe and cleane loue of Garofil, a and that with the lyke ſo-
« lempnitie may be broken in peeces the heart of him which
« was the cauſer of her diſhonour. And in vttering of theſe &
ſuch like ſorrowes ſhe toke forth a naked ſword which ſhee
brought readie for the ſame effect, and put the pomell to the
ground, and caſt her breaſt vpon the point, the which ſhe did
with ſo great haſt, that the Emperour nor anie of all ỳ were
there preſent could not ſuccour her, nor take her from doing
that fact. All that were preſent remained verie much ama-
zed to ſee ſo ſodaine a miſchaunce. The Emperour verie full
of griefe of this ſucceſſe, withdrew himſelfe into his cloſet, &

wouldo

would not consent that any one should speake a word vnto him. The couragious Empresse with a royall stomacke & great discretion, dissembling her griefe in the best wise shee could, commaunded her body to be caried out of the pallaice, and in the Court of the pallaice she commanned to be made a rich tombe, in the which she was buried: there was made her proportion, which did shew what chaunced vnto ỹ damsell: and about the tombe was written an Epitaph, which did declare the occasion of her death. All the time that this damsell was a burying, the Emperour neuer came forth out of his closet, neither would he haue come forth when hee did, and if it had not bene by the great importance of ỹ Empresse. Whereas now we will leaue them, for to tell you of the chaunces and aduentures which hapned vnto ỹ Prince Eleno, the time that he trauailed in the world, the which for that he was as noble as warlyke, and of great strength, it is not reason, that he should passe so long without making any mention of him. You do well remember how he went out of Numidia, with one onely Page, putting himselfe to sea, in that inchaunted barke of the Knight of the Sunne. He was so heauie and sorrowfull for the death of his Ladie and Mistresse, that he was cleane changed, and appeared not to be him that he was wont, neither had he so great wisedome to gouerne himselfe. In this manner he trauayled almost a whole yeare, and neuer could mete with Brenio, vnto whom he was commaunded to giue the letter from Lydia, neither could he heare in any place wheresoeuer he came, where he might goe to seeke him: in which his trauaile, he did not let but to mete with some aduentures, the which, with great honour to his person, he finished. Yet for all this he could haue no ease of his sorrow & griefe, which brought him in such perplexitie, that if he had not considered ỹ great losse of his soule, many times he would haue slain himselfe. So it happened ỹ one morning very early, the barke had put her selfe a ground, giuing him to vnderstand, that it was requisite there for him to goe a lande. The Prince who was very desirous thereof, quickly went a shore, and after him

his

the vnhappy quéene of Tinacria, doth send me vnto thée that thou maist read this letter, and thereby vnderstand the great tyranny without all reason that thou didst vse against her. The Emperour with an amorous smiling did receiue it, & sayd, Thou art welcome, and for the letter of the quéene, the receipt thereof doth giue me great delight, to know and vnderstand of her highnes. And therewith he opened the letter, and reading it found that that therein was contained that which followeth.

"The vnhappy and vnfortunate Quéene of Tinacria, vnto the disloyall Emperour of Grecia, can send nor with no salutation, for hauing no health my selfe, I cannot send it vnto him, that so much without loue by crueltie hath forgotten me. I cannot but lament, and complain me of thée vnto the Gods, considering that without any refuge thou camst vnto my kingdome, whereas thou hadst no other hope but of death, and I procured to delyuer thée from it, and sought it for my selfe, what occasion hadst thou O Emperor, that thou wouldest not returne to sée me? In me thou foundest so much fidelitie, that I did furnish thée with armour and horse, that with them thou shouldst delyuer me from those, which did séeke to haue me against my will: But I with my good will did yéld my selfe, I say my selfe vnto him, which now doth séeke my death. Ah Emperour, remember, that I sawe thée deprined of all helpe: an vnhappy day for me, for ý in making much of thée, and giuing thée loye, I bereaued my selfe of all, and lost the possession of my libertie and honour: and although thou hadst not estéemed, nor toke any care of the sorrowfull Quéene of Tinacria, yet thou shouldest not haue moued thy selfe to haue made a mocke of the perfecte loue which I did shew thée, and the great desire that I had to serue thée. Thou shouldest haue had some care and griefe seeing that I defended thée from all my Nobles & Knights who sought thy death, thou hauing deprined so many of my knights of their lines: thou shouldest haue had pitie of thē that had pitie on thée. O Ione, that so quickly diddest make me blinde, & deprivedst me of the knowledge which I should

haue

haue had, vnto my royall highneſſe. O Emperour of Grecia, I being blinde with the loue of thée, did deny my honeſtie, which I ought to haue kepte. If thou hadſt pretended to mocke me, thou ſhouldſt haue put me out of all doubt, and not haue ſuffered me, to leſe ſo much as I haue loſt for thy ſake, but haue procured that I might haue eſchewed all this harme, whereof thou haſt bene the occaſion. Tell me, why didſt thou not ſuffer me to execute my will, ý I might haue opened my white breaſt with that ſharpe ſword: it had ben better for me to haue dyed then, than now, for now liuing, for thée I dayly dye. Remember thy ſelfe Emperour, and behold the harme that will come hereof, and do not vſe ſo much crueltie with them, that haue not deſerued it at thy handes. Haue thou a care vnto the pawn which thou didſt leaue behinde thée, & let it be an occaſion that thou doſt retourne to ſée me. Do not giue an occaſiõ, ý my children remain motherles in ý power of them, for thou doeſt not knowe what my ſubiects will do. O Emperour of Grecia, I do ſtill tarry & looke for thée, ý which hope doth cauſe me to ſuffer this cruell paine: & if thou doſt ſend my truſtie meſſenger without it, I ſhall be driuen to do ý, of which thou hadſt ben better, thou hadſt not diſturbed me at the firſt. But now it ſhal be in this manner, that if thou doſt giue eaſe vnto me, I will procure thine in ſuch ſort as poſſibly I may. So that Emperour, I do tarie thy comming, or els anſwere of my death. And do not iudge this which I do, to be of great boldeneſſe, for that Loue doth commaund it. By her, which without all regard, or any foreſight, did yeeld vnto thee her libertie.

When he had made an ende of reading ý letter he could not haue ſo much ſufferance with himſelfe, but with ý teares which diſtilled from his eyes, he muſt nedes ſhewe the paine which his hearte indured, for the ſorrowfull complaintes, which that lamentable and complaining Letter did vtter. The Damoſell which brought the Letter, all the time that the Emperour was reading of it, ſhe neuer withdrewe her eyes from loking on him: and when

ſhe

and were as glad of the death of Geredeon, as they were of restoring of the kingdome vnto Galtenor. In few dayes after was Claridiano come againe to his strength, and made whole, which was so great ioye and pleasure vnto the King Delfo, that vnto his iudgement, he næded not to desire anye other thing. So when the messengers were retourned ỹ they sent vnto Arginaria, they did determine, for that all the countrey should be put in good order, that Galtenor shoulde depart for that part out of hand, who did procure to cary with him Claridiano: but the King Delfo would not consent vnto it by any meanes, for the which the king Galtenor went away greatly discontented. And when he came vnto his kingdome they receiued him with great pompe and honour, and with great delight to se their naturall Lord, and there was none that made any resistaunce against the receiuing of his possession: for that one sonne which the Giaunt left and his brother Bruno, were gone into the Iland of Vespera, of whom in the third part of this history shall be tolde vnto you. And now it is necessarie to leaue the King Delfo, and the king of Arginaria, with the great delight of their victorie, and to retourne vnto the noble Emperour, whome we left with his furious and well foughten battaile, in the first part of this booke, with the King of the Garamantes, who had giuen the Emperour so great a blow, that he left him without feeling. But when the Emperour was come again vnto him selfe, he tourned about his horse with more fury then the Lions in the wayne of the mother Idea, when that with a furious rage they moued against that sorrowfull Atis in ỹ desart mountaines of Phrigia. In such sort went this fierce Emperour with his sword all a loft, and stroke him such a terrible blow vpon his shield, that parting it in two peces, lountly with his helme and head, he fell downe dead to the ground, the which did grieue the Emperour very much, for that he could not performe that which he had promised vnto him. So when this was finished, the Emperour retourned vnto his pallace, whereas he was receiued with great solemnitie of instruments, and vnarmed by the Empresse, betwæne

twéne whom there passed many swéte and amorous spéches touching the communication that they had before the battaile began. And the nert day openly, they returned vnto the same talke: but they were cut off by a straunge aduenture which entered into the hall, as shall be declared vnto you, in this chapter following.

How a Damosell, messenger from the Queene of Tinacria, brought a letter vnto the Emperor of Grecia, and of all that passed about the same. Cap. 3.



Although I alwayes purpose to sepetate my selfe in my discourses, frō ỳ fraudes, which that most cruell Venus doth manye times vse, accompanyed with the deceiptes of hir sonne, yet am I constrained to speake some thing therof, and to leaue the stout & strong Mars with his sword in his hande, tourning my pen for to tell vnto you her trueltíes and disordinate customes. You do well remember of the amorous wrath that the Quéene of Tinacria had against the Emperour of Grecia, and what in that furious rage she did ordayn, and how that she commaunded a faithfull damsell of hers, to carry a letter vnto the Emperour of Grecia, who made so much hast that shée arriued at Constantinople, at such time as the battel betwéen the Emperour, and the king of the Garamantes began. And when she saw the vnhappy ende of the King, she receiued great griefe, being informed of the occasion of all the battell, and wherefore it was made. So with this griefe, for that night she went and toke her lodging, whereas she remained till ỳ nert day in ỳ morning, at such time as ỳ Emperour was with the Empresse, and many other Knights in great ioy & pastimes, & talking of the occasion of the battaile that was ỳ day before. At that time entred the quéenes damsel with a seuere countenance, and without making any reuerence, she went vnto the Emperour & said. Emperour, much more valiant and mightie, than loyall and faithfull,

could not lift vp the heauie mase for to strike the king of Arginaria. His paine and griefe was such, that his aduersarie did perceiue his weakneſſe, which caused him to make more hast in striking of the Prince, with such furious blowes, that it made this new knight to retire from him, drawing after him that beauie mase with his right hand. Who at this time shoulde haue seene the countenaunce of the king of Arginaria, and the king Delfo would well haue iudged theyr greate trouble of mindes. This warlike knight was verie much troubled with that great griefe, insomuch that many times he thought to haue imbraced with the Gyaunt and wrastled with him, which certainely he would haue done if the griefe had continued, but he felt that the paine decreased, which was the occasion that he went dalying with the gyant, who with hastie and terrible blowes followed striking of him, but whē the Prince felt himselfe clere of the paine, and that hee was able to lift vp his arme, hee toke the mase in both his hands, and setled his feet verie strong on the ground, and kept in his breath, that he might with more strength discarge his blow, detayning it till such time as the Gyants blow was stroke, which was with so great strength, that falling on ỹ ground, the sword entered into the earth more then halfe of it, and it was the occasion that the Prince had better time, for to execute his mightie and determined blowe, and discharging it, with two of the balls of steele which hung at the mases end, he let driue such a blowe on the Gyaunt, that he made him to stoope with both his knees to the grounde, and seeing him in that plight, he stroke at him another blowe, which was vpon his helme, which gaue such a sound, as though it had ben stroke vpon a bell; wherewith he fell with all his bodie to the ground, and stretched out his huge members, making no more mouing, and when this new knight sawe that he moued not, he pulled of his healme, and perceiued that the blowe was such, that it beate out his eyes and the braines out of his head. Then the young Prince gaue thankes vnto the Gods, for that he had no perfect knowledge of his descent, nor anie lyght that he was a christian, & taking vp the mase,

he

he layd it on his shoulder, and with great quietnesse he went vnto the Citie, and straight way there came vnto him Galtenor, & the king Delfo, with a great number more of knights, that had bene beholding the furious battaile, who did imbrase him with so great ioy and loue, that I am not heere able to expresse it, and did request him that he woulde goe and lye downe, for that they iudged he should be verie weary. He was so much importunated by so many knights, that he could doo no otherwise but goe take his rest, and lie downe, wheras he was cured & healed of such blowes as he had receiued, which was black and blew, and there was ministred vnto him such ointments as did mitigate the paines and griefes which hee had receiued. So all those which came with the Gyant when that they sawe their Lord was dead, they receiued no sorrow nor griefe thereat, for they could not suffer his great pride & euill conditions, for they did not onely abhorre him, but they did desire that he might die a naughtie death, & make a short and euill end. And in this sort as you do see, the intreating of this Gyant of his subiects, so are all them that be of so great pride intreated in all the world: he was scarce dead when y all those of the kingdome of Arginaria were very ioyfull to see it so come to passe, and were verie desirous to yeeld vp vnto Galtenor, his right and inheritance, and sent straight waies Embassadours to the Citie, whereas he was, promising to giue him peaceable entring into the kingdome, as vnto their naturall king & Lord, and iustly discharging themselues of all wherein they were found guiltie. The messengers were meruailously well receiued of Galtenor, and with great loue, and he did accept their offer. So it fell out that in one daye, was the Gyant Geredeon king and Lord of Arginaria, and in the selfe same daie was Galtenor with great contentment vnto all the people of the Iland. And when he sawe himselfe that he was Lorde of that which he so greatly desired, he straight wayes dispatched messengers for his kingdome, in giuing them to vnderstande of all that passed, in the which they did reioyce verye much, and with exceeding greate good will they receiued all the newes which was sent,

he ſtroke him on the viſour (which a little before he had lift vp to take the aire) that it all to plaiſtred his face and noſe, whereof he receiued ſo much paine and griefe, that he had no ſtrength to execute his beauie blow. When the Gyaunt felt this great harme, he let loſe his holde from the maſe with his left hand, and clapped it vnto his face. The new knight, who receiued no griefe at his extremitie, but waying the neceſſitie into which he was driuen, for lacke of a weapon, but ſeing the Gyant occupyed in feeling of his face, and wringing his bodie at the griefe thereof, he did procure to winne from him his maſe, and giuing a contrarie leap, as the Dunce doth when ſhe is oppreſſed by the hunter, layed holde on the maſe, and pulled it, giuing ſo ſtrong and wilie a turne, being done with ſo great ſwiftneſſe, that he was conſtrained to let it loſe out of his hand. The Gyant when he ſaw that he had loſt his maſe, and that it was in the power of his enimie, preſſed vnto him for to catch him betweene his armes, but this new knight, who was nothing deſirous of ſuch imbracing, defended himſelfe from the ſame by putting himſelfe on ẏ one ſide, and as the Gyant paſſed by, he ſtroke him with that furious maſe ſo terrible a blow on the backe, that he made him to go forwards ſpite of his teeth, which made him forget to deſire anie more to come to wraſtle. So when the Gyant had ſtretched himſelfe vpright, he drew out his broad and ſharpe ſword, and with a gallant demeanour, his ſword all aloft, he preſſed vnto the new knight, who was with his maſe readie at his ſtanding, abiding his comming. The new knight did firſt diſcharge his blow, for that he might ſtrike him a farre of, and chaunced with one of the balls to hit him vpon the left arme, with ſo ſtrong a blowe, that the bone of the wriſt he brake in peeces, which made the Gyant to loſe his furious blowe. Who were nowe able to declare the greate furye and outragiouſneſſe of this fierce Gyant: there was neuer furie ſo fierce, nor the ſwift wind of Aeolus in the cloſe and narrowe caues of the mountaines, as the Gyant was at that time, without hauing anie regarde vnto the dammage which a lyttle before hée had receiued, but flouriſhing aloft with

his

his great sword, he says: O vile knight, I tell thee that ther is no Gods in the heauen, no, on the earth, or sea, that shall haue anie power to deliuer thee frõ me. This warlike knight answered: Thou vncurteous and vnreasonable Gyant, hold thy peace, and speake no such blasphemies, but do what thou canst, and then thou shalt see how little thou art worth, and of what small estimation, and therewith he lift vp his mace and returned vnto his former and furious battaile. Here I doe now lacke a sharpe and prompt vnderstanding, for to set forth at large, and with sweete and delicate reasons, that it might be delightfull vnto the readers, the great courage and strength which that strong warriour did shew, and the great hast and speed he vsed against his furious enimie, laying on him with that great mace, which alwaies oppressed him with those great and beauie blowes, in such sort, that it hurt and wounded him verie much. And here I do giue you to vnderstand, that the fiercenesse and furie of this battaile was such, that the author durst not declare at large the great valiantnesse therein vsed, for that he stood in doubt of his owne vnderstanding, to declare it effectually as it passed, therefore he doth omit the declaring thereof, but that these two strong and stout warriours were two houres together, striking and hurting the one the other, and each of them shewing ỹ greate stoutnesse, strength, and courage of their hearts, and wer both kindled in so much wrath and ire, that more by strength then by policie, they defended themselues, either of them procuring to ouercome his aduersarie. So at this time the fierce Gyant stroke his enimie such a terrible blow, which chanced glancing vpon his healme, and descended downe with so greate a sound vpon his left shoulder (that if it had not bene by the greate vertue which his armour had, being made by ỹ wise inchaunter) the hardnesse of the stele would lyttle haue profited but that he shoulde haue cut him, with all that parte of the bodie downe to the waste, nevertheless the strength of the blowe was such, and put him to so much paine, that the Prince felte himselfe to bee verie euill therof, insomuch that it did depriue him at that time of his strength, that he

which thou bidſt me to take, I doe not deſire it, neither I will not take it, but rather I will thée that thou make thy ſelfe readie for thy defence, and procure if thou canſt to driue me out of the field, and when thou haſt ouercome me and got the victorie, then maiſt thou make thy combat with ý other ninetie and nine. And with this he did put himſelfe a parte, ſhaking his ſword with a meruailous good grace. When the Gyant ſawe this, in manner of mocking he ſayd: Go get thée hence thou vile thing, and take vnto thée the fauour and aide which I doe will thée, and doe not thinke that thou ſhalt obtaine of me ſo honourable an end, to be ſlaine of me in equall battaile. Héere this new knight by anie meanes coulde not ſuffer his outragious arrogancie, but ſayd vnto him: Thou cruell tyrant, ſubiect to all pride, defend thy ſelfe, and leaue off theſe reuilinges and boaſtes. And in ſaying theſe wordes the Prince preſſed to the Gyant, and ſtroke at him ſo ſtrong a blow vpon one of his thighs, that his ſtrong armour did falciſſe, and he made a little wound, out of the which iſſued very much bloud. When this infernall monſter felt himſelfe thus hurt, and ſéeing that he made little account of him, but rather deſpiſed his wordes, without anie more tarrying, he lift vp a verie heauie maſe of yron, which was greate and long, and had hanging at the ende thereof fiue balles of ſtéele, each of them hanged by a ſtéele chaine of greate ſtrength. The king Delfo was meruailouſly troubled, when he ſawe the deformed weapon which was raiſed in the aire, making a greate noiſe, and with greate furie readie to be diſcharged vpon the head of this warlike knight, who when he ſaw it comming, with his accuſtomed lightneſſe did procure to deliuer himſelfe from ſo horrible a blowe, and in ſuch ſort it came, that all thoſe fiue balls fell together on the ground, at which fall by reaſon of the great waight of the maſe, he was conſtrained to fall forwards with the blowe. The Prince which at that time was not without care, but ſéeing him in that ſorte, hée ſtepped quickly vnto him, & ſtroke him ſo mightie and great a blow vpon his ſtrong helme, ý with ý great ſtrength wherwith it was giuen, did conſtraine the gyant by pure force to

put

put both his hands on the ground, but straight waie he arose againe, and lift vp his monstrous weapon, and stroke at him another terrible blowe, the knight woulde once againe haue clæred himselfe from that blow, but he could not do it, but ỹ one of those balls did glaunce vpon the visour of his helme, in such sorte, that it made him to giue thræe or foure steps backwards, he was so amazed, wherewith he was readie to fall downe, which without all doubt he had, if that he had not laboured to staie himselfe by falling forwards, with his hands to the ground, the which was not so quickly done, and he recouered, but that the Gyant had his mase in the aire ready to strike him againe, but hauing time, he clæred himselfe thereof, so that he stroke that blow in vaine, wherewith the prince fastned so mightie a blow at the Gyant vpon his backe, that he made him to fall forwards with his hands vpon ỹ earth, he had not so sone giuen him that blow, but straight way he gaue him the second vpon his helme, that without fœling he made him to fall againe vpon his hands, with both his knees to the ground. The Princes sword was not so fine & strong to suffer so great strokes, but broke in pæces with those terrible blowes, which was the occasion that as then the battel was not finished. So the Prince when he saw himselfe without his sword, thought it best to withdrawe himselfe backe, and the Arginarian king when he beheld himselfe so vsed, giuing terrible rorings, he arose vp, so that he made all ỹ earth to shake, and when he was on foote he lift vp the visor of his helme for to take aire: likewise he lift vp his great mase, and went towards the Prince for to strike him, this inuincible knight when he sawe himselfe without anie weapon for to make his defence against so terrible an aduersarie, who had lifted vp his armes aboue his head with his mase in his handes aloft for to strike him, and for that he knewe verye well that the small pæce of his sword which did remayne in his hande was but little availeable, hæ determined straight wayes to throwe it at him, and in the throwing of it his fortune was so good, that before thy Gyaunt coulde let his armes descende with that furious blowe,

to praise thy selfe, in saying that by a disgrace I did subdue thee. Therefore now doe what thou canst do, for to defend thy selfe. The Gyant without any consideration of the curteste showed him, clasped fast his broad sword, striking a terrible and fearfull blow at the Prince, who by leaping on the one side, caused him to lose his blowe, & stepping on ỹ other side, he gaue him such a stroke vpon the waste, that the harneste broke, and his sword bid it selfe in the Giants flesh, and hurt him very sore, whereat ran out very much blond. When the Giant sawe the great damage that he had done vnto his body by that blowe, he threwe his shield from him, taking fast holde of his great sword in both his hands (and without hauing any power to shunne from it) he stroke the prince such a blow vpon his shield, that he cut it in two peces, and it descended downe vpon his healme with so greate strength and waight, that against his will, it made him to stope with his knees to the ground, and to staye himselfe with one of his hands, because he should not fall downe all together. This diuelish giant, when he saw him in that case, would haue stroke him another blowe: but at such time as he would haue discharged it, this inuincible Knight arose vp with so great wrath, ỹ a thicke smoke came out of his visor, and without any more tarrying, he threw the peece of the shield that remained from him, and with a light leape he ioined with his enemie, and stroke him so horrible and furious a blow vpon his helme, that it did little profite him the strength of the steele, but he cut it in two peces, head & all, and he fell downe to ỹ ground. Oh what great disturbance and feare this vnmeasurable blowe caused vnto all the people, as well to those of the Citie, as to those of the contrary part. But aboue all this, Geredeon was much amazed And with the great anger and wrath which he had to see the two Giants slaine before him, he thrust himselfe amongst all the people, w̃ so great rumour, as when a strong rocke by force of an earthquake, when the fierce and furious winde doth take it, and teare and rent it out of the place and situation, whereas it was wont to stand: and with the terrible &

great noiſe and ſound thereof, not onely all the ſhepheardes and heard men of the field be ſcarred and afraide, but alſo the great blow doth remaine in the aire with a great and rumbling eckoreuen with the like furie this Arginarian king ruſhed amongſt and through his people. Claridiano without ſhewing anie kinde of trouble, did abide his commirg with ſo ſtrong and couragious a heart, as doth the crooked & cragged rocke abide to make defence againſt the force and vnbridled furie of ỹ reſtleſſe Neptune. So with great haſt went the Gyant againſt the new knight, and as he came before him, he coulde not coniecture who or what vntamed young man that ſhould be, for that he neuer at anie time heard anie ſpeaking of him, and with the lyke confuſion he ſayd. Knight, I know not what to ſaye vnto ſo hainous a matter that by thée is committed againſt me, for ſéing thy great boldneſſe which thou haſt had to diſquiet and anger me, it doth cauſe me to procure to haue reuengement of thée. And to the contrarie I ſée thou art one alone knight, and therefore I owe take it for a diſhonour and rebuke to lift vp my furious arme againſt thée. Therfore that which I deſire thée, is this, that thou doeſt returne vnto the citie and cauſe to be gathered together one hundreth of the beſt knights, choſen out from amongeſt the reſt, and ſée that you come ſtraight againe, for that of you all together, I wil take this my deſired reuengement. And yet for all this, I doe tell thée, I ſhall not be ſatiſfied for the great anger & wrath the which I haue againſt thée. Whoſoeuer had bene preſent to haue heard him ſpeake theſe wordes would haue trembled with feare, but hée in whome feare could neuer take place, and one which toke no care nor did not eſtéeme his wordes, ſayde: I doe not knowe wherevppon thou doeſt ſtaye, if thou doeſt meane to take reuengement of him who hath ſo much offended thée, eſpecially hauing him before thée: but thou ſhalt vnderſtande, thou diuelliſh Gyant, that thy furious looke, nor thy beaſtlye body, neither thy monſtrous members, can put me in feare, for ỹ being as thou art, furniſhed wt a cruell heart, & ſo great a friend vnto tyrannie, & héere I tell thée, ỹ the aduauntage

tie king and Lord of Arginaria. The Prince, who by his reaſons was certified that he was not the King, replyed. I am he whom with ſo furious eye thou doſt ſeeke, and if it be ſo that the King hath ſo much anger againſt me, wherefore doth he not come forth in perſon to take reuengement. The Giaunt when he ſawe him ſpeake with ſo bolde a courage, with a diſſembling laughter ſayd. O fole without all wit, haſt thou in ſo little eſtimation that great Geredeon, that he for twentie ſuch Knightes as thou art, ſhoulde arme himſelfe, & come forth to battell, hauing them which can excuſe him thereof: And ſeing that thy great folly is come to this extremitie, I do require thee (that if thou wilt remayne with thy life) that thou doſt leaue thy armour, and yeld thy ſelfe with both thy hands bound behinde thee, and goe and aſke forgiueneſſe of him, that if he will kill thee with his owne hands, thou maiſt account thy ſelfe happy. To whom the Prince aunſwered, Thy counſell doeth not pleaſe me, neither his honour will I receiue: but rather I hope to ſend thee without a tongue before that infernall King, as I ſent Bruno without his teeth. And for y thou ſhalt not haue any more time to ſpeake ſuch folly and fooliſhneſſe, either retourne the way from whence thou cameſt, and repent thy ſelfe of this thou haſt ſayd, or els prepare thy ſelfe to mortal battaile. The Giant when he heard that vnſauorye anſwere which he gaue, he toke vp his ſpeare and put it on his ſholder, which was made faſt in the middeſt of the ſtaffe Warte wiſe, and raiſed himſelfe in his ſtirrops, and threw it at the Prince with ſo great fury, that by the force therof, he hoped to haue concluded that enterpriſe. But this new Knight ſeing the ſpeare comming, he put his ſhield before him where on the ſharpe poynt ſtroke, & pearced it through, till it came to his fine and ſtrong armour, whereas it loſt his force: but with the ſtrength wherewith it came, it bowed in ſuch ſort, that it brake in two peeces, without hurting the knight or once mouing him in the ſaddle. This valiaunt and ſtoute Greeke, when he ſaw that in that ſort he would haue ſlaine him, he claſped faſt his ſpeare in his hande after the ſame

maii-

manner, and saide. Tarrie and thou shalt see, whether I can better throw a dart then thou? And therewith he threwe his great speare at the Giant, that without having anye power to defend himselfe from that blowe it pearced his shield, and bored through his armour, and not staieng there, the sharpe poynt passed through his body from the one side to the other taking from him that miserable seule, and the body gaue a terrible fall to the grounde. At all that passed, was present the proud & strong Geredeon, who with an infernall wrath threw fire from him, and in great hast called for his armor: at which time the other giant, brother vnto Belorophonte, no lesse vrefull and furious, whose name was Bolifo, sayde with a great voyce. Sightie Geredeon, and Lorde, let me take this reuengement, for ý of right it appertaineth more vnto me, then vnto thée. And heere I doe promise thée (or els the Gods shall be false in doing iustice, and my strong arme without vertue) that I will take cruell reuengement of that diuell: and so without speaking moe wordes, he went towards the place whereas this new knight was, who without any feare with a great speare in his hand, did tarrie his comming. This Giant who was blinded with his vnreasonable anger without any reasoning, he set spurs vnto his Elephant, and likewise, the new knight set spurres to his horse, and met together in the middest of their course, so that neither of them lost his blowe: but the incounter was with so great force, that the Gyant did pearce through the shæld of the Prince, without doing anie other harme, & the speare shivered all to péeces, but this warlike youth with his speare gaue vnto ý gyant so strong an incounter, ý it perced through his shæld, & made him to fall backwards vpon the crouper of his Elephant, ý he made the great beast to double with his legs, and falling downe he fell vpon one of the giants legs. The Prince when he saw him in ý extremitie, & ý he could not arise, he leapt from his horse wt great lightnes, & did help him to take out his leg from vnder ý Elephant: likewise he did helpe him to arise vpon his féete, and sayd. Doe not thinke Gyant, that thou shalt haue anye occasion

to

and commaunded that all the people ſhould be in a readines. So they put themſelues in a place, whereas they might well ſee, all that Claridiano did.

¶ How that Claridiano went vnto the campe of the King of Arginaria, and how he demanded of him battaile, and of all that ſucceeded in the ſame. Chap. 2.

AS many times the hungrye Lyon doth compaſſe and ſearch the foldes roaring with rauenish hunger, and finding the ſtrayed Goate or Hart, diſcouering them from farre by their hornes, and with a ſouereigne ioye doth lift vp his necke, & neuer reſt vntill ſuch time, as he be mulling in their bloud, with great deſire to ſatiſfie his pining hunger: euen ſo with like deſire went out of Trapobana the Prince Claridiano, till he came in ſight of his aduerſaries, and carried his viſour vp, and putting him ſelfe in place whereas he might be heard of his enimies, he blew his horne, to giue a token that they ſhoulde hearken vnto that which he would ſpeake vnto them, and then with a loude voyce he ſayd. O cruell and tyrannous King, what doſt thou thinke by threatenings to ſhowe thy furie, come forth, and take to thee thy armour, for here doth tarrye and abide thy comming, he that ſtroke out the teeth of thy brother Bruno, & he that not long ſince did teach thy Embaſſador to ſpeake, whom thou ſenteſt this daye with thy proude meſſage. The dogge Cerberus when he was made faſt with Alcides leaſh, did not ſhew himſelfe ſo furious, as did this terrible Giant at that preſent, and riſing vp from the place whereas he was ſet, he turned vnto the Image of Iupiter, vnto whom he had done great ſacrifices, & ſtretching forth his rigorous arme, he toke it from the place whereas it was ſet, and threw it out of the doore of the tent, in ſuch ſort that he made it to flye into the aire, more then ten fadome, with which it fell into the ſea, and he ſaid, Get thee thether

thou

thou God of little valor that being honoured of so valiaunt a man as I am, thou wilt consent that so vile a man (after that he hath angred me so much) should put himselfe with so great pride before my presence. And not content with this, but with the same fury he tooke a great club, and what on the right side, and what on the lefte, he threw downe all the Images of his Gods that were there, and broke them all to peces. One of the ministers that alwayes did assist them in their sacrifices, sayd with a bolde courage. Wherefore do you so cuill intreate and misuse your Gods. The Giaunt stroke him such a blow on the forhead with his fist, that he broke it all to peces and threwe him dead to the ground & sayd. Get thee hence, and goe and make relation vnto Iupiter, and vnto the rest of the Gods, of this greate reprehension that thou hast done me. And loking about, he sawe all the rest of the ministers halfe amazed, without speaking any word, vnto whom he went with great hast, and said vnto them. Vile villaines, what doe you tarry here, why dos you not go after the figure of that God, whom you do worship and honour, and laying on them with his club, he killed fiue of them, and so he would haue done with all the rest if they had not runne away. Then one of the two Giants which were brethren, came vnto the Kings tent, all armed with his strong armour, & mounted vpon a great Elephant and said. Be in quiet my Lord, and abate this thy vnsufferable anger, and I will bring vnto thee straight waye him, who hath bene the occasion of this thy disquietnesse and anger. And without tarrying for any aunswere, he tourned about his great and vnwieldie beast, and went that waye, whereas the Prince was: who when he sawe him so well proportioned and furnished, he had well thought that he had bene the King of Arginaria, as one which had neuer séene any of so mightie a stature, and therewith he put down ỳ visor of his helme, & toke vnto him, a great & knottie speare, purposing not to spend the time in words. Then Belerofonte (for so the Giant was named) sayd. Art thou that bold knight, that with thy dedes hast so cuill angred, that mighe

tie

vnto his Iland, called Bisperia. And he commaunded them to imbarke themselues with great furie, and when they wer all imbarked, he commanded to hoyse vp anker, and to commit their sayles vnto the winde, ẏ which they found prospe-rous, and brought them vnto the Iland of Trapobana, and without any impediment or disturbaunce of them of the Iland, they went a land, and raised vp their tents, and pitched their campe. This fierce king being mounted vpon an Elephant, went with great care and perused all his people, and put them in very good order: so all was apparant and knowen vnto them of the Citie. The King of Trapobana feared much his fierce and cruell aduersary, and so likewise did many of them that were in the Citie: but yet that courageous youth did feare him nothing at all, nor estéemed him any thing, but rather did desire the houre to see himselfe in battaile with him, for to make satisfaction with his déedes & workes, of that which he was in debt vnto his Lord. At such time as the campe was pitched, and all in good order, the radiaunt Phœbus had made an ende of his iourney, leauing in his absence the sadde and darke night. So when time came that he began a new to take his accustomed course, and to show his shining face, dispersing his glittering beames ouer all the Iland, the king of Arginaria called vnto him a trumpetter, and with a furious voyce he sayd. Go thy wayes vnto the Citie, and in such sort as thou thinkest best salute the king Delfo, and tell him on my behalfe, that without anye tarrying or taking farther counsel, he send me him, who did intreate my brother Bruno so euill: and if not, I sweare vnto him by the high Iupiter, that I will do so much that his body shall be made meate vnto dogges. The trumpetter when he had well vnderstode his message, taking libertie of the accustomed pride of his Lord, went with great arrogancie vnto the Citie. The Scowtes when they saw him, let enter into the Cite, and they caried him before the King, before whom when he came, without showing any kinde of humilitie he sayd. The Gods confound thy person & state, and breake downe thy great pride & power: ẏ dreadfull king

of

of Arginaria my Lord, doth send me vnto thee, y when thou hast heard my imbassage, forthwith thou send vnto him that vncurteous knight and of small valour, Who with his proud hand, stroke out the teth of his welbeloued brother Bruno, and thou must send him prisoner and bound before his royall presence, that he may giue him the punishment, that his great boldnesse doth deserue. When this valiaunt Claridiano heard the proud words that the Embassadour brought, and with what arrogancie he deliuered them, he was altogether without patience, and hauing no power to refrayne his wrath, he went vnto him and sayd. Here I do promise thee godman brabler, to giue thee answere according as thou dost bring the imbassage, and it is great reson that we make thy bodye to flye at large, as thou doest cause thy tongue to ronne at libertie, and procure out of hand that thou maist the better leape, to call vnto Mercurie for to sustaine thee, & without any more saying, he toke him by the cholar, & without any power to make resistaunce, he threw him out of a window, letting him fall vpon the pauement, before the pallaice gate, that he broke all in peces, and this being done, without speaking any more word, he went vnto his chamber, and armed him with his armour, with the help of Galtenor his father, for so he alwayes estemed him: but his wrath and anger was such, that neither his father nor the King durst speake a word vnto him, all the time he was arming. And when he was armed, he turned his face vnto the king, and said. Worthy king and my Lord, haue a good confidence in the Gods, and in thy iustice and right, that I shal be he, that shall take away from before thee, this proud enemie of thine. And without any more tarrying he demanded for a horse, so straight way, there was one giuen him of Amore very rich, the which he cast about his necke, and descended the staires out of the Pallaice, where he found a very faire & great horse meruailous wel furnished, & lightly he lept on his back, & with a reasonable pace he rode his waye towards y campe of his enimie, Galtenor & the good king of Trapobana followed him, being armed w very rich armor,

and

great hall, the Prince without drawing his sworde, with a trice ioyned with him, entering in at his left side, & with his fist he stroke him so strong and mightie a blow vpon ỹ mouth that if his hand had ben armed, it had ben the last which the Gyant should haue receiued, yet for all that it did so much harme that his teeth fell out, leauing his mouth all bloudie, & with the great strength of the blow it made him to fall backwards on his backe, and with the great paine which he felt, he scantly knew where he was. The Prince when hée sawe this, stayed without doing anie more harme, for ỹ hée would not disgrace the king, but put himself on the one side: the king did shew himselfe verie much grieued for ỹ he was an Embassadour, for if it had not ben done by him which did it, who so euer els should haue done it, would hardly haue escaped wt out punishment. And for to appease ỹ messenger he arose out of his seat and did helpe to take vp the Gyaunt, & loking toward Claridiano, he sayd: Brother, I would ỹ this thing had not chaunced by thy hands, for that all this harme which you haue done vnto Bruno, is done vnto me & not vnto him. Thẽ this valiant Prince sayd: Hold your peace my Lord, for those vncurteous messengers, & such as do digresse & goe from that which they are commaunded, should not alonely be intreated in this sort, but also lose their liues, and haue their tongues cut out. Bruno did complaine him verie much of the griefe, & seing himselfe without teeth and so dishonoured, he blaspheamed against his Gods, but this inuinsible Greeke made little account of any such thing, but turned himselfe toward Bruno & sayd: Now maist thou returne in the diuells name, & tel thy brother the Prince of pride, that he doth commaund to plaister and cure thy teeth, for that from hence thou goest well cured of thy great folly. Also thou shalt tell him of my parte, that as I haue hurt thée with the strength of my fist, so I will vse him with the sharpe edge of my sworde, gouerned with the selfe same arme that vnto thée hath done this damage. And I doe hoope in such sort to search that proude bodie of his, that all the worlde may take an ensample by him and his pride. Bruno who was at the point of death

with

with the great paine he felt, vnderstood all that was spoken, and without making anie ansvvere, hee went out of the kings Pallaice, and returned vnto his Galleyes where hee was cured, and put his Sailes into the power of the winde, and in a verie short time he arriued at Arginaria, and went a shoare, carrying all his face wrapt and bound with bondes and rowles of linnen cloth, and his mouth all to be plaistred. In this sorte he went and presented himselfe before his brother, and sayd: I haue giuen thy Embassage vnto king Delfo, as thou hast commaunded me, and to giue me ansvvere there arose vp a new and young knight, whom I doe beleeue and as I haue proued the same, that he hath in his bodie all the infernall strength, and in his fistes all the Legyons of diuells that are in hell, as it did appeare by the greate furye wherewith he hurt mee, that he did not onely strike out my teeth, but also threw me to the ground as though I had bene a child. This proud Gyant the king of Arginaria, when hee heard all that his brother had sayd, with a terrible blaring & noise (that he made all the Pallaice to shake) sayde: O vile coward, and is it possible that with fistes lyke a vile villaine he made thee to fall, in such sorte, that thou diddest kisse the ground with thy mouth. Bruno ansvvered: Brother, I dee sweare vnto thee by the high Iupiter, that if thou hadst proued as I haue done the strength of his fistes, thou wouldest not reuile me in this sort. And heere I do giue thee to vnderstand, that he sayd, and bad me in his parte to tell thee, that if from me he hath taken awaie my fore teeth, that he will not onelye take awaie thine, but also thy double teeth and thy life. But when this Arginarian king heard this, hee arose vp and went from him with so much wrath and anger, that he seemed rather a Diuell then a man: and without taking anie farther counsell, he commaunded to assemble all his people together, and that they should bee called with all the speed that possible might bee, and when they were come all together, he found that there were two thousand horse men, and fiue thousand foote men, & made Captaine generall ouer them two Gyants & brothers, ý were Lordes of one Iland, ioyning

within eight dayes they found within the Citie tenne thouſand Knights, meruailouſly well appointed, at the which Claridiano did receiue greate contentment. The ninth daie after that hée was made knight, there was brought newes how that the meſſenger of Arginaria was come a lande: of the which the king béeing aduertiſed, hée ſate himſelfe in his royall ſeate abiding his comming, béeing accompanied with verie rich and well eſtéemed knightes, and on his ryght hand was Claridiano, and on his lefte hande the baniſhed King of Arginaria, and béeing all in this manner as hath béene tolde you, the Embaſſadour Bruno entered into the hall, with a furious countenaunce, and without humbling or making anie kinde of reuerence, he drew nigh vnto the king, and with a wrathfull voyce he ſayde: King, what diuell was that which put it in thy head, to denie that tribute that thou wert wont to giue vnto my mightie brother, and thou doeſt not onely denie it, but I ſée that thou makeſt thy ſelfe in a readineſſe to make reſiſtaunce, for the which héere I doe tell thée, that there is no puniſhment that can make ſatiſfaction of thy boldnes and follie, notwithſtanding if thou wilt cléere thy ſelfe better then thy ouermuch pride doeth deſerue, giue mée ſtraight waye double tribute, of that which thou art bounde to paie, but if thou doeſt it not, by the mightie Gods I ſweare to thée, that he will take of thée and thine reuengement, with ſuch rigor, that the mightie Gods ſhall tremble when they ſée it. All this he ſpake with ſo greate pride and wrath, that it made them all to quake to ſée his furious demeanour, ſaue onely he to whome all the honour of Knighthoode belonged, who did little eſtéeme his vnreaſonable and proude wordes, but with greate ſobrietie he aunſwered. They owe not denie anie thing which they ought for to giue vnto this tyraunt whome thou doeſt name for thy Brother, and although he did loſe the Iſlande that he doeth nowe poſſeſſe, yet ſhoulde hée loſe nothing that hath bene his, for that with tyrannie hée hath vſurped the ſame. Therefore without anie more tarrying, get thée hence and tell thy brother, that the king of Trapobana wil not onely detaine from him

the tribute which hée doth not noz neuer did owe him, but also with armed arme he doth pretend to recouer againe all that which without reason he hath receiued & carried awaie, and he doth giue him to vnderstand, that hæ will not rest till such time as he doth thrust him out of ý Iland, which with so great tyrannie he doth possesse, & from which he depriued my father Galtenor. So w̃ this ans were thou maist returne vnto him who sent thæ hether, wout anie hope of other. The giant stood & did behold him very much, & with a fearful countenance his eies turned into a sanguin coulour, & laughing oz smiling in manner of mocking, he said: I sæ without anie outward proofe, but onely by thy foolish wozdes, that thou art but a young and new made knight, & as such a one I wil excuse & intreate thæ: & if my comming hether were not mozo foz a messenger, then foz a warriour, foz this thy boldnesse which thou dost shew, I would vse thæ in such sozt, ý thy answere shuld little auaile thæ, & yet I should remaine satisfied of all ý anger which thou hast caused me to haue. The prince Claridiano when he heard that with so great disdaine he was reuiled, with as much anger he went towards him, and with an altered voice he sayd: By all the Gods that are in heauen I sweare vnto thæ, if I did not consider & respect the curtesie which is due and ought to be shewed to Embassadours, I would bereaue thæ of this thy brauerie, in such sozt, ý when thou art before such a king as now thou art, thou shouldest bridle thy tongue, & euer after haue in remembraunce ý punishment ý I would giue thæ, but not respecting thy follie, but onely my estate, I will stay my selfe from correcting of this thy ouermuch pride. The wzath of this Gyant was so much, whẽ he heard himself so reuiled, ý he could not by anie meanes refraine himselfe, but layd hand on his swozd, and went towards the Prince Claridiano, and threatened him with a very mightie and strong blow, striking at his head. The prince when he saw the blow comming, retired with a light leape, which was ý occasion ý he failed of his blowe, & by reason of the great strength wherwith it was stroke, the swozd fell out of his hands, and flew along the flooze of the

Galtenor had the Prince in his armes, who receiued such ioy to see his great beautie, fayre bodie, and good disposition, that hee was blinded therewith, and hauing the Prince Claridiano in his armes, he forgot himselfe that hee was before the king, and the king seeing him in that traunce, procured to take him out of his armes, then he lyke a man awaking out of a slumber, returned vnto the king and sayde. Most mighty Lord, the great contentment that I do receiue at the sight of this young man, hath caused me to forget to bee in thy presence, and I did occupie my senses in such sort, that I coulde not doe that which I am bound by duetie to do. O king thou maist account thy selfe for happie, for that thou hast obtained so much fauour, as to bring vp so gentle a youth, worthie to be had in as much reuerence as the mightie Iupiter, and turning vnto the king he sayd: There commeth a messenger frõ Arginaria, with a message nothing profitable, therefore good king, it doth stand you in hand for to make in a readinesse all your power, and to suffer the furious warre that is ordeined against you. Heere my Lorde, I doe certifie thee, that it had bene the more to haue bene feared, if thou haddest found thy selfe without this young man in thy companie, who is the flower of all men. The king when he heard these newes could not but receiue some alteration, and it was in such sort, that he was constrained to sit downe to talke with Galtenor, and sayd: If I weare by God my friend, seeing it is so, let your discreation remedie that, which mine is not able to comprehend, that wee fall not into the power of so cruell an enimie. Claridiano who was verie attentiue vnto that which Galtenor had tolde vnto the king, and lykewise vnto the answere which ỳ king made, kneeled downe on both his knees, and with greate humilitie hee desired the king to graunt him two things, the which he wold aske, the which the king by the counsell of Galtenor did graunt, and did lift him vp from the grounde imbracing him verie louingly. The Prince Claridiano seeing that he had graunted it him, hee sayde. My Lorde, the first thing that you shall doe for mee, is, that you giue vnto mee forthwith the order of knighthode.

And

and the second is, that you do giue me license to answere the messenger of Arginaria. It grieued the King very much, for that he had graunted him these two things, for that he did well vnderstand his intent: but seeing that he could do no otherwise, he was content. Great pleasure receiued Galtenor, to see with what good grace, Claridiano did aske these two things of the king, and for to put away part of that discontentment which they should receiue at the messengers hand, he tolde vnto them some pleasaunt and ioyfull deuices. So straight way it was accorded, that Claridiano shoulde that night watch his armour, the which was giuen him by Galtenor. They were all white, and bespangled with twinkling starres of golde, and his shield was also all white, and in it one onely Luzero, which did occupie all ỹ whole shield, all garnished with fine pearles, that it made them that did loke on it, almost to lose their sight, the brightnesse was so great that procéded from them, and they were such, that no Lorde in all the worlde had the like. When this famous youth was armed with them, the delight was so much, that the king Delfo receiued to see him so well set and so gallant, that he could not refrayne but distill some salt teares from his eyes for very ioye, and sayd. My brother heere I do desire the soueraigne Gods, that they make me so ioyful with thy good fortune, as I am now at thy sight. The prince did watch his armour that night, and the next daye with great solemnitie, he was armed Knight, and gaue that daye many and great gifts. In the afternoone was ordained great Justings and daunces of all sorts, of very faire Ladyes and damosells, which the King had commaunded to come together for the same effect. But they who did most participate of all these pleasures and pastimes, was the heroycal young man, and his nourse, whom he toke to be his mother. So that in the Kings Pallace, there was no other thing but feasts and pastimes, tarrying for the Embassadour that shuld come: and they of the Citie had care in the fortifieng of the same, as well with victualls, as repayring the wals, and putting all the people in good order, in such sorte, that

forge, for to animate his artificers with his rough and hastie callings, that they might with more furie moue and strike those restlesse hammers, vpon the laboured and well beaten Anfield. At that time did the mightie & prudent Pallas spread abroade her streamers (with a peaceable blast, holpen by the fresh Fauonio or west winde) ouer the great and renowmed Iland of Trapobana, the heroycall sonne of that renowmed Alfebo, or knight of the Sunne, nephew vnto the magnanimous Emperour Trebatio, being in the same (as it was told you in the first part of this historie) who was nourished and brought vp vnder the power of the king Delfo, excelling in all beautie and fayreneſſe, so much as euer nature bestowed on anie humane creature, there lacked nothing in him but onely the knowledge of Iesus Christ, for in that hee was brought vp amongest Pagans he knew him not. Hee was so indued with vertue and mightinesse of courage, that the wise Lyrgandeo thought it best to holde his peace and to bee in quiet, referring himselfe vnto his workes, as in the processe hereof you shall vnderstand, wherefore he will saie little at this time, but onely he was one that God had indued with many graces and good gifts, that the Pagans did account him to be one of their Gods. The king Delfo did make so much of him, that he would not at anie time let him departe one minute from him. He brought him vp with greate maiestie vntill he came to foureteene yeares of age, and at that time whosoeuer had loked on him, wold haue iudged him to haue ben of more yeares (according vnto the high stature of his bodie,) for there was no knight, although he had bene a gyant, that could be equall with him, not only in his height, but also he was so well set and knit, & double membred, conformable. At which time this great Giant vsurper of ỹ great Argiharia (when he sawe himselfe so mightie a Lord) his pride so much increased, that he was not content with that Iland which with so great peace & quietnesse he did possesse, but couetousnesse increased so much in him, that he likewise would be Lord & ruler ouer other kings & Princes, whose countries were adiacent, wherefore he determined to take into his pow-

er

er the Iland of Trapobana, & had no sooner thought thereon, when straight waies he woulde put his desire in practise, taking for his quarrell ý he had denied their tribute which they were wont to pay him, and so without anie more counsell he commaunded to call vnto him a brother of his, a mightie giant (although nothing so strong as he himselfe,) and when he came before him, with a proude and terrible voice, and with a great maiestie he sayd: Bruno, take vnto thee two galleyes, & let them be meruailously well furnished, & go thou by force of winde, smiting the sailes, & likewise by good gouernment that they may make the better diligence for thy nauegation, being holpen wt those knottie oares, to cut by force those deep waters, not taking anie rest, till such time as thou art a land at Trapobana, or wheresoeuer the king Delfo is, vnto whom without anie humilitie thou shalt say from me: That seeing his hardinesse hath bene such, to denie me that which the Gods (if they did reigne or dwell on the earth) were bound to giue me, if he doe not now send it me with a new confirmation of his subiection, that by the omnipotent Iupiter I doe sweare, to giue him such correction, that when it is heard throughout the worlde, they shall all tremble & shake. This Pagan and youthfull gyant without anie more tarrieng prepared for this his departure. Of all this that had past was Galtenor aduertised by his learning, & hauing wel vnderstood the whole secret, it moued him in great hast to cause a cloud to descend out of the aire, into the which he did put himselfe, wherein he was carried in verie short time to the Citie of Trapobana, and without giuing knowledge to anie person he went vp into the kings Pallaice, whereas he founde the king and the Prince walking vp and downe in the hall, talking of matters of pleasure, who with the good entering of Galtenor hadde their ioye and delight doubled. The king shewing greate mirth and pleasure, did aske him, saying: What is the occasion of this your comming, my good friend, vnthought or vnlooked for, it cannot be without some newe and straunge thing. In the meane time whilest the king was speaking these and such lyke wordes,

And the Emperour went to take his horse, carrying with him the king of Lacedemonia, who carryed his healme, and the Prince Claueryndo who carryed his sheild, & his speare the Prince of Hungaria carryed. And when they went forth of the gates of the Pallaice, they beganne to sound a greate number of instruments, which indured till such time as they were entered into the field, whereas he put on his healme, and the rest of his armour giuen him which these Princes did carrie. So with a gallant demeanour he put himselfe on the one part of the field, awaiting a token or signe that shuld be giuen them. So it was not long after that the Prince Bargandel did sound a Clarion the which he had in his hand, at the sound whereof they ranne one against another with great furie, and in the middest of their course they gaue such incounters with their Speares, not missing of their blowes, but it was with so great force that they brake all to small peces, and without doing anie harme the one vnto the other they passed along, and straight wayes turned their horses about with their swords in their handes. The Moze when he sawe that the Emperour remained in his saddle, hee was ashamed, for that he did beleeue that onely with one blowe with his Speare to make an end of all that worke, his force and strength was such: And as you doo see a fierce Lyon constrained by hunger to goe out of her caue, and followeth her praie with great desire to fill her paunch, euen so and rather with more furie went this Pagan, & casting his sheeld at his backe, he griped his sword in both his hands, raising himselfe in his stirrops, he streke such a blowe that whether he would or not, he made the Emperour to fall downe vpon his horse necke, and was so without remembraunce that he made his sword fall out of his hands and hang by ẏ chaine, and his armes hung so lose as though he had bene dead, and his horse was so afraide that a while he went about the field. The Moze had well thought that the Emperour had bene dead, and stode still and sayd. Well, I doe beleeue Emperour that thy promise shall be in vaine, and mine shall fal out true. At that time the Pagan spoke the truth, for that

the

the Emperours promise did not fall out true: so straight way he came againe to himselfe, and saw that he was so ill intreated with one blow alone, he turned and recouered his sword with great ire and wrath, he threw his shield at his backe, & foamed at the visour of his helme with verie wrath that he had, euen as an arow driuē out of a bow by ỹ hands of a Sirian, so he pressed himselfe vnto the Moze & sayd: Tarrie thou diuelliſh Pagan, tarrie, for here I do promise thee that by one blow alone I will take awaie thy life, for that thou with one blow diddſt depriue me of my vnderſtanding. And thus my rude pen waxing wearie, and verie desirous to take his ease, as also my hand being gouerned by that Nymph Caliope, causeth me to make an end of this first parte, for that in the second part hauing refreshed my selfe and gotten newe courage, I may goe tearing of the skies and the troublesome waues, not resting till I come into those concauits, where as Vulcan doth commaund the Cyclopes hammers for to giue a new aduise vnto this workman which never will be wearie, and that he be in a readi[illegible]e ioyntly with fierce Mars, to assist me to declare the new deeds and acts of knighthood, contained in the second booke of this part.

The end of the first booke of the second part of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

The second Booke of the second part of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Of the Prince Claridiano, & how the king of Arginaria sent his brother to the king of Taprobana, and of all that happened to the messenger with the Prince. Chap. 1.

AT that time as the warlike Moze, in the supremacie of his triumph and power, had blased his famous feates of warres, most worthie of memorie, and causing that actiue Vulcan (onely for his contentment) shoulde double the smithly rumour of his

gainſt my ſelfe. The Knight who was very attendaunt to all that the Emperour ſayd, and ſaw that licenſe was granted him to aſke at his pleaſure, he ſayd. O mightie Prince I would to God that my demaund were not that which it is, that without it I might inioye and comfort my ſelfe in beeing in your company, and the more that I doo certifie my ſelfe of thy vertue, I doo finde my ſelfe the more troubled, meruailing, how that in ſo noble a perſon, ſhould remaine ſo great naughtineſſe, as that which thou didſt vſe with the Queene of Tinacria, who comforting & refreſhing thee, when thou arriuedſt there in great pouertie and diſtreſſe, in the ende, thou didſt leaue her very ſorrowfull and made a mock of her. Looke well vnto it Emperour, for that thou canſt not make ſatisfaction for ſo great a fault, neyther will ſhee take any of thee, except it be with ſending thy head, I will not that thou makeſt any amends, but that for her, I doo deſie thee to mortall battaile, onely thy perſon and mine together, that I may fulfill the promiſe that I haue made vnto her: and if it ſo fall out that Fortune be to me contrary, I will remaine for the payment of my follye, with my heade cut from my ſhoulders. And with this he helde his peace: and loking on the one ſide and on the other, very ioyfull to ſee ſo goodly a company of Knights as was at ỳ time with the Emperour, he expected his aunſwere. The Emperour who well vnderſtoode his reaſons, without ſhowing any alteration in his countenaunce, aunſwered. I doo not knowe whether my aunſwere ſhall be ſufficient for to excuſe the fault, which the Queene without all reaſon doth burden me with. For the which, valiant Knight, I wold, as the Queene hath tolde you the little reaſon that I had, ſo ſhe ſhuld haue tolde you the great reaſon I had to doo that which I did. Heere I doo certeſſe thee that my thought doth not deſerue, that ſhe ſhould be vnto me ſo cruell, nor extend ſo farre, for to deſire my death. And certainly in this, the Queene hath no reaſon, for that the head of Trebatio, maye doo her more ſeruice liuing, then it can doo being dead: but ſeeing it is her will, Heere I doo tell thee, that ſo long as I doo liue, I will

practise no other thing but onely to pacifie her, and so lykewise will I procure to keepe and defende my head, and not onely mine owne, but also the heads of those which at her commaundement do come, thinking to take away mine: & in this she shal vnderstand how much I am desirous to serue her. The battaile heere I doe graunt it vnto thee, and if thou wilt, let it be out of hand, and heere I doe promise thee Knight to procure to keepe my head, and likewise to keepe thine. Oh how the Moore found himselfe troubled, when hee heard the Emperours answere, and the little reckoning that he made of the battaile, and somewhat touched in pride, hee replyed and sayd. I know well Emperour, that the greate cõfidence which thou hast in thy self, maketh thee to esteeme little of the King of the Garamantes whom thou hast in thy presence: but I doe hope and trust in Mahomet, that before one hower when we are in the field, to make thee to lose thy confidence. And in saying these words, he went downe out of the Pallaice, and leapt vp vpon his horse, and went into the fielde, which was right agaynst the Pallaice, ordayned for such like occasions. The Emperour demaunded for his armour, and called for that with the starres, the same which the Queene Garrofilea gaue him. So in a trice he was armed, not without many teares of the Empresse, who sayd. Ah my Lord I do well vnderstand, that of so long absence, there can grow nothing but great troubles, as doth appeare by this sodaine battaile. The Emperor not letting her to go forwards with her talke, but casting both his armes about her necke, and with shewe of great loue, he sayd. Thou my Lady and Empresse wert the occasion of all that euill, for if it had not bene onely for the losse of thy sight, I vowe that thy Emperour would first haue dyed the death, then merited the name to be disloyall. And that in not fulfilling her intent, there should not onelye haue happened one euill, but a great number. So it was Gods will that I shuld escape out of the battaile, as more at large I will tell you, having more leasure. And in this manner hée departed from the Empresse, leauing her verie sadde and sorrowfull.

And

Then this weake knight ſomewhat lifting vp his eyes, and ſeeing himſelfe in the armes of Roſicleer, and vnderſtanding that the battaile was finiſhed, to the honour of his Lady and miſtreſſe, with a feeble & fainting voice he ſayd: Ah my Lord, and perfect friend, heere may you ſee how contrarie fortune hath bene vnto me, in that ſhe woulde not conſent that I ſhuld reioyce in ỹ triumph of this victorie: it doth not greeue me to die, for that it is in defending the right of her whom I beſt loued. There is nothing that doth greeue me ſo much, as that I cannot obtaine the reward I loked for. Heere I do deſire thee my Lord, that by you ſhe may vnderſtand of all this my paine: and doe my heartie commendations vnto that my great deſired Archi. Heere he could not make an ende to ſpeake her name, but yelded vp the Ghoaſt, his vnfortunate bodie remaining in the armes of the Prince, and with great weeping he turned vnto the people that were there, and ſayd. O you knights and Gentlemen of Lyra, how deerely is this your libertie bought, for in the recouerie thereof was ſlaine the beſt knight in all Aſia. Then he ſeeing that there was no remedie for the harme that was done, he commaunded that hee ſhould be carryed vnto the pallaice, and by the agreement of all the nobles he was buried in that place whereas the kings of Lyra were accuſtomed to be buried. So when Roſicleer had ſeene the funerall of his friend, he would ſtaie no longer in that kingdome, but by the conſent of all that were preſent, he left the gouernement in the power of a worthie knight and noble gentleman of the realme, and toke his oth that ſtraight waie they ſhould ſurrender it to their queene & Ladie. And therewith he departed out of the Citie, & when he came vnto the water ſide, and woulde haue entered into the ſhip in the which he came, he ſawe nigh vnto it the barke wherein he was wont to trauaile, and conſidering ỹ it ſhould not be there without occaſion, without anie more deliberation he entered into the ſame, who ſtraight waie beganne to moue her ſelfe with her accuſtomed furie, and ſo without tarrying in anie place, he trauailed fiue dayes & fiue nightes, in the end of ỹ which the Barke brought her ſelfe a ground

in

into a faire wide and sandie Baie, whereas he sawe vppon the shoare manie knightes which made battaile against one alone knight. The Prince seeing all that passed, with great anger he went out of the Barke to helpe him, who with great courage and pollicie did defend himselfe, whereas now we will leaue them, and returne vnto Grecia for to make an ende of our first part. You doe well remember how that the knight with the Emperiall head, when he sawe himselfe cleere of that blow which the Queene of Lyra gaue him, put himselfe into the forrest, euen vnto the thickest of it, and did not determine to goe to the Court at Constantinople, about a certaine demaund which he came to make, till such time as all ý knights and the rest of the people were in quiet. When he thought that it was time, he went vnto the Court and asked for the Emperours pallace, when he came thether, he alighted from his horse and went vp into the great hall whereas the Emperour was, with all them of his Court, exercising courtly pastimes and pleasures, and without making anye reuerence hæ went vnto the place whereas the Emperour was, and he sayd: God and noble Emperour of Grecia, this speake I for a truth (according vnto that which I haue heard reported of thæ) that thou art one of those Princes that doth maintaine all iustice and equitie. The subiects and vassalls doe not alone make this report, but all the world is ful of it. And (as I vnderstand) although it be euen against thy owne person, yet thou wilt not let to doe that which is right, iustice being demaunded of thæ. wherfore I doubt not but vnto me shall be graunted lisence hære in thy Countrie to put a demaund vnto whom it shall thinke me best, certifieng thæ that it shall be a iust thing. The Emperour who knew him by the deuice that he had on his shield, that it was he which made the battaile with the Queene of Lyra, with a sober countenaunce he sayd: knight, although my fame be not such as you haue hære published, yet demanding any of this with equitie (as you doe certifie me you will) I cannot but graunt it vnto thæ. And therefore hære I doe giue thæ lisence that thou maist propone all that thy pleasure is, although it be a-

gainst

at libertie of your former promiſe, with condition that you ſhall goe and tell her, that ſhe ought to ſend Knights of great prowesſe and ſtrength, and not ſuch as you are. Then Roſicleer ſayd, Thou art very much deceiued Giant, in ỹ thou ſaiſt, for we did very well knowe with whome we ſhoulde haue battayle, and were fully informed thereof, and purpoſe to take the head from thy body, in ſatiſfaction of thoſe treaſons which thou doſt vſe. The anger and yre of the Giant was ſuch, that without any more tarrying, with great fury he turned about his horſe, and his father did the like, ỹ two Knights alſo did the ſame. And when they were right the one againſt the other, at the ſound of ſundry inſtruments of warres, they ranne the one againſt the other, in ſuch ſorte, that not one of them miſſed his blowe, but made the ſhiuers of the ſpeares to flye in very ſmall pæces in the aire, without receiuing any griefe. So they altogether returned with their ſwords in their handes. Roſicleer encountered with Bulfar, for that he found him next at hand, and preſſing vnto him, he ſtroke at him very great and heauie blowes, and the Gyant rendered him the like. With no leſſe furie preſſed Brandimardo againſt his enimie, making a very furious & well foughten battaile. At this time, the fierce Bulfar ſæing the great reſiſtance of his aduerſarie, threw his ſhæld at his backe, and his ſonne Mandroco did the like, & both together they ſtroke ſuch blowes at the knights, that without fæling it cauſed the horſe of Roſicleer to giue a tourne in the place, and the like happened vnto Brandimardo. Were his vnhappy fortune would, that his horſe ſhould carrie him thether, whereas Bulfar was, who aſſailed him at his eaſe on ỹ one ſide, and ſtroke at him with both his hands ſuch an vnmercifull blowe, that lighting vpon his helme, which was nære hand as hard as a Diamond he cut it iountly with his head, and being very ſore hurt this vnhappie Knight fell downe to the ground, at ſuch time as the Prince was ſetling himſelfe vpon his horſe, & ſæing Brandimardo downe, & ſo much bloud running from his head, he did verely beleæue that hæ was dead. Wherewith his rage was ſo much, that the fire

came forth at his visor, and setting spurres to his mightye horse, he made him to moue like the winde, and said with a loude voyce.

O vile beastes, that so villanously haue slaine him, who is more worth then both of you. Here I vow sweare vnto you by the liuing God to force my power in such sort, that onely w̄ two blowes I will send you vnto hell, which is your habitation, & therwith he came vnto Mandroco, who likewise came towards him, & stroke him such a blow vpon the helme, that the strength thereof little prefited him, for by the fory of his arme he parted it in two pæces together w̄ the head, so that the Giant fell down dead to the ground, & by reason of his great waygbt, ꝯ fall seemed almost to shake the earth. The Gyant Bulfar when he sawe his sonne dead, with so desperate a blow, roaring out against his Gods, he lifte vp his sword to strike the Prince: but he, who had as much pollicie as prowes, spurred his horse a litle forwards, & with a furious leape he cleared himselfe from that blow, and finding himselfe on the lefte side of Bulfar, he threw at him so terrible a foyne, that his harneste deceiued him, and his sword entered into his body vp to the hilts, and at the pulling of his sword out, he drew out therewith his infernall soule, and he fell downe dead to the grounde. Then when the people sawe the good successe that their desires had, they began to crye out with mightie voyces, saying: Libertie, Libertie, and ranne vnto the Prince, some kissing his handes, some his skirtes of Maile, and some his fæte, in such sorte they pressed on him that he coulde scantly stirre himselfe, but by reason of the greate griefe and sorowe which he had for his friend Brandimardo, who coulde not receiue anie pleasure at all in this high and mightie victory: and without any care thereof, he alighted from his horse, and went vnto him, and toke off his healme, and lifting vp his head vppon his knees, he called for a linnen cloath, the which was straygbt wayes giuen him, wherewith he wiped and made cleane his face which was of a wanne colour.

Then

which was brought thether for her, likewiſe the two Nimphes vpon two white Palfraies, which was likewiſe brought for them, and ſo they toke their waye towards the ſea, without any remembraunce of all that which ſhée had ſéene, neither did ſhe thinke of it, till ſuch time as ſhe didde ſée the perfect figure of that Knight, which ſhe ſawe in ỹ hal, as ſhall be tolde you héereafter. So in great haſt this quéene and her Nimphes trauayled till they were all imbarked in their Barke, whereas they found in the one part thereof very rich roabes. The making and faſhion of them, and all the reſt that happened ſhall be tolde you, when time ſerueth: and let vs now returne vnto the reſtoring of the kingdome of Lira, which coſt the Prince Brandimardo full déere.

¶ How the famous Roſicleer and Brandimardo went to the kingdome of Lira, and of all that had paſſed in the battaile they had with the Giaunts. Cap. 29.

YOu doo well remember, how that the worthy Roſicleer, and that gallant and newe Louer Brandimardo, trauayled by ſea, towards the kingdome of Lira, to make battaile with the Gyants, that had vſurped the kingdome. The time & winde was ſo proſperous vnto them, that in a ſhort ſpace they arriued, & toke land in the hauen of the great citie of Lira, without any contradiction. And when they were a lande, they determined to ſende a Page to demaund ſafeconduct of the Giants, giuing them to vnderſtand of their comming. This gallant louer would néedes be the meſſenger, and therewith mounting vpon a very faire horſe, he entered into the Citie, and ſtayed not till he came vnto the Pallayce of the Gyants, but went aſking where there abiding was. And ſtraygbt way they were giuen to vnderſtande thereof by a Knight, which ſayde, that there was a ſtrange knight which did demaund after them, & comming before them, without ſhowing anye humilitie or ſtooping downe his head, he ſayd, Giants, ther are two knights come

into

into the hauen of Lira, to defend the right of the Quene Archisilora, and they doe send vnto you to aske safeconducte, for that they may not be disturbed by any person in these kingdomes but only your selues, who do pretend by might to make you to acknowledge your euill and naughtinesse. Then Mandroco, who had lesse patience then the other, said. I dos not know wherefore these vnfortunate knights will occupy themselues in profering to defend that, which manye other would haue done, and yet were neuer able. Goe thy wayes, and tell them that they make no tarying to come and receiue their death. Brandimatdo, who well behelde theyr fierce disposition, sawe that it was no time to spend woordes in waste, but to put in practise the execution of ý, which they came for, and without any replying vnto their woords, he returned vnto the place whereas he lefte the Prince, vnto whom he declared all that had past. So without any more a doe Rosicleer leaped vpon his mightie horse, and they laced and made fast their helmes, and hanged their shieldes about their neckes, and toke each of them a great speare in theyr hands, and put themselues into the Citie, and rested not till they came into the broad place, which was right against the Pallayce. Their comming thether was at such time as Bulfar and Mandroco came forth of the Pallaice, all ready and prepared for the battaile, and brought in their companye a great number of Knights. At that time the place was very full of people, who desired secretly in their hearts, that the straunge Knights might winne the victory, that they might be cleare and at libertie from that great subiection, in the which the Gyaunts helde them: the which they thought to be almost impossible, considering the great worthinesse and strength that was in the giants. And when they wer altogether in ý place, Mandroco with a milde voice sayd: Miserable knights, at such time as you offred your persõs vnto ý quene Archisilora, with whom did you thinke to haue battaile, that you gaue credite, supposing your selues to haue sufficient force to execute your wils. Wherfore if you do now thinke your selues deceiued, we shall be here content to set you

vnto anie other: come on Ladie and reioyce thy ſelfe in the ſight of that which hereafter ſhall come to paſſe, without all doubt. And in ſaying theſe wordes ſhe carried her in at the ſame doore whereas ſhee came forth in great haſt, for that ſhee did knowe the tenderneſſe of her heart which was moued by the lamentation ſhee heard, and there ſhewed vnto her greate riches and verie faire buildinges, but eſpecially ſhee carryed her into a verie faire and foure ſquare Court, which had at euerie corner foure pillers, and vpon the toppe of eyther of them an Image, meruailouſly wrought, and euerie one of them had his title written what it did ſignifie, and ſhee tolde her that thoſe which ſhee had ſhewed her, were kings and Princes, and famous Lordes, that were there inchaunted. And how that all that ſhould be made fruſtrate by one of the beſt knightes in all the world, who ſhall bring for his deuice blaſed on his ſhelde, a braunch of golde, ſignifieng the ſame which ſhe ſawe in the firſt Court, in the which was inchaunted the Emperour of Aegypt. Likewiſe he ſhall deliuer the daughter of the ſayd Emperour, whome hee ſuppoſeth he hath murthered, and ſhee was the fayreſt Damoſell in the whole world. And for that in the end of the third booke of this hiſtorie ſhall be declared the reſt, where you ſhall receiue more contentment in the reading: Lyrgandeo will now goe no farther herein. And telling vnto her theſe and many other thinges, they went farther, and paſſed through verie manie and fayre halls, the which were adorned with the ſtories of the notable actes of worthie knights, but in one hall, in the middeſt of a Cloth, ſhee ſawe the Picture of a knight of a greate ſtature, who was nine foote in height, and armed with Purple armour, and his ſhelde of the ſame coulour, without hauing anie deuice, and his face was verie fayre. The Queene coulde not by any meanes, but by ſight thereof ſtaie a while and beholde his greate beautie, and felt within her heart a new and ſtrange wraſtling of loue, which tourned afterwarde into an amorous fire. This Ladie did well perceiue her newe imaginations, and with a gracious ſmiling ſhee toke her by the hande, and

carri-

carried her out of that Chamber, (although shée coulde not bring her out of her newe conceit) shée went out so troubled, that all which the Ladie shewed her afterwardes, shée little respected, and when she thought least shée found her selfe out of the Pallaice, betweene the déepe Moate, and the fayre and rich walles, euen as one that had béene newe awaked out of his slæpe, and tourning her selfe vnto the Ladie, dissembling her newe paine she sayde. Ladie, I owe not desire hére to haue gotten more honour, then in that I haue obtayned the knowledge and secreate of so notable a thing as this which you haue discouered vnto mée, and more to haue atchieued the desert of this braunch, so that by you it be graunted that I maye carrye it with mée. So the Ladie toke the siluer braunch in her hande, and made it verie small, to the bignesse of a spanne in length, and put it vppon her healme, and made it so fast and firme, as though it had bene wrought in by force of workmanshippe, and made it to extend the siluer leaues on the one side and on the other with great subtiltie, that it was a thing to be wondered at. And when she had done this, she sayd.

Worthie and fayre Ladie, the braunch is yours, for that you haue wonne it, and in token of thy desert thou doest carrie it vpon thy healme, where it shall remaine till such time as by the hands of a fierce Lyon it shall be throwen downe, leauing his heart wounded, and he remaining vnto thée submitted. And for to do thée pleasure Ladie, hére I doe present thée these two Nymphes for to bée at thy commaundement, And so taking her by the hande, without anie more communication shée brought her ouer the bridge to the other side of the Moat, they were not so soone ouer when this Ladie did vanish awaie lyke the winde, and the Bridge was drawen vp, and shée heard within the pallaice a celestiall musicke, and loking that waye whereas shée sounded the horne, and towardes that gate wherein she had entered, shée sawe vppon the pillar that was there a Nymph of golde, which seemed to bée verie subtillye wrought. And presently without anie more tarrying she leapt vppon her horse,

she sawe layd along vpon a blacke Carpet two dead knights well proportioned and of greate beautie, and going more neer to see if she coulde knowe them, she knewe straight one of them to be the Empresse Claridiana, but the other she did not knowe, for that she hadde neuer seene him, but by the lamentable words which were spoken by an Emperour which was at the head of them, she vnderstoode that it shoulde be the knight of the Sunne, and he which made that greate lamentation was the Emperour his Father, at the which she remained greatly amazed, and hearkening vnto that which the Emperour sayde, she hearde that he complained on Fortune, saying: Oh fortune that hath so persecuted me: Oh my sonne Alfebo, flowre of all chivalrie, is it possible that there was so much power and strength in the people of Africa that they haue depriued thee of thy lyfe, and giuen thy bodye to rest on the colde earth: With no lesse complaint this excellent Queene did celebrate that of the Emperour. And if at that present she had seene, that which afterwarde she did see, (as shall be tolde you in the third booke of this historie) much more she woulde haue complained. Then she went vnto the other side of the hall to knowe the occasion of that grieuous complaint, she saw likewise ỹ they mourned ouer other two knights, & plainely she did know one of them to be Rosicleer, but the other she did not know for that it was the king Sacridoro, whom she had neuer seene, for at such time as the queene came to Grecia, he was gone to his owne kingdome to take his ease, and the chiefe of those which did lament & mourne ouer Rosicleer, she knew to be his mother the Empresse of Grecia, who with deadly griefe and anguish sayd: Oh my sonne, the cause of all this my bitter torment, thou my sonne art in continuall rest, and hast left thy sorrowfull mother in continuall lamentation: Oh wounded heart, what sorrowfull and bitter dayes shalt thou passe without anie contentment: ah my Rosicleer, wherefore wert thou so cruel that thou wouldest not call me thy sorrowfull mother, that in this traunce she might haue borne thee companie. The valiaunt Queene felt no lesse sorrowe and griefe to see

this

this second companie, then at the sight of the first, but the lamentable and sorrowful words which the Empresse uttered did moue her to beare her companie, if that at that time shée had not séene come forth at a doore which was in the hall, a Ladie, séeming to bée of great authoritie, accompanyed with two faire Nymphs, all apparelled in russet Satten, pinked & cut, and lined with gréene Satten, which coulours were verie pleasant, and greatly delighted the sight. And when shée came nigh vnto the quéene she sayd: Knight, whosoeuer thou art, and doest shew thy selfe to be so furious, why doest thou hearken and giue eare vnto this lamentation: tell mée out of hande, without anie farther delaie who thou art, & wherefore thou commest hether, for that thou shalt vnderstand that this place is prohibited to all knightes, except he first bring with him some signe or token of the braunch of ý trée, wherras he who was murtherer to his owne daughter is inchanted: so ý if it hath ben thy fortune to atchieue ý cutting either of the braunch of gold or siluer, shew it me forthwith, if not, vnderstand that thou shalt die a terrible death. This worthie Quéene who with a sober countenaunce gaue eare vnto the sayings of the Ladie, and beholding much her great sobrietie: likewise the beautie of those which bare her companie, held vp the braunch of siluer in her hande, and with a high voyce she sayd: Ladie, I woulde not haue ben so bolde to haue approched hether, except I had brought with me the token which you speake off: therefore I ought not to incurre the paine prouided, beholde is this it which you sée, and therwith shée shewed her braunch. The Ladie when she knew that to be the braunch of the trée that she spake of, did abate her anger that she before had, and shewed a merrie countenaunce, and taking her right hand from the shoulder of the Nymph, she laide holde on the armed hand of the quéne, and holding it verie fast, she sayd: Excellent Ladie, many dayes past I was giuen to vnderstand of thy great worthinesse, and that thou shouldest giue some contentment vnto ý afflicted hearts, wherefore come with me and I will shew thée my habitation, for that vnto thée the sight hath bene graunted, and not

she drew nigh vnto the golden boughes, and presently layde holde vpon one of them, with so much strength that she bowed it downe vnto the bodie of the træ, but all her labour was in vaine, for that they who shoulde conclude this enterprise, ought to bee a man and not a woman. And while she persevered in this her purpose, shee hearde a voyce which sayde: Wo bee vnto mee, wherefore doo you in this manner so greatly torment me, let not the coueting of this bough ouercome thee: let all this euill suffice thee which thou hast been the occasion of to mee. For perswade thy selfe it shall not profit thee any thing. Beholde I am Alpatrafio the vnfortunate Emperour of Aegypt, who for that I was murtherer vnto my owne daughter, I doo suffer heere this torment. This worthye Quæne did finde greate alteration in her selfe to heare so lamentable a voyce, & letting go the braunch out of her hands, shee looked about to see who it shoulde bee that spake those dolefull wordes, but shee coulde not obtaine to the sight of anie one: and for to proue and see if it woulde againe speake, shee toke the braunch once more in her hande, and pulled it with double furie and with so greate strength, that almost shee remained hanging by it as shee was on horsebacke, wherein shee got little honour, for that shee did no more then at the first time. So shee stayed to heare what the voyce woulde saye, which vttered this speech: O greedie knight, why doest thou contend in such vnsatiable couetousnesse, what dost thou thinke that this siluer is not a sufficient treasure? Heere I giue thee to vnderstand that thy malice shall not haue so much strength for to atchieue to the ende of that which the bodie of the træ hath declared vnto thee. Therefore get thee hence, and let me alone with this my sorrowfull aduenture, for that there bee manie more besides thy selfe which doe torment me, and let this content thee, that by thy arme I am all bathed in bloud. This valyaunt Quæne who was attendaunt vnto all that was spoken, shee did perceiue that the sounde of the voyce came forth of the bodye of the træ, and not beeing then certified who that shoulde be which

spake,

ſpake, ſhe aſked, Who art thou, that in ſo monſtrous a fi-
gure haſt requeſted mée to haue compaſſion? Thou ſhalt vn-
derſtand, that by prouing at thy braunch, I well hoped to
haue made an ende of this inchauntment, but this braunch
of golde hath reſiſted mée verie much, therefore I will proue
this other which is of ſiluer, and without tarrying to heare
her aunſwere, ſhée layde holde on the braunch with ſo great
furie, that ſhée tore it off from the trée, the braunch remay-
ning in her hands: and out of the place from whence it was
torne, there iſſued out a ſtreme of bloud, that all to be ſprink-
led the Quænes armour, in ſuch ſorte, that it neuer loſt
the coulour, and when ſhe had torne it awaye ſhee heard the
voyce with a lamentable crie to ſaie: O knight, the cauſe of
my greate affliction: O mercileſſe man, that without pittie
haſt thus wounded me? What did mooue thee ſo cruelly to
teare off theſe my ſorrowfull white haires, leauing me all to
be bathed in my redde bloud, make an ende to kill me with
thy cruell ſwoorde, for that by death I ſhall finiſh the ſuf-
fering of theſe cruell tormentes which I paſſe heere, and in
ſo doing I will take thee for pittifull: O cruell knight,
make an ende of this worke which thou haſt begunne, and
giue me heere the death. This diſquieted Queene aunſwe-
red.

I doe not determine to doe anie ſuch thing, but rather
if thou deſireſt this torment, ſuffer it contentedly, till ſuch
time as thy aduenture come to concluſion. And ſo without
tarrying anie longer to heare an aunſwere, ſhee went to-
wardes a doore which ſtoode wide open on the one ſide of the
Court, and comming thether, immediatly ſhe ſawe that there
was a payre of ſtayres, and the ſteppes thereof went toor-
ning vpwardes lyke vnto a Snaile, and with the greate de-
ſire that ſhe had to knowe whether it went, ſhe alyghted
forthwith from her horſe, and went vp the ſtayres, which
brought her into a verie greate and large hall, whereas ſhee
did beholde on both ſides much people, who altogether made
a greate and ſorrowfull lamentation, and comming nigh vn-
to them to ſee what was the occaſion of their heauyneſſe,

The wiſe Lyrgandeo doth write, for that he would not put the reader in admiration, he wold not tell all which he might of this ſtraunge workmanſhip, but part thereof, which is requiſite to this our hiſtorie. Towards that part of the principall gate, and right before the pallace there appeared twelue Pinacles of ſo great and mightie height, that the pyramides of Aegypt were verie lowe in compariſon to them, in ſuch ſort, that whoſoeuer would looke on them, was ſcant able with his ſight to comprehend the height, and they were all made of different coulours of ſtone: downe below vnder the towre there was an arch, with a gate, which ſeemed to be of Diamond, and all was compaſſed about with a great moat, being of ſo great deapth, that they thought it to reach to the middeſt of the earth, and it was almoſt two hundreth paces broade, and euerie gate had his drawne bridge, all made of boords verie red, which ſeemed as though they had bene all bathed in bloud, and on the vtter parts of all this, there was a piller of Jaſper ſtone, at the which there hanged a horne, which ſeemed to bee of a Diamond, all wrought full of precious ſtones of a ſtrange worke, the which was of great valour, and garniſhed with chaines of gold that were made faſt vnto it, whereat hung a Parchment as white as the Snow, wherein was written certaine Greeke Letters which were all red, and reading of them ſhe ſawe that the wordes were theſe.

At ſuch time as the great matrone increaſing with her excellencie the fame of the Greeke bloud, with a furious ſound, that blowing of this horne he ſhall be accepted with greate contentment of the Aegyptian (but with braiding and reuiling at one time or other.) And giuing hope of that which is certaine, he ſhall come to inioy of the future time to his perpetuall fame.

Lyrgandeo for to explane the myſterie of this ſpeech, put in euerie demaund the expoſition, declaring what it was, with the title in the Greeke tongue, and for that the reader maye the better vnderſtand it, he hath declared them in the vulgar tongue. So when the excellent Ladie had read it, ſhe ſtayed

to

to beholde the excellencie of the workmanship of the horne, and the great riches thereof, and taking of it in her hand, she sawe that round about it there were certaine letters, which being read, she found to be thus: In sounding of me the gate shall be opened to thee. The which when she understoode, without anie more tarrieng, she toke that rich horne and set it vnto her mouth, and began to sound it, the which sounde was verie shrill to be heard, she had scarce made an ende of blowing, when that the gate was open. The Queene when she sawe it open passed the drawe bridge, and entered within the gate into the Pallace, till she came vnto a great open Court, which was compassed about with three rowes of verie faire railes, on the which there was leaning on theyr breastes many knightes and Damosells meruailous richly apparelled, who when they sawe her within the court, with greate hast they vanished awaie. And in the middest of the Court there was a verie fayre tree, whose boughes were spread all abroad, and it was of greate riches, for that the boughes were, some of golde, and others of verie fine siluer, and enamelled with great subtiltie, and when she approched to it, the better to see the riches, she sawe in the bodie thereof a table which was all of golde, wherein was ingraued this that followeth.

Vnto that Knight, to whom is graunted the entering into this sumptuous pallace, if it be so that thou hast so much prowesse as to breake one of the braunches of golde which is vpon this tree, then hast thou made an ende and fullye concluded all that which thou seest heere: but if thou cannest not obtaine to breake it, then layeng holde vppon that which is of Siluer, and if by thy prowesse thou dost breake that, it shall bee a token, that hee which shall conclude this aduenture is alreadie borne: and if it bee so that thy force and strength is insufficient to doo either of those, then thou shalt bee throwen from it lyke a vile and naughtie person.

When she had read this ingraued superscription, without anie more tarrying, but euen on horse backe as she was,

that verie much: so straight waie came to her remembraunce the furious battaile of the Pagan, and likewise shée considered of the furie of the knight of the Emperiall head, and séeing that shée coulde not ouercome them, she remained verie sorrowfull, and lyfting vp her eyes vnto heauen, with great ire she blasphemed against her Gods, and blamed much the wise Lyrgandeo for his negligence, but when shée called to remembraunce the wordes of Lyrgandeo, and what hée had sayde, shée altered her minde and chaunged her thoughtes, and beganne a new to consider of the sharpe cutting sword of the Mauritanian, which more entered into her heart, then the wilde Boares toth in the daintie bodie of the fayre Adonis. In this manner this solitarie Nuéne of Lyra dyd nauigate foure dayes, and was so pensiue in thought, that she forgot and had no remembraunce to refresh her selfe in eating, but the wise Lyrgandeo had alwayes a greate care that shée should be serued verie daintely, not knowing who did serue her. So the fifte daie verie early in the morning shée discouered lande towardes her left hande, and the Barke in greate hast and with verie much swiftnesse made her waye thether, She went so fast, that almost she hadde no time to arme her selfe before that the Barke came vnto the shoare, where shée might most at ease disimbarke her selfe, according vnto the will of the wise man. So when they were at the shoare, shée toke her horse by the bridle and went a lande, and without putting her foote into the stiroppe, shée leaped into the Saddle, and guided her selfe into a narrowe waie, all garnished with trées of diuerse sortes, whereas the chirping Birdes did make theyr accustomed songes without feare of anie man to molest them. Amongest the which trées there did not lacke the Sallowes, nourished by Alciades, nor the grœne Laurell, so much estœmed of glistering Appollo, nor the swéete Myrtle trœ hallowed by Venus, nor the high Cypres, so much regarded of Cupide, nor the harde Oake, so much desired of Mars, nor the Pine apple trœ, which Iupiter doeth cause to flourish. Of all the which this mightie Nuéne did séele and had great delight, iudge-

ing

ing it to bée the habitation of the Gods, for that the Sunne with his glistering beames did passe through those gráne and pleasaunt trées, without anie let or hinderaunce of the heauens, by reason of theyr clárenesse, with a verie soft and pittering winde, shaking all those grœne leaues, which did make so swéete a noyse that it seemed rather celestiall then terrestriall, and a thousand little Brookes which ranne vpon the enamelled grounde, making sundrie fine workes and deuises, by theyr crooked runninges and tournynges, and ioyning one water with another, with a verie gentle meeting, not making anie greate noise. This fayre Ladye báing ravished at the sight of this celestiall habitation, had not anye regarde at all, whether that her horse went in the right way or not. And trauailing in this sorte shée went forwardes till shée came into a meruailous greate and wide medowe, béing of so greate fayrenesse, that I am not with my pen able to paint out the excellencie thereof. Whereas was fe-ding both wilde and tame Hartes, adorned with their great and cragged hornes. Likewise the furious wilde Boare, the simple Connies, and the enuious Beare, with the fierce Lyon, altogether were fédding with so greate friendshippe, as to the contrarie by Nature they are enimies. The Ladie was in such a dumpe to sée and beholde the great difference that was, and the greate loue betwéene these wild and tame beasts which were there present, that she did not cast vp her eyes to beholde a verie fayre and sumptuous Pallaice which was in the middest of the medowe, and vppon that sodayne sight shee fell in a musing and dumpe, as commonly the husband man doeth when he goeth into the wilde fieldes and cragged mountaines, to séeke his simple sheepe which he hath lost, or as one finding himselfe in a royall citie, all garnished with rich citizens, of exceeding good behauiour, stately at euerie doore & corner of the streets, musing at their strange apparell, being different from that which hée hath seene before in his owne countrie: euen so was this Dame ouercome in her owne conceite, and amazed in her imagination, to sée so straunge loue, cleane contrarie vnto nature.

The

To the which they graunted with a verie good will, and they carryed with them Tefereo and his vncle. What ſhall I heere declare vnto you of the honorable receivings and great paſtimes and ſportes which were made vnto them, it were too much heere to write, ſo the poſſeſſion of all the Empire was giuen vnto them, whereas they determined to take their reſt, till ſuch time as fortune cauſed the contrarie, whereas they reigned with the moſt higheſt fame that euer any other obtained. And heere we will leaue them till time ſerueth, and begin to declare of the high & worthie feates of the faire Archiſilora, the Queene of Lira.

¶ How the worthie Queene Archiſilora was gone to purſue the Pagan, and of that which happened in the way of her battaile. Chap. 28.

THE worthie Queene of Lyra which with great haſt followed after the Pagan, ſtriking with her ſpurres her light horſe (who was without fault of all that had paſt) yet all was in vaine for to finde the Pagan, but her ſwiftnes was lyke vnto a furious thunder bolt, for ſhe traueſed in ſuch great haſt, that ther was no ſigne ſeene where her horſe did tread: but all her labour was in vaine, for that ſhe went cleane contrarie vnto the waye which the Pagan went, but as the thought of this irefull Ladie was for no other thing, but to procure to ſeeke him, ſhee neuer left this her furious courſe, till ſuch time as ſhee came vnto ỳ ſea ſide, whereas for all the furie ſhe was forced to ſtaie, neuertheleſſe ſhe looked round about her on euerys ſide to ſee if ſhee could diſcouer or finde him, whom with ſo great deſire ſhe ſought, and in looking about her, ſhe ſawe come forth from that part of the forreſt a damoſell, who was verie faire, and ſaluted the Queene verie curteouſly, who returned againe her ſalutation, and aſked her, ſaying: Fayre Damoſell, can you tell me anye tidings of a knight ỳ ſhould come this waie, all in white armour. And what is it that you

you would with this knight, anſwered the Damſell: it maye be (that if you will graunt me a thing that I will aſke you) that I will carrie you into a place whereas you ſhall ſée him. Yéere I doe graunt it thée ſayd the Quéene: You ſhall vnderſtand, that in great haſt he doth nauigate by ſea, ſayde the Damſell, therefore I doe deſire thée (if thou wilt follow me) to put thy ſelfe in a barke with me which is héere by. The Quéene looking towards that part whereas the Damſell did ſhew her, ſawe the Barke which was verie faire and great. The Damſell lighted from her palfraie, and put her ſelfe in the barke, and ſayd: Knight with the Lillyes, if thou wilt haue that thou ſéekeſt, it behœueth thée to enter into this Barke with me, that I may carrie thée whereas thou ſhalt loſe on a ſodaine thy great mirth and gladneſſe, thy heart remaining in ſo great captiuitie, that the beſt remedie that thou ſhalt conceiue, ſhall be to deſire the death. This fayre ladie had no regard to demaund the ſecrets of thoſe words, as thée which made no reckoning of whatſoeuer ſhould happen, neither did eſteéme it, but without anie more wordes, thée lighted from her horſe, and leading him by the bridle, ſhe put her ſelfe into the Barke, ſhe was not ſo ſoone entered in, but as the péece of ordinaunce which by the force of kindling the powder, caſteth out the pellet with great force: with no leſſe furie the barke ſhœued from the ſhore ſide. The damſell whē ſhe ſawe her ſelfe at the Sea, ſhe ſayd: Gracious Ladie, doe you knowe me. The quéene turned about to beholde her, and beholding her well, ſhe ſawe that it was the wiſe Lyrgandeo, at the which ſhe found her ſelfe ſore troubled, Lyrgandeo ſéeing that ſhe did knowe him, ſayd: Worthie Ladie, feare you nothing in this iourney, for by me thou ſhalt be carryed whereas thy fame ſhall be exalted, till ſuch time as the braue Lyon doth rob thy heart, & thou remaining ouercome, ſhalt ouercome one of the beſt knights in all the world. And making an ende of theſe reaſons, he vaniſhed awaie, ſhe knew not howe: And although the Quéene remained ſomewhat pacified, with that which Lyrgandeo had ſayde, yet for all that, ſhe did not let to thinke and muſe of his wordes, and

that

There was no leſſe ioye betwæne the Knight of the Sunne and his ſpouſe, for the one receiued the other with great reioycing. For by reaſon of the water that he dronke at the fountaine, he had cleane forgotten and loſt the loue he had to Lindabrides, which was the occaſion of a double delight with his welbeloued Lady. This faire Empreſſe ſomewhat diſſimuling the ſorrow which ſhe had for the loſſe of her children, declared it vnto her dære beloued ſpouſe, who with no leſſe diſcretion, did giue her the hearing, not ſuffering her to knowe the griefe that he receiued, but rather comforted her, and gaue her to vnderſtande by outwarde ſhowes, that hee was very well content of all that had happened, which was vnto her great and particular ioye and pleaſure. So in this order they went talking together, till they came vnto the village, whereas they were receiued of all the people, with great ioye and reioycings, and with ſundry paſtimes, and there they dined: and in this ſort they paſſed the reſt of the daye.

The next daye in the morning they went towards Conſtantinople, ane there was not one who ſawe the Emperor and his company but receiued great pleaſure. But Sindera the Dutcheſſe, and Aunt vnto Archiſilora, was greatly grieued for hir abſence. As they trauailed by the way, ỹ knight of the Sunne determined to giue the Emperour to vnderſtande of all the loue that had paſſed betwæne him and the Empreſſe Claridiana. So the Emperour when he vnderſtood it, was nothing ſorrie for that which had paſt, but rather did determine to ſende and call for the ſubiects and vaſſalles of the Empreſſe, and ſo in publike to marrie them together: yet at that time he did not giue him to vnderſtande of the loſſe of the two children,

So with this and like communication, they came vnto the Citie, whereas they were receiued, as vnto their eſtate appertayned. And at their entering into the Pallaice, there came forth to receiue them, the Princeſſe Tigliaſa, and the faire Oliuia, who for the diſcontentment which they receiued for the abſence of their Knights, would not goe forth of

Con-

Conſtantinople. What ſhall I ſaye to you of the Tartarian Zoylo, he was ſo out of quiet and troubled to ſee the princeſſe, that he was almoſt beſide himſelfe, and chaunged his coulour, and lyke a man without vnderſtanding hee cams downe from the Pallayce, making a great noyſe: and with out taking any reſt, he went out of the Citie, and with great fury he put himſelfe into the woods and wilderneſſe of Grecia, leauing the ſorrowfull Lady with ſo much care, that if the wiſe Lirgandeo had not comforted her, ſhe thought verely to haue dyed at that preſent time, by whoſe counſell ſhe was willed to goe and take him, and to carrie in companye with her two of her damoſells: and he promiſed her ſo to remedie her ſorrow, that ſhe ſhould be fully ſatiſfied. The which did fall out cleane contrary: for that the knowledge of man doth little auaile to hinder the will of the Creator of all things. As hereafter ſhall be tolde you in the third part of this hiſtorie.

Now to retourne vnto the great pleaſure which the ſubiects of the Emperour receiued for his comming: it was in ſuch ſort, that they did no other thing but make feaſtes and paſtimes. In the meane time whileſt they were making all theſe paſtimes in Conſtantinople, they ſent to call the ſubiectes and vaſſalles of the Empreſſe Claridiana, who came ſtraight waye without anye delaye: and they which came, were the King of Pontus, and the King Simonia, and the great Duke of Alafonte. Vnto whome was declared the whole occaſion wherefore they were called. And when they knew y they ſhuld obtayne for their Lord ſo royal a prince, they were meruailouſly well contented and receiued greate pleaſure: and without any more tarrying they made them ſure together, whereat was made great feaſts and paſtimes. and there he was ſworne Emperour, and they deſired them, that they would goe & acknowledge their lands & countries, and gaue them to vnderſtande, that the long abſence of the Empreſſe was the occaſiõ of many diſſentions, wherin ſome rebellious people did begin to ſhew their cankered thoughts.

To

which wer come forth for to ſée the battaile, when they ſaw the Emperours face and knew him, they altogether with a great ſhoute layd. Oh happie is this daye, in the which wée haue ſéene the excellent face of our renowmed Emperour, & therewith altogether they ran to him for to kiſſe his hands, and he which could firſt come vnto him, he thought himſelfe moſt happieſt. For he was the beſt be loued Prince amongeſt his ſubiects in all the world. Many of them with great haſt went to tell the Empreſſe, for to get a reward. The Pagan by the great ſtirring and ruſling of the people, vnderſtood that the Emperour was there, and thought within himſelfe, that there he coulde get no honour, wherfore with great fury he lifte vp his ſworde, and griping it faſt in his hand, he ſtretched himſelfe in his ſtirrops all ý euer he could and ſtrake ſuch a terrible & furious blowe vpon the healme of the knight of the Sunne, that without any féeling he fel vpon his horſe crupper, & when he ſaw him in that traunce, he ſet ſpurs to his horſe, and made him to runne lyke the winde through the middeſt of all the people, that were loking on the battell, and like as a Lyon in the mountaynes of Libia, whoſe breaſt is wounded by the ſtout hunts man, leauing his darte in him, and beſprinkeling all the graſſe, with his bloud, which he doth expell from him without any feare, and tearing in péeces the dart, that was cauſe of all his harme, he giueth great and horrible roarings with his bloudie mouth, and briſtling vp his rugged haire. So with like furie this valiaunt Pagan paſt thorough amongeſt the people that were there, ſo that ſome he threwe downe from their horſe, and others he lefte very ſore hurt, and with this perillous aſſault he put himſelfe into the thicke woods. The Queene which was fighting with the knight of the Emperiall head, did ſée very well, how that the the Moore was eſcaped, and with the great anger which ſhe had to ſée him runne away without taking reuengement of him, ſhe gaue ſo terrible a blowe vnto her aduerſarie that it made him to ioyne his head with his breaſt, and lefte him without any remembraunce, and without any more tarrying, ſhée went

and

and followed the Pagan. The knight of the Sunne, who at this time was come to himselfe, and had fully recouered his remembrance, and could not see his enimie, he demaunded for him. And there it was tolde him of his desperate running away. The Prince would haue followed him, if the Emperour had not letted him. Likewise the knight with the Emperiall heade came againe vnto himselfe, and thinking to haue made payment of that blow vnto his aduersary, he loked round about and could not see her, and beholding all the rest which were in that company, he sawe that they were all well content and very ioyfull, and full of pleasure, wherefore without any more tarrying he put himselfe into the forrest, leauing the Emperour and all the rest, verye desirous to know who he was, as also of the knight of the Lillyes: the which was straight waye tolde him by a Damosell of the Quéenes, at the which they all remained much amazed, iudging it to be one of the most notablest things, that was in all the world. The Empresse when she vnderstood the good newes, straight waye went forth for to see the Emperour, with so much ioye and pleasure, that she scantlye knew where she was: & when she came to cast her armes for to imbrace him she sayde. My Lorde, I doe not compare this imbracing vnto that, which an vncurteous Knight did giue me not long since. The Emperour did receiue her with great loue and gladnesse, and imbracing her harde he sayde. My louing Lady, let the delight of this, cause you to forget the despite of the other, and yet by it we haue lost the most excellent Lady in all the world, which is the Quéene of Lira. Then did the Emperour declare vnto her all ỹ had past, there in his sight, at the which the Empresse greatlye merualled, and was sorie for her departure: & with the great pleasure she receiued at the sight of the Emperour, she did not looke for the famous Knight of the Sunne, vntill such time as he came to kisse her hande: then was all her ioye wholly accomplished. So there they declared vnto the Emperor of the departing of Rosicleer and Brandimardo, and how that they neuer heard any newes of them.

There

and helpe vnto them that giue thée no thankes for it. But the Prince who was then burning with wrath, retourned againe by the lefte ſide to put himſelfe before her, and gaue the Pagan ſo terrible a blowe, that he made all his bodye to ſhake. The knight with the Lillyes did put himſelfe againe before and ſayde. In an euill houre doeſt thou vſe this greate vncurteſie with one that thou doeſt not knowe. The fearce Pagan in all this time was not idle, but at ſuch time as the Quéene did croſſe the waye for to take her rome, the Pagan ſtroke her ſo ſtronglye, that it lacked but a little, that ſhée fell not from her horſe to the ground. The knight with the Emperiall head when he ſawe that, ſet his ſpurres to his horſe, and ſayd.

O men of ſmall eſtimation, come hether to mée one of you, and dwe not occupie your ſelues in ſuch controuerſies. And with ſaying theſe and ſuch lyke wordes, hée ſtroke the Quéene ſuch a blowe, that he made her téeth to chatter in her head, in ſuch ſorte, that ſhée had almoſt loſt her ſéeling, but hée had no cauſe to boaſt himſelfe verie much of that blowe, for that quickly ſhe retourned his ſalutation with ſo great ſtrength, that ſhée gaue him well to vnderſtand her couragious force. Nowe there beganne a rigorous battayle, and the knight of the Sun remained alone with the Pagan: Oh wiſe and warrelyke Eliza, giue mée to drinke of that water which the nine ſiſters did diſcouer, that by the helpe of that ſweet liquor I may make ſharpe my rude tongue, ſo that mixing the ſpéech of Mercurie with the prowéſſe of Mars, I maye vnfolde this furious battayle which theſe foure knightes made, who with exceéding and wonderfull blowes ſtroke one another, without anie ceaſing, that they made them whether they woulde or no, to incline their bodyes to theyr horſe head, without anie ſéeling. In this ſorte continued theſe valyaunt and warlyke knightes a good ſpace, till ſuch time as the Empreſſe Claridiana came in great haſt, running with her light horſe, and making a great noiſe, without anie conſideration, but onely to bée reuenged on the Pagan and ſayd.

Giue

Giue roome, giue roome, for this battaile doth belong vnto mée to make an ende thereof. And without anie more speaking shée put her selfe before the knight of the Sunne, and beganne to laye on the Pagan with her furious blowes. The Pagan was nothing abashed at that, but as one which had strength and courage inough, he receiued them. Then the knight of the Sunne with greate anger sayde. Tell mée knight what is the cause which hath moued thée to offer such lyke villanie. This womanly warriour retourned vnto him, and straight waye shée did knowe him to bée the knight of the Sunne. Héere all you true louers may iudge the greate ioye that shée receiued when shée beheld before her, him who with so great loue she loued, and the greate desire she had to heare of him. So shée replyed with verie amorous wordes, and sayde.

My déere and welbeloued Lord, séeing that fortune hath brought you hether at this instaunt, procure ioyntly with your reuengement to worke mine against this Pagan. Then the knight of the Sunne did knowe that it was his Ladie, wherewith his strength increased, and also his anger, vnderstanding that the Pagan had vsed discurtesie agaynst her, and sayd: How is this thou false Pagan, that thou hast ben so hardie, for to anger and disquiet such a Ladie: Tarry, for héere I wil giue thée thy reward according vnto thy deserts. And with a new strength and valiant courage he pressed forwards. This pagan was amazed in séeing his enimy to shew more strength and better courage, which continually increased more and more, yet for all that hée shewed no kinde of faintnesse, but rather he stroke at him such terrible blowes and with so greate strength, as at anie time before hée had not done the lyke. At this time the Emperour, (which tyll that time did beholde all that had passed, and suffered not himselfe to be knowen vnto anie, by reason that he continually had his healme on his head) pulled off the same, that the more better to his contentment he might se and beholde this furious battayle. Then the people of the Village

Holde thy peace Pagan and be ſtill, and ſpeake not ſo proudly, whereas in reſpect thereof thou ſhalt not be feared: for here I do certifie thee, that the Empreſſe Claridiana hath brought into ſubiection many better then thou art, and made them to ſtoope. And for that thou ſhalt vnderſtand how little thou art eſtéemed in Greece, and how much more thou maiſt complaine thy vnhappineſſe, knowe that I am lykewiſe a woman as ſhe is, and am called Archiſilora Quéene of Lira, and with the ſtrength of my armes, I hope to cut off this wretched head from thy accurſed ſhoulders. And it was very true which was ſpoken, for when ſhe went away from the company of the Ladies, ſhe went to arme her ſelfe, with purpoſe to demaund battaile of the Empreſſe Claridiana, but when ſhe came forth, ſhe founde them as you haue alreadye heard.

The Pagan could be no more angry and wrathfull then he was, and without ſpeaking any word, he turned & ſtroke very ſtrongly at the Quéene, who with no leſſe fury defended her ſelfe, and returned his blowes with both her hands, that it made a meruailous noyſe. At this preſent time approched the two lights of all knighthood, the Emperour of Grecia and his ſonne, and with them the Giaunt and the reſt of the Princes that came with them. You ſhall vnderſtande that theſe were the two knights, that in the high waye they founde in cruell battaile, and meruailing verye much at the power that was in the two warriours, they ſtayed to behold them, not knowing who they were. The Knight of the Sunne who had his eyes more fired on them then the reſt, did knowe the Pagan, as one which had firſt proued his furious force, & turning vnto ỹ Emperor his father he told him all that which had happned vnto him in the fierce battaile which he hadde fought before with him in Fraunce.

Then they eſtéemed much the knight with the Lilies, to ſée how well and how valiauntly he did behaue himſelfe, not onely in this ſubtill defence, which againſt his aduerſarie he made, but alſo his pollicie he made in offending his enimie.

So

So the knight of the Sunne with the greate deſire that hée had to reuenge himſelfe on the Pagan, mœued his horſe towardes him. At which time there came forth of the village a Knight with white armour, all full of Garlands of golde, made by ſubtill art. Likewiſe his ſhælde was white, and there was painted on it an Emperiall head, which ſhewed as though it had bæne cut off with a cruell knife, the throat all to bée rayed with blood, verie artificially wrought, and when hée ſawe the battaile, hée put himſelfe to behold them, at ſuch time as the valyaunt Græke approched vnto the two knightes that were in battaile for to ſpeake vnto them, and hée ſayd: Worthie knight with the Lyllyes, for curteſies ſake (if this battayle be of ſmall importaunce) that thou wouldeſt let me alone with this Pagan, for that I haue a iuſt quarrell againſt him. This excellent Ladie loking vpon the knight of the Sunne as one which had neuer ſæne him, meruailing much at his fayre diſpoſition, and replyed, ſaying: I woulde be verie gladde ſir Knight, for your great curteſie and gentle demeanour, to leaue to you the battaile, if the occaſion were not of ſo greate waight. Therefore I dwe deſire you that you would ſtand aſide, for if my ſucceſſe fall out vnfortunatly, there will time inough remaine, for to execute your anger. The Woꝛe did well vnderſtand the demaunde of the Knight of the Sunne, and knewe him verye well to bée the ſame that gaue him the order of knighthood, and when hée ſawe him, hée roared lyke a furious Lyon, ſaying: Oh vile and baſe Knight, to whome Mahomet hath giuen more power and ſtrength then hée hath himſelfe, come, come, and bring with thée in companie all theſe that bée there with thée, for of all you together I dwe eſtæme nothing at all, and in ſaying theſe wordes, hée preſſed vnto the Knight of the Sunne, verie fiercely and with greate courage the knight of the Sunne met him in the waye, and put himſelfe before the Quæne, but this excellent Ladie with great lightneſſe returned and did recouer her ſtanding, and ſaid vnto him.

Knight, bée not ſo farre out of meaſure, to giue eaſe

ble thereon, that it parted it in two péces, and lighted on her healme in ſuch great force and furie, that it made her to fall backwards vpon the crouper of her horſe without anie feeling, voyding much blood out of her viſour, with which blowe the horſe was ſcarred, and ranne rounde about the fielde, the which when the Pagan ſaw, he followed after the Empreſſe, as the hauke, when you haue taken of her hood, diſcouering the Heron, with great fury flieth at her: euen ſo went this Moore ſaying. Now will I ſée Empreſſe, whether all the ſtrength of this knight be ſufficient for to hinder me, that I carry thée not into a place, where Mahomet ſhall not be able to deliuer thée, nor take thée out of my hands.

Then the gentle Knight of the Lillyes, did put himſelfe before the Empreſſe, and ſayd. Stande thou proud Pagan, for firſt before thou doſt that which thou thinkeſt to doo, it ſtandeth thée in hand to loke to thy ſelfe, and in ſaying theſe woords, he drew out his ſword, and ſtroke him ſuch an ouerthwart blowe vppon the viſour of his healme, that he was ready to fall downe on the other ſide, and with the ſtrength thereof, it depriued him of his ſight, and after that hée ſtroke another blowe on the other ſide, that the Moore was not able to make any defence, but that he fell downe vpon his horſe head. The Moore being kindeled with great madneſſe, to ſée two ſuch mightie blowes giuen him, and he not able to make any defence. when he was come to himſelfe, he went againſt his aduerſary with his ſword faſt in both his hands, who was in the ſame ſort tarrying for him: & they ſtrake both together ſuch terrible blowes, that both of them were conſtrayned to imbrace their horſe neckes for not falling: but ſettling themſelues again, they recouered their ſwords, and preſſed the one againſt the other, as commonlye the wilde Bulls doo in their fight, with the lyke yre theſe two ioyned together, making one of the moſt perilleus battells in the world, ſtriking one another whereas they might doo moſt harme.

It was so much without pittie, and with so furious wrath, as though it had bene two Lyons, and giuing such notable blowes, and battering of the copper and yron with such great noyse, that it did not onely glowe in the eares of those Ladies and the rest that were loking on, but the mountaines thereabout were moued with compassion and pitie, to see their great cruelties one toward another. At this time the Empresse Claridiana was come to her selfe, and when she remembred the great peril in the whith she was, she called vnto God for his helpe, and tourning about her light horse with so great swiftnesse, that wheresoeuer he did put his foote, there was no signe seene, she came vnto the place whereas the battaile was. The knight with the golden Lylyes with a high voyce sayde. Most mightie and Emperiall Lady, take you the Empresse and carrie her awaye, and leaue her in safetie, and let me alone to punish this vncourteous knight.

Then the Empresse and all her Ladyes did call her and sayd. Valyaunt and worthy Lady, prouide to set vs at lybertie, where we may be out of daunger, that you maye returne in time to helpe this knight that hath done vs so much good. The Empres consented hereto at their requests, and so taking their palfrayes, they went with great hast vnto the Village. But when the Pagan did vnderstand, that it was a woman, which had brought him into so great extremitie, with a great noyse he sayd. Oh vile Mahomet, false, and of a base kinde: for thou, to do me more euill and shame, hast caused me to enter into battaile with a woman, who hath brought me into this necessitie. Oh traytor, and falsifier of thy faith, come downe from the Cottage whereas thou art, and I will giue thee to vnderstand, that thou thy selfe with all thy might shalt not be able so much to anger me, in that thou hast so despitefullye for my dishonour and shame, put me in battayle before a woman. The gentle knight with the Lilyes to those words sayd.

so with a determined purpose he came vnto the place wher as the Empresse was: and without saying any worde, hee toke her by the arme, and with great strength lifte her vp, till he had her on his saddle bowe before him, and tourning his horse about he toke his waye towards that place, from whence he came, with purpose to imbarke himselfe againe, in that shippe in which he came thether, and so to carrie her away: but the noyse and shrikes of the Ladyes and Damosells were so pitifull and lowde, that there came vnto them the knights that were dispersed abroad in the forrest and other places. And when they came, and saw all that had passed, they altogether followed the Pagan, so fast as they horse could runne: and in a short time they came for to take away his bootie, so that whether he would or not, he was driuen to let her goe, for to defende himselfe from ỹ blowes which the knights layd on him, who on the one side and on the other, began to strike fiercely at him: but he made no more reckoning of them, then the huge and mightie Rocke doth of the troublesome waues of the seas, beating against it continually. Euen so were the blowes which the Greeke knights stroke vpon the Pagan, who seeing himselfe hindered of his purpose, drew out his sword, and stroke one of those knights such a blowe vpon the shoulder, that he cut him downe to the girdle, so that he fell downe dead to the ground: and not content herewith, but began so to bestir himselfe, that in a small time, he seperated them all, some slaine and some very sore hurt & wounded. In this time, that these knights were in their battaile, the Empresse Claridiano was armed, and set vpon a mightie strong horse, and came with great yre, and sayd. Oh infernall Pagan, what diuell was that, which made thee so bolde with those vyle & wicked hands to come and take holde of the Empresse: and in saieng these words, she drew out her sworde, and stroke him such a blowe vpon the healme, that she made him bow his head vnto his breast: but straight wayes the Pagan came to himselfe, and firming his feete in his stirroppes hee made her answere, with a blowe no lesse furious then that

that

that he had receiued. So there began one of the beſt fought ten battailes that euer was betweene two Knights. The Empreſſe when ſhe ſawe her ſelfe cleare out of the handes of the Moore, got on the one ſide, and ſate downe vpon the greene hearbs and did beholde the battaile. All the Ladyes & Damoſells when they ſawe her at libertie, ranne vnto the place whereas ſhee was, and in ſmall time they had compaſſed her with a milde lamentation. At the ſame time out of the thickeſt of the Forreſt came forth a Knight verye well armed, with greene armour, all to be ſpotted with Lylyes; and his ſhielde of the ſame manner, but in the middeſt thereof was painted a hand, which ſeemed to be in a lake of water, holding in it a Lilly flower. And as he ſaw that furious battaile, he went vnto one of the Ladyes, and with a gracious courteſie he demaunded the occaſion thereof. The effect thereof ſhe tolde, and declared vnto him which was the knight that was in the Empreſſe defence. At this time the battaile was ſo kindeled, that with the furious blowes that were giuen, it had bene ſufficient to haue cut a rocke in peeces. This ſtrong Empreſſe was ſo wrathfull, that her battaile was more gouerned with yre then by pollicie, and with the great choller that ſhe had, ſhe ſtroke the Pagan ſo terrible a blow, that he fell downe vpon his horſe necke, without any remembraunce, and with the ſound of that terrible blow the horſe was ſomwhat ſcarred, in ſuch ſort, that he carried his maſter a while about the fielde. The Empres following him with her light horſe, thinking that ſhe hadde made an ende of the battaile, when that in the middeſt of her courſe, the Moore came to himſelfe againe, and with madneſſe, he foumed at the mouth, and beginning to vſe his accuſtomed curſings againſt Mahomet. And recouering his ſword, taking it faſt in both his hands, he went towards the Empreſſe Claridiana, threatening her with a furious blowe.

The Empreſſe who ſawe the blowe comming, ſhee lyfte vp her ſhielde to receiue it therewith, the blowe fell ſo terri-

wards Grecia, and commaunded to fraight a very faire ſhip: ſo taking their leaue, and ſhipping themſelues, they had a pleaſaunt and peaceable winde, which brought them vnto the hauen Pireo in Grecia, whereas they went all a ſhoare: and all of them toke horſe ſauing the great Gyaunt, who trauailed on foote, ſo they toke their way towards Conſtantinople. And when they came within two miles of it, nigh vnto a great houſe of pleaſure, whereas the Empreſſe was at that time. In the middeſt of the waye, they ſawe two knights, which were in a very great and well foughten battaile. Whereas we will leaue them, for to tell you what the Moriſco, King of Mauritania did, in the place whereas we lefte him.

¶ How that the two Empreſſes went for to recreate themſelues vnto a houſe of pleaſure, and what happened vnto them in that iourney. And howe the King of Mauritania found them in their paſtimes, and knowing who they were, he would haue laide hold vpon the Empres Briana. Cap. 27.

BEfore in the hiſtorie, if you do remember, the fierce Moꝛe Brufaldoro came vnto the place whereas a companye of Ladyes and damſells were, whereas he ſtayed to loke and beholde them: and with them wer ſitting knights of a good diſpoſition, and well proportioned. At which time as we began to intreate of them, I did not tell you who they were: but now you ſhall vnderſtand, that they were the two Empreſſes of Conſtantinople and Trapiſond, who were come vnto that houſe of pleaſure for to recreate themſelues, which was verye nigh vnto a faire village. And the occaſion of this theyr going forth, was the great eſtæmed Nuæne of Lira, (of whom till now our hiſtorie hath made no mention, nor of hir ſurpaſſing excellencies, but hath referred them till time did ſerue) Dyæ being manye times with the Empreſſe Claridiana,

heard

heard her tell of some feates of knighthode that had passed by her, the which the Quæne with great contentment gaue care vnto, imagining within her selfe to be of as good disposition, and haue as much strength as she, yea, and rather more: and knowing that her strength was much, she purposed verye secretlye to proue her selfe, and taking this place (whether as they went to recreate themselues) to be very fit for to performe her will, with all secrecie in the worlde, she commaunded that her armour (which Lirgandeo had presented vnto her) should be carried thether, which was fulfilled and done by the damosells, for that they all had a great delight to pleasure and serue her, she was of them so welbeloued, and her excellent vertues deserued no lesse. So when they were come vnto the house of pleasure, she went forthe to recreate her selfe with two Ladyes towards a fountaine somewhat out of the waye, whereas the Empres & her Ladyes were set downe. And for that the Empresse Claridiana did vnderstand, (whether by her owne imagination, or that Lirgandeo had aduised her) that in such place commonly doeth fall out some aduentures, she commaunded to giue vnto her, her armour, which she caused to be brought vnto that house: and whilest she was arming, came the Moze Brusaldoro, thether: who seeing so faire a company, had a great desire to knowe who they were, and comming vnto a damsell which was thereby, speaking with great courtesie, hee sayd. Damosell let me obtaine I pray you, so much fauour at your hands, that you will tell me who they be that are in this faire company. This damsell seeing that with so great curtesie and good manners he did request her, and being a knight of so good disposition, she said. Sir knight, they be the Empresse of Grecia and her Ladies, which are come to this place to recreate themselues: and haue brought hether for their sauegard these well proportioned knights. When the Moze vnderstood that there was the Empresse of Grecia, there entred straight way many things in his imagination, and many thoughts troubled his minde, till such time, as he dermined to doe that, which I will tell you.

So

then to goe and yéelde my ſelfe vnto them, nor to anye perſon in the whole world. Let euery one doo as he thinketh beſt, for that the Dacian Prince will not let to be the ſame, which his fortune hath ordained, and therewith he aroſe vp from the table, and made as though he went vnto his chamber, but he did not: for incontinent he called a Lackey of his, and armed himſelfe, and commaunded him very ſecretly to carrie his horſe out of the Citie, and to tarrie for him there, and the lackey did as the prince had commanded him. So when he was out of the Citie, he leaped vpon his horſe, and tarried in no place till he came vnto the waters ſide, and by chaunce he came vnto the place whereas the barke was, that brought his couſin thether, into which he entered, and his lackey put in his horſe. He was no ſoner in, when that with great ſwiftneſſe the barke began to make ſayle, whereas we will leaue him till time doo ſerue.

Now I will retourne vnto the Princes, who after many reaſonings, determined to goe forthwith vnto the Emperours tent, and went vnto the chamber of Don Eleno, to perſwade him to doo the like, but when they came ther, they neither found him nor his armour, for the which they were very ſad and ſorie, imagining ſtraight waye what he had done. And ſéeing that it was labour loſt to goe and ſéeke him, they themſelues determined to departe without him. And when they came vnto the ſcowtes of the hoſt, it was aſked them what they ſought, and what they would haue? The Giaunt ſayd vnto them: Friends, goe vnto the Emperour, and tell him that héere are the knights with whom he had all his late contention, that are very deſirous to ſpeak with him. So the ſcoutes ſent a meſſenger ſtraight way vnto the Emperor. And when he had told it vnto him, he commaunded that they ſhould preſently let them paſſe.

When the Emperour vnderſtoode that they drewe nigh vnto the Tente, with his mightie courage, and with his accuſtomed nobleneſſe, hée went out to méete them, with his royall armes ſpredde abroad, and ſo by one and one he louingly imbraced them all, and alſo deſired them,

that

that there might be no communication of that which had past, for that it would be the occasion to disturbe their ioye and mirth which they ought to vse together meeting by aduenture together in straunge Countries, so he cast his eie aside to see where his cousin the Prince Eleno was, but when he could not see him, he asked for him, and it was tolde him all that had passed, and the dolorous end of Lidia, for ỹ which they were verie sorrowfull, but especially the knight of the Sunne, for that he loued him verie much, and if the Emperour his Father had not disturbed him, he would haue gone to haue sought him. Likewise the great ioy and contentment which the Gyant receiued in seeing his cousin Tefereo, was no lesse then Tefereos to see his vnckle, so that the delight of all of them apparantly appeared. In this sort they passed awaie the time till it was night without feeling anie paine of their passed trauaile. The nert daie in the morning the king of Cimarra did arise, meruailouslye richlye apparelled, with roabes of cloth of golde, and went vnto the knightes, giuing them to vnderstand that he was more contented and in quiet then anie other king, in that he was reuenged in such sort as you haue heard. This good king neuer ceased in giuing thanks vnto the Emperour for the great curtesie which he receiued at his hands, and there they gaue order that all the whole camp should returne vnto their owne countrie, for that which they came for was concluded, and that their departure shuld be in such sort, ỹ the people should not do anie harme, ỹ which was straight waie accomplished, & they appointed for king ouer that countrie a valiant knight, of whom we will intreate in the third part of this historie. So all the people of the king of Cimarra without giuing anie occasion of anger or harme, by the waie which they went, came vnto the place whereas they left all their fleete of ships, and there they imbarked themselues, and committed their Sailes vnto the winde, which they founde fauourable and prosperous, and brought them quickly vnto Cimarra, whereas the king did detaine them fiftene dayes, although they were vnwilling. At the end whereof they determined to depart their way to-

wards

neſſe ſayd. Noble King, what is it that thou canſt demaund of me, that I would not willingly accompliſh? To whome he aunſwered. Well, ſæing it is ſo my Lord, I do deſire you to returne vnto your Tent, and take your eaſe, and to leaue off this, and ſuch like controuerſies: for that the cauſe therof, my couſin and brothers ſonne, hath taken away from betwæne you. And when he had ſayd theſe & ſuch like words, he retourned vnto his companions, and perſwaded them altogether to retourne vnto the Citie, to the which they all conſented, although it was cleane contrary vnto the will of Don Eleno. So when they were entered into the Citie, they found that all the people and burgeſſes thereof were in great lamentation for the loſſe of their king and Lord, and the more, for that his death was ſo ſhamefull and odious. But they reſted not till they came to the Kings Pallayce, whereas they were receiued, and were vnarmed, and commaunded the dinner to be made readye, whereat they were meruailouſlye ſerued. And when that dinner and all was ended, the valyaunt Giaunt began to ſpeake in this manner.

Worthy Princes, and my Lords and friends, you do well know, and here you haue ſæne, how that all our trauayle which we haue had for to defend this king, hath bene greatly againſt our honours, and that neither our threatnings nor words were ſufficient for to diſturbe the will of the Emperour herein: for that he knew that his quarrell was very certaine and iuſt, which was the occaſion, that the puniſhment of this fact in all things hath bene fauourable according vnto his deſire. And for the better verefieng of the ſame, at that preſent time you ſaw come in place, his worthy ſon, accompanied with my brothers ſonne my couſin, that with their aide he ſhould conclude to put in execution his iuſte & true deſired reuengement: which hath bene a great reproch and ignomy vnto vs all, neither was there in any of vs ſo much force or ſtrength to withſtande or diſturbe him: but after the king being ſlaine, as you all did ſæ, they tyed him to the ſtirrops, and dragged him through all the fielde. So

that

that now you shal vnderstand, the king being dead our oath is frée, and we at libertie, neither stand we bound vnto anye other thing. And that which we ought at this présent to bée agréued at, is, for that we are out of the grace and fauor of our Lorde the Emperour. Therefore one of vs being his brothers sonne, another his sonne in lawe, and another his brother in lawe, and all the rest his déere and intire friends, for that we dw well know that he was not the occasion of this our fonde offence. Let vs now acknowledge our faulte, and procure to enter againe into his fauour and friendship, and goe altogether and discharge our selues, for that it is no shame vnto vs, to aske pardon for our faults and offences. Héere haue I declared vnto you my opinion and my will: I promise you I am determined to dw this, so that euery one may hérein dw, as best shall please him, and as he shall sée occasion. The first that annswered hérevnto, was the valiant Tartarian, and sayd.

Excellent king, your counsayle hérein doth like me very well, and we ought not to take anie other counsaile, but this onely which thou hast giuen vs: for that we sée playnelye, that it hath pleased God to punish vs, for that we would defende and maintaine such euill and naughtinesse, and without any farther counsayle we did subiect our selues by our oathes: therefore I dw determine my selfe to followe thy pretended intention. So likewise this counsell séemed good vnto the rest of the Knights and Princes, repenting themselues of all that had bene past. Don Eleno, who was almost confounded for the controuersie that was betwixt him and his Cousin, with an altered and angrye voyce, he presently replyed.

I dw not deny, but that this which hath happened, hath bene to our infamie as much as may be, by the which it is knowen ẏ we haue not maintained ẏ truth. But for all that I wil not giue vnto the Emperour nor vnto ẏ rest so much glorie, but let them make an end to triumph ouer our baseness: for as for my part, I wil first die, & be cut all to péeces, then

he threw them to the ground, very euill intreated. He was no ſooner fallen when that this couragious Sardenian leapt from his horſe verie lightly, and found that the king of Numidia was on foote readie for to defend himſelfe, and crying out: Knightes, ſuccour, ſuccour, or elſe I am but dead. At the which noiſe all the other fiue knights looked about, and when they ſawe the king in the power of that valiant knight, they would haue reſcued him, but the light of all knighthode which was the father and the ſonne, did diſturbe them, and put themſelues before them, and would not ſuffer them to giue anie ſuch aide, but did there great wonders, ſtriking on euerie ſide, in ſuch ſort, that now one and then the other they made them to recoile backe. The ſtrong and furious Eleno did but little harme with his ſworde, neither made he anie great reſiſtaunce, the Gyant with as little haſt as might bee went to helpe the Numidian king, & with a reaſonable pace he went towards the place whereas the king was, (but for that reaſon would not conſent that ſuch as he is ſhould bee holpen) with the haſt that he made, his horſe ſtumbled, in ſuch ſort, that horſe and maſter fell to the ground, of the which he was verie ſore hurt and bruſed, as it appeared by his ſlow riſing vp againe. The valiant Sardenian with great pollicie procured to bring to an end his deſire, before that anie did come to diſturbe him, and beeing lighted of his horſe he made haſt to the King and ſayde: Thou traytour, it ſhal little profit or pleſure thee to call for help, for ỹ in my hands thou ſhalt leaue this thy traiterous ſoule, who doeth deſerue to ſuffer all the euills that may bee, and therwith hee ſtroke him ſuch a blowe vppon his healme, and with ſo greate furie, that he made him in ſpite of his heart to kneele with both his knees vppon the earth. So when the Sardenian perceiued him to bee in this caſe, with greate valyauntneſſe he ſtraight wayes layde holde of his healme with his lefte hande, and pulled it cleane from his head, and with his right hande he ſmote him ſuch a blowe vppon the head, that hee parted it in two peeces, and immediatly hee fell downe dead to the ground, and looking about to ſee whether his horſe wer

gone

gone or no, he found that he was nigh at hande. Then hée toke the dead king and made him fast vnto the stiroppes of the Saddle, and with a trice hée leapt vpon his horse, and so without anie helpe of his stiroppes, hée made his horse to runne, and so drew the king after him throughout all the fielde. The Gyaunt would haue succoured him, but all was in vaine. In this sorte went Tefereo drawing the king after him before all the knightes that were there present and sayde: Knightes, what doe you meane to bée so still? Why doe you not vpholde and defend this trayterous king, in whose strength was all his confidence? Beholde now where he hath receiued the payment, that such euill workes as his deserued, and therewith he rode round about the fielde as hée did before. The Emperour when hée sawe that this fact was ended, would that his cousin Don Eleno, and the Prince his sonne shoulde leaue theyr battaile, which was betwæne them begunne a newe, and they were giuing one another terrible blowes, but not with such great furie, for that they did knowe the one the other, otherwise it woulde haue gone ill on both parts. The Emperour put himself betwæne them and said.

Oh Knights, cease your battaile and hearken vnto my wordes. Eleno which was still kindled in wrath, hadde no respect vnto those wordes, neyther woulde hée part, but lyke a man distraught from himselfe, hée doubled such a blowe vpon the visour of the Emperour, that hée made him lose the sight of his eyes. The Emperour who was verie angry and not a lyttle grieued, at the small regarde that he had of his wordes, woulde presently haue reuenged the blowe, but that hée was disturbed by the Gyaunt, who pulling off his healme went towards the place whereas these thrée worthie warriours were, and with a heauie and troubled voyce he sayde.

Heare mée O noble Emperour and you worthie knights, cease this your controuersie and staye your vnweakened armes, till such time as I haue vttered that which I will saye. Then the Emperour with his accustomed mée-

knightes, he very much mervailed what shoulde be the occasion, and with this desire he had to knowe what should moue them to this controuersie, he sawe a Lackie which passed by, and he called him, & asked of him in the Saracen tongue, saieng: Friend, tell me if thou cannest what is the occason that doth cause them to make this cruell and furious battaile, and who they be that do make it. This Lackie (by the riches of his armour, and by his good proporcion) iudged him to bee a knight of estimation, he saide: Gentle knight, the cause of this controuersie and defence, if I should stand to tell you it all, it would be verie tedious, but of all the rest that thou doest aske me, I will giue thée to vnderstand that which I doe knowe. You shall vnderstand that the knight which is alone is the mightie Emperour Trebatio of Greece, and that which hée doth maintaine is great iustice and right, and will giue great punishment for the same, which is that that the others doe defend. The knight of the Sunne was very much amazed at that which he hearde, and therewith he went towardes them before they had made an end of their reasoning, and so without anie shew of trouble he sayd vnto the Prince of Dacia (who was still sore troubled with the sorrowe, as you haue heard). Art thou Don Eleno of Dacia, my cousin, and brothers sonne vnto the Emperour, my Lord and Father? I am he answered the Dacian, who ought not for to dye, before I giue thée thy death, for that thou hast caused so much euill to come vpon me, that liuing I doe now die. The knight of the Sunne béeing almost in a confusion to beare his drie reasons, answered: Louing cousin, I féele my selfe somewhat troubled at these thy wordes, and greatly amazed that thou art fallen into so great pride to lift vp thy armed hand against thy naturall parents, and more béeing informed, that which thou doest pretend to defend is apparant treason. The Prince Eleno did cut of his talke and said. Oh my cousin, héere I doe tell thée, that I doe séeke no other thing but death, therefore procure to giue it mée, for that I shal thinke my selfe happie to die in thy hands, notwithstanding defend thy selfe as thou wert wont to do, for that thou

knowest

knowest it doth so behoue thée. With this furie and forgetfull vnderstanding, speking no more words, he turned about his horse, crying out and saying: I will liue no longer, seeing I haue lost that, beside which, to me can be no greater losse. The knight of the Sun verie much mervailed at these his short reasons, not knowing of anie thing that had happened vnto him, & wondering that his true heart should commit or maintain such wrongs, he turned about his horse for to make his defence, in such sort, that all the knights that were there, were not sufficient to disturbe him, but with great fury they met together with their speares, yet not one of thē was moued in their saddles, but remained as though they hadde bene two towers, and straight way with no lesse force they began to lay hold on their swordes, and for that the knight of the Sunne had a respect vnto him, he did rather procure to make his defence, then in anie thing to offend him, but Don Eleno stroke such a blowe at his cousin, that he made him to stoupe with all his bodie to the horse necke. The knight of the Sun would haue taken reuengement of the same blowe, but hée considered that he was his cousin, and that he was ignorant of the cause that should moue him to commit this folly, for the which consideration he did suffer him, and would make no reuengement. Tefereo who sawe all that had passed, & remained in his first place without remouing, til time did serue him to accomplish that which he had determined in his mind to do, and when he sawe occasion for the same, he threw his sheld vpon his arme, and put his speare in his rest, & made a shew ý he would be doing with ý gyant, ý which he perceiued, & he put himself in a readinesse, but more to giue him to vnderstand what he was, then to hurt him. This furious Sardenian stroke his horse with the spurs, ý he made him run like the commet which falleth from the side of Trion, & whē he came in the middest of his course, he turned his horse toward the place whereas the king of Numidia was (who had put himselfe a part from the rest) with so great swiftnesse ý by no meanes he could kéepe or defend himselfe from ý incounter, but by reason of the strength wherwith it was giuē

to ſuffer the great griefe that his heart did feele, he ſayd. Oh my ſweete Lidia, if thou doeſt heare my griefe and lamentation, let it appeare by ſome outwarde ſhewe in theſe harde ſtones, which hath bewrapt and incloſed thy white and delicate body, that receiuing griefe at theſe my lamentations, it may giue place that I may ſee thee, let this my anguiſh greeue thee my Lidia, likewiſe let this my miſfortune greeue thee. But alaſſe what ſhall I ſay, is it not ſufficient that the great paine that I doe ſuſtaine for thy death, but I muſt bewaile my owne ſorrowe: Oh miſtres, at thy death thou madeſt an end of all thy paines, and mine doth more and more increaſe. And in ſaying theſe and ſuch like lamentations, he drew out his Dagger, and with the point he wrote an Epitaph, which was as followeth.

HEere Lidia lou'de and vnbelou'de doth lie,
Whoſe great good will to her ſmall good did bring:
She loue did feele, which cauſeleſſe did applie
to her (perforce) of death the bitter ſting.
And though her corps incloſed heere doth lie,
her luckleſſe fate and fame will neuer die.

So when he had made this Epitaph, he aroſe vp, saying: heere I doe promiſe thee Lidia, ſince my fortune is ſuch that I haue loſt thee, there is no other that ſhall enter into this my heart and hard breaſt. But how can I ſaie that it is hard, did it not open at the houre when it felt thy abſence, and ſo without ſaying anie more, he went out of the temple, with all the reſt of his companions, and taking their horſes, they altogether iſſued out of the citie, at ſuch time as the Emperor was arming himſelfe in his rich tent. The fierce king of Sardenia when he ſawe that they returned againe, vnto ỹ which the daie before they did intreate of, he could not bee in quiet, but ſayde. O king, that for the defence of thy perſon wee muſt contende with that man whome we moſt eſteeme, and thou muſt remaine in the field onely for the ſhew of a knight, and we inforced to finiſh the barme, wherof thou art

the

the occasion. Well, do not thou thinke that it shall be so, but perswade thy selfe, that thou shalt be the first in the incounter, that thou maist proue how euill it is to suffer the sunne of the Emperour of Grecia. O worthie king of Sardenia, answered the king of Numidia, how the great affection which thou hast vnto the Emperour, doth cause thee not to giue credit vnto this my iustice and right. Heere I doe require thee by the oath which thou madest vnto me, that thou be the first to put thy selfe in the defence of my person. To which the Sardenian answered: First, the heauen and the earth shall ioyne together, before that I wil consent that my arme shal moue it selfe against him, whom I take for my Lord and master. And heere I saye vnto thee oh king, that if thou dost but once againe will me hereto, I sweare to thee by the soueraigne God, that neither thy power, nor all thy subiects shall be able to deliuer thee out of my hands. So their communication was cut off by seeing the Emperour to come towards them vpon a very faire horse, who showed so greate furie, that it was a wonder to see. At this present time there appeared comming from those parts which was towardes the sea, two Knights, who were very well armed. If you do remember, these were the two valiant warriours, the prince of the Sunne, and the strong Sardenian. The great desire that the Emperour had to see himselfe with the Numidian, was the occasion that he little estéemed the tarrying for those two knights, for that he thought the houre was come of the battaile, and that the defender should be (as he had demanded) that false king and traitour, he put himselfe forwardes towards the place wheras the Princes and the king came. And when they wer together, these Princes with very faire and amorous wordes and of great fidelitie, indeuoured to perswade the Emperour for to leaue the battaile, and that therein they should receiue meruailous great contentment, if he would accept it. The knight of ỹ sunne stood & did behold their reasonings, & did looke for no other thing but furious battaile, by all tokens ỹ they shewed with their handes and other demeanors of their bodies: & knowing fiue of the

" sells that were there present) he came to himselfe, he arose vp
" with a furious wrath, saying: Is it of truth (wicke soule that
" thou art departed & gone without me? Is it possible my Lidia
" ỳ I shall not follow thee whether thou doest goe? Alas what
" shall I doe? where am I ỳ I doe consent to let thee depart a-
" lone? how is this my onely loue, shall I lose thee? What is
" it ỳ this cruell heart aileth, that it renteth not in peces. O E-
" leno is this the loue that vnto thy Lidia liuing thou diddest
" shew. At which great noise the other foure Princes entred in-
to the chamber, who were meruailously altered to heare his
lamentations. So either of them in the best wise he could did
procure to comfort him, but this amorous knight with the
great anguish that he had, fel in a sound in the armes of Cla-
uerindo, who requested the Ladyes and damsells which were
there in companie with the dead bodie, that they woulde or-
daine some thing to bring him againe to his remembraunce,
and so with such remedies as they did make he came againe
vnto himselfe, who then with great rage crieng out, called for
" his Lidia. Oh my Lidia, what is become of thee, who for loue
" in another mans armes didst die, & now I die for thy loue?
" Oh the whole staie of all my life, where art thou my Lidia,
" my comfort, doest thou heare me? Doest thou not carrie with
" thee this thy heart? No, no, for yet I doe feele it. Is it
" possible that I can liue, or life will long sustaine me? I hard-
" ly beleeue it. Oh my ioy, doest thou come againe, I pray thee
" bee not so ingratefull, but stay a while for I will come vnto
" thee. For now I am certainely perswaded that I am alto-
" gether without life. Fond Eleno if thou be dead, wherefore
" doest thou talke so much of vanities, wherefore doest thou
" not hold thy peace. And with these & such lyke reasons he re-
mained without any feeling, in such sort that it seemed that he
was dead.

The other Princes which were there present seeing him in that case, toke him betweene them, and carried him vnto another chamber, and procured that Lidia shoulde be buried, which straight waie was done, for that the King commaunded his Sepulchre shoulde bee open, in which they

put

put this dead Ladie. The Prince of Hungaria did remaine in companie with the Prince Eleno, for that he would not let him alone, for hée loued him out of all measure, because hée did resemble so much the valiaunt Rosicleer. So hée remained there till such time as hée came vnto himselfe, and the first worde that Prince Eleno sayd, was: Where is the Letter of my Lidia. Liriamandro did giue it him, who taking it in his hand, he sayd.

Oh worke, and the last worke of that white Iuorie hande: héere I doe sweare vnto thée by the honour that I do owe vnto knighthode, not to a part it from my heart, till such time as the heart of that cruell Brenio hée cut it péces, and in speaking this hée kissed it a thousand times, vttering a thousande varieties. And straight waye with a furious anger, hée arose vp and sayde: What is this Eleno, doest thou beléeue that with lamenting thou shalt recouer thy welbeloued Lidia, and not performe that which by her was commaunded thée. It is more requisite that thou doest trauaile and wander, till such time as thou hast performed that which thou hast promised, gather vnto thy selfe strength and courage, for to performe that which thy heart is bounde to do. So with this anguish he arose vp at such times as Aurora, with his glistering beames hadde spread ouer the earth.

¶How that Eleno before he would goe into the field, would see the Sepulchre of Lidia, and what chaunced in the battaile appointed with the Emperor, his kinsmen & friends. Chap. 26.

THE nexte morning when the daie was come, all these stout warriours were readye on horse backe, but Prince Eleno, woulde first goe and sée the Sepulchre of his Lidia, and going into the Temple of Mahomet, hée went straight vnto the place whereas they tolde him that his Lidia was, and hauing no strength

that burning ague was not able to reſiſt her, but with the force of loue ſhe ſate vp in her bed, and with her face of a fiery colour ſhe ſayd. "My Lord, time doth not giue me anye "place, that with words I might gratifie the great courteſie "that of thee I haue receiued: for that I do feele, that the hower is come, and that the three fatall ſiſters haue the threed "of my life betweene the edges of their sheeres, ſo that it lacketh nothing but to put them together: inſomuch, that "I miſerable creature do feele my ſoule tremble in my fleſh, "at this my laſt hower. But one thing, (oh my ſweete and "true louer) I will deſire thee before that I do dye, which is, "that thou wouldeſt procure, that this letter maye bee giuen "vnto that cruell Knight, who hath brought me vnto this "eſtate, giuing him to vnderſtande of this my troubleſome "death, the occaſion whereof, was his vnreaſonable crueltie. And making an end of ſaying this, this miſerable Lady fell downe, without hauing any more ſtrength to ſit vp, but let the letter fall out of her hande before her true louer, who toke it vp and ſayd.

"Oh all my ioye, what a cruell knife is this to my heart, "to heare thy complaynts, in giuing me to vnderſtande the "great crueltie that loue hath vſed againſt thee, without anye "deſert or reaſon: and verely I do beleeue, that theſe thy "great thoughts and griefes, but moſt of all thy abſence wil "be the occaſion of my death. And if ỹ my enimies are not "of power to giue it me, heere I do ſweare vnto thee by the "great and true loue which I beare vnto thee, that I my ſelfe "with my owne hands will procure to pull this heart out of "his place, for that it knew not how to giue thee contentment "paying therwith ỹ dutie ỹ I ow vnto thee. O happy Brenio "that dioſt obtaine ſo much grace & fauour at Venus handes, "for to be beloued of the flower of all beautie. The Clime in "the which thou wert borne was not ſo happie as to the contrarie my Clime hath been vnhappie & vnfortunate. Take "a good heart my Miſtres, comfort your ſelfe and be ſtrong, "and bee not the occaſion that I ſeeke my owne death, & heere "I doe promiſe thee by thy vnhappie ſucceſſe, to bring thee in-

to

to the Prouince of Lusitania, or else to die.

Then this weake Lidia sayde: Gentle Knight, there is nowe no time all beeing past, for that I doe feele my » selfe that this is the last sight. The sacred Gods will not » permit that before my death I shoulde see his face: for if I » did, I verily beleeue that I should receiue some comfort. O » immortall Gods, into your diuine bosomes I doe commend » my soule, asking no other reuengement against the causer » of all my euill, but that hee die of the same infirmitie. And » thou mightie Greeke, heere I do desire thee by the loue which » thou doest seeme to owe me, for that thou seest that my death » cannot be excused, and that Proserpina is tarrying for mee, » with both her armes abroade for to receiue my soule. And a- » gaine, that this shall be the last request that by me shall bee » demanded of thee, as also to verifie this loue which thou hast » shewed vnto me to be true, so that I hope thou canst not by » anie meanes denie me to doe it. How is it possible my sweet » Mistres, sayd the Prince, that now thou art in doubt of my » loue, I promise you that my true loue doth not deserue this » suspition, and heere I giue you to vnderstande, that first the » mightie riuer of Tigris shall forsake her course and runne » backe againe, before that anie lacke shall be found in me of » that I owe vnto thy loue, neither anie forgetfulnesse to bee » the occasion to withdraw me from doing anie thing that you » shall commaund me, therfore sweet mistres aske what your » pleasure is, for that thou canst aske nothing at my handes, » but it shall be all thine. This weak Ladie, whose power and » strength was wholy decayed, and that her houre drew nigh » at hande, with a weake and feeble voice she said. That which » I desire, gentle Lorde, is, that this my letter may come vnto » the handes of Brenio, wherein he may see how cruell he hath » bene vnto his Lidia. So this dead Ladie spake neuer a word » more, for at that instaunt the destinies concluded to cut the » thrid of her lyfe a sunder. Heere the Prince lacked both rea- son and patience, heere he lost all his comfort and vnderstan- ding, & comming vnto the dead bodie of Lidia, he fell in a sound, & when (by the procurement of the Ladies and Dam-

so be that the Emperour had tolde them any other thing, it was onely to deceiue them, and to tourne them, that they should not make his defence, and charged them againe with their oath which they had made and how that they had giuen their wordes to be his vpholder and defender. This worthy Dacian tourning vnto his companions sayd. Knightes, what dow you thinke in this matter, what is it best that we dow herein? For well you dow se, that we are so bewrapte & bound one against another, and cousin against cousin, yet for all that we cannot by any meanes excuse the battaile. So they did all determine to retourne vnto the Emperour, and to desire him for to accept it in good part, and to leaue off that battaile, & to make thē beleeue that he was falsly informed, & when they came vnto him they said. Worthy Emperour, and our onely Lord, loke well vnto this false information, wherewith they haue informed you, and hauing well considered thereof, we dow all request you, for the loue which vnto your sonnes and cousins, and vnto all your friendes you dow owe, that it may mous you to take no occasion to put vs into this extremitie, for that by anie meanes we cannot goe from our oath and word. Vnto the which the Emperour answered and sayd. My louing friends, if that you haue giuen your word and oath to procure to make defence of so false a King, dow you likewise indeuour to performe the same: for the like will I doe to accomplish that which I haue promised, for that there is no more reason for the one then for the other. But this one thing I doe tell you, that it is very apparant that you will maintaine the treason of this false King, as it appereth plainly by many reasons, which I haue told vnto you: and the principall cause, wherin you maye see plainely his treason and falshode, is the little hast that he doeth make himselfe vnto the battaile, and if he knew that he dowth maintaine the truth, let him come forth and make his owne defence. At the which reasons they all helde their peace, considering the great reason which the Emperour had declared, and determined that the next daie they woulde conclude, what were best to be done, & so these fiue knights retur-

returned vnto the Citie, and the Emperour vnto the campe. Of all this that happened, he that receiued the moſt contentment, was the Prince Eleno, for he deſired verye much to retourne vnto the Citie, for that at his departure he left his Lady very ſicke, ſo that he thought not to finde her aliue, and comming to the Citie, hée was no ſoner alighted from his horſe, but hée went ſtraight vnto her Chamber, whereas hée found her with a mightie burning ague, and ſéeing her in that caſe, he was as one that was beſide himſelfe, and the more that her ague increaſed, the more furious ſhe did ſhew her ſelfe and farther out of quiet. So this grœuous and ſicke Ladie did aſke paper and inke for to write a few lines vnto him which was the cauſer of all this her harme, and making an ende of her writing, without power to doo any other thing, with the great feébleneſſe ſhée felt, ſhe fell downe vpon her pillowe, & ſpeaking vnto Eleno ſhe ſayd. Valiant knight, „ behold héere thy Lidia, at her laſt ende: for that there doth „ not remaine in me ſtrength for to giue thée thankes, for ſo „ great benefits as I haue receiued at thy handes: yet I car- „ rie one great comfort with me, which is, ỹ although I dye, „ yet thy great loyaltie doeth not dye, neyther my firme faith, „ and although I was vnloued of an vnfaythfull Knight, yet „ am I beloued of the moſt couragious knight in the worlde. „ This ſorrowfull and troubled Prince woulde not ſuffer her to goe forwards with her talke, but with ſhedding of manie teares from his eyes, he ſayd.

Oh my ſwœte Miſtreſſe, doe not giue me to vnderſtande „ that thou wilt dye, if that thou meane I ſhall remaine a- „ liue. Oh my loue, I would rather that my heart ſhoulde be „ parted in twaine, by the greateſt enimie that I haue, then „ to remaine without thée. Oh my louing Miſtres, let this thy „ youthfull yeres and great beautie which thou haſt, incourage „ thée, & die not in this order: this fœble Lidia for to ſhew with „ more feruentneſſe the good will which ſhe did alwe vnto the „ Prince, for his great curteſie forced her ſelfe to holde vp her head, and he lifted it vp with ſuch quickneſſe, as though her weake members had felt no griefe, & as though the furie of

that

" thy foure companions I owe knowe, which is the occasion
" that I haue no desire to enter into battaile with thee. Then
" Don Eleno answered and sayd: Pagan, of the two things
" which thou doest aske of mee (although there is no compul-
" sion) yet will I pleasure thee in fulfilling one of them: and in
" saying these wordes, he lift vp the visour of his healme, and
when the Emperour sawe him, he beleeued that it had beene
his sonne Rosicleer, and with a loud voice he said. Oh migh-
" tie God, how can this be true, that vnto knights of my lig-
" nage should chaunce so vile a spot, who hetherto in all their
" owings haue got great honour and praise, and now are come
" to defend such apparaunt wickednesse and treason. Thou
" shalt vnderstand knight, that I am the Emperour Trebatio,
" and would not willingly now be called thy Father, for that
" thou art come to defend so apparaunt and knowen an euill,
" for I knowing the vnreasonable naughtinesse that this king
" hath committed, am come to take this conquest in hande, for
" in all my life time I neuer toke a more iuster cause in hand,
" neither was there euer in all the worlde a thing more wor-
" thier of punishment then this, and seeing that my fortune
" hath been such, that my first enimie that should come against
" me, seemeth my sonne, put thy selfe heere now before thy high
" progenitour from whence thou doest descend, and for Gods
" loue doe not blot thy stock, in defending traitours & treason,
" & therwith in few wordes he told vnto them all the whole hi-
" story, as before I haue tolde you. Then this excellent Dacian
" answered. High & mightie Emperour, although by my name
" thou hast not knowen me, yet in calling me sonne thou did-
" dest happen on the truth. For thou shalt vnderstand that I
" am called Eleno of Dacia, sonne vnto the king of Dacia thy
" brother, and in that which thou hast sayde that we doe main-
" taine treasons, we are to the contrarie informed, neuertheles
" I beseech your highnesse to tarrie heere a while, and there-
" with he and the Prince in a great confusion returned to the
place whereas the rest of his companions were, and turning
" his talke vnto the king, he sayd. King of Numidia, thou shalt
" vnderstand that yonder knight is the Emperour of Grecia,

my

my vncle, who in that small time which we haue ben with him, hath told vnto vs all the effect of this thy matter, cleane contrary vnto that which thou hast declared vnto vs. Therefore King, there is no reason, that Knights of so high blood and name as we are should be set to defend lyes and treasons: but if it be to the contrary of that which he hath told vnto me, haue no doubt but tell vs the truth. For hære I sweare by the loue that I beare vnto that vnlouing Lidia, that I will trauayle so with my vncle, that greatly with thy honour thou shalt goe thorough with this conquest. Then this false King aunswered. O Knights which ow confesse your selues to be Christians, and by the God whome you ow worship haue made a solemne oath to helpe and defend me by the strength of your armes: how happeneth it now ỹ without any care of your oth, which you haue sworn, you will leaue me desolate, and goe from your words, bæing doubtfull of the very truth. The couragious French man aunswered: Ow thou not thinke King, that our oathes and words shall be abrogated, rather first we will læse our liues, both I, the prince, & all our companions: but consider king, that God will not that we shall imagine amisse of Trebatio, who is a prince of great veritie and truth, and agayne, our verie nigh kinsman. Therefore this, and that which hæ hath tolde vs, hath moued vs to come and tell thæ, and doe saye, that none of vs will goe from his word and oath if thy cause be iust. Then the valyaunt Eleno did cut off his reasons, and tourning vnto the King he sayd. King of Numidia, hære I do most humblye desire thæ, that with false illusions thou putte not vs vnto so great trauaile, for that then it can not be, but either wæ must dye in the hands of him whome we doe desire to serue, or els, (though farre vnlikely) to kill him. Is it possible king, that thou hast brought vs vnto this estate, that crueltie should gouern our wills, without hauing power to doe any other thing. The King when he saw that the Knights were very earnest, began to sweare with great oaths that his cause was iust, and that he had tolde vnto them the truth of the matter, and if

so

king vp the visour of his healme, he set his horne vnto his mouth, and did sound it very strongly, which was to warne them that were in the Citie, to come to the walls and harken what he would saye: and when he sawe that there was much people, attending to heare him, he began to saye. O "King Noraldino of Numidia, how carelesse thou art in this "thy strong countrey, thinking that the strength thereof will "defende thee, that thou payest not the price of thy naughtie "treason, which thou didst vse with that vnfortunate Herea. "Take vnto thee thy armour, and for that thou hadst a heart "to commit this cuill deede, haue now likewise a courage to "make thy defence: come forth of these thy walls, thou trai-"tour, and destroyer of the royall bloud. All they which were on the walls did heare the threatenings, and straight ways went and tolde it vnto the king of Numidia, who was at that time in communication of warres and of armyes, and "of all things that belonged therevnto, and when he hearde "these newes, gining a great sigh he sayd. Oh ye Gods, are "not you content to see me in this perplexitie, and so much "wronged, but likewise with sound of trumpet suffer me to "be outraged in calling me traytor. These fayned griefes and sorrowfull words had so much force, that it moued the harts of the Princes that were with him, for to goe out into the field for his defence: and in great hast they commaunded, that their harneste shuld be brought vnto them, with determination to dye, or to defend his cause. And there was none that had any feare, but onely the Gyant, for that he would not giue any credit vnto the Kings words, although he dissembled neuer so muuch: but by reason that he had swornе thereunto, hee was constrayned by his oath to goe forth with the rest.

So in this order as I haue told you, they went forth of the Citie all fire together: and he which gaue the first onset was that valiant and amorous Eleno of Dacia brothers son vnto the Emperour, who with a gentle behauiour when hee "came nigh the Emperour, sayd in the Saracen tongue: It is "not the part of good Knights to speake any villany, especially

against

againſt Kings whom they are bound to haue in reuerence & honour. To whom the Emperour aunſwered in the ſame language. Art thou Noraldino King of Numidia? Don Eleno replyed, No, but I am a Knight, and a very ſtranger in this countrey: but yet by firme oath, I determine to bye in the defence of his right. The Emperor aunſwered: Ye hath neither iuſtice nor right on his ſide, but it is meſt apparant wrong which he doth maintaine, and there is no reaſon that ſuch a traytor as he is, ſhoulde be by anye other defended: neither is it ſeemely that anie Knight of price ſhould charge himſelfe in his behalfe, for that he is a traytor. And likewiſe he that doth defend him and take his part (in this, that hee will ſuſtaine and maintaine ſo great vniuſtice) is partaker of his treaſon, and meriteth a traytors name. And for that thou art his defender, heere I giue thee to vnderſtand, that I care not for thee, and leſſe I do eſteeme thee: for that hee which doth take vpon him to defend a traytor, may well be accounted a traytor. This valiaunt Eleno, when hee ſawe himſelfe to be ſo ill intreated, aunſwered: Thou lyeſt in ſo ſaying, for that I was neuer traytor, neither do I procéede of the lynage where traytors euer were: notwithſtanding, thou ſhalt pay me with thy head, the great vncurteſie which thou haſt vſed vnto me. Therefore it doth ſtande thee in hand to looke vnto thy ſelfe, and take that part of the fielde, which thou thinkeſt beſt for thy purpoſe, and leaue off theſe blazing words to ioyne with me in battaile, that I maye ſée if thou canſt as well defend thy quarrell, as thou canſt handle thy tongue. At which words, there drew nigh them the Prince Clauerindo, and as the Emperour woulde haue departed to put himſelfe in battel, he did behold him, & ſtraight waye knew him. And caſting his eyes on the one ſide, likewiſe knew the other there, but he could not knowe who the Prince Eleno ſhould be: and for the great deſire which hee had to know what he was, he ſayd: Knight, I do deſire thee, for courteſies ſake to tell me what thou art: & if thou wilt not grant me this, then I pray thee to lift vp ỹ viſor of thy helme, ỹ I may ſée thy face: for heere I giue thee to vnderſtãd,

that

with the Emperour, whereas likewise he met with this old and auncient King, who bowing his knees to the earth, and shedding of many teares, with ioye, receiued him, saying. O "high and mightie Emperour, giue me heere your hands, that "I may discharge the dutie that all humane creatures do owe "vnto your highnesse: how much more I, that am bounde "thereunto, for that with so much firmenesse thou wouldest "confirme thy oath, and take the charge in thine owne person "to worke my reuengement. The Emperour was in a great confusion, to heare himselfe named, and neuer gaue anye in all that lande to vnderstand thereof, but strayght waye hee suspected, that Lirgandeo should aduise him of his comming. And herewith vsing of his accustomed bountie, hee toke him by the hand, and lifted him from the grounde, saying, "God king, the debt which thou sayst is due vnto me, thou "hast repayed in showing the nobleneſſe of thy heart and cou- "rage, and otherwise I am constrained by ỹ order of knight- "hood and iustice, to make reuengement of that cursed facte, "which was without all pitie committed vpon thy daughter. "And seeing that there can be no other remedy but onely re- "uengement, heere of my part I do offer thee to do all, that "in my power is possible to be done, desiring thee that thou "restraine these teares, and giue order that with great speede "there may be ioyned together all thy power, to the end that "we maye goe and conclude that which in me lyeth. The "King with a sad voyce answered. High and mightie Empe- "rour, this hath bene prouided for before, for all my peo- "ple and shires are at an houres warning, to goe to the ayd- "ing of so iust a cause, and we tarryed for nothing but onely "your royall person, who must be the sword of my reuenge- "ment.

Thus with these and such like communications, they went vnto the Kings pallaice, which was hanged all with blacke clothes, for others he would not consent to haue hanged, since the death of his daughter Herea. There was the Emperour vnarmed, and serued with as great highnesse and honour, as though he had bene in Grecia. Notwithstanding

the

the Emperour, would not ſoiourne nor reſt there much, for the nexte daye in the morning he commaunded that all the people ſhould march forwards vnto a hauen which was at the vttermoſt parts of all the Kingdome, wheras they found ſhips and barkes of all ſortes, verye well furniſhed of all things that was nedfull. There was thrée hundred ſhips one with another, in the which there was imbarked fiftie thouſand Moores meruailouſly well appointed, and committing their ſayles vnto the winde, all this Naule toke their voyage towards Numidia. So they nauigated, and founde the winde fauourable, which brought them vnto a porte or hauen, which was but two leagues from the Kings houſe. There, with great ioy and pleaſure they went a ſhore, without any reſiſtaunce or gainſaying. So when they were all out of the ſhippes a lande, they diſplayed their ancients, and in very good order they marched forwards. And at ſuch time as Apollo had made an ende of his iourney, and that the darke night came on, they came in ſight of the Citie, and without taking any reſt, towards the lande ſide they pitched their tents, and fortified themſelues in the beſt wiſe they could, in ſuch ſort, as their good Captaine which did gouerne them had commaunded, without doing any thing to the contrary. So when all things was put in good order as they would haue it, he commaunded that all the armie, ſhould go vnto the gate of the Citie that was moſt nereſt, the which was ſtraight waye done: and in thrée dayes after they did no other thing but eaſe and reſt themſelues: for that the people were ſomewhat out of quiet with their great trauayle.

The fourth daye, the Emperour ſeeing that there was no ſturring in the Citie, (the which was done by pollicie, tarying to ſee what the enimies would do) the Emperour called for his armour: and being armed, there was brought a verye fayre and mightie horſe vnto him: and with his accuſtomed courage he iſſued out from amongſt his compaye, and rode towards the wall of the Citie, and put himſelfe into a faire greene playne nigh vnto the walls, and lif-

and ſtrong Gyaunt, and in the other parte of the armie one onely knight, whoſe armour ſéemed to bée of a paſſing fine Rubie, all to bée ſpotted with ſtarres of golde, and ſet with Pearles. This ſight did lyke them ſo well, that they were loking on that one knight a greate while verie earneſtly, and toke greate pleaſure to ſée his good demenour. The Knight of the Sunne was imagining with himſelfe what knight that ſhoulde bée, that was of ſo gentle diſpoſition and proporcion, beléeuing certainely that it coulde bée none, but ſome of his lignage. This knight paſſed harde by thoſe two friendes, who did beholde them verie much, yet hée made no ſtaying, but without ſpeaking anie worde he paſſed on forwardes, and when hée was come into that place of the fielde that was appointed for the battaile, he put his ſpeare in his reaſt, at the which token one of the ſire knightes came forth to make reſiſtaunce, whome the knight of the Sunne did knowe.

But nowe for that the hiſtorie goeth in order, it is néedfull to leaue them in this order, till time ſhall ſerue, and to returne againe, and tell you of the Emperour of Grecia, that came to the port of Cimarra, and there did diſimbarke himſelfe.

¶How the Greeke Emperour did diſimbarke himſelfe at the Citie of Cimarra, and what happened vnto him there. Cap. 25.

YOu haue heard before how that the Emperour arriued at the Port of Cimarra, which was gouerned by the Father of that vnfortunate Herea, where when hée hadde put in order his inchaunted Barke, hée leapte a lande, and going on foote armed with that rich armour which Garrofilea had giuen vnto him, carrying his right hande vpon the reaſt which was in his armour, and his left hande vpon the pomell of his ſworde, and his helme cloſe which couered his face, and hanging at his necke

his

his gallaunt and rich shelde, with a comelye and graue countenaunce he went towardes the Citie, and of the first that hee met withall, he asked what lande or Countrie that was, for that hee was ignorannt thereof, and straight waie it was tolde him in the Sarasin language, that hee was in the kingdome of Cimarra, whereat hee was not a little delighted, and considering the knowledge of the wise Lyrgandeo, he went forwardes on his waie without staying, till he entered into the gates of the Citie, and all they which met with him, did verie much beholde him, greatly meruailing at his grauitie, good disposition, and wonderfull stature. There were sundrye that aduertised the King thereof as sone as hee was come a shoare, howe that there was a knight which did disimbarke himselfe at the Port or Hauen, which came without gouernement, beeing armed with verie rich and costly armour, and one that was of an excellent stature and good disposition. The auncient King of the Countrie who was aduertised thereof before by the wise Lyrgandeo, did straight waie knowe that it was hee which had passed the terrible keepers of his murthered Daughter.

For you shall vnderstand, that as sone as the Emperour was departed from the Ilande, the wise Lyrgandeo commaunded that the bodie of the Ladie shoulde bee carried vnto Cimarra, aduertising her Father, that the long looked for reuengement was not farre of. And lykewise how and in what manner the knight which did it shoulde come into his lande, and also who that Knight shoulde bee. Wherefore as sone as the king was giuen to vnderstande of his arriuall, without anie more tarrying, beeing accompanyed with all his noble men, and leading in his hande a very fayre and young childe, about twelue yeares olde, the most best proportioned that euer nature coulde frame, of whome you shall heare no more in this booke, for that in the seconde booke it shall bee declared at large of him. The king went forth till he came to the chiefe place of the Citie, there to meet

and ſtrong Cyaunt, and in the other parte of the armie one onely knight, whoſe armour ſæmed to bæ of a paſſing fine Rubie, all to bæ ſpotted with ſtarres of golde, and ſet with Pearles. This ſight did lyke them ſo well, that they were loking on that one knight a greate while verie earneſtly, and toke greate pleaſure to ſæ his good demenour. The Knight of the Sunne was imagining with himſelfe what knight that ſhoulde bæ, that was of ſo gentle diſpoſition and proporcion, beleuing certainely that it coulde bæ none, but ſome of his lignage. This knight paſſed harde by thoſe two friendes, who did beholde them verie much, yet hæ made no ſaying, but without ſpeaking anie worde he paſſed on forwardes, and when hæ was come into that place of the fielde that was appointed for the battaile, he put his ſpeare in his reaſt, at the which token one of the ſire knightes came forth to make reſiſtaunce, whome the knight of the Sunne did knowe.

But nowe for that the hiſtorie goeth in order, it is nædfull to leaue them in this order, till time ſhall ſerue, and to returne againe, and tell you of the Emperour of Grecia, that came to the port of Cimarra, and there did diſimbarke himſelfe.

¶How the Greeke Emperour did diſimbarke himſelfe at the Citie of Cimarra, and what happened vnto him there. Cap. 25.

YOu haue heard before how that the Emperour ariued at the Port of Cimarra, which was gouerned by the Father of that vnfortunate Herea, where when hæ hadde put in order his inchaunted Barke, hæ leapte a lande, and going on foote armed with that rich armour which Garrofilea had giuen vnto him, carrying his right hande vpon the reaſt which was in his armour, and his left hande vpon the pomell of his ſworde, and his helme cloſe which couered his face, and hanging at his necke

his

his gallaunt and rich shelde, with a comelye and graue countenaunce he went towardes the Citie, and of the first that hee met withall, he asked what lande or Countrie that was, for that hee was ignorant thereof, and straight waie it was tolde him in the Saracin language, that hee was in the kingdome of Cimarra, whereat hee was not a little delighted, and considering the knowledge of the wise Lyrgandeo, he went forwardes on his waie without staying, till he entered into the gates of the Citie, and all they which met with him, did verie much beholde him, greatly meruailing at his grauitie, good disposition, and wonderfull stature. There were sundrye that aduertised the King thereof as soone as hee was come a shoare, howe that there was a knight which did disimbarke himselfe at the Port or Hauen, which came without gouernement, beeing armed with verie rich and costly armour, and one that was of an excellent stature and good disposition. The auncient King of the Countrie who was aduertised thereof before by the wise Lyrgandeo, did straight waie knowe that it was hee which had passed the terrible keepers of his murthered Daughter.

For you shall vnderstand, that as soone as the Emperour was departed from the Ilande, the wise Lyrgandeo commaunded that the bodie of the Ladie shoulde bee carried vnto Cimarra, aduertising her Father, that the long looked for reuengement was not farre of. And lykewise how and in what manner the knight which did it shoulde come into his lande, and also who that Knight shoulde bee. Wherefore as soone as the king was giuen to vnderstande of his arriuall, without anie more tarrying, beeing accompanyed with all his noble men, and leading in his hande a very fayre and young childe, about twelue yeares olde, the most best proportioned that euer nature coulde frame, of whome you shall heare no more in this booke, for that in the seconde booke it shall bee declared at large of him. The king went forth till he came to the chiefe place of the Citie, there to meet

The Moꝛꝛe ſeing that all that he coulde doe was to little effect, cryed out againſt Mahomet, and with the great foꝛce that the Moꝛꝛe vſed, his hoꝛſe aroſe againe vpon his feete, at ſuch time as the Sardenian with ſo outragious cholar, that the ſmoke flew out at his vilour, toke his great ſwoꝛd in both his handes, letting his ſheelde hang at his backe, and ſtroke him ſuch a terrible blow vpon the creaſt of his helme, that hee made him cleane to loſe his feeling foꝛ a greate while. The Moꝛꝛes hoꝛſe by reaſon of his wearineſſe was readie to fall downe on euerie ſide: This valyaunt Sardenian ſeing him in that caſe, and remembꝛing in what oꝛder he had beforꝛe left the knight of the Sunne, without anie moꝛe tarrying tourned about his ſwift and light hoꝛſe, and with as much ſwiftneſſe as might bee poſſible, he returned vnto the place where as he had left the knight of the Sun and when hee came vnto the place wheras the battaile was fought betweene the two warriours, he found not the knight of the Sunne there, but retourning backe againe he toke his waie towardes the Sea ſide, following the foote ſteppes of them and theyꝛ hoꝛſes, and in a ſmall time hee came vnto the place, whereas he ſawe a barke which was at an anker faſt vpon the ſhoare, and comming nigh vnto it he knew it to bee the verie ſame which had bꝛought them thether, and foꝛ to knowe of certaintie whether the knight of the Sunne were there oꝛ not, he called with a loude voice vnto them which were in the Barke: vnto whome the Greeke made anſwere, and when he ſaw that it was his friend Tefereo that had called, he was verie gladde, and likewiſe Tefereo did greatly reioyce to ſee him, and therewith he entered into the Barke, and when hee was entered therein, he heard one with a lowde voyce, which ſayde. Tarrie, tarrie, thou cowardly villaine, and doe not thinke to eſcape mee without thy due puniſhment. At which greate noiſe the Knight of the Sunne loked about and ſaw that it was the King of Mauritania, which with verie greate haſt came towardes them. The Prince wold haue gone out to him if ꝑ the Barke had not ben ſo far in the ſea, as it was, foꝛ the which he was very

ſadde,

ſad, & not a little diſquieted, yet for all the anger which the Prince had, he could not chooſe but ſaie that the king was a good knight, and of as much might as Bramarant, and ſomewhat more valiaant and politike, and meruailed with himſelfe whether he were his ſonne or no. So when the Pagan ſawe that he coulde not execute his furie and rage, hee beganne to roare lyke a Bull, and although he was not purpoſed anie more to imbarke himſelfe to ſea, yet at that time hee was conſtrayned to chaunge his pretence, and finding opportunitie by reaſon of certaine Merchauntes which were fraighting of a ſhippe to Grecia, hee determined to goe into her. There hee imbarked himſelfe, and the winde beeing verie proſperous they departed, and in a verie ſhort time they ariued at a hauen in Grecia, where as hee went a lande, and trauailed in the Countrie certaine dayes. So it happened one daie that hee founde by a houſe of pleaſure, a great companie of Knightes, Ladyes, and Damoſells, which were recreating of themſelues. What they were, and what the king did, in following the Storie you ſhall vnderſtande, and I will nowe leaue him for to tell you of the heroycall ſonne of Trebatio, who for the ſpace of fiue dayes ſayled on the Sea with greate pleaſure, often talking of the great ſtrength and force of the Moore, the ſeauenth daye he ariued in a verye faire hauen or port, which was nigh vnto a verie ſumptuous Citie, the which was furniſhed with greate ſhippes and Gallyes, and other ſmall Barkes and Foyſtes. Amongeſt all theſe they paſſed verie quicklye, without the interruption of anie perſon, till ſuch time as the Barke was faſt a grounde, and perceiuing that it was there conuenient that they ſhoulde diſimbarke themſelues, they leapt a ſhoare, and lykewiſe toke out theyr horſes, and ſtraight waye they leapt on theyr backes, and toke the waye which lead them vnto the Citie, wherein they diſcouered on the one parte a verie fayre and greate armie of men, and lykewiſe all the fielde was pitched with verie rich Tentes, and as they loked aboute, ſtraight wayes they ſawe come forth of the Citie fiue mightie and ſtrong Knightes, and a verie greate

for he that doth followe him, will handle him well inough, therefore come and followe me, for that there is other matters of greater importaunce which are tarrying for thee. The Prince when he heard these words behelde well the Damosell that was talking with him, and straight wayes he knewe her to be the Damsell that hee and the Prince Eleno had found in the Barke, who after these speeches went onwardes her waie with greate speed. The Prince at that time had not his hart so quieted within him, as to aske her anie questions, but without saying anie worde he followed her, till they came vnto the filde whereas he sawe the Barke wherein the Damosell had come thether, into the which she entered, and after her followed the Knight of the Sunne, but when they were setteled within, the Barke mooued nothing at all, wherby they well vnderstood that it tarried for more companie whome he thought to be for his friend Tefereo, and as you before heard, he with greate furie on horse backe rode after the Moore, and made so much haste in following him, that he ouertoke him in a plaine fielde, and at the greate noyse and calling that Tefereo made, this Moorish king looked backe, beleeuing that it had bene the Knight of the Sunne, but when he sawe him and knewe by his armour that it shoulde not be he, he tarryed for him, and when they drewe nigh toyne her, he sayde: Knight, what a Diuell wouldest thou haue, that with so great haste thou doest followe me, and with so arrogant a voice doest call me. Tefereo answered him and sayd.

Cowarde, to make thee paie the giuing of that blowe, which thou gauest vnto a better Knight then thou art. Then the king sayde: Oh high Gods, what may this be, that in the beginning of my knighthode I should be so reuiled, and vnto Tefereo he replied: Knight thou lyest, for I never left my battaile for cowardnesse, but that as I doo well knowe, he with whome I had battaile is no man, but a Diuell, and againe I left him for that hee gaue vnto mee the order of Knighthode, but nowe thou shalt paie for all that which hee hath done vnto mee, ioyntly with the wordes which

thou

thou haſt heere ſpoken, and without anie more tarrieng they begaune to ſtrike many and vnmeaſurable blowes the one at the other, the Moore ſtroke one at the Sardenian which was ſo terrible, that it made him cleane to loſe his ſight, and to leane on the one ſide of his horſe, ſo that he had almoſt fallen downe, but with a trice he ſetteled himſelfe vpright in his ſaddle againe, and finding the Moore at hande, he caſt a thruſt at him ſo firme and ſtrong, that he thruſt him cleane out of the Saddle vppon the crouper of his horſe, ſo that he lacked but a little of falling downe backwarde, and ſeing him in this ſorte, with wonderfull agilitie he ſkipped on the other ſide, and before that the Moore coulde ſettle himſelfe well agayne, he ſtroke him ſuch another blowe vpon his healme, that he made him to reele forwardes as faſt as he did backwardes, and then he doubled him another blowe vpon the backe, that whether he woulde or no, he made his head to touch the buttocke of his horſe, and with the greate furie that he ſtroke the blowe, he pricked his horſe, which was the occaſion that he ranne forwardes in ſuch ſorte, that the Moore had time to recouer himſelfe againe, vſing his accuſtomed curſinges againſt Mahomet, in calling him a thouſande deteſtable names. So theſe valyaunt warriours without anie farther ſtaying, ioyned againe together, whereas there beganne a new battaile farre more rigorous then the firſt, for that they were both furiouſly incenſed with anger, not ceaſing to torment their armes with terrible blowes, without all pittie, in ſuch ſort, that their blowes were delivered more with ſtrength then with anye pollicie. Thus with terrible furie they boyled one anothers fleſh, that either of them did feele it very much: this Mauritanian with greate furie lift vp his ſworde for to ſtrike the Sardenian, and he placed it in ſuch ſort that he made him to fall vpon his horſe crouper, but by reaſon of the greate furie wherwith it was diſcharged, & againe that the Moores horſe was ſomewhat weary, he ſtumbled & bowed vpon his knees, in ſuch ſort, that in a great while he could not riſe vp againe, and although he ſpurred him very much, yet it profited little.

but that the Prince did ſettle himſelfe in his ſaddle, and re-
couered againe his ſword, and committing himſelfe to God,
as he allwayes was accuſtomed to dw, he ſayd: Oh holy Je-
ſu for thy names ſake, ayde and helpe me. And therwith he
ſpurred his Cornerino with great furie, that he made him
runne like the winde, and in his courſe he ſayd, Tarry, tarry,
thou man without faith, and dw not thinke that thy blowes
hath done any other thing on me, but onely cauſed my yre &
anger to increaſe the more, for to procure to bring thée to
thy ende, and to ſende that excommunicated ſoule of thine
to the diuell: and in the running of his horſe, when he drew
nigh him, he threatened him with his ſword, ſhaking of it
in ſuch ſort, that he gaue him to vnderſtand, that at the next
blowe he would make an ende of the battaile: and there-
with he ſtroke him ſuch a blow on his helme, that the bloud
ranne out at the viſor thereof, and he fell downe backwards
vpon his horſe crouper almoſt dead. The great force that the
Prince gaue to ſtrike him, was the cauſe that he brake the
lether of his right ſtirrop, and therewith he fell to ỹ ground
from his horſe. But ſtrayght way with great lightneſſe he
aroſe vp againe, and in the beſt manner he could he made it
faſt, and leaping into the ſaddle, he retourned towardes his
enemie: who was with great trouble ſetling himſelfe in his
ſaddle, and loking vp to the heauen, he ſhowed a pittifull
countenaunce, as though he had bene very ſore hurte, as in
truth he was. And when he ſawe himſelfe ſo ill intreated,
and all his head bathed in bloud, he beganne to crye out a-
gaynſt Mahomet ſaying. Oh Mahomet, thou art the falſeſt
God, amongſt all the Gods, curſed be all they that dw truſt
in thée, and beléeue in thée. And of this be thou ſure, that I
dw not beléeue now in thée, neither will I ſo long as I liue:
and this I dw promiſe thée, that whereſoeuer I finde anye
Temple or Image of thine, to breake them downe with the
ſtreng'th of mine owne hande and furious arme. And with
this anger he lifte vp his ſword aloſte, going towards the
Prince, who was tarrying for him in the ſame manner,
and with like furie. And both together, they diſcharged their

heauie and terrible blowes, but the Moores blowe was the first that lighted vppon the knight of the Sunnes realme, so that it made him to shake in his saddle, and hee lacked but a little to fall downe, the greate force and heauinesse of that blowe was the occasion that the blowe of the Prince could not be executed with the furie wherwith it was discharged, for that peraduenture if it had, he had not found himselfe so well as afterwarde hee did, for although it hit not right, beeing stroken with so much madnesse, yet it made him whether he would or no, to stoope with his head, and therwith he straight wayes settled him, and seeing that the knight of the Sunne was still remaining in without anie feeling, hee sayde.

I do not determine to tarrie any longer, for that as I doe beleeue, thou art none other but the God Mars (although thou hast sayde that thou art a mortall man as I am,) and that thou art come downe to giue mee the order of knighthode, and afterward to make mee faile the strength of thy arme, and when hee hadde sayde these wordes, hee called his Lackyes in greate hast, and rode awaie with as much speede as possible might bee. At which time with the noyse of the battaile came Tefereo, and as hee saw the Prince in that sort, and his enimie going awaye with so much hast, he made no longer tarrying, but set the spurres vnto his horse, and with as greate swiftnesse as he coulde, he followed after him. The Prince when hee came againe vnto himselfe, and coulde not see his enimie, was so kindled with anger and wrath that the bloud ranne out at his eyes with verie anger. This Mauritanian did verie well in not tarrying the furie of the Prince at that time, for with the wrath that he had, harde Diamondes had not beene able to haue made anie resistaunce against him, wherefore hee determined forthwith to followe after him, but that a Damsel which was by, put her selfe before him and sayd.

Gentle Knight, it is sufficient that Tefereo doeth followe him, wherefore venture not thy selfe a newe in that wherein thou dooest gette but verie little prowesse,

best knight that euer was. The king was very glad to se himselfe a knight, and gaue great thankes vnto the prince for the same, requesting him very earnestly that he would tell him his name, for that he might know at whose hands he receiued the order of knighthod: the which the prince with a good will declared. And when he knew that he was sonne vnto the Emperor Trebatio, whom he accounted for his mortall enemie, altering his voyce, he sayd. Oh Mahomet, thou vile God, and full of all treasons, thou hast not left to persecute me, euen vnto this present time: for thou hast brought me to receiue the order of knighthode, which was the thing that I most desired, at the hands of him, which is sonne vnto my mortall enimie. Were I do say vnto thee valyant prince, that I would it had cost me my kingdome, that I had not receiued knighthod at thy hand, for that thou art sonne vnto the Emperour Trebatio, the falsest traytor, that euer hath bene seene. The prince somewhat angry aunswered him saying, King, it is not seemely in such as thou art, to speak words which be so false. It is very true, that the Emperour is my father, and the mightiest Prince in the vniuersall worlde. And not as thou doest account him, a traytour. For the which cause I do tell thee that thou dost falsly lye, like the most vilest Pagan in all thy kingdome: and in the defence thereof I will driue thee out of the field, and depriue thee of this order which I haue giuen thee, that thou shalte not exercise it, by taking from thee thy life. This miserable Pagan, who straight way was subiect vnto his furye, with great alteration sayd. Oh wretched and vnfortunate knight, dost thou thinke that I am one of those knights that will be tamed by the strength of thy arme, I wish thee not to beleeue it. For if thou dost proue my strength, thou shalt be sure to finde another manner of rigor and force, then thou hast found in those, with whom thou hast got thy honour: the prince, whose patience could not suffer such great pride, but as wrathfull as a Lyon replyed. Thou proud Pagan, arme thy head, and prepare thee to the battaile, for by God I do sweare that I will do my best to cut of such an enimie

mie from the Emperour my father. The Pagan, without any more replying caused his helme to be laced on, and layd hande on his sworde. And the Prince likewise was readie to discharge his blowe, who raysing himselfe vp in his stirrops, stroke so strong a blowe vpon the pagans helme, that the sound was heard a great way in the fieldes, and it enforced him whether he would or not to make reuerence, & to holde downe his head being so astonyed, that it seemed a great tower had fallen vpon him: and as he would have setteled himselfe againe in his saddle, he stroke him such another vpon his shield, that he droue it vnto his head, which made him to tourne vp the white of his eyes with the great griefe which he receiued: and to keepe himselfe vp from falling, both he and his horse staggered on the one side, which made the Prince to lose many a blow, notwithstanding, he pressed on him so fast, that he had no time to tourne him to strike againe. This More was verye much amazed at his great force and strength, and strake at the prince so furious and strong a blow, that he made him to lose his understanding, and almost to stoope with all his body vpon his horse necke. The prince came straight way to himselfe, and returned vnto ý More with so much furie, striking such a blow vpon his shield, which although it seemed to be as hard as a Diamond, yet for all that, he cut it in two peeces, and the blow descended vpon his sholder, with such a great waight, that the mountaines eckoed with the noyse: which made the pagan for feare of falling to hold himselfe fast by the Horse mane, very much marueling ý in one Knight there shuld be so much strength. Then he threw from him the rest of his shield which was left, and toke his broad sword in both his hands, and droue such a blowe at the Prince, that lighting vpon his visor, it depriued him of his sight, & forced him to fall vpon his horse necke without any remembrance. This stout Pagan would haue returned to strike him again, but he could not: for that his horse being starred with ý blow, lept on ý one side, which saued him frõ it. Yet ý pagan folowed to accomplish his will, which he could not do so spedely,

but

which made them to repent and were verie ſorrie that euer they began that enterpriſe, but by reaſon that they were all choſen knightes, they would not but aſſault him verie fierce-ly, which was the occaſion of their farther harme & deſtructi-on, for that the Prince ire did ſo much increaſe, that it cau-ſed him to double his blowes, in ſuch ſorte, that ſome he kil-led out right, and ſome he wounded, that in a ſmall time he left not one vpon his horſe, but all brought vnto the ſtate that they could make no reſiſtaunce, and when the Prince ſawe himſelfe at more libertie, he demaunded what was the occaſion of this ſo ſodaine conflict, ſo one of thoſe knightes which was verie ſore hurt, tolde him how that they were knights belonging to the Earle of Prouince, which laye in waite for him: to be reuenged of the death of his ſonne, for ỹ the whole circumſtance of the battaile came vnto his know-ledge. So the Prince left them, and woulde not ſpeake anye word more vnto them, but his intent was to get him out of the Countrie, for that he well vnderſtood that neither he nor Tefereo ſhould haue anie good intertainment at their hands, and when he would haue departed, there came vnto him Brufaldoro, and did ſalute him verie curteouſly, the Prince did returne him his ſalutation, and had a great pleaſure to beholde his good grace and gentilitie. So the Mauritanian be-gan firſt to ſpeake and ſayd. Gentle and valiant knight, the firſt borne or gift that euer I did demaund ſince the time that I was borne, is this that I will aſke of thée, and the occaſion which doeth driue me to aſke it, is conſtrained by the great valour and proweſſe which I haue ſéene in thée, & ſure it is an eaſie thing on thy part to be fulfilled, and there-fore I doe deſire thée to graunt me my requeſt. The heroy-call Grecian which had his eyes fired vpon him, with great pleaſure that he receiued at his gentle diſpoſition, anſwered: As yet I neuer denyed anie thing that was demaunded of mée, being iuſtly demauuded and in a iuſt cauſe, neither had I anie reſpect whether it be eaſie to be done, or difficult, ther-fore gẽtle knight aſke whatſoeuer pleſeth thée, for if it ſtand with iuſtice and reaſon, that I may graunt it thée, I doe pro-

miſe

miſe thée to accõpliſh it in very ample manner, not onely one bõn, but ſo many as thou wilt aſke of me. That which I will aſke thée, ſaid ẏ pagan, is not to put thy perſon in any peril, no, nor ẏ thou ſhalt mœue thy horſe one fœt out of the place where he ſtandeth: but that thou wilt with thy valiant hand giue me ẏ order of knighthœd, & arme me knight, the which thou maiſt dœ, without any doubt or ſcrupuloſitie. For here I dœ ſweare vnto thée by my mightie thoughts, that I am a crowned King. This noble Grœke did accept his demand, and aſked of him, if that he had watched his armour. The Moore aunſwered, I ſuppoſe I haue watched them inough, for that it is now eightœne dayes ſince I haue hadde them continually on my backe. And for me there nœdeth no ceremonyes: for that I am no Chriſtian, neither Pagan, nor Moore, nor Iewe, nor Gentile, neither dœ I worſhip nor beleœue in God: For that the God of the Chriſtians, I take him for my enimie: and as for Mahomet, I knowe he is little worth, and can dœ leſſe: and the Gentiles haue for their Gods, ſtockes and ſtones: and as for the Iewes I hate thẽ as vile and vile people. Therefore I dœ neither worſhippe the one, nor beleœue in the other: but onely follow my own proper appetite. The Knight of the ſunne could not refrain from laughter at his wœrds, in ſeeing him to be a man of ſo much libertie, and aunſwered him, ſaying. By God King, I dœ ſweare vnto thœ, that I haue ſeene fewe or none of thy Religion: but whatſoeuer thou art, I will bœre accompliſh thy deſire and requeſt. Then the Prince aſked him, Wilt thou be a Knight? The King aunſwered, This I dœ deſire, and ſeeke no other thing, and putting on his right ſpurre, he kiſſed him on the cheeke in token of honour, and taking a rich ſwœrd, which a page of his carried with him, hée ſtroke him a blowe with it vpon his ſhoulder, and putting of it vp againe into his ſheath, he hung it about his necke & ſayd, Now King, thy deſire is fulfilled, for ẏ thou art a Knight. With great good reaſon may it be ſayd, that in the fields of Prouince was giuen the order of knighthœd, vnto the moſt valianteſt Moore in all the worlde, and by the hands of the

beſt

"Oh base and grose vnderstanding, in what didst thou set thy
"loue? What beautie didst thou see in her, that thou wouldst
"follow her, as one lost for her loue? What blindnesse hath
"constrained thee, considering the great valour of the royall
"Empresse, and with what liberalitie she hath surrendred all
"her Kingdomes, and her owne person into thy hands. These
"and other like complaints he made against himselfe, without
taking any sleepe or rest, but was sore troubled with this
thought, till such time as the morning came, and that Phœ-
bus with his golden beames couered all the earth, then hee
tooke his horse with a more lighter heart, and clearer of all
thoughts, then at the time he came thether: for that he had
as cleane forgot Lindabrides, as though he had neuer seene
her. So all that daye he trauelled in that wilderneſſe, not
knowing which way to take: and had eaten nothing, nei-
ther had he any thing to eate, the which did trouble him ve-
ry much. So when night drewe on, he discouered a heard of
cattell, which were there feeding in the wilderneſſe, and de-
termined to goe towards that place whereas the heard men
were, who receiued him very well. This Knight did aske of
them, if they had any thing to giue him to eate, for that hee
was very hungrie: the heard men bad him that he should a-
light, and that they would giue him of such as they had for
themselues. So he alighted & did eate with a very good will,
and so good a stomacke, as one which had not his heart nor
minde occupied with the cares of loue, and there with those
heard men, he passed all that night, till it was morning. So
when it was daye one of the heard men did bring him into
a very great & occupied way, to whom he gaue great thanks.
Then the Knight tooke that waye forwards, which led him
towards Prouince, intending to see if he could meet with his
friend, and did determine to trauaile thereabouts, to see if
Fortune would bring him that waye: he had not trauailed
farre, when that he discouered another way, which did crosse
ouerthwart the same way, in which he was. And studying
with himselfe which waye to take, it was tolde him that

it

it was the waye which led straight vnto Paris: of ꝑ which he was very toyfull, and remained a while, thinking which way he might take for to finde Tefereo. And being in this muſe, he heard towards his right ſide a great ruſhing of armour and armed Knights, and caſting his head on the one ſide, he ſaw that there was about a ten knights which came running towards him with their ſpeares very low, calling him traytor: as ſoone as the Knight of the Sunne ſaw them he put downe the viſor of his helme, and layd hand on his ſword: and at the ſame time, he beheld on the other ſide, as many moe Knights armed, which made towards him as the other did. In the ende he was compaſſed rounde about on euery ſide with fortie Knights, which all cried out ſaying, kill the traytor, let the traytor dye, of the which the Prince did greatly meruayle. So altogether they ſet vpon him, and ranne at him with their ſpeares, and ſtroke him all at once, yet for all that, he moued no more in his ſaddle, then if they had made their incounter againſt a ſtrong Tower: but at the paſſing by, he ſtroke one of them vpon the viſour of his helme, that he cut halfe his head a ſunder, and he fell dead to the ground. All the reſt retourned with their horſes againſt the Prince, ſome with their ſwords in their hands, and other ſome, whoſe ſpeares remayned whole, ranne at him againe, what on the one ſide and what on the other, they made a very fierce and ſtrong incounter, as of thoſe which were the whole choyce of them that were in the Citie, onelye to kill him. When the Prince ſawe himſelfe ſo incloſed on euerye ſide, his wrath and anger began to kindle in him, inſomuch that he toke his ſword faſt in his hand, & ſtroke ſuch blowes, that whoſoeuer he chaunced to hitte, was either ſlayne or maymed.

At this preſent time arriued in thoſe partes at the Sea ſide, as I haue tolde you, Brufaldoro: and this was the battayle, wherein he ſawe ſo many Knightes againſt one onely Knight. This Knight did ſtande and beholde them, and was verye much amazed to ſee the power of one Knight, who brought ſo many as they were, into ſuch great diſtres,

which

by reason of his small patience, once being a land, he would not retourne to imbarke himselfe in his ship, but remained with onely two lackeyes, and commaunded the vessell to returne backe againe, and so went traueling whether his fortune would carrie him two dayes. The third day very early in the morning, he heard a great rushing of armour amongst a company of trees, & going towards the same noise, he saw a Knight of a very good proportion agaynst a great number of other Knights, in a very fierce and vnreasonable battaile. And for to tell you who it was, it is requisite, that we begin another chapter, in the which I will declare the whole matter vnto you.

¶How that the Knight of the Sunne would haue tarried for Tefereo, in the place whereas he appointed him, and how he lost himselfe in a thick mountaine, and of all that happened vnto him after that. Cap. 24.

THe knight of the Sunne who was purposed to tarrie for Tefereo, whereas he appointed him, put himselfe into the wildernes of Ardenia, with a reasonable quicke pace: but because of the great thickneſſe of trees & bushes, being amongst them: and againe, troubled with thoughts, wherewith his minde was occupied, hee lost his way, and in such sorte, that although he tourned his horse euery way from one place to another, yet could he not finde any way, but rather did so intangle himself, that when the night came, he found himselfe so far from the place wher as he thought to haue remained, that he was in doubt to recouer his waye and his compauy he knewe not when: for the which he receiued great griefe, which was the occasion that he vied very euill words against himselfe. So being in this cholar, the night drew on, which constrayned him to alight from his horse, and sate him downe vnder a greene tree, hauing set his horse to feede in the greene grasse, of the

which

which there was abundaunce at hande, and so in the best wise he could, he laid him downe vpon the ground to take some rest for a while: and towards his right hand he hard a great noyse of the running of water, and being very dry, he was constrayned to arise againe. And so he went seking & following that pittering sound of water, vntill such time as he found a little fountaine of very faire and clere water, and by reason of the great drought that he had, without any more tarrying, he knæled downe to drinke thereof, till such time as he had mitigated his great thirst, and remayned there a while to refresh himselfe, for that the place was very pleasaunt: so after a while, he returned vnto the place whereas he was before, and layd himselfe downe to rest. He had not remained there long, but he felt the water to begin to worke in him: For you shall vnderstand, that this was one of the fountaines of Marlin, which he made in that wilderneſſe, and brought the water, from the high mountayne of Olympo. But this fountaine whereof the Knight of the Sunne did drinke, was that of Disamore, or without loue. In such sort it did worke in him, that he did not onely lose and forget the loue which he had to Lindabrides, but also, if it had not bene for the great force of matrimonye, and for the pawne that he receiued of Claridiana, he badde likewise forgot her, and had brought her as far out of remembrance, as he did the Lady of Tartaria. And this water did not onely cause forgetfulneſſe, but also it forced him to reprehende himselfe, saieng. Oh fole without any vnderstanding, that so long hast had thy heart subiected vnto a Ladye, that is a straunger vnto thy Religion, intreating thee, not as a man that doth procæde from a high and noble generation: but lyke the most baseſt and vileſt wretch in al the world. Tel me thou lost man, who hath bene affectioned vnto a Woman without faith, but onely thy selfe? Who would haue left his naturall wife, for to loue a straunger & Barbarian, but thou? Who would giue so many sighes in vaine, but I most miserable, giuing occasion of euerlasting death and damnation vnto my soule.

better to vnderſtand, ſhe commaunded to renue the ſignes & tokens, and more, that they ſhould carrie her picture into all parts, the which was the occaſion that the court of ỹ quæne of Tinacria was meruailouſly increaſed in honour, with ſo many Princes and knights which repaired thether to ſæ this Damſell. When the quæne ſawe that her kingdome was ſo honourably nobled more then at other times, ſhe commaunded that vpon the gates of her royall pallace ſhould be placed a title, which was conteined in theſe words following.

Attempt not anie either Prince or king,
Within Tinacria Court his loue to ſhew:
Except that he doo firſt in dowrie bring
Trebatios head, our moſt deteſted foe.
The faithleſſe father of this Damſell braue,
That reſtleſſe griefe to me her mother gaue.

And when all this was finiſhed, ſhe ſtraight way diſpatched a meſſenger to Grecia, with a letter vnto the Emperour, the which ſhe ſent by a damſel that was verie truſtie & one ỹ ſhe loued well, whereas now I will leaue them till time doo ſerue for to tell you of the knight of the Sun. But firſt for ỹ it is neceſſarie to this our hiſtorie, we will declare what Brufaldoro ſaid, when he knew of the death of Bramarando his brother, king of Mauritania, who being certified by them ỹ eſcaped aliue out of the hands of the Tinacrians, and wer verie ſorrowful for the loſſe of their Lord and king, and landing in their owne countrie they went and carried the newes vnto Brufaldoro, the which when he heard, he felt in himſelfe ſo great paine & ſorrow, that in a ſound he leaned himſelf vnto a chaire becauſe he would not fall, he was ſo farre beſide himſelfe, in which trance he did not long indure, but came againe to his remembraunce, and with a terrible and fearefull voice he ſayde: Is it of truth that my brother is dead, and the meſſengers anſwered and ſayde, that it was too true. O traitours, anſwered this fierce young man, how durſt you come before me, except firſt you had taken re-

uenge

uengement of his death. Then they aunſwered and ſayd, He ꝑ did kill him, is not a man ſo ſone to take reuengement of, for that after that we were cléere of his diuelliſh furie, it was tolde vs that he was a chriſtian and the Emperour of Grecia, called Trebatio. Oh vile people, aunſwered the Pagan, yet will you replie againſt my words, get you out of my ſight, if it were not but that I am letted for lacke of the order of knighthood, I would with my owne handes teare you all to péeces. Oh falſe Mahomet, thou lyar, periured, & without all faith, is this the honour that my brother ſhould haue out of Tinacria: to be abated and ſlaine by one alone chriſtian, and in ſaying theſe wordes he entered into a chamber, where he had the Image of Mahomet all of golde, with twelue Angells on both ſides, this youth toke a beanie club and with both his handes he ſtroke this poore God ſuch a blowe vpon the head, that he made him to fal to the ground, and not reſting with this, he tourned againſt them that bare him companie, & ſtroke on them ſo many blowes, that in a thouſand péeces he made them fall to the ground, and ſayde. O thou falſe traitour, héere wil I giue thée thy paiment and reward for that which thou haſt done vnto my beloued brother. Héere I do forſake and denie thée, and all them that do beléeue in thée, for that I wil neither beléeue in thée nor ſerue thée, but if I did knowe the waie vnto the place, where as the diuell hath thée, I woulde goe and ſéeke thée, to giue thée to vnderſtand that my furie is more then thy power. And when he had concluded with this, he went forth of the chamber, and with a terrible noiſe he called for his armour, the which was ſtraight waie brought vnto him, and without tarrying to bée made knight, he commaunded to arme him, with armour that was all white, & made by art Magick, thẽ he commanded a ſhip to be made readie & furniſhed, & entred into it, with intent to go to Grecia, and there to aſke the order of knighthode of the Emperour, & when he had receiued it, to defie him to mortall battaile, but it chaunced not vnto him as he thought it would, for ꝑ the ſea with ſome of his accuſtomed tormẽts carried him vnto the coaſt of France, &

a daughter of a wonderfull beautie, for the which there was made great ioy throughout all the kingdome, & they called the ſonnes name Poliſebo, and the other young infant Roſalmira. The great beautie and fairenesſe that was in theſe two infants, was ſuch, that in all the kingdome they eſtæmed thẽ for diuine creatures, they were nouriſhed and brought vp with great care and honour: but for all this, the Quæne conceiued in her heart a meruailous hatred againſt the Emperour, and many times ſhe would goe vp into a towre which was towards the ſea, to ſee if that thẽ looking towardes the parts of Grecia, might receiue anie comfort or take any pleſure, but al was in vaine, for the greateſt pleaſure & comfort ỳ ſhe receiued was, to ſee theſe infants to be children vnto ſuch a Father, and indowed with ſuch ſurpaſſing beautie, & ſometimes ſhe would ſit and talke to them, ſaying: Oh figures of him, who without all pittie wounded my heart, & left me cõfortleſſe with the greateſt crueltie that euer woman was left withall by anie knight or Gentleman: how is it poſſible ỳ I haue the force to bring vp children of that Father, who hath bereaued me of my libertie: Oh ſouereigne Gods, that with your powers haue ſowed in this vnhappie land, the offspring of that vnmerciſull Trebatio, graunt that I may eſtabliſh in my heart ſo much anger, that it may cauſe me to put from me the loue of that adulterous father: Oh children borne for a farther griefe, bẽre I do deſire the mightie Gods that your beautie may haue ſo much force & power, that with the beames thereof you may take reuengement of the diſhonour of your mother, & thou my daughter borne in the diſhonor of thy generation, by the loſſe of my virginitie, bẽre I do ſweare vnto ỳ celeſtial Iupiter, ỳ thy beautie ſhal not be inioyed by any, but by him ỳ ſhal giue thẽ in downe the head of thy diſloyal father, ỳ by it I may recouer part of my former glorie. Theſe & other like wordes ſpake this afflicted quæne, & euen as ſhe had ſworne ſhe put in practiſe, publiſhing it through al her kingdome, & giuing information of the effect of her prẽdeed purpoſe, & ſent meſſẽgers into Africa & Aſia cõcerning ỳ ſame, all which ſhe did contrarie to the will of her ſubiects.

And

And because that they saw her so fervent in her anger, where-to she was more prone, by desire of revengement, then vn-to anie reason, they did all determine to content themselues, and shæ for to giue a better courage vnto them which knew her, and vnto all such as would prosecute this enterprise, shæ gaue diuerse deuises, so that they which did presume herein were not fewe in number, but verie many and right valiaunt knightes, as hereafter I will declare vnto you. So some there were which did offer themselues for the faire-nesse of the mother, before that her daughters beautie shoulde come to anie perfectnesse, and other some for the loue of the daughter, of which there were verie manie that lost their honours in Grecia, and sundrie lost their liues, and he which first did offer himselfe in this enterprise was the king of the Garamantes, who by hearing reporte of her greate beautie, was in loue with her. And when he heard the message which was brought from the quæne by her Embassadours, straight waie without giuing the quæne to vnderstand thereof, hæ went into Grecia, trusting onely in his greate strength, of whom when time serueth wæ will speake. And so it fell out, that neither time nor anie other thing was sufficient to remoue from the Quæne this greate desire shæ had to seeke reuengement, but euerie daie her anger did more increase, neither was the beautie of his children of so much force, as to mollifie the furie of her stomacke, although when they were at fire yeares of age, they were of so excellent beautie, that the Tinacrians beleeued that they were the children of some of the Gods, and not of anie humane creature, their bo-dies and their beauties were so conformable, for all they which did sæ the young Prince, would haue iudged him to haue double the yeares that he had, and in his body and face he did so much resemble his brother the knight of the Sun, that it was a thing to be meruailed at. Of the young princesse Lyrgandeo would not make anie description, for that he saide, that whatsoeuer thing shoulde be spoken of her, his pen were not sufficient to vtter the worthinesse of her beautie, for this quæne was euer firme in this her thought, & for to giue them

" so much honour is obteyned by him which is altogether vn-
" fortunate, as may be gotten by anie kinde of worthinesse. Oh
" what base and vile things doe they cause them to doe whom
" they get vnder theyr wings, if it were lawfull for me to
" speake it I might tell you many examples of them of the
" olde time, where as fortune vsing her accustomed deedes, did
" get vnto her self many and diuers names according vnto her
" strange effects. Some called her Fortune, venture, or chance,
" some honoured her as a Goddesse for her liberalitie, others
" despised her as a diuell for her mutabilitie: But what shall
" I say to you of her (my good friends) for that I cannot tell by
" what tearmes to name my selfe, neither doe I knowe whe-
" ther she were the beginning of all my euill, or that blinde
" Cupide, who hath so cruelly handled me: well, which of them
" so euer it was, they caused me to put my heart into the po-
" wer of another, onely for the remedie of this my Countrie,
" for whose weale (alasse) I haue lost the libertie of my heart,
" with all my wonted ioy, and now indure perpetuall paine,
" and an euer pining death: I haue lost my honour and reco-
" uered shame and infamie. To conclude, I haue lost the liber-
" tie of a Queene, and remaine in continuall captiuitie, and yet
" of all this, I my selfe am onely in fault. Therefore without
" making anie excuse, heere I do surrender my selfe into your
" powers, for that you may as an euill Queene doe sacrifice
" with me, as also that which I haue in my womb. For now
" my friends you shall vnderstand that the knight who with
" his mightie & strong arme slew Bramarando, was the Em-
" perour Trebatio, father vnto him whome you nowe honour
" as a God. This is he that robbed me of my honor, but with
" my good will (I must confesse) and left me for a testimonie of
" this my euill deede, bigge with child. And with this she made
an ende of her lamentable speech, and without anie more
strength to sit vp she fell downe againe in her bedde. So
when these Earles and noble knightes that were present
vnderstode all that the Queene had sayde vnto them, they
were all of them greatly amazed and chaunged theyr co-
lours, looking one vpon another without speaking any word,

but

but pitting in their heartes the fault done by their Quæne, yet not without consideration that there remained fruite of that surmounted træ, even that Grecian, which gaue vnto them great ioye and mirth, in such sorte, that this worthie faine had in them more force then the blot that their queene and Ladie had receiued in her honour. And with this ioy the Earle of Modique rose vp, and aunswered for all that were present, saying. Soueraigne Ladie, there is not one of vs that canne denie but that there was a fault, and that you are worthie of blame for committing this fact, not respecting your royall estate, for the which we cannot but receiue great griefe in our heartes, neither canne we denie but that in reseruing the fruit of him which hath bæne the occasion of this dishonour, will bring vnto vs a particular ioye, and cause great contentment vnto all your subiectes, so that we shall easily forget the losse of your honour and honourable virginitie: Therefore waying equally the fault with the profit which shall redound vnto all Tinacria, in recouering such a successour, we doe finde that thou art worthie of no paine, therefore soueraigne Ladie looke not vpon the errour, for that verily it was so ordained by the Gods, that at that instaunt and without looking for this Græke Emperour came for the defence of our kingdome, and for thy restoring, and hath left vs this good successour which we hope shall bæ deliuered out of thy wombe, who shall be a defender of these thy Kingdomes, and a maintainer of vs thy subiectes. And hære we do desire thæ to put awaie all these imaginations & griefes from thy heart, and to forget it, and renue thy former ioye and pleasure, in making sacrifices vnto the Gods, that they may giue strength to thy person, whereby thou mayst haue good deliueraunce of that which thou goest with, which vnto vs will bæ most acceptable. Great was the ioye which the Quæne receiued at these comfortable wordes which her subiectes hadde spoken, and giuing them greate thankes shæ requested them to departe till such time as shæ shoulde be brought a bedde. So the time bæing nære approched, she was deliuered of a verie fayre sonne, and likewise of

with great trouble the quéene lifted vp her eyes, & seing that she was compassed about with Ladies and others, she shut her eyes againe, and gaue a great sigh which came from the bottome of her heart, and in this sort she remained a greate while, and her Ladies and Damosells seing that she was so troubled, determined to vnclooth her and to carrie her to her bed. Then she made signes with her hands that they should depart and leaue her all alone, whose commandement they straight wayes obeyed, not without great sorrow of all them that did beholde her, for that the quœne was meruailouslye well beloued of her subiects. There was not one that could vnderstand the cause of this sodaine euill, but onely the earle of Modique, who discrætly did imagine what it might be, who kept it close to himselfe at time, vntil such time as time & the matter it selfe shuld declare, whether his imagination or thought should fall out true or no. This afflicted quœne when she saw that she was alone, began to exclaime against her fortune, putting forth these sorrowfull reasons. When wilt thou be content thou peruerse enimie, and without all reason. Thou which hast warped such strange webbes in this kingdome. Thou gauest me into my power the Grœke Emperour very poore, and without all comfort of thee, and absent from all his Empire. This thou didst, for that with his sight I should be wounded with the cruell dart of loue, that without all remedie of anie comfort, I most vnfortunate damosell shoulde be constrained to set my life to sale, and to sell my honour as it were with the common cryar, compelling me to doo vnto my selfe that, which I onely did, being made blinde by him, which would ỹ all others were as blind as he himselfe is And although me life were set at libertie, by him which without anie weapon bereaued me thereof, yet am I not at so much libertie nor so frée, but that whersoeuer he goeth my heart doth followe him. Woe is me for my virginitie (which my parents gaue me such great charge to haue a respect vnto) that it hath bene so euill kept, and so lightly regarded me. I will so chastise my selfe for thus forgetting of my selfe, and be so reuenged for the little

regard

regard that I haue had of my honour, that it shall be an ex- „
ample to all others which be of high estate: Oh miserable „
Queene, Oh vnhappie Lady, thy speech is too too foolish: for al- „
though this thy desperate hand should pull out the despised „
heart of this miserable and afflicted bodie, yet shouldest not „
thou make satisfaction of the dishonour which thou hast com- „
mitted against thy selfe: Oh cruell death why doest thou not „
with thy sodaine furie set at libertie (me most vnfortu- „
nate) from these grœuous paines: Oh Emperour of Greece, „
those louing and amorous wordes which thou spakest vnto „
me, I would they had neuer ben spoken: O false and decei- „
uing Lorde, thou shouldest haue suffered me to haue tasted „
death, when with so great good will mine owne hand would „
haue ministred it to me, and not now to cause me to indure „
a thousand deaths, only by thy departure. With these & other „
like lamentations this afflicted Ladie passed awaie the time, „
till at last she found her selfe to be quicke with childe, at the
which she receyued double paine, for that it was impossible
to couer or hide it, & seeing her selfe in this case, like a womã
hated & abhorred, she determined to discouer her selfe vnto
her subiects publikely, and to deliuer her bodie vnto them to
sacrifice it vnto their Gods, and with this determination one
daie she caused certaine of the nobles to be called before her,
who straight way came at her commaundement. Amongest
the rest there came the Earle of Modique and his sonne, and
the Earle of Mondeli, & the valiant Rubio, and many other
knights and Gentlemen of honour, when that the Queene
sawe them altogether about her, couering her selfe with a
rich roabe, shee sate vp in her bedde, being so leane, that all
them that saw her had great compassion, being all set round
about the bed, and keeping silence, she said. Our Gods would „
make vs so subiect vnto time, that onely they doe not bring „
vs vnder their malitious yoake, but also altogether subiect „
vs vnder their hands, to the end that they may liberally doe „
whatsoeuer it pleaseth them, and as their mallice is more „
then their vertue, hauing vs so yelded at their commaunde- „
ment, they doe intreate vs lyke vnto publike slaues. And „

that the furie of ỹ Græke was not to be ſuffered, they durſt not abide, but with great ſhame they began to runne away, Then thoſe of Tinacria did follow them till they came to the ſea ſide, killing and wounding all that ever they coulde come by. So when the Emperour ſaw that all this conflict was brought to a good end, and that the valiant Rubio was by him, he called him vnto him and ſayd. My friend, go and tell your Miſtres the Quæne, that I requeſt her to pardon me, for that I do not retourne againe into her Citie, for I was ſo ill receiued the firſt time, that I haue no will to retourne the ſecond. And more, I deſire her of my part, that ſhe do intreate better, and giue better intertainment vnto ſuch Knights as I am, then ſhe gaue vnto me, leaſt ſhe get vnto her ſelfe the name of a wrathfull Quæne, and be accounted as one ſubiect vnto hir own opinion: & of all other things, if any thing do chaunce, let her thanke none but her ſelfe, for that ſhe hath bene the onely cauſe therof. And moreouer, I do deſire her not to trouble her ſelfe in ſending to ſeeke me, for that I ſay, not her power alone, but all the power in Africa is not ſufficient to retourne me againe into ſo great ſtraights, as onte ſhe had me in. And ſo without any more ſpeaking he ſpurred his horſe, and rode a reaſonable pace towards the ſea ſide, which was not farre from that place, and when he came thether, he ſought to ſee if he could finde by chance any barke or galley, to carry him whether he wold, with his good will or els by force. He had not gone farre, when that he ſawe a very faire and great barke at the ſea ſide, hard aboord the ſhoare. The Emperour entered into it to ſee if there were anye marriners: his horſe which was hard by him, without being conſtrained by the Emperour, very lightly leapt into the Barke. He was not ſo ſoone with in, when that the Barke began to make waye, in ſuch ſorte, that in a ſmall time they were very farre at ſea. At ỹ which the Emperour was greatly amazed: but there was a voice, which did ſatiſfie him, that ſayd: Mightie Trebatio, Lyrgandeo doth gouerne thee: at the which the Emperour was very ioyfull.

So

ſo he put his horſe in a place by himſelfe in the bark, wherein he found ſufficient of all things nedefull. Likewiſe, he found all that was conuenient for his owne perſon, which was ready vpon a table in very good order, all kinds of braſſes meates: and being ſet downe to eate, he was ſerued ſo bountifully, and with ſo great diligence and care, as though he had bene in Greece. In this ſort the emperour went ſailing eight dayes, in ꝑ end of which he diſcouered land, which had belonging vnto it, a faire hauen or port, and nigh vnto it, a very faire and great Citie. The Barke went ſtraight into the hauen, and brought her ſelfe to the ſhore.

Heere we will leaue ꝑ Emperour in his barke in ꝑ hauen, and will tell you of the great lamentation ꝑ the faire Garrofilea made for that the Emperour departed in ſuch ſort.

¶How the faire Queene Garrofilea made great lamentation for the departure of the Emperour, and how at their laſt being together, ſhe remained with childe by the Emperour Trebatio, Cap. 23.

After that all the Knights of Tinacria had ioyned themſelues together, and had made an ende of their battaile and trauaile, they repaired vnto the Citie with great ioy and gladneſſe for their good ſucceſſe. Rubio of Yſcla went to declare vnto the Quæne his meſſage ꝑ the Emperor had commanded him: at ꝑ which, the Quæne was ſo troubled, that ſhe could not in any wiſe diſſemble it, but in a great ſound ſtrayght way ſhe fell downe as though ſhe had bene dead. This couragious knight when he ſaw her in this trance, toke her vp in his armes, & caryed her vnto her Strado, or ſeate: & ſtraight waies when the Ladies heard the noyſe, they all came forth to ſee what the matter was, & when they ſaw their Quæne in that traunce, they began to vſe all meanes and remedies till ſuch time as ſhe came again vnto her remembrance. And although it was

with

Amongſt them all, this Mauritanian chaunced one vpon the Emperors helme, that he made him to gnaſh his teeth, wher with, without any remembrance, he fell vpon ỹ horſe crupper: in ſuch ſort, that the horſe being ſcarred with the blow began to runne, and carried the Emperour in that traunce, a good while about the field. The Moore had well thought at that time that he had finiſhed his worke, & with great ſhouts & ſhriks he followed him, but all his thought was in vaine. For ỹ the Emperour recouered & ſetled himſelfe in his ſaddell, and when he ſaw himſelfe ſo ill intreated, ther was neuer Tiger of Hircania, nor any other wilde beaſt ſo furious as he was at this time, with his great anger. Yea, he was ſo vered with himſelfe, that with the madneſſe thereof, hee cruſhed his teeth together, and tourning his horſe about a great deale lighter, then at any other time, he firmed well his ſworde in his hand, and lifting vp his mightie & ſtrong arme, went whereas this Moriſco king was, who in ỹ like ſorte came towards him, at that time the Emperour neither remembred life nor death, nor anie other thing, but to take reuengment on his enimie, procuring to bring him to cruell death, and raiſing himſelfe vp a good ſpanne in his ſaddle, being firmed in his ſtirrops, he ſtrake ſuch a blowe, that at the fall of his mightie cutting ſworde, the ſparkles of fire flew into the aire, and it lighted on the Pagans healme, ſo that all the ſtrength thereof did little profite him, but hee cut his head and all downe to his ſtomacke, that this Pagan fell dead to the ground, the which beeing ſeene by his knights they gaue a meruailous and lamentable ſhout and crie, and without vſing anie more curteſie, they altogether put their Speares in their reſts, and went againſt this ſtrong warriour, all on horſe backe, but heere the mirrour of all knighthood did abide their comming with his accuſtomed courage, & hartes: theſe Moores made their encounter on him together, & many of them brake their ſpeares, but for all that he moued no more then if they had runne againſt a tower. The Emperour ſeeing their villanie, begun to reuile them wᵗ ſhamefull words, and retourning towards them, he made them to

runne

runne awaie like vile cowards. Unhappie was he that hée stroke, although it were but with halfe a blowe, for it made him that he had smal minde to returne againe, but by reason that they were verie sorrowfull and angrie for the losse of their king, many of them did strike at him on euerie side, procuring to defend themselues, and not to come nigh his terrible blowes. The Emperour then remembring that if he did not procure to come whereas the prisoners were to set them at libertie, that it wer possible that they would intreat them euill. Wherfore he put himselfe among the thickest of his enimies, wounding and killing all that he found in his waye, and all that he could ouertake, although his armour were as hard as Diamonds, yet he could not escape from the death, so in this sort in spite of all the Pagans he came vnto ỳ kings tent, and seeing that there ioyned together much people to make resistaunce at the entering, it gaue him the more desire to enter into the tent, not knowing that the Tinacrians were there prisoners. The Mauritanians with all their powers they had made resistaunce, but their strength did little auaile them, for in spite of them all the Emperour went into the Tent, whereas he met with the Earle of Modique, and the Earle of Mondeli, who were put there in prison. At this present time Don Rubio of Tinacria when he sawe that the Moore of Africa was ouercome, and the great villanie of his knights, he made great hast to goe out of the Citie, and with eight hundred knights, all verie well armed, they pressed on their enimies with so great force, that they made them loke better about them, then before that time they did. When the Emperour sawe the diligence of this knight Rubio, he procured to set the prisoners at libertie, the which thing being done, he sayde vnto the Earles sonne of Modique. Gentle knight, this succour do you receiue and your honourable father, in recompence of the great griefe which I caused you to receiue, and without speaking anie more words he returned vnto the battaile which was verie much increased, but when he came amongst them it was quickly brought to an end, for by reason that they had no gouernour to gouerne them, and

that

bloive. And when he ſaw himſelfe ſo euill intreated by that Pagan, he recouered again his ſword, and claſping it faſt in his fiſt, he diſcharged vpon the Moze ſo ſtrong and terrible a blowe, that he made him without all remembzaunce to fall backwards vpon the hoꝛſe crupper, and ther iſſued out of his helme very much blood, which proceeded out of his mouth and noſe, and ſeing him in this traunce, he ſayd, I ſweare by God, King, that thou haſt ſmall remembzaunce, but tarrye a little, and I will make thee remember thy ſelfe better, and giuing a turne vnto his hoꝛſe, thinking to cut off the pagans head, his tourning was with ſuch great haſt, that his hoꝛſe doubled in ſuch ſoꝛt, that he fell to the ground with the Emperour on his backe, neuertheleſſe with great lightnes, without putting his foote into the ſtirrop, he lept into the ſaddle again. But yet it could not be ſo quickly done, but that this ſtrong Mauritanian was come to himſelfe, and ſeing that he was all bebathed in bloud, he knew ỹ he had bene in great perill. Then with wonderfull courage he recouered his ſwoꝛd, and ſettled himſelfe in his ſaddle, and with furious blowes he began to ſtrike, ſo that at euery blowe, it ſeemed his ſtrength did ſtill increaſe, which indeede was true: foꝛ the moꝛe his wꝛath and yꝛe kindled, the moꝛe his fiercenes and ſtrength increaſed, in ſuch ſoꝛt, that euery blowe which he ſtroke, was almoſt ſufficient to ouerthꝛowe a great Towꝛer. All theſe feates the Queene did beholde from a tower which was in the Pallaice, greatly fearing the ſucceſſe of this terrible battaile, and praying with all her heart vnto her Gods foꝛ the Emperours victoꝛie. This furious Pagan was halfe aſhamed, foꝛ that he could not bꝛing the Emperour into ſubiection, although his terrible blowes dide double increaſe, and ſeing he could not, he begun to exclaim againſt his Gods and ſayd. Oh Mahomet, where is nowe all thy power and ſtrength: how is it that thou doſt conſent that one onely Chꝛiſtian ſhould make ſo great defence, & indure ſo long. The Emperour which heard all that ỹ Moꝛe had ſayd, with a wꝛathfull and angry voyce, aunſwered. O thou wꝛetched infidell, how greatly art thou deceiued, in

thinking

thinking, that he which hath no power to help himselfe, can helpe thee and deliuer thee out of my hands. I beleeue with the assistaunce of my God, before that night doo come, to heaw thee all in peeces by the strength of my armes, and herewith he neuer ceased to strike him with so much furie, that many times he was without any feeling. Thus they continued foure houres without any resting of themselues, but wounding one another. When this furious pagan saw, that he could not bring to passe his pretence, but that he was in great perill to be ouercome, he stroke such a blowe at the Emperour, that with the mightie strength wherewith it was stroken, he made him to leese his remembraunce, and forced him to stoope vnto the horse necke, and after that, he stroke his second blow vpon his backe, that the great noyse that it made, was the occasion that the Emperour came againe to himselfe. And he was not scarce setteled in his saddle, when he lifte vp his sword, intending to strike the Moore a mightie and terrible blow: the which when this Africane beheld, & knew the great strength wherewith it came, with meruailous pollicie he put it asside, and made him to leese his blowe, & at the same time flourishing with his sword, he discharged such an ouerthwart blowe vpon his throte, that if the harnesse had not bene forged by Magical art, the Emperour had bene in great perill. Oh what great anger and furie did this mightie Trebatio feele, to see himselfe so ill intreated by that furious Moore, and therewith he raised himselfe vp in his stirrops, and strake at him in such great hast, and with so great strength, that it seemed that then the battaile was but new begun. But when this Mauritanian saw that the Emperour had not lost any of his strength, but rather that it was more increased, with a terrible and fearfull voyce he said.

O Mahomet, what is this? for that I see, that if all the strength of Mars were heere together, it were not sufficient to make resistaunce against this Knight: and in saying these wordes, he did procure to offend his aduersarye, with terrible and furious blowes.

Amongst

Speare in his hande, wherewith he flourished mervailous strongly about his head. This Mauritanian was so inflamed with wrath, that he had no minde to shew anie agilitie with his Speare, but rather with a wrathfull voice hee sayde: I do beleeue that with the flourishing of thy Speare & braunesse of thy horse thou thinkest to scarre me, hauing spoken words that could not be uttered but by some foolish man, or by some knight of little estimation, or by some one that is enimie vnto Mahomet. The Emperour answered: so much thou maist saie, that thou maist happen vppon the truth, and heere I giue thee to vnderstand, that I am a Christian and seruaunt vnto my Lorde Iesu Christ, and enimie vnto Mahomet, and much more vnto thee, therfore make thy selfe readie to the battaile, and take that part of the field which pleaseth thee, & I will make thee to knowe what my Speare can doe. The furie of the Pagan was such, that he was almost without all feeling, yet he comforted himselfe in thinking to make reuengement of the wordes which he had sayde, and had a greate desire to knowe who that knight was which with so greate hardinesse and courage did speake vnto him, and hee asked it of him, saying: Knight, heere I do giue thee licence to speake all that thou wilt, for that thou art now in place where none can deliuer thee from my hands but onely Mahomet, neuertheless I do desire thee by that God in whō thou sayst thou doest beleeue, and that so truely & vehemently thou doest serue, that thou tell me who thou art, whereby I may knowe what he was that hath ben so arrogant against me. Thou hast so coniured me (answered the Emperour) that I cannot let but tell thee. Thou shalt therefore vnderstand ỳ I am the Emperour Trebatio of Greece, father vnto those cleere lights of al knighthood, the knight of ỳ Sun, & that valiant Rosicleer, which by another name is called ỳ knight of Cupide, if at anie time thou hast heard anie talke of them. When the Pagan heard that it was he, whose fame was so much spoken of in all the world, and no lesse feared, without anie more tarrying, he defied him to mortall battayle, and without anie more wordes they tourned their horses,

and

and not ſtaieng for the ſound of trumpets, they pricked them with their ſpurs, and with great violence in the midſt of their courſe, they brake their ſpeares ſo eaſelye, as though they had bene made of Canes, and neither of them receiued any harme, nor once moued out of the ſaddles, and turning their horſes about, they layd hand on their ſwords. The Emperour of Greece did firſt ſtrike the Pagan king, ſo terrible a blowe, that he threw downe to the ground a very rich mirrour which was vpon the creſt of his helme, hauing in it, the Image of Mahomet, and it was with ſuch ſtrength, that it made his teeth chatter in his head. At this blowe the pagan did not meruaile, but rather gratified his courteſie in the lyke ſort, but the Emperour did beare it off with his ſhælde, and it cut off one corner thereof, and deſcended vpon his helme, with ſuch force, that it made him bow his head. At the which this ancient warriour, tooke ſo great anger & and wrath that throwing his ſhield to the ground, he tooke his ſword in both his hands, and ſtroke ſuch a blowe at his aduerſarie that if it had not bene that he did defend it verye well with his ſhield, with that one blow he had finiſhed the the battaile: but yet his ſhield was cut in two peeces, and the blowe glaunced from his ſhoulder downwards, & lighted vpon the Pagans knee, whereas it made a wound, for that the blood gaue teſtimonie thereof. This fierce Moore, when he ſaw his owne blood, with great furie he threw from him the reſt of the ſhield that did remaine in his hand, and ſtroke ſuch a cruell blow at this heroycall Emperour vpon his helme, that it gaue a great and meruailous ſound thorough all the plaines and fields. The ſurmounted furie wher with this terrible blowe was diſcharged, was the occaſion, that he without any feeling fell downe vppon the horſe necke with all his body. When the pagan ſawe him in this caſe, he procured to giue him another blowe, but by reaſon of the Emperours ſtooping, he pricked his horſe with his ſpurs, and with a little remembraunce he helde himſelfe faſt for not falling. His horſe with great lightneſſe kept on the one ſide, whereby this valiant Trebatio was cleare of that

The Emperour when he saw them he would straight of his owne good will haue armed himselfe and haue gone out into the field, but the quæne would not consent vnto it, but they passed that night together with great ioy and pleasure, which was so much, that I dare not heere with my pen declare it, but of this I am sure, that when the Quæne departed from the Emperour she remained with child, as hereafter you shal heare. So when the morning was come, the Emperour arose vp with great desire to goe out to the battaile, and straight waies there were called certaine knights onely for to arme him with those rich armes, and the faire Quæne Garrofilea did helpe to arme him, and when he was armed he went out of the pallaice, and at the foote of the stayres he found a very faire and strong horse, who was verie richly barbed and wel shodde, and calling for a horne he hung it about his neck, and toke his leaue of the Quæne, and so without putting his foot into the stiroppe he leaped vpon this mightie horse, and then beeing accompanied with a companie of noble Knightes, he went out of the Citie, not without great griefe vnto them all, which praied earnestly for his returne. And when he was in the field wheras he might be heard, he lifted vp the visour of his helme and set the horne vnto his mouth, and began to make a fearefull sound, and after that he hadde done with a high voyce he sayd. Thou fierce Pagan that with so greate ease lyest in thy bedde, and boastest thy selfe that there is none in the world that can bring downe thy proud stomack, take vnto thee thy armour, and do thy best to driue me out of the fielde, for I doubt not but before thou doe it, thou shalt finde in me some resistance: and with this he held his peace. This stout Pagan which at that time was at his rest, was sore troubled, and could not imagine who that knight might be, which was so arrogant, that he durst alone call him into the fielde, and desiring to knowe what he was that was so hardie, he caused to bee brought before him the Earle of Mondeli, & the Earles sonne of Modique, and with an irefull voice saide. Did you heare with what great pride that knight hath spoken and challenged me. The Earles answered, yea,

then

then he ſayde: Who haue you in Tinacria that is ſo hardie to call me to battaile with ſuch vpprobious wordes, I cannot beleeue that he is of this kingdome, but if hee bee, it ſeemeth he ſhould be ſome vaineglorious fole and one of little vnderſtanding. The Earle of Modique aunſwered, I doe ſweare vnto thee O king by the ſouereigne Gods that I am in the ſame doubt: but it may be that it is a knight which a fewe daies paſt being verie ill intreated by the tempeſts of the ſea, was driuen into this Iſlande, and being without armour he made ſuch a battaile with certaine knights, & with ſo great furie and ſtrength, that being as I haue ſayd, without armour, he did meruailous and heroycall feats of armes, where he ſlew many knights, and amongſt them he ſlewe a brother which I had, and it may be, that the Queene being deſirous of his libertie, hath giuen this enterpriſe vnto him, and therefore I thinke that this is he that hath ſpoken theſe arrogant wordes. Well, let it be who it ſhall be, replied the king, for heere I doe ſweare vnto thee by Mahomet that I will make him deerely to paie this his follie and hardineſſe, and ſpeaking this, he heard him ſound his horne againe with much more furie then at the firſt, and ſayd.

O vile Pagan coward and of an euill nation, thou king of little eſtimation, what makeſt thou? wherefore doeſt thou tarrie? why commeſt thou not out to take reuengement of theſe my wordes? diſpatch and come forth, or elſe vnderſtand that I will come and ſeeke thee in what place ſo euer thou abideſt: O mightie and vnmercifull wrath, how is it that thou haſt ſo much power ouer this proude African, who with a hoarſe voice and terrible wordes called for his armour, and becauſe it was not brought him ſtraight waie, he did intreat them all very ill which were nigh him, ſo ý there was not one of all his knights but at ý time would haue ben glad to haue ben far from ý place where the king was: when he was armed he leaped vpon his horſe, & with a reaſonable pace hee pricked towards the place whereas the Emperour abode, who when he ſaw him come he threw his horne from him, and let fall the viſour of his healme, and toke a greate

ſtroke him ſuch a blowe, that glauncing he gaue him a little wound, whereout iſſued bloud. The Moore feeling himſelfe hurt, retourned againſt him of Mhdique, but this light Rubio was with him him at a pinch, and ſtroke him another blowe on his ſhoulder, that he made him ſhrinke in all his bodie, of which hee made little account, but deſired onely to goe vnto him which had drawen his bloud, who likewiſe with greate courage did attend his comming, hauing both his handes on his ſworde, ſo they diſcharged theyr blowes both together, which were verie mightie and ſtrong, wherewith he of Modique, all his healme being bathed in bloud, fell without anie remembraunce to the ground, and the furiour Pagan in ſpite of his heart declined his head to the horſe necke. Then the valiant Tinacrian quickly turned to ſtrike him, and before that he could rayſe vp himſelfe againe, hee ſtroke him ſo ſtrong a blowe, that without all remembrance he made him to ſtagger vpon his horſe, ſ hee lacked verie little to fall to the ground. The Tinacrian ſeing him in this traunce, neuer lefte ſtriking him vntill ſuch time as he did ſee that hee beganne to come againe to himſelfe, and knowing that hes power was not ſufficient to make reſiſtaunce, hee tourned his horſe head and with all haſt rode towardes the Citie, in ſuch ſorte, that when the Moore was wholye come againe vnto himſelfe, the Tinacrian was in ſafetie, wherein he did wiſelie, for if he had tarryed, it coulde not haue fallen out otherwiſe but that hee muſt needes haue dyed by the handes of the cruell Pagan. Then the Moriſco king ſeing all the field clere and without trouble, hee felte himſelfe to bee verie ſore vexed with the ſpedie blowes which the Tinacrians had beſtowed vpon him, and commanded to carrie thoſe knightes which were aliue from the reſt, vnto the tent whereas hee ſhould [illegible] and he likewiſe went to take his reſt and eaſe, for that it was verie neceſſarie & needfull, and was quickly cured of that ſmall wound which he receiued. And as for them of Tinacria, he willed ſ they ſhould pronounce their healths with many remedies, & intreat them honourablye, for that he knewe verie well what they were.

Rubio

Rubio when he came into the Citie, without anye tarrying went vnto the Pallaice to declare vnto the quæne her vnhappie ſucceſſe. The quæne with great ſeueritie, not ſhowing anie ſorrowfull countenaunce, aunſwered, that he ſhould goe and take his reſt, and cure his wounds, ſaying, that ſhee had ſuch confidence in her Gods, that they would remedie all theſe euills, and without anie more tarrying, ſhe aroſe from the place whereas ſhe was ſet, and went vnto the Emperors chamber, & told vnto him all that had paſſed, & of that which happened, in the next chapter I will declare.

¶How the Emperour went into the fielde with the Pagan, and of all that happened in the battaile betweene them. Chap. 22.

When the quæne came where the Emperour was, ſhe tolde him all that had happened in the battaile, as I haue before ſayde, of the which the Emperour receiued no griefe, but rather he was verie well content therewith, yet not ſhewing anie ſigne thereof vnto the Quæne, he ſayde. Ladie, take no griefe at this which is paſt and gone, for that God will vndoubtedly prouide that which ſhall bee requiſite for thy defence. Commaund that I may be prouided of verie good and ſtrong armour, for that I haue ſo great a confidence in my God to abate the great pride of this Pagan. This ſhall be done with a verie good will aunſwered the Quæne, for I will giue thee ſuch that no ſtrength ſhall bee able to pearce it, the which did belong vnto the king my Father, and ſtraight wayes at the houre appointed, ſhee commaunded them to be brought, the which were of the coulour of a verie fine Rubie, all to be ſpangled with verie delicate and glittering ſtars of gold, and all the grauings were garniſhed with rich orientall pearles, wrought with greate ſubtiltie. The ſheild was of the ſame coulour, and the field therof was a mightie great ſtarre which couered all ỳ whole ſhield, they were ſuch that no Prince or Lord euer had ỳ like.

The knightes of Tinacria with greate furie did followe him, to ſee if they coulde make an ende of this theyr battaile, but ſtraight waie hee came to himſelfe, and ſeeing howe they had compaſſed him about, and conſidering into what greate perill they had brought him, he recouered againe his ſworde the which hung by the waiſt bande, and tourning about his horſe hee roared like a wilde Bull which had bene bayted, and preſſed vnto Fabinio, and ſtroke him ſo furious a blowe, that hee carryed awaie both his ſhelde and healme, with a greate parte of his head, and hee fell downe dead to the earth. Then the Earle of Modique forthwith ſtroke the Mauritanian ſuch a blowe on his armes, ỹ both of them were wounded, but moſt of all the right arme, for that the force of the blow was more on that ſide then on the other. wherewith this furious African ſeeing him within his reach, with his lefte fiſt hee ſtroke him vpon the viſour of his healme ſo greate a blowe, that without anie remembraunce hee made him to fall backwards vpon the crouper of his horſe. Then the Earle ſtroke at him an ouerthwart blowe vppon his healme with ſo greate force, that hee made the ſparkes of fire to flye out, the which did greeue him verie much, and as one deſperate, hee lifte vp his ſworde with greate furie to ſtrike the Earle, who with verie much nimbleneſſe put himſelfe on the one ſide, and cauſed him to loſe his blowe, at the which he was verie angrie, and flouriſhing with his ſworde hee chaunced to light vppon the waiſt of one of them, and cutting him in twoe peeces hee fell downe dead to the ground, and not reſting with this, but continuing his furie, he lyfted vp his ſharpe and cutting ſworde, and ſtroke another a blow vppon the left ſhoulder, whome he diuided downe to the girdle. At this verie ſame time the valyaunt Rubio of Yſcla was come to himſelfe, and recouering his horſe he leapt vpon his backe with exceeding great lightneſſe, and ioyned himſelfe with the foure knightes which remayned of all the reſt, and there he beganne with greate furie ſtriking on the Pagan in ſundrie places, and the Earle of Modique & Mondeli likewiſe did multiplie their blowes in great haſt. At

the

the which the Pagan was so furious, that without all patience he beganne to redouble his strokes, and stroke the Earle of Mondeli vpon his healme that hee made him fall to the ground verie sore hurt, and voiding blood out of his mouth: yet this blowe was not giuen so much at his ease, but hee must needes receiue for it foure blowes, which had almost depriued him of his wits. Heere Rubio of Yscla beganne to multiplie his blowes with so great hast, and therewithall so mightily, that he put the Pagan into great extremitie. This furious king tourned for to strike him a blowe at his pleasure, but the nimblenesse of this Tinacrian was such, that many times he made him to lose his blowes, at the which this Pagan was verie much amazed, but because he coulde not strike him at his will as he intended, hee determined to leaue him and to returne vnto the rest, and at two blowes he ouerthrew two knights, the one starke dead, and the other verie sore woũded, so ther remained no more but he of Modique & Rubio of Yscla, & the earle, which turned again to horsback, so like desperate mẽ without hope to escape they stroke at the furious Moore, but hee seeing himselfe more at libertie, began to worke wonders vpon them, cutting them on the right hand and on the left, in this order they trauailed more then two houres, that the strength and valiauntnesse of the Moore was not sufficient to subiect them. Then this Pagan seeing such resistaunce, he firmed himselfe in his stroppes, and lifting vp his sworde on high, hee stroke such a blowe at him of Modique, that without anie remembrance he made him fall vppon his horse crouper, and woulde haue doubled that blowe for to haue made an ende of him, but Rubio did disturbe him, giuing him such a side blowe vppon his helme, that hee made him to lose that which hee was striking, causing his sworde to fall out of his hande, that he coulde not execute it, and the Earle seeing him in that plight, straight wayes retourned another on his lefte shoulder, which greeued the Pagan verie sore. In this time the Earle of Modique was come againe vnto himselfe, and setteled himselfe againe in his saddle, and being firmed against the Pagan, hee

The Earles did heare all that was ſpoken, at which wordes they were very much grieued, but becauſe they knewe the ſtrength of the African, they feared much his furie, but yet ſhame would not ſuffer them to beare the force of theſe wordes, but did determine to goe out and take the aduauntage which the Pagan did offer them. So amongſt them al they choſe ten of them that were moſt eſteemed: who wer, the Earle of Modique, and a ſonne of the Earles, a valyant young man, being of fewer yeares, then he which the Emperour ſlewe at the marble fountaine, and Fabiniano of Hena, and Robio of Yſcla, and other fiue choſen Knights. So when they were armed and vpon horſebacke, they opened the gate of the Citie, and they went out into the fielde, all very well horſed. So when this King of Mauritania ſawe them, he let goe his horne, and putte downe the viſour of his healme, & called for a great ſpeare, which ſtrayght waye was giuen him by a Knight of his, and with great arrogancie, he went towards the place, whereas this faire companie of the ten Knights abode, and with a loude voyce he ſayde that they might heare him, Who gaue you counſel to make reſiſtaunce againſt my furie, for that you can finde no other thing therein but death. Then Don Rubio aunſwered, none other: but onely to abate thy pride, therefore take thy choyce of the fielde, for here I defie thee to the death. All this while Bramarando ſtood and beheld him with a terrible loke, and ſeing him vſe ſo great nimbleneſſe, he thought him to be a good Knight, & giuing a tourne vnto his horſe, he put himſelfe into his place, and being both readye, they ſpurred their horſes together, & ranne one againſt the other, & in the midſt of their courſe they met, & neither of them miſſed their blow, in the which incounnter this gentle Rubio fell downe to the ground, and the Pagan ſomwhat ſtoped in his ſaddle, and his ſpeare remained whole, and ſtrayght waye he put himſelfe in good order. But when he ſaw that all the reſt which remained, did prepare themſelues to make reſiſtaunce, he could not refrayne but with a loude voyce, he ſayde.

O vile cowards and defamers of the order of knighthood, come hether vnto me, each all of you, for I doo no more esteeme of you, then of one onely Knight: and so spurring his horse, he ranne against them, and they did the like, and at one time he receiued the encounter of fiue speares, albeit he moued nothing at all in his saddle: but he did incounter the Baron of Monflet in such sort, that the speare passing thorough his body, he fell downe dead to the ground, and therewith he tourned about his horse, with wonderfull lightnes, and drew out his sharpe cutting sword, and pressed amongst the rest, whereas began a meruailous and terrible battaile. Then the Knights of Tinacria perceiuing that they must either die or ouercom, they began to lay about them on euery side, with so much furie, ỹ it was sufficient to haue hewed an anfield in peces. Yet for all their force, they did not seme to molest him any whit. But he which did shew him selfe most valyant amongst them all, was the Marques of Modique his sonne, and nert vnto him was the Marques of Mondeli, and Don Fabinio. But this strong African layd about him so valiantly, and with so great furie, that he astonied thẽ, insomuch ỹ with the great furie he had, out of the visour of his helme, procæded a thicke smoke. At this time, he threw his shæld on his backe, and toke his sworde in both his hands, that whosoeuer he met, he stroke him with such terrible strength and furie, that helme and head he cut in two parts. The Earle of Mondeli was not at this instant vnoccupied, but with his sword fast in both his hands, he stroke him on the one side of his helme, which was verye fine mettall, that he made it sound like a bell, which caused him to turne vp the white of the eye, and he was almost beside himselfe. He had scarce giuen him this blowe, when likewise ỹ Earle of Modique gaue him another, that made him to decline his head to his breast: wherewith Fabinio gaue him also another blowe, which bereft him cleane of his remembrance, insomuch that his horse caried him round about the field, euen as one dead, with his armes hanging downe.

this,could not chooſe,but receiue great griefe,but he did diſ-
ſemble it,for that he conſidered, that in ſuch extremitie, ſo
valiant a Knight was needfull,and ſo altogether they ente-
red into the Citie. The Quæne was very gallant and plea-
ſaunt,whereat all her ſubiects receiued great delight, and in
the chiefe ſtræte of the Citie,there was erected the Images
of two Knights,made all of ſtone,of a maruelous good pro-
portion,and they had ouer them a couer like a Tabernacle,
very rich and well wrought,becauſe the water ſhoulde not
fall vpon thē,nor any other thing to hurt them. As ſoone as
the Emperour ſaw thoſe figures,he knew that the one was
the Image of his ſonne without reading of the ſupercrip-
tion:but when he came nigh vnto it,he read the ſame,which
ſayd, This is the great Prince of Grecia,called the Knight of
the Sunne, reſtorer of the auncient kingdome of Tinacria,&
the abater and breaker of the ſtrength of the moſt ſtrongeſt
Giants in all the world. And going a little farther, he ſawe
vpon the other Knight this title: Prince Eleno of Dacia,
couſin vnto the moſt valiant ſonnes of Trebatio, the well-
ſpring of all our quietneſſe. Vpon this he loked with great
affection,and earneſt deſire to ſee his perfect perſonage. The
Quæne did well vnderſtand the great ioye that the Empe-
rour receiued,in beholding the figure of his ſonne, and of
his brothers ſonne: for which cauſe ſhe commanded that to
be told publikely,which was ſpoken in ſecret: & then entred
into the Quænes pallaice, and the Emperour was carryed
into a verie faire and rich lodging,whereas by force hee muſt
be ſhut in,to make as if he were priſoner, for that the no-
bles of the Realme,would not conſent that he ſhoulde goe
abroade at his will. The third daie following, this braue
Bramarando with all his Knights,came before the walls of
the Citie,and ſpred abroad their Ancients: and he himſelfe
vpon a fierce horſe,drew towards the walls of the Citie in
great haſt. He was armed with very ſtrong armour,and had
at his necke hanging a verie rich horne of Iuorie,and when
he came to the gate of the Citie, he lifte vp the viſour of his
helme and ſet his horne vnto his mouth,& began to ſound it

verie

very strongly, to the end that the knights of the Citie shuld come thether to heare what he would say. So when ỳ seme of them, such as were nere at hand, approched, he sayd. O you knights of Tinacria, whom the souereigne Gods confound, that according as I am informed, by your counsell, I cannot inioy as mine owne that faire Garrofilea. What do you, that you come not forth with your armor against me? and shew your selues if you be as valiant to overcome, as politike to giue counsel. Some of the nobles of the court, did well heare what this Pagan did say, and straight waye, they went vnto the Quene, for to se what was best to be done in this case, to whome she answered. My friends, you doe well se and vnderstand, how little knowledge I haue in such matters, being but a weake and fraile woman: in such a case as this is, vnto you it belongeth to take counsell, for that you are knights, and together you may establish that, which is conuenient, for herin I haue little knowledge and can say almost nothing: and with this she held her peace. These Earles, seeing that with great reason the Quene had answered them, they would argue no farther with her, but called a counsell. At which time, the King the second time did sound his horne, to call them again to hearken vnto his speach: and being attendant vnto that which he would say, he vttered these words. O vile Tinacrians, what do you, why come you not forth with your armour? How is it, ỳ you are not ashamed to hide your selues from one onely knight, which calleth you. Here I do promise you, that your high walls and deepe dithes which you haue about your Cittie, shall litle profit you, but ỳ you shal all dye in my hands lyke vile knights. And if amongst you ther be not one that is able to make his partie good in the field with me alone. Then come forth two, or three, or foure, or ten, for that altogether I will driue you out of the field: and if these teune be not sufficient, then come you all forth together such as are able to beare armour: for here I do sweare vnto you, to make you dye like cowards: but I take you to be such, ỳ you will not put me to this trouble, but kep your selues in your citie.

The

" Kings: and now I come to requeſt one, that maketh no ac-
" count of me, neither doth my preſent deſtruction moue him
" to any pittie. Go to Emperour, make an ende and aunſwere
" me, that therewith I may receiue either life or death. Heere
may you, which haue knowen what loue is, iudge what the
Emperour Trebatio might conceiue in himſelfe, in this cru-
ell caſe. One way he did conſider the great loyaltie that he
ought vnto the Empreſs his wife: and this conſtrained him
to deny her. Another way, the great deſire that hée had to
ſée himſelfe at libertie, and the great loue that he did know
Garrofilea bare him, cauſed his hart ſomewhat to yéeld. Not-
withſtanding, he did procure with faire and ſweete wordes,
to ſée if he could cauſe her to chaunge her thought and pur-
" poſe ſaying, Lady, I do ſée very well, that the force of loue is
" ſo cruell, that whoſoeuer he doth wound, he leueth them in a
" manner without remedye, except it come from them, on whō
" they haue fired their heart. I do not deny, but that your a-
" morous deſire is ſuch as he hath ordained it, who ſpareth no
" creature. But conſidering your highneſſe and great eſtate, &
" the honour that all ſuch as you are, ſhoulde haue by your
" royall marriages, I do more reioyce that you ſuffer payne,
" then you ſhould take your eaſe with that, vnto which ſenſu-
" all loue doth conſtraine you. Moſt ſouereigne Quéene, héere
" I do deſire you, to bridle your affection, and reſtrayne your
" appetite, that you fall not into that infamie, which will bée
" the onely blemiſh of your eſtate, ſéeing it appertaineth ſo
" much vnto your honour. The quéene ſéeing ỳ his reaſons did
not incline vnto that which ſhe deſired, ſhortened his talk, &
" ſaid: Emperour, all that which thou haſt ſayde, and all be-
" ſides that thou canſt tell me, I do already vnderſtand, and
" there is nothing that may be ſpoken héerein, but I haue be-
" fore this time conſidered of it. Notwithſtanding, loue hath
" more force, then any regard or conſideration I ſhould haue
" vnto my honour. Therefore I am héere come, fully deter-
" mined to make a ſecond ſacrifice vnto my gods, which after-
" wards ſhall be lamented by thée. And in ſaying thoſe wordes,
ſhe toke out the ſworde which ſhe brought in ſecret vnder

her

her roabes, and with great haſt ſhe ſet the pommell thereof vnto the ground, and would haue throwen her ſelf vpon the poynt thereof. The worthy Trebatio ſeing her in this deſperate minde, leapt quickly out of his bed, and with a mighty courage caught holde of her, and toke the ſword out of her hand, ſaying. Oh blinde quæne, what diuelish determination is this? The Lady anſwered, Vnlouing Lorde, no other thing, but to eaſe my ſelfe by death, for that I would not longer liue, as one dying. And ſaying theſe words, ſhe fell in a ſound in the armes of the Emperour. Yare coulde not the ſtoutneſſe of the Græke heart make ſuch reſiſtance, but that with great ioye he toke her, and caſt her vpon the bed, ſhedding many teares with much compaſſion, and conſidering the firmneſſe of the loue that the Quæne hadde ſhowed him, he was confounded in his owne thought, and inforced to haue done that which he neuer thought to haue done, and ſo purpoſed to giue her all her whole contentment: and ſo ioyning his mouth to hers, he remained kiſſing her till ſuch time as this ſorrowfull Lady came againe to her ſelfe. But when ſhe perceiued ſhe was of him ſo louingly imbraced, being the thing ſhe onely deſired, ſhe ſtraight way recouered all the ſtrength that ſhe had loſt, and caſt her armes about his necke with exceeding loue, which grieued not the Emperour any thing at all: & in ſuch ſort they vſed themſelues, that the Quæne was made Lady, with great contentment vnto them both. So with like ſport they paſſed the reſt of the night, in great ioye and pleaſure. The Quæne Garrofilea when ſhe ſaw that it was day, returned vnto her chamber very pleaſant & merrie, vntill ſuch time as it was her accuſtomed houre of riſing, which was ſomewhat early y day, for that the two earles made very great haſt that they might enter into the Citie, the which was ſtraight waye done. And the Quæne brought with her the Emperour, and made him to ſweare to be her true priſoner, and not to depart from thence without her will and leaue. So the quæne toke the Emperour by the hand, & in this order they went out of the Pallace. The Earle of Modique when he ſawe this,

The meſſenger not well pleaſed with the aunſwere, returned to declare it vnto his Lord. And when he was gone, all the Quænes Knights determined to fortifie themſelues in the Citie, and make all things very ſtrong, and ſo they gaue the Quæne to vnderſtand thereof, whereof ſhe was verye well content, ſeeing them ſo well incouraged for her defence. The daye following they commaunded to call together all the beſt Knights of ỹ land, that they might come to her aide and ſuccour: for that there were verye manye in that Iland. But that ſame night Venus would haue wrought one of her accuſtomed cruelties, if ſhe had not bene hindered, as hereafter you ſhall heare in the chapter following.

¶ How the Queene beeing kindeled with the fire of loue, and ſeeing that the Emperour would giue her no remedie of her paine, wold hane ſtroke her ſelfe with a ſword to the heart, wherewith to haue finiſhed her life: and how the Emperour was cõſtrained to conſent vnto her will. Cap. 21.

IN the meane time that they were putting all things in good order, as you haue heard, Cupide did not ceaſe, but continuallye tormented the Quæne, ſo that euery daye ſhe did not let to trouble the Emperor, with hir louing and amorous complaints, prouoking him in what ſhe might, vnto her will, who alwayes with great diſcretion did delay the ſame, vntill the laſt night that they were determined to leaue the Pallaice, and to enter into the Citie. Then this faire Ladye indured verye greate paine, vntill ſuch time as the cleare Diana with the fairnes of her beames, had paſſed the halfe part of her iourney, when that all the people were at their accuſtomed and naturall reſt. Then this faire Garrofilea aroſe vp from her bed with a deſperate determination, which the force of loue inforced her to practiſe, and couering her ſelfe with a very rich robe, ſhe toke a ſword which had bene the King her Fathers,

and

and put it vnder her lefte arme, and in her right hande shée carried a light that she might the better finde the doze, the which she opened as softly as was possible, at such time as the Emperoz, was very fast a sleepe, and when she saw that he did not heare her entering in, she went vnto the bedoes side, with the light in her hand, that she might contemplate her selfe in beholding the graue and faire face of the Emperour, and vnto her it seemed that in all the wozld there was not such another, noz that there could be any greater thing to be desired, then that which her heart did require. In this sozt she was beholding him a great while, vntill such time, as the sozrowfull sighes Garrofilea fet, caused the Emperoz to awake, and when he saw the Quéene, he was very much amazed, and would haue risen vp, whereto ý Quéene would not consent, but caused him to lye still, and setting the light vpon a table which was in the chamber, she came and sate her downe vpon the bed by the Emperour, and shedding many teares of perfect and true loue, she sayd.

My Lozd, I wold very faine know what thou doest pze- »
tend towards me, most vnfozt unate Quéene, wounded with »
the darte of Cupide, onely by the sight of thy exceeding per- »
sonage. Foz knowing it, with thy aunswere I woulde put »
in ozder, that which I haue to doo, concerning this my mi- »
serable life. I doo well know my Lozd and Emperour, that »
this my bolde discouering of my selfe, hath bene too much, »
and beyond all reason: but if at any time thou hast loued, »
and dost know the great griefe that loue doth cause, thou »
wilt not blame me, noz put me in any fault: & I would ý I »
could shows thée my wouded hart, ý in séeing it so soze afflic- »
ted, thou mightst take some compassion of me, & that which »
doth most tozment me, is, that I haue yélded my selfe vnto »
one, ý hath so little pitie on me. Who hath euer heard, ý wo- »
men shuld woe & require of men to loue them? But I most »
vnfozt unate Quéene, haue bzoken that lawe and custome. »
O immozt al Gods, what haue you conceiued against me? Is »
not ý apparant which you vsed against my sister, & now wil »
you vse it also wt me. I shuld be requested of Emperours & »

Kings,

his cuſtomes and manners, he ſaith ẏ he was in the ſtature of his bodie well nære a leauen fœte bigh, and all his members conformable vnto his height, bæing indued with incredible ſtrength, he had his countenaunce verie graue and of great beautie, without anie anger, verie tractable, and a gentleman of great curteſie, hée deteſted to dw anie thing that was vnſæmely, he was verie readie to correct where it was nædfull, and farre from anie vnhumane crueltie: all which vertues were extinguiſhed when he was angered, for that then in all Africa and Aſia there was no wild beaſt ſo fierce and cruell. And many times it hath ben ſæne, when his anger had ben paſt, he would haue weapt with great ſorrowe for the hurt which he had done, he hadde one cuſtome which was verie diuelliſh (bæing no ſmall blemiſh vnto all the reſt of his gœd qualities) that he woulde neuer pardon them of whome he had receiued iniurie. So when this Pagan was come into the pallaice, and in the Quœnes preſence, with a graue countenaunce and hardie voice he declared his embaſſage, and by reaſon that at that time the quœne had not her heart at libertie, ſhe gaue him for anſwere, without tarrying to take anie farther counſaile, that her intent was not as yet to marrie, for that ſhe was verie young, wherwith this Pagan departed, and did returne to giue this anſwere vnto his brother Bramarandus, at which he was verie irefull, & commaunded to make ſacrifices vnto Mahomet, praying vnto him for to chaunge the will of the Quœne, that ſhée might marrie with him. Then there was made aunſwere vnto him (by the Diuell which hadde entered into that infernall Image of Mahomet) that hée ſhoulde not tarrie for anye other hope to obtaine her, but by force of armes, and that hæ ſhoulde procure with all his ſtrength and power for to marrie her, adding that from her ſhoulde proceede an infant, at whoſe valyauntneſſe and ſtrength halfe the world ſhoulde tremble and ſtande in feare. This falſe God did well diuine and prognoſticate, but yet he did deceiue the wretched Bramarandus, in ſaying, that of his ſæde ſhoulde proceed ſuch a child, & when he heard ẏ anſwere of this accurſed

ſed Mahomet, he commanded, ỹ withall diligence ſhould bee ioyned together, fiue hundred of the moſt valianteſt knights that might be choſen, not onely in Mauritania, but alſo in Numidia and Garamantes, for that not one King of all theſe countryes would deny him any thing, with pretence with them and himſelfe in perſon, to win by force that, which by faire meanes he could not obtaine: and imbarking themſelues, with a proſperous winde, they came in a ſmall time vnto Tinacria: and before they would goe aland, they did ſend their Ambaſſador a ſhore, to ſee if they did finde her firſt purpoſe altered. The which meſſage was committed to a mightie ſtrong Moore, called Forimon: who did declare it vnto the Quæne with proud and obſtinate words, threatening them with cruel warres, if to the contrary they would not conſent vnto the marriage. There was preſent at this Embaſſage, the Earle of Modique, and the Earle of Modeli, and the Earle Farlera, and the Marques of Apoſto, and many other valiant Knights: and although they made an outward ſhowe, that they did not eſteeme of it, nor made any reckoning thereof, yet they were in great feare. The good Earle of Modique with a ſad voyce ſaid. Oh mightie Iupiter, how well thou haſt payed thy ſelfe for the great curteſie which thou haſt ſhowed vs, in giuing vs for our Ladyes and gouernours, the faireſt damoſels in the world. For not long ſince we did behold one of thẽ wᵭ her own hands to thruſt a ſword through her breſt (which was a pitifull ſight to ſee): & now ỹ other is euen at ỹ poynt to doo ỹ lyke. Notwithſtanding now ſhall my life periſh, for to maintain my honor, in ỹ ſeruice of my Lady and Quæne. And with this, they did all determine, rather to haue warres with honour, then peace with ſhame: waying the little good will the Quæne had to marrie with him, & to take him for hir huſband. And with this determination, they gaue him for anſwere, that the Quæne was not intended to marrie as yet: ſo that if hee pleaſed to tarrie the time he might, if not, he might doo as he thought beſt, and that they would not let, but defende the honour of their Lady and Quæne.

" blotteth it with his deſpiteful blemiſh. O foolish quéene what
" cauſed thée to depart out of the Pallaice whereas thou were
" at libertie and without griefe, didſt thou it for to do honour
" vnto the Emperour, & yet not knowing him. Well, for what
" cauſe ſo euer it were, ſée now what is become of it, for that
" frélý thou haſt yélded thy ſelfe vnto him, without reſeruing
" anie thing in thy owne power. All this the quéene deliuered
with ſuch ſorrow and lamentation that it would haue cauſed
a ſtonie heart to haue relented. But the emperour who with
a ſingle heart did loue the Empreſſe Briana, and moreouer
béeing a verie good chriſtian, was not moued with one of theſe
lamentable words, neither made he anie ſhew of loue vnto
the quéene, but wiſhing rather to haue had battaile with one
of the hardieſt knightes in all the world, then to haue found
himſelfe ſo ſodainly aſſailed by this amorous woman: wher-
fore when this faire Ladie had plainly declared all the whole
ſecret of her heart, the Emperour vſing his accuſtomed diſ-
creation, did ſhew himſelfe to be verie heauie and ſad for that
which the quéene had heard, and taking her by the hand they
ſate downe together vpon the corner of the bed, and beganne
to anſwere vnto her amorous reaſons, although not ſo much
vnto her purpoſe as ſhe deſired, ſaying.

" Faire Ladie and quéene, I am fully certified that from ſo
" high nobilitie and beautie there can proceéd nothing without
" reaſon, and therefore I did now loſe the confidence of your
" fauour, when I was vnknowen, much more nowe that you
" do know me to be the Emperour of Greece, the truth wher-
" of I do héere confeſſe. And although I finde my ſelfe in the
" land where all the people be my mortall enimyes, yet for all
" that I will not denie who I am, becauſe my heart where-
" ſoeuer it becomes, cannot but vſe manifeſtly his noble cou-
" rage. Héere this Quéene did cut off his anſwere, ſaying: Oh
" Emperour I do not aſke of thée anie recompence, neither
" doe I demaund of thée whether thou be our enimie or our
" friend, but the thing which I alone deſire of thée is this, to
" giue a remedie vnto this my paine, & a plaiſter for my ſore,
" for that the viewe of thée hath béene the onely occaſion ther-

of.

of. Oh Emperour, what trifling is this, to talk of that which is not aunſwerable vnto that which I demaunde: Oh wo-
thie Emperour, haue compaſſion on me, for that thou alone maiſt remedie this my euill, for thou ſeeſt apparauntlye the nede I haue of thy helpe: Oh that it had pleaſed the Gods that my remedie were as ſure as thy libertie, reſtore vnto me (I beſeech thee) that wherof thou haſt bereaued me by beholding thee, yeeld vnto me O ſweet Emperor, ſeeing that I am alreadie yelded vnto thee, inſomuch that there is no doubt, but to put into thy handes the ſpoyle of my royall marryage.

The Emperour did leane his cheeke vpon his hande verie penſiue, all the time that this Ladie was declaring her complaintes, not for that he was without pittie, but for that he was moued with greate compaſſion, and yet not with determination to ſatisfie her diſordinate appetite, but with faire words to put her in good hope of remedie. And verye faine ſhe woulde haue aunſwered, but that ſhee was cut off by a Damoſell which called her. The Queene diſſembling her heauineſſe in the beſt wiſe ſhe coulde, went out of the chamber to ſee what they would haue, vnto whom the Damſell ſaide. Ladie, there is a meſſenger come from the king of Mauritania, which doth tarrie for you belowe in the pallaice, wherat this faire queene did feele her ſelfe troubled, the occaſion was, for that this king was in loue with her, who was verie valiaunt and of great force, and began to gouerne his kingdome verie young, with another brother of his, who at that time was not knighted, neuertheleſſe to beare him named in all Africa, it made the people to tremble with feare, therefore manie times by reaſon of his greate pride his fame was much abated. This king did determine with himſelfe to marrie with the Queene, eyther by fayre meanes, or elſe by force, and for to put this his pretence in practiſe, hee ſent vnto her his meſſengers, and for a more maieſtie, hee made his owne brother Lord Embaſſadour. And ſeeing this hiſtorie will moſt intreate of this young man who was called Brufaldoro, ỹ wiſe author wold diſcouer

to be ſome other thing, he aroſe vpon his feete, and toke his ſwoorde in his hande (for the Queene woulde neuer conſent that his ſwoorde ſhould be taken from him,) and when he ſawe that it was the queene, he did quiet himſelfe, and diſſembling his anger in the beſt wiſe he coulde, the Queene drew neere vnto the Emperour, and diſſembling what ſhe had heard, ſhe ſaluted him and ſayde. Gentle knight, howe doo you feele your ſelfe of your paſſed trauaile. To whom he anſwered, I can make no other anſwere, moſt mightie Ladie, but the verie ſame which you your ſelf may think, if you were priſoner, eſpecially for ſuch an occaſion, as you ought rather to receiue fauour and comfort, and therefore I cannot but muſe at your highneſſe, knowing in howe little fault I am, that you ſet me not at libertie, but I doo well ſee that you are a Damoſell and ſubiect vnto the will of your ſubiectes, for ſeke what they ordaine you dare not reſiſt againſt them, therefore faire Ladie I doe deſire you if you pretend to ſet mee at libertie (as by promiſe and iuſtice you are bound) let it bee out of hand, and if anie of your ſubiects will ſay to the contrarie, I requeſt the acceptation of the battaile for the defence of my right, with eight or tenne, or if they will, with twentie of the beſt in all your kingdome, and I doubt not but in mine owne perſon againſt them al, to deliuer my ſelfe from this enthralled perill: vnto whom the queene anſwered with a verie good grace. I doe well vnderſtande gentle Knight, that the highneſſe of your heart cannot ſuffer ſuch ſtraight impriſonment, as well for that which I haue ſeene of thee, as alſo for that which I haue heard. So likewiſe thou maiſt well beleeue, that which I haue done, hath bene partly to content my ſubiects and people, for that this euill hath fallen out vpon the perſon of the moſt mightieſt man amongeſt them, and of this be you aſſured, ỹ the thing which you would haue done, and ſo much deſire, ſhal not be done, onely for that you are without faulte, although they charge you with it greatly, but alſo for that thou art Father vnto that excellent knight of the Sunne, whome in this my Iſlande they honour for one of the moſt high and ſouereigne Gods, as a

reſto-

reſtorer of the ſame,and againe, that it is not decent that ſo ,,
high and mightie an Emperour ſhuld in this Iland be ſo re- ,,
gorouſly intreated,as that his cauſe ſhould be determined by ,,
the tearmes of iuſtice, vnto whome not onely they,but the ,,
whole world,willingly ought to ſerue, for that thou art an ,,
Emperour,and father vnto ſuch a ſonne. The Emperour ,,
was verie ſore troubled when he perceiued ỹ he was know- ,,
en,the which this faire Ladie marking, went forwardes in ,,
her talke,and ſayd:Doe not vexe your ſelfe,neither bee anye ,,
whit troubled(moſt mightie Prince)for that you are know- ,,
en,conſidering that of ſuch a one as thou art it is reaſon we ,,
dw eſteeme,according to thy deſert, neither can my captiue ,,
heart conſent vnto anie other thing but the exalting of thy ,,
honour. Alaſſe what ſhall I ſaie, who hath receiued moſt ,,
wrong for their impriſonment,it hath bene onely my chriſtal ,,
breaſt and captiued heart, they haue wronged thy bōdie but ,,
for a time,but me,loue hath bereaued of my former libertie, ,,
in wounding my hart,ſo that it is almoſt vncurable.In this ,,
(my good Lord) you may vnderſtand that I a lone am ſhee ,,
which hath the greateſt wrong. Thou valiaunt Emperour ,,
haſt taken awaie from the Earle of Modique his ſonne, but ,,
thou haſt robbed me(moſt infortunate)of my heart.Oh how ,,
much better had it bene for me to haue bene partaker with ,,
him of death,then now to liue,not knowing what cruel loue ,,
will dw. Oh immortall Gods, how is it that you haue per- ,,
mitted that the tender hart of a poore damſell,beeing alwaies ,,
willing to offer vnto you ſacrifices,and exerciſing of my ſelf ,,
daily in your ſeruice,and now in payment of all this, you ,,
haue permitted it to be ſacrificed vnto the cruell will of Cu- ,,
pide,who hath forcibly pearced my feeble heart with his fu- ,,
rious darts. I beſeech thee(O Emperour) doe not denie mee ,,
this my vnreaſonable demaund, although thou ſeeſt it ſo far ,,
to exceed the meane. Oh virginitie, thou maiſt well be com- ,,
pared vnto a roſe,which ſo long as the leaues are reſerued w- ,,
in the bud,it keeperh the naturall ſoulour, but when it once ,,
begins to blow,then doth it quickly change,euen ſo the flou- ,,
riſhing beautie of virgins doth no ſooner blome,but Cupide ,,

And ſo in ſuch like anguiſh he walked vp and downe the chamber, and ſwore that if he did ſée himſelfe at libertie, he would not giue credit vnto anie ſuch faire wordes as the queene had promiſed him, and ſometimes he threw himſelfe vpon his bed, calling for his valiaunt ſonnes, and his wiſe men, ſaying. Oh my ſonnes and my friends, if that you did know of all theſe my troubles, I am ſure that you wold giue mée aide and ſuccour with the ſtrength of your armes, in leauing this Iland deſolate, which by you was once reſtored, & now as it is happened to the hurt of your Father: or at leaſt wayes, if thou Lyrgandeo or Artemidoro, or anie of you would giue mée ſuccour with my armour and horſe, I doe héere ſweare vnto you by the almightie God, that in the anger and furie that I am in, that in ſpite of all Tinacria I would ſet my ſelfe at libertie, and leaue them ſo plagued as their deſerts do deſerue. And with this he helde his peace for a while, and loked round about to ſée if he could finde anie place where he might get out, and ſéeking he found a verie fayre and well proportioned Lute, hanging vpon a naile on the wall, the which he tooke downe and did put it in tune, and beganne to plaie with verie ſweet melodie, accompanied with a verie heauie and harmonious voice, & againſt fortune he ſang theſe verſes following.

YOu worthie wights which fortunes frownes haue felt,
and headlong falne from top of high eſtate:
And all, with whom ſhe mutably hath dealt,
conſent with me her falſehood to relate.
Whoſe double face when ſmootheſt it doth ſmile,
Then meanes ſhe moſt the mightie to beguile.

Ay me poore Prince a patterne of her ſpight,
Who earſt on top of all her wheele was plaſt:
And now haue care in ſteed of late delight,
for regall crowne with captiues life diſgraſt.
From Crœſus wealth farre worſe then Codrus pore?
Fie froward fortune what canſt thou doo more?

Well,

Well,ſince that I haue felt thy fartheſt ire,
in this diſtreſſe I flatly thee defie,
And for redreſſe,I onely death deſire,
hoping that then my ſoule to him ſhall flie,
Whoſe due it was before that I was borne:
Who with his wiſdome laughs thy ſlights to ſcorne.

And thus making an end of his ſong,he threw his Lute vpon his bed,and turned vnto his accuſtomed vnquietneſſe, and agayne complaining of Fortune he ſayd.O vile coward and ingratefull,tell mee where is thy habitation, and thou ſhalt ſee if this wheele in the which thou goeſt,canne profite thee anie thing or deliuer thee,that both thy ſelfe & the wheele be not broken all to peeces by my ſtrong hande,if I goe out from hence:and I will neuer reſt till ſuch time as I haue found thee,and although thou doeſt hide thy ſelfe in the deepe and infernall places,yet will I not leaue to followe thee till ſuch time as I haue rooted out all thy power. Theſe and other lyke woordes this ſorrowfull Emperour vttered,with ſo great anger,ỹ if he had found himſelfe with armour,there had beene no doubt but that he would haue broken the chamber whereas hee was priſoner, and in ſpite of all Tinacria haue ſet himſelfe at lybertie. The Queene which was hearkening vnto all that which the Emperour ſayde,was not ſo much kindeled with the loue of the Emperour before, but nowe it increaſed without meaſure,when ſhee heard and vnderſtoode what hee was,and if it had not beene for the reſpect of her eſtate, out of all doubt ſhee had entered in where as the Emperour was, but bridaling her owne will, conſidering what an euill reporte ſhee ſhoulde haue amongeſt her ſubiectes,if they ſhould by anie meanes attaine to the knowledge thereof. With this and ſuch lyke extremities ſhee remained a greate while ſilent, till ſuch time as the force of loue did ſo ouercome her, that ſhee forgot cleane all that touched her honour and royall maieſtie, and determined to open the doore,which without anie delaie ſhe didde, which ſtraight wayes the Emperour hearde, and thinking

In the ende ſeing that they did ſo ill intreate me and in ſuch manner, I did determine firſt to dye, then to yeld my ſelfe vnto them as priſoner, neither would I haue altered my intent, if it it were not now by occaſion of your greate beautie, accounting my ſelfe happie to die at the commaundement of ſo excellent a Lady: all this time that the Emperour was ſpeaking vnto the Quæne, ſhe neuer withdrew her eyes, from beholding of his perſonage, and had great admiration to ſee the Maieſtie of his countenaance. O cruell Cupide, wilt thou nowe beginne to vſe thy accuſtomed malice. O falſe tyrant, I can neuer talke in theſe or ſuche lyke matters, but thou art alwayes at hande. This quæne was ſo blinded with loue, that without any more conſideration, ſhe went vnto the Emperour, and toke him by the hand, and made him to ſtand vpon his feete and ſayd. Valiant Knight, I doo account my ſelfe verye happie, for that I haue had ſo much ſtrength, that only with my perſon I haue moued your ſtout courage to ſo great humilitie. And with this ſhe cauſed him to put vp his ſworde into his ſheathe, and promiſing him ſafetie, ſhe led him with her into the pallaice, and commaunded that the Earle ſhould be taken from vnder the horſe, for at that time he had not ſo much ſtrength to cleare himſelfe from that fall: for that it was in ſuche ſort, that it did bruſe and intreate him very ill. And when they came vnto the Pallaice, the Quæne commanded that there ſhould be giuen him a meruailous faire and rich lodging. And for the great complaints which were made of him, ſhe commaunded, that he ſhould be kept in good warde, although ỹ priſon which ſhe gaue vnto him, was not ſo strõg, as that which the Emperour had giuen occaſion vnto the Quæne to haue, & although it wer not very grieuous, yet the Emperor could not chooſe but feele it, when he ſaw himſelfe locked vp, being neuer accuſtomed vnto any ſuch trouble: the Quæne had great care of him, and cauſed him to be healed of thoſe ſmall wounds which he had, and that with great diligence, in ſuch wiſe, that in a ſmall time he was whole of his paine, ſwellings and other griefes. In all this time, the

Earle

Earle and all the kinſfolkes of them that were ſlaine, made great haſt and ſute vnto the quæne to execute iuſtice vppon this knight that was priſoner, but ſhe did defend the caſe verie much, and excuſing him in declaring vnto them the ſmall right ſhe had to doe it, and giuing them to vnderſtand how that they had their paiment according vnto their deſerts, but by reaſon of the great importaunce that thoſe knights made, ſhe was conſtrained to kæpe him ſtraighter in priſon, which was vnto her ſo greate paine, that ſhe could ſcarce diſſemble it. So the Quæne bæing thus ſore troubled ſhæ went vnto her chamber, and there was betwæne her chamber and that, where as the Emperour was but one wall, and out of the Quænes chamber there went a dore, whereas manye times ſhæ communed with him. Thus bæing verie penſiue and ſore troubled, for that ſhe was conſtrained to commaund that which her heart would not conſent vnto, ſhe went her ſelfe cloſe vnto the dore to ſæ if ſhe might comfort her ſelfe with the ſight of her priſoner and captiue, and ſhe chanced to come thether at that time as the Emperour did complaine verye much of his fortune, vttering merualous pittifull and ſorrowfull wordes. Oh cruell fortune without all ſtabilitie, enuious, and the onely cauſer of all my vnquietneſſe, I ſæ that no mightineſſe nor the power of anie Monarch is ſufficient to bridle thy diſordinate appetite. Art not thou content in doing me ſo great euill, in ỹ thou broughteſt me out of my worthie Empire, cleane contrarie to the will of my ſubiects, and didſt not holde faſt thy whæle till ſuch time as thou haddeſt deliuered mæ into the handes of ſtraunge people. It hadde bæne better for me to haue dyed in the deapth of the Sea, or elſe with the edge of the Sworde lyke a knight, then to ſæ my ſelfe in the power of barbarous people. O Emperour Trebatio, now after ſo many and great troubles in the which thou haſt ſæne thy ſelfe, and haſt ouer paſſed them, and by this miſfortune thou art put vnto that greate neceſſitie, that neyther thou canneſt profite thy ſelfe of thy valyaunt courage, neither of the ſtrength of thy worthye and valyaunt knights.

of the fountaine that was at his backe. The Emperour defended himſelfe in ſuch ſort, that the ſpeare without doing him anie hurt went ouer his head. The blowe was not ſo ſone paſt when that the Emperour roſe bolt vpright, and caſt ſuch a thruſt at the horſe breaſt, that his ſword entered in vp to the hiltes. The horſe when he felt himſelfe hurt, gaue a leape into the aire with ſo great ſwiftnes, as though it had bene a whirlewinde, and in the ende, he fell downe to the earth with great force, & in his fall, he caught ỳ Earles leg vnder him, in ſuch ſort, that he could not by any meanes ariſe. Here might the Emperour haue ſlaine or hurte him, but hee would not, for ỳ he ſæmed vnto him to be a knight of great eſtimation. Then all the people that were there, both them a foote & thoſe on horſebacke, with great ſhowts and ſhrikes they would haue ſet vpon him: but they could not come nigh him at their wil, for that the dead horſe was betweene them: & againe, the Earle was a ſhield for his defence, who was priſoner vnder his horſe right before him. So at this inſtant came forth of that faire pallace, a great number of knights and Ladyes, and amongſt them ỳ faire Queene Garroſilea. And when all the people ſawe her they put themſelues out of the way towards the one ſide, by the which the Emperour vnderſtood that ſhe was Lady of all that Countrey. She came formoſt of all that company, being ſo faire and ſo well proportioned, that ſhe ſæmed vnto the Emperour to be as beautifull as euer he beheld any in all the worlde: ſhe was of the age of fourtæne yeares, but yet her body was of a marualous and great ſtature. She was adorned w̃ very rich robes, & vpon her head a crowne of gold, which was very great, placed with ſuch grauitie, as her ſtate required. And when ſhe drew nigh vnto the place whereas this warriour was, ſhe verie much meruailed at his well proportioned bodie and good diſpoſition, and at the ſeuere and faire countenaunce of the Emperour, and tourning vnto him, in the Tuſcan tongue ſhe ſayd.

Worthy and valyaunt Knight, whatſoeuer thou arte, thou doſt ſeeme vnto vs, that thou art a ſtraunger. Not-

withſtanding, thou muſt not thinke, that thou art in a place, whereas ſhall be done vnto thæ any thing without reaſon, although I dœ not know, how thou canſt excuſe thy ſelfe, for doing of all this harme, which I ſæ thou haſt done vnto ſo valiant and worthy Knights, as theſe which I dœ ſæ dead before thæ, onely by the ſtrength of thy arme. And wherein I may moſt excuſe thæ, is in their ſmall prowes: for although they were armed, and thou naked without armour, yet had they neither power nor force to bring thæ vnto priſon. And therefore, ſæing their ſmall force, I determined, bæing a woman and a damoſell, to come forth of my pallaice, to make an ende of that: which without great harme and damage could not be ended by Knights. Therefore nowe ſæing there is no other remedy, I dœ deſire thæ that thou wouldeſt yæld thy ſelfe to be my priſoner, and giue vnto me the glorie and triumph, that ſo many worthie Knights could not attaine: and put thy whole truſt and confidence in me, and I dœ promiſe thæ that no man ſhall dœ thæ any wrong, or offer thæ any thing againſt reaſon.

The Emperour did well vnderſtand all that the Quæne had ſayd vnto him, but he made as though he did not vnderſtand her, and tourned to aſke her what ſhe had ſayd, in ſaying, that he did not vnderſtand the language, and howe that he was a Grecian borne. Then the Quæne who was very diſcræte, and could ſpeake the Græke tongue very wel, renewed her tale, and ſpake that in the Græke, which before ſhe had done in the Tuſcan tongue. Then the Emperour bowed his knees to the earth, and with an humble voyce, he ſayd. I cannot deny, moſt excellent & faire quæne, ỹ great grief which I haue, for that which I haue done, neither can your knights deny ỹ iuſt occaſion ỹ I had to do it. For they finding me a ſlæp & taking my reſt by this fountaine, being conſtrained thereto, by the trauaile I receiued at ſea, and being caſt aland in this your countrie, they did intreate me as they would not intreate a plough man, conſtraining their courteſie againſt my will, and doing that, which the grauitie of my heart would not permit.

An

brought vnto them very faire and ſtrong horſes, which the King had commaunded to giue them, and mounting on their backs, in great haſt they went out of the Citie to the hauen ſide, to the ſame place whereas they fought theyr owne battaile, whereas they founde theſe two knights with no leſſe rigor & furie, then they themſelues were before. So ſtraight way, thoſe of thoſe Knights did knowe, who that Knight & Gyant was, which were in battaile, & ſayd, that it was Clauerindo and the King of Sardenia, whom I told you departed out of Greece in the queſt of the Emperour, and by fortune they were driuen into thoſe parts, for that the King might haue more ayde for to execute his tyranny. Then the valyant Zoylo pulled off his helme and ſayd. What is the matter valyaunt Prince, that you ſhow your ſelfe ſo furious againſt him, which in all poynts is redy to be at your commaundement. At which words, the Prince lift vp his eyes, and when he beheld thoſe three Princes and knewe them, he very much merualled to ſee them, and lefte off his battel, and ſo likewiſe did Bramidoro, and all three w̄ their armes abroad, came to imbrace him. And Clauerindo ſaide, It had not gone very well with vs in this conflict, if theſe knights had not knowen vs, and in ſaying theſe wordes, he threwe his armes about their neckes with great ioye that he receyued to ſee them: and with no leſſe ioye and pleaſure all the reſt did ſhowe themſelues & ſayd. We are thoſe which haue moſt gotten in the knowing of you, for that we haue put apart the great battaile that was prepared for vs. So with the like courteſie they receiued the Prince of Dacia, who, if that the other had not tolde him what he was, he wold haue beleeued that it had bene Roſicleer. So with theſe and ſuch like reaſons, at the requeſt of the other Princes, they went with them vnto the Citie, at ſuch time as the King came forth, accompanied with a faire companie of Knightes and verye well armed, who receyued them with great courteſie, & cauſed ỳ prince of Fraunce to ride w̄ him ſide by ſide. So they altogether returned vnto the Citie, and then to the Pallaice, whereas they were merueilouſly well intertained,

and

and there the King tolde vnto them all his contrarie and chaunged treaſon, wherefore theſe two knights did ſweare and promiſe vnto the King, the ſame which the others had done. The prince Clauerindo had ſo great affection vnto the Prince Eleno, that he would not at any time departe from him, neither would the Prince Eleno do otherwiſe vnto Clauerindo, declaring vnto him all his euills and ſtrange aduentures. At which communication was preſent the king of Sardenia, and when he heard him tell of his aduenture in Tinacria, and of the battaile that he had made with Tefereo, and how that he was ouercome, he with more affection beholde him, and requeſted him to heare the whole eſtate thereof. So the Prince did declare all, and how that he departed, and how that afterward he found the princeſſe Lidia, that Lady which carried the Emperour out of Conſtantinople: the which being all knowen vnto them, they would ſtraight way goe and viſite her, and ſhe receiued them with her accuſtomed ſadneſſe.

Now for that I haue long time forgot that noble Emperour, I will retourne, and tell you what happened vnto him, at the fountaine of Tinacria, where I lefte him.

How that the Emperour went vnto Tinacria, and of all that paſſed in the battaile, which he had with the Earle of Modique. Cap. 20.

IN great trouble and affliction we lefte the valiaunt Emperour Trebatio, in the Iland of Tinacria, harde by the fountaine of marble, at ſuch time as the Earle of Modique with his ſpeare in his reaſt, was prepared for to hurt him. The Emperour ſeing him come, he had greate care of himſelfe, and being in a place that neither to the one parte nor to the other he coulde ſlip backe to ſaue himſelfe from that blowe, he did determine to ſtope with both his knees and ſhorten in his bodie, for that he was ſure he coulde not ouerrunne him with his horſe, by reaſon

of

in this your Countrey, conſtraining all ſtraunge Knights by force to ſweare vnto your defence, the which by Iuſtice and order of Knighthood they muſt doo it of their owne free will, if you giue them to vnderſtand the truth therof. To whom the King anſwered and ſayd, Gentle Knight, all this which hath bene done, was neuer by my commaundement, but by this my Captaine whom thou haſt here ſlaine. And for that I did vnderſtand the great harme which he did, & that without all reaſon, I am come hether to remedy it: for which cauſe I doo deſire and pray you, to let the furie of your ſtrõg armes to ceaſe, and to paciſſe your ſtout courages, and to take in good part, to come and reſt your ſelues with me, the which you may doo with all ſecuritie. And here I do promiſe you to holde and kepe my faith and word the which I doe giue vnto you: and then will I declare vnto you all my trouble, whereat you will not onelye take greate contentment to ſweare that which I ſhall requeſt you: but alſo I beleeue that you will of your worthineſſe take the demaunde to bee your owne, according vnto the great right and Iuſtice, that I haue on my part. So theſe foure Knights were ſatisfied of all that this Moriſh King had promiſed vnto thẽ, & by his words were ouercome and yelded vnto that which hee had demaunded of them, and were determined to go with him: at ỹ which, ỹ King receiued no ſmall ioy, for to haue ſo valiant Knights wt̃ him in his companie. Then ỹ King alighted and cauſed them to put vp their ſwords into their ſheathes, and did them as great honour as though they hadde ben in their owne Countries. Then the Prince Eleno ſeing how that all things were finiſhed, he determined to goe for his faire Licha, but when the King knew who ſhe was, himſelfe did beare him companie, and toke her out of the galley, and brought her a ſhore. All that did beholde her, did meruayle at her great beautie, being mixed with ſo much ſadneſſe. So the King toke her by the hand and bare her company, till he came vnto the Citie, and carried her vnto his pallaice, which was very rich and great, for this king was one of the mightieſt Princes in all Africa. So ſtraight way it was cõmaun-

ded

des to make ready dinner, for that it was very needfull, the which was accomplished very sumptuously. When they sate downe to dinner, they pulled off their helmes, which before that time they had not done: and when the Prince Eleno had pulled off his heaime, all the rest did thinke verely, that it had bene the valiaunt Knight Rosicleer, (for that as I haue tolde you) he was very much like him) complaining for that he had kept himself so close, without shewing what he was in so long time. The Prince with a smiling countenance did put them out of al doubt, in shewing them who he was of the which they remained very much amazed, & for all that, if he had had a little more beard, they would not haue beleeued him. The King was very well content and pleased that he had such Knights in his company, & told vnto thē a great circumstance of treason, cleane contrarie to that it was, applying all the iniurie to be offred vnto himself, mingling his tale with counterfet teares, which caused these Knightes to giue credit vnto his words, in such sort that they did sweare vnto the King all that he would demaund, of the which this traiterous King remained greatly contented, and ordayned for thē very faire & rich chambers to ease thēselues, with all seruice needfull, & likewise for ỳ faire Lidia, for he lodged her in the Queenes chamber, & caused many Ladyes and Damsells to come and beare her companie, and to serue her in all that was necessarie, for that he perceiued how the Prince Eleno did receiue great pleasure therein. In the end of twentie dayes that these Knights had sojourned with the King, there came one and aduertised the King, how that ther was arriued in the port of the Citie, a faire ship, and how ỳ ther descended out of her a Knight, and a well proportioned Gyaunt: and by reason that they would not hearken vnto the accustomed oath, which they that didde arriue there shoulde sweare, that there was begun a meruailous and stout battaile, with them that did keepe the Port, wherein the knight did meruailous & worthy feates, and likewise ỳ Giant. The which being heard by those knights ỳ wer with ỳ king, they called for their armor, & wer vō a trice armed, & there were

brought

himſelfe awaie vppon the ſands, and in a trice he was on his feete againe, and went towards the place whereas the Gyant was, with full pretence to ſtrike him ſuch a blowe, that he ſhould not be able to make anie more reſiſtance. The Gyant when he ſawe him comming woulde haue ſtroken him, for to diſturbe him of his blow, but he could not, for that this Dacian ſtroke him ſuch an ouerthwart blowe, that lighting on his foote, he cut it cleane off, and the Gyant chaunced a blow on his helme, that it made the knight to tumble on the ſand, the gyant ſeeing him downe, would haue turned to haue ſtriken him againe, but he could not for the lacke of his foote, for when he thought to firme his foote on the grounde to preaſe forwards, he could not make a ſtep, but gaue a terrible fall to the ground, and beeing ſore troubled with the wound of his head and other wounds, he yelded vp the Ghoſt, and ſent his ſoule to whom it did appertaine. The Pagan people when they ſawe their ſtout Captaine dead, with great ſhowts and ſhrikes they preſſed altogether vpon thoſe foure knightes, but they found thē neither daſtards nor cowards, but they gaue them well to vnderſtand ẏ they were of great valour. Then they ioyned themſelues together backe to backe, and ſtroke ſuch ſtraunge blowes vpon their enimies, and with ſo great force and furie, that he which had receiued one blowe would not turne to them againe, with great feare they were ſo ſcarred. Prince Eleno being incenſed with anger, at the fall that he receiued by the blow of the Gyant, it cauſed him to claſpe his ſword faſt in his hand, and with double furie he preſſed amongeſt his enimies, that vnhappie he might thinke himſelfe that came to the receit of the firſt ſtroke, for that with an ouerthwart blowe, he tuke his head cleane from his ſhoulders, and returned vnto another, and ſtroke him vppon the waſt, ſo that it had neere hand parted him in two peeces, ſo with ſuch like blowes and feates of knighthood they made them to retire. And at the ſame time they ſawe comming forth of ẏ citie a great number of knights & gentlemen, which they iudged to be about fiue thouſand in an armie, and all on horſe backe. It could not be choſen but ẏ this valiant Prince

Eleno

Eleno ſhould haue ſome feare, ſæing ſo many Knights: notwithſtanding, with a loude voyce, and with great courage he ſayd. Excellent & valyant knights, now is ỳ time, (moſt noble & ſtout warriors) that we ſhow the great ſtrength & courage of our heartes, by a plaine teſtimoniall in leauing our bodies as ſacrificed vnto their wills, and our bloud to be ſprinckeled abroad, receiuing more loye and honour in our deaths, fighting in our owne defence, then to giue conſent vnto our enimies in ouercomming vs. Notwithſtanding, this young warriour did not forget himſelfe, but rather with more furious blowes he preſſed on his enemies, and working ſuch terrible feates, that it is very wonderfull to be heard: and ſo without all hope of their liues, committing themſelues vnto God, they did procure by all meanes, to cut off and make leſſe their enemies, killing them in ſuch ſort, as it ſæmed to mans capacitie impoſſible. The quantitie was ſo great, that by reaſon of the bolud that ran from them, the water on the ſea ſide was made red, and loſt his naturall colour, and being in this conflict, there approached all that great companie that came forth of the Citie. And before them all there came a Knight armed with very faire and rich armour, all gylded, and ſomething of a good ſtature and bigneſſe of body, & he had on his head a royall crowne: who when he came vnto the place whereas this bloudy battaile was, he commanded all the people to ſtand aſide, and with a ſeuere voyce, ſhowing great humilitie, he ſayd. Valiaunt and worthy Knights, whom Iupiter defend and kæpe, I faie my ſelfe very ſore troubled, in ſæing Knightes of ſo great valour and worthineſſe as you are, to be indued with ſo much cruelitie againſt your ſelues, and onely for not ſwering an oath, (conſidering you haue chaunced vpon this aduenture) whereby you ſhould make defence againſt ſo great treaſon agains me practiſed, of traitours, which onely by tyrannnie pretende to take away my kingdome from me. To the which words, the valiaunt Prince Eleno made anſwer, and ſayd. If thou haſt iuſtice on thy ſide, as thou ſaiſt thou haſt, wherefore do you conſent to ſuffer ſo vyle a cuſtome

that they seemed to be no humane creatures. They did fight with so much courage that their enimies wer constrained to withdrawe thẽselues back, it was a great trouble vnto these knights that they were a fote, for if they had bene on horseback all foure together, without doubt verie quickly they had made an end of the conquest, so being in this conflict they sawe come forth of the citie a great number of knights, and before them came a well proportioned Gyaunt, armed with verie fayre and rich armour, who with great hast came vnto the place whereas the knights were, and when he sawe the great harme which was there done, with a terrible and fearfull voice he sayd.

Oh immortall Gods, is it possible that foure knights hath done all this harme, that a thousand of very good knights are not able to doe, and is their strength and pollicie such, that not one of thẽ haue receiued anie hurt. O wretched knights what had you rather to die in my power then to sweare vnto so iust a demaund as they haue asked of you in ꝑ behalfe of the king Noraldino. Then Lyriamandro who heard the wordes which the Gyant had sayd, aunswered. There is not one of vs, that for the feare death will sweare vnto anie thing, but first we wil knowe if the cause be iust, because we will not fall vnto anie crime of that which shall be contrarie vnto the order of knighthood. So then I doe perceiue said the Gyaunt, that you do not purpose to sweare in any thing except it be first declared vnto you what it is, and the occasion thereof. To the which aunswered Zoylo, no. Well heere I sweare vnto you by the high Gods (sayd the Gyaunt) that I my selfe alone will bring you all to that staye, that you woulde willingly sweare, but then you shall haue no time. And therewith he drewe out a broade and glistering sword and flourishing therewith he pressed forwardes, then the Prince Elemo stepped forth and requested the other that they would let him alone with ꝑ gyant, the which although it were against their wills, yet they consented to it, and the other putting themselues all on the one side, they beganne againe their mortall battaile. The Gyaunt with the greate

furie

furie hée had, did discharge his blowe, but it was in vaine, for that the Prince did let it slippe by, in such sorte, that hée coulde not strike him, and in putting the blowe aside, hée cut the sayde Gyaunt vppon one of his legges, and made a wounde, which although it were not greate, yet there ranne out of it verie much bloud. When the Gyaunt did fæle himselfe hurt, and that he sawe his bloud runne downe, hée did so kindle in ire, that he let his shælde fall to the grounde, and laying holde on his greate and broade swœrde, with both his handes he lift it vp, and stroke at the Dacian, thinking with that one blowe to haue finished the battaile, but the Prince for that he was nimble and light, did procure straight waies to clære himselfe from the force thereof, the which he did in such sort, that the swœrde fell downe to the ground, and by reason of the great force and furie wherewith it was discharged, the Gyant was constrained following his blowe to fall likewise downe vpon the earth. Hære the Dacian was not idle, but with both his hands stroke him vpon his strong helme with great courage, and although he could not cut it at that time by reason of the hardnesse, yet it astonished him & brought him out of his remembraunce. The Gyant which sawe himselfe in this perpleritie, with great furie in the best manner he could, tumbled himselfe on the one side, and procured to arise vpon his fæte, but it was not possible for him, for that he was tormented with greate and beaute blowes, and forced to fall downe againe vpon the sande, but yet as sone as he coulde, he tourned once againe and forced himselfe to arise, but he could not dœ it with such speed, but first he must proue againe the sharpe edge of the Dacians swœrd, who stroke him such another terrible blow vpon the helme, that it yælded, and he cut his flesh. The Gyant did fæle himselfe verie ill with that blowe, and with the great furie and anger which he had, he stroke at the knight a terrible blowe which was in such sorte, that by anie meanes hæ coulde not shift himselfe from it, but must nœdes receiue it vppon his helme, the which was with such force, that it made him to fall down to the ground, but this knight wō great lightnes tūbled

a good waie from them two Foistes, in battaile together the one with the other, and determining to goe vnto them to see what it should bee, the valiant Rosicleer leapt into his Galley, which was carried another way with so great furie, that Zoilo was driuen to remaine, & be departed in great hast. So this Tartarian Zoilo remaining alone in his shippe, directed it towards them that were in battaile, and came vnto them at such time as they had great need of his succour, for that they were oppressed by the same ship of the rouers that met with him, and they were in a meruailous great fight, but with the aide of the Tartarian, they assailed them in such sort, ỳ if they had not yeelded themselues to mercie, they had sonke them all in the sea, & taking all their oths they made them to sweare that they should leaue that euill and naughtie life. Then they all entered into the ship wherin the Tartarian was, with determined purpose to proceede forwards whether their fortune would carrie them for to get them fame, and to increase their honour. So the weather constrained them to arriue in the port of Numidia, whereas you haue heard tolde, in that countrie they did constraine all knights that there did arriue, to sweare vnto them to aide and helpe that traitour their Lord. These Princes would not be sworne except first they wold declare the cause wherefore, and hereupon they multiplied wordes, which was the occasion of this cruell battaile, which ỳ prince Eleno did see being in his Galley. So it seemed vnto him to be a verie vnseemely thing and vnequall, so many against three knightes onely, who according vnto the great and worthie feates which they did, they gaue the lookers on to vnderstande that they were of noble estate, and for to succour them he would willingly haue leaped a shoare, but first he desired the faire Lidia to remaine in quietnesse vnder the hatches of the Galley, for that he was determined to go forth to aide and helpe those three knightes. And without anie more tarrieng with great spéed he leapt to the shoare, carrieng his sword in his hand, and his sheeld on his arme, he pressed in amongst them all, saying.

O vile knightes, cowardes, and of small estimiation,

whose

wherefore are you not aſhamed ſo great a number of you to fight onely againſt three knightes, and therewith ſtroke ſuch a terrible blowe on him that he did firſt meet, that he made him in two peeces to fall to the ground, ſo that in a ſhort time by his furious entering was knowen the greate power of his arme, in ſuch ſort, that wherſoeuer he went, he made a broad waie, and with ſmall trouble he ioyned with ỹ three knightes, who when they knew of the helpe that was come vnto them, each of them recouered new ſtrength, and did procure to doe ſtraunge feates, becauſe the other ſhould haue no aduauntage of them. And they verie much meruailed who that knight ſhould be of ſo great prowesſe, for ỹ the blowes which he ſtroke might well be knowen from all the reſt, for if it had not bene by the armour that he wore, they woulde haue thought him to be one of the ſonnes of Trebatio. Theſe foure knightes kept ſo good order in their fight againſt their enimies, that they gaue ouer to fight with them, and began to ſhowte and crie againſt them, ſo that they were conſtrayned to goe and ſeeke their enimies, the which they founde to be no good remedie, for that they did intreate them euilly at their backes, and being verie angrie herewith, they determined to put themſelues amongeſt the thickeſt of them, which did not fall out well with them, for that there was of them together more then ten thouſand, the which this valiant Eleno ſeeing, he threw his ſheeld at his backe, fullye incenſed with anger, and with his ſworde in his hande all alofte, hee preſſed vnto that parte whereas moſt people were, and the firſt he met withall, hee parted him in the middeſt, and the ſecond hee cut off his head, and ſo went forwardes cutting and wounding nowe one and then another, with ſo greate furie, that there was none that durſt abide his blowes. Is there anie doubt that whileſt this Prince was thus troubling and moleſting his enimies, that the other three knights which were with him did ſtande by and looke on, no not ſo, but for to ſociate his worthie actes, they wrought ſuch wonders in armes, as the reporte woulde ſeeme almoſt incredible vnto the hearers, in ſtriking ſuch terrible blowes

then concorde. So when his Lute was in right tune, he beganne forthwith to play vpon it, and with a sweete and pleasaunt voice he sung these verses following.

HArd is his hap that still of helpe hath neede,
crooked his chaunce that neuer ease can finde,
And great his care that fresh is forst to bleede
By Cupides shaftes, that tyrant most vnkinde,
who ceaselesse plagues the poore afflicted minde,
And hauing once possest at will the heart,
The same adornes with wailing, woe, and smart.

Amongst the crew of those that feele this care,
euen I my selfe may most of all complaine,
Which now haue twice bene caught in Cupides snare,
wherein I felt dolor, distresse, and paine,
with which oppression yet I doo remaine:
And so shall still for ought I can descrie,
Till friendly fates accord that I may die.

For why? the Dame whom I in heart adore,
disdaines me not, I will it not denie,
But doth with teares her owne mishap deplore,
in that a knight she loude, from her did flie,
iudge then (ye heauens) what simple hope haue I.
She followes him that left her comfortlesse,
And kills my heart that yeelded her redresse.

When he had made and end of this song, with the great griefe that he sustained he fell into a sound, so that his Lute fell out of his hands, but within a small time he came againe to himselfe, and crossed his fingers and wrong his handes, and distilled from his eyes many salte and sorowfull teares, and lifting vp his eyes vnto heauen he remained in this case a greate while without anie remembraunce. This sorowfull Ladie did well heare and vnderstand this sweete and cheerefull song, but by reason that all her minde was vpon

he

her cruell Brenio, his delicate musicke had no strength to remoue one iot of her loue. In this sorte as you haue heard they passed all the night till the morning, so the daie being come, this sayre and afflicted Ladie arose vp and went out of the Tent, whereas shee found the Prince walking vp and downe, and with a sorrowfull and softe voyce she requested him once againe to take her out of that vncharitable Iland. The Prince without anie tarrieng take her by the hande and lead her into his Galley, wherin they were scant both well imbarked when that the Galley began to shoue from shoare, and to saile with such swiftnesse that in a smal time they were in the deapth of the great Sea, as though he which did gouerne it had bene the wise Artemidoro, who for the deliuerie of this sorrowfull Damosell had ordeined all this that you haue heard. This Ladie was verie much amazed to see her selfe carried awaie in that manner, and durst not aske the prince anie manner of question, for that he was verie sadde and pensiue. Likewise the Prince Eleno considering the great sorrow and trouble that Lidia receiued, durst not saie anie thing vnto her, so in this sorte they trauailed all that daie and all the night, till the next daie that they discouered lande, without speaking one worde the one to the other, and in a small time the Barke came so nigh the lande, that they might discouer a verie faire and well towred cittie, the which was adorned with a verie faire hauen, full of meruailous greate and strong shippes. So this Galley sailed in amongest the thickest of them all till it came to the shoare side, where at their arriuall, they discouered a land, a verie well foughten and bloudie battaile, being harde by the hauen, which was made by verie manie knights, which fought onely against three knightes, who valyauntlye did defende themselues, the one of them was Bargandel, the other two, Lyriamandro and Zoylo the Tartarian, that if you doe remember, when that the vaylaunt Rosicleer in mortall battayle slewe the king of Tiro, who was a verie mightie and strong Gyaunt, and howe that they sawe

thy sorrowe and paine, and to wound my selfe in beholding thee. This faire Ladye gaue eare vnto the wordes of this Knight, beleeuing that he woulde haue giuen her some good newes, for the mitigating of her sadnesse, but she perceiued that he was a straunge Knight, she lifted vp her head, and with weeping eyes she said. Gentle Knight, if my loue haue bene the occasion of this thy sorrow which thou dost shew, I do desire thee to depart, for in me thou shalt find no other thing, but that which only I desire, that is, death. For what loue can they haue, that so cruelly are forgotten, what possibilitie is there of helpe in them, that are without all hope. With so great griefe Lidia deliuered these and such like reasons, that the ouer much anger she had, caused her to retain her words, so that she could not speake, but gaue a marualous and sorrowfull shrike, that the stonieſt heart that euer was, would haue bene moued with compassion. This good Dacian, seeing that at that time there was no remedy for his euill, by reason of the great paine and griefe, that the fayre Damosell seemed to sustaine, constrained himselfe by discretion to suffer a while, considering ỹ time did giue ease vnto all things: so hoping in time to haue helpe of his disease, and turning to talke vnto Lidia, he requested her that she would shew him so much fauour, as to declare vnto him the cause of all this her sorrow and paine. So this Ladye did declare it vnto him, in so sorrowful a sort, and with such pitifull sighes, that the tempestuous sea being moued with compassion, contrarie vnto his accustomed noyse made a newe & straunge rumour in the caues nere vnto the shore. The Prince with no lesse paine attended vnto her sorrowfull tale, so that it was euen a tragedie to beholde the heauie & lamentable prospects of either of them. Then in the end of relating this heauie history, the faire Lidia held her peace, and remained silent with wonderfull sadnesse. This troubled Dacian wholly yelded vnto his new griefe, replyed: What furie, what cruell, and what a hardened and stoupe heart had he, that a beautie so farre surpassing, coulde not moue him to yelde.

Then

Then the faire Lidia, who well vnderſtode from whence theſe greeuous and ſorrowfull ſpeaches which the knight had ſpoken proceeded, yet not giuing him to vnderſtand that ſhe had anie knowledge thereof, ſayd. Sir knight, I render you great thankes for the ſorrowe which you ſeeme to receiue at my griefe, but if you be a knight of eſtimation as by your perſonage it doth appeare you ſhould be, heere I do deſire you by the honour you owe vnto the order of knighthode, to performe two requeſts which I ſhall deſire thee. The valiaunt Eleno aunſwered: I do not onely Ladie graunt vnto this which you do demaund, but I am wholy ſubiect to your ſeruice, and will not refuſe to do anie thing that you will commaund me. Well, ſeeing it is ſo, ſayde this faire Ladie, I firſt requeſt thee to carrie me from this ſolitarie land, wherin I haue receiued ſo much wrong, and therewith ſhee aroſe vp and beganne to deſcend from that little mountaine towards the waters ſide, at ſuch time as Phœbus finiſhed his accuſtomed courſe.

¶ Of all that happened vnto this faire Lidia and to the Prince Eleno, after they departed from the little mountaine whereas they met. Chap. 19.

By reaſon of the great darkneſſe of the night, and againe for that they would take ſome reſt, they would not enter into the Barke at that preſent. The Damoſell Lidia that night entered into the Tent ſomewhat to reſt her wearie limmes, but the Prince remained without whereas he walked vp and downe all the night. And as the ſolitarie night is an enimie vnto quietneſſe, ſo beeing alone there came to his remembraunce manie thinges paſt, which cauſed him to ſuſtaine ſundrie paſſions, wherefore to comfort himſelfe, hee went vnto his Galley for his Lute, and returning a lande, he ſate him downe behinde the Tent, and beganne to put his Lute in monfort, although the force of loue bee more full of diſcord

euill. I haue aſked the ſame reuengement, but it hath not pleaſed the Gods to heare my requeſt: nay rather they haue ſtopped their eares againſt theſe my continual complaynts: and with this ſhe holde her peace, giuing a very ſorowfull and terrible ſigh. The Prince Eleno tourning his eyes towards that place, from whence he heard this complaint, diſcouered amongſt certaine græne træs, a Lady, who was indued with maruailous great beautie. It was ſo excellent, that it depriued him of his heart, which he neuer thought againe to haue loſt. She was with her haire all about her eares, and meruailouſly ill intreated by the violence that ſhe vſed againſt her ſelfe, and leaning her cheeke vpon her delicate and white hand, which was all to be ſpotted wᵗ̃ blood in many places, which was conſtrained by the ſcratching of her nayles. The ſpots was the occaſion to diſſolue the great paſſion which the Prince did feele for his Floriſdama, repreſenting in his heart, the figure of this beautie and ſorowful Lady: who ſeeing her of ſo great beautie, and in ſuch affliction, was ouertaken and wounded with the demeanour of her faire face, and greeued to ſee her ſo euill intreated, in ſuch ſort, that in a ſound he leaned to a græne træ (amongſt many other which were vpon that mountaine) cleane without any remembraunce.

Oh Cupide, thou beeing but a boye, why doſt thou vſe theſe cruell kinde of feates. Who hath taught thee to vſe ſuch deceits, which is the occaſion of great and endleſſe vnquietnes. Thou doſt ſhow thy ſelfe to be blind, and yet thou art more quicke of ſight then a Hawke. How is it poſſible that thou doſt make vs beleeue, that without ſeeing thou canſt hit ſo right with thy arrowes, and that with ſo good an aime thou doſt wound wheras thou wilt. Thou ſubtill boy, do not ſo plainly ſhowe thy ſelfe what thou art, if thou doeſt thinke to deceiue me with thy fained innocencie: It is ſufficient thou ſhowneſt thy ſelfe naked, for that thou art void of all pitie. Oh ye Gods giue me vnderſtanding, that I may declare the ſubtilties and deceits of this falſe Cupide, for that I care not for him, neither haue I any feare of him. Heere

this

this noble Dacian did fæle himselfe cleare of the loue of Floriſdaina, and his heart was new set on fire with the ſight of the faire Lidia, vnto whom he had ſubiected himſelfe, and remained more without hope of helpe for his laſt wounde, then he was of the firſt. And when he came vnto himſelfe, and felt that he was freſhly wounded, he did delight himſelf with the yeolow haire, the which hæ had in his hande, and conſidering with what yre it was pulled of, and alſo calling to remembrance her complaint, he did plainly perceiue that the occaſion of all this her ſorrow was loue. So with theſe conſiderations he lifted vp his eyes, and did behold the great beautie of Lidia, & gazed on her faire face, which was diſfigured with the wounds ý ſhe had made with her nailes in ſcratching it, and it was all to be ſpotted with the blood that proceeded from the ſame woumds: likewiſe he did meditate in the great and thicke teares that diſtilled from her ſorrowfull eyes. All theſe was the occaſion wholly to confirme his new griefe, and with a ſorrowfull ſigh looking on the yeolow haire he ſayd. Oh haire, if with the great furye of loue thou wert torne off, with how much more force is thy owner grafted in my heart. It hadde bene farre better, haire, that thou hadſt ſtill remained to haue garniſhed that gallant face, which (as it doth appeare) at other times didde much eſtæme of thæ, then hære to be ſcattered abroad vpon this mountaine, and hauing loſt a miſtreſſe of ſo great valor, thou doſt giue occaſion of death vnto him, which neuer offended thæ. But in recõpence of this euill which thou haſt cauſed vnto me, hære I dø promiſe to make much of thæ, & to put thæ within my boſome, & lament with teares thy deſolatenes. And hærwith, he went towards ý place where ſhe was: at which noyſe ý Lady did lift vp her eyes, & ſæing the Prince, with a ſoft voyce ſhe ſayd: A my friend, is my Brenio come back again, doth he take anie griefe for his diſtreſſed Lidia. This new louer whoſe hart perned to ſæ her pain, repiled wõ weeping eyes. Faire Lady, I cannot anſwere vnto this which you dø aſke me, for that I am a ſtrange knight brought by fortune to beare thæ cõpany, & to be partaker of

thy

neither could he see who brought him thether: and thinking to retourne again into the galley whereas his cousin was, he could not finde him: but looking about, he discerned no other thing, but the Element & the water. When the Prince Eleno sawe himselfe absent from his beloued cousin, his sorrow was very great that he receiued, and began to curse all the wise inchaunters, and all those that do permit & suffer them, for that they were the occasion that in the world, ther was so much euill done. When this Prince Eleno sawe himselfe all alone, and not one with whom he might passe away the time, there came vnto his minde his Floriſdama, which was the occasion that he tourned to his accustomed sadnesse, and imagining that he was in her presence, he said:

"Oh cruell Ladie which dost now reioyce thy selfe, and art at "ease in the Kingdome of Dacia: art thou fully pleased with "these my paines? Art thou now pacified, ỹ thou hast brought "me into this extremitie and trouble? wherein, I am in the "power of I know not whom, and do nauigate I cannot tell "vpon what. Thy cruell heart I am sure is now content, see"ing that without desert, for thee I do suffer so many trou"bles: which as yet I am not certaine, whether thou hast pre"teaded or procured it shuld be so or no. Oh cursed inchaun"ters, how many euills haue you wrought by the help of di"uells, so that by reason of your inchauntments, many wor"thye Knights are brought into such like troubles as I am. "Here you may see into what extremitie this Magicall arte "hath brought me, so ỹ I can by no meanes profite my selfe "of the strength of these my young armes, but am here in the "power of a diuel, who wil ouerthrow this barke: but that "which doth most greeue me, is, ỹ I am brought into a place "to dye, where of my death shall be lefte no memorie, but "must die disdained of that cruell Ladye. So with great sor"rowe and trouble, he passed three dayes, in the end of which, he discouered a very small Iland, which was in the middest of the sea. The barke made thether with great swiftnesse, so that in a small time he was fast a ground vpon the sande. It was not long after that the Prince leapt a shore, & when

he

he found himselfe out of the barke, he loked rounde about him on euery side. And towards his right hand amongst a company of græne træs, he sawe a small tent armed. Toward which the prince directed his way, with an easie pace, and entring into the Tent, he sawe no body, although hee remayned a while, and hearkened if he could heere any stirring, but he could neither heare nor see any thing: but onely he found the print of a lyttle foote vpon the sand, and hee had a great desire to know whose footesteps they were, for that they seemed to be of some Lady or Damsell, and finding the trace, he followed them, and the more he went, it seemed vnto him that the more hast they made, whosoeuer it was that had lefte that signe, which made him more earnest in his desire to see th. ende thereof. So long he followed that trace, that in the ende he came vnto a little mountaine, whereas he found scattered about yeolow haire, which seemed to be threds of golde: and stoping for to gather them vp, he perceiued that some of them were wet with spots of bloud, whereby he well vnderstode, the great anger where with they were pulled of from the head. Likewise he saw in diuers places, how the earth was spotted with drops of liuely bloud. Then with a more desire then he had before, hee went vp to the top of that little mountaine, and hauing lost the footsteps, he recouered it by gathering vp ý golden haire, he had not trauailed farre vp the mountaine, when that towards the water side he heard a great complaint, which seemed to be the voice of a woman, and by the faint sound ther of he might well perceiue that they wared wearie, for that a while they would rest and be still, and straight way wold returne vnto their accustomed sorrow and complaint. And the words (which the Prince did well vnderstande) were these. Oh loue, now shalt thou no more reioyce, neither haue ,, any longer dominion ouer me, for that gentle death wil shew ,, me so much fauour as to finish these my sorrowfull passiõs, ,, and therewith vnlose and frustrate this string of loue, with ,, the which thou hast bounde me, hauing a desire to aske re- ,, uengement of him, which hath bene the occasion of all this ,,

euill,

cure to know who is that Knight with the greene armour, and whether he be dead or no. And without any more tarrying he spurred his horse, who made as swifte waye as the thunderbolt, and presently departed the Citie, and neuer rested till he came vnto the place, whereas he tolde his companion he would remaine. Then Tefereo went vnto ỳ Iudges, and asked them if there were anye more to be done, in the defence and fauour of the Princesse: and the Iudges answered, that it was sufficient which was done, and that ther was no other thing to be done in that matter. When Tefereo sawe that all was done that was needfull, he went vnto the place, whereas the Knight with the greene armor was, and pulling off his helme, he saw that all his face was swollen with the terrible blowe that he had receiued, and he seemed as though he had bene dead. At the same instaunt, the King was come downe from his windowe, into the place whereas the battaile was: onely for to honor these knights and to knowe who they were. And when he could not see the Knight of the Sunne, he asked for him, and straight way it was tolde him in what great hast he went from that place and out of the Citie: for the which the King was very sorie, and if they had not tolde him, that it had bene labor lost to seeke him, he would haue followed to see if he could haue seene him, and haue made him to retourne to haue honoured him in his court. Then the King with amorous wordes requested of Tefereo to tell him who that Knight was, and he tolde him with a very good wil. And when the king knew that it was the Greeke Prince, he receiued great sorow, because he could not doo him the honour, as vnto such a knight appertained. But considering that they could not impute vnto him anie fault for the lacke thereof, he commaunded that the Knight with the greene armour, should be carried vnto the Pallaice, and asked his Knights what he was, & it was tolde him, that he was the Prince of Spaine, who was called Torismundo.

And when the King vnderstoode, that he was a Knight

of

of so high linage, he commanded ỹ all his Phisitions shuld ioyne together, and prouide all remedies possible for his recouerie, and that they should apply no lesse care vnto him, then vnto his owne proper person, the which presently was done, and they did apply the best remedies that could be gotten, till such time as they brought him somewhat to his remembrance, although it was with great labour. The prince of Spaine, when he sawe himselfe in his naked bed, his sorrowe was verye much: and calling to his minde all that which had passed, the very griefe he receiued, was almost the occasion of his death.

When Tefereo knew who that Knight was, and that there was no more to be done, without any tarrying he toke his leaue of the King, and of the Princesse, who weyt very sorrowfully at his departure. Tefereo toke the horse of the lame Graunt, (who with very anger to see himselfe in that pickle, would not consent to the receiuing of anye cure, neyther would he eate any thing, but there desperately dyed) and leaping vppon him he went to seeke the Knight of the Sunne. Where we will leaue them: for that I am nowe inforced by the sweete dartes of Cupide, to refresh the wearied eares of the hearers, and to declare some of his louing woundes, and to leaue the furious sword of Mars for a while.

Now to retourne to the storie that is past, whereas if you do remember, that the Prince Eleno of Dacia, entered into that barke wherein the Knight was, which would haue forced a Ladye, and how that vpon a sodaine their galyes did seperate themselues, so that he lost the sight of his Cousin the Knight of the Sunne, and of Tefereo, and being entered, he would haue made resistaunce against his aduersarie, for to disturbe him, that he should not commit the vyolence that he had offered. But vppon a sodaine they were all vanished, so that he sawe neyther Knight, nor Ladye, nor Marriners, nor yet anye other person, but onely himselfe in the Barke, with his inchaunted Horse,

neither

vpon his helme, that without remembraunce hée made him fall to the ground as one that were dead. The Gyants when they sawe themselues so ill intreated, both of them set spurs vnto theyr beastes, and drawing out their great and sharpe cutting swords, they did procure to hurt him with theyr heauie and terrible blowes. In this contention the valiaunt Sardenian did shewe his mightie and strong courage with greate pollicie and cunning, nowe striking at the one, and then at the other, and alwayes prouiding to let their blowes slippe aside without receiuing anie harme, and such was his pollicie and lightnesse, that in a great while they coulde not fasten one full blowe vppon him. Nowe was the knight of Prouince come to himselfe, and seeing himselfe on the grounde, and his enimie so couragious betweene these two mightie Gyauntes, he approched vppon the one side whereas Tefereo coulde not see him, and cut off one of the hinder legges of his horse, the horse when hée felte himselfe hurte, woulde haue risen vpright before, but by anie meanes hée coulde not, but recoyled backwarde with his crouper to the grounde, which was yet in such sorte that Tefereo had time to goe out of the saddle, with so greate anger, that the blood burst out at his nose, and without anie feare before him, he pressed at the knight of Prouince, and thrust such a foyne at his breast, that his armour coulde not denie the passage but that the sworde came out at his backe, so that hée fell downe starke dead to the grounde: hée had scant drawen his sworde out of the bodie of the knight, when that (without anie pollicie to defende himselfe, hée receyued such a terrible blowe with the breast of the Gyantes horse, which came with such greate furie that (albeit agaynst his will) he was constrained to fall tumbling vnto the grounde, and although the fall was somewhat heauie and grieuous vnto him, yet with a trice hée was a foote againe, and seeing both the Gyauntes readie prepared against him, for his better defence he thought it good to put himselfe on the other side of the dead horse.

At this instant the knight of the Sunne came agayns

to himselfe, and loking towards the place whereas the battaile was, he sawe that his friend like a furious Lyon made resistaunce against the two Giaunts. My pen is not heere sufficient to signifie vnto you the great furie, that en a sodaine came vnto this worthy knight of the Sonne: so that I suppose no Diamond rocke had beene at that time able to make resistaunce against him: for with a furious & hoarce voyce he sayd, Away, away you vile Knights, not worthy of these your great members, and double forces which you do possesse, seeing that with so much shame this daye you haue maintained such great treason. The prince carried his sword in his hand, hauing reared it on high, redy to strike him that first came in his way, and raising himselfe in his stirrope, he stroke the Giant with the Elephant so terrible a blowe vpon his shoulder, that his double armour was not able to make resistaunce against this great force, but that it passed thorough, and diuided it in such wise, that he cut off the one quarter thereof, together with the head, and the rest which remained, fell downe to the ground, with so great wayght, that it made the earth to tremble. The other Giaunt in the meane time had stroke the Prince such a terrible blowe vpon the healme, that it made him to gnash his teeth together, with the paine he felt, which was the occasion that he was wholly incensed with anger, insomuch that he pressed towards him with no lesse rage, then the Hawke which pursueth the Hearon, and stroke such a blowe at his head, that for the defence thereof, the Giant was constrained to lift vp both his armes, and the blow descended in such sort vppon them, that it cut them both in peeces, and his sworde being fast in his handes, they fell altogether to the ground. All the whole Court greatly merualled at these fierce and terrible blowes: and hauing thus concluded all that they had to do the Prince returned vnto Tefereo, and sayd vnto him, Brother, doe you remaine heere, till such time that all be concluded that is heere necessarie to be done, and in the wilderne of Ardenia you shall finde me, in the very same place, whereas we did rest our selues this day, and I desire thee to pro-

all the whole companie of the knightes of his Court. So these two Gyaunts and the other knightes came armed into the place with verie fayre and strong armour, and mounted vpon greate and mightie strong horses, saving the greatest of the Gyauntes, for that there was not any horse that coulde sustayne so mightie and huge a waight: wherefore he was mounted vpon an Elephant. So loking round about, the Prince sawe on the other side of the fielde the Knight with the græne armour, which he had fought with all in the Barke bæing at the Sea, as I haue tolde you, who was in a readyneſſe to make the battaile in defence of the Princeſſe. This knight there by had hanged vpon a pæce of timber all the Images that he brought with him, in such sorte as they were hanged in his Barke, the which when the Prince saw that the Image of the Dutcheſſe was aboue that of the empreſſe, his anger did so increase, that he had cleane forgotte wherefore he came thether, and spurred Cornerino his horse with so much furie, that by his force he made the grounde whereas he came to tremble and shake. And when he came vnto the place whereas the Images were hanging, he with his strong arme laide holde vppon the deuice and brake the chaines wherewith they were made fast, and swinged it about his head with such greate strength, that hæ made them flye to the highest partes of all the Pallaice, the which was done in such great hast, that when the knight with the græne armour was come to disturbe him, it was too late, for that his Ladye was flowen vp into the ayre, whereat he receyned so much anger, that without anie more adoe, he threwe his shælde at his backe, and with both his handes he layde hold on his sworde, and stroke the Prince such a terrible blowe, that he made him to fal backwards on his horse crouper, without anie remembraunce, and with the great strength wherewith he stroke him, he made his horse to stoope vnder him. Cornerino being somewhat amased at this terrible blowe, carried his maſter rounde about the field, but before that the knight with the græne armor could double to strike

him

him againe, the Prince was come vnto himselfe, and setling himselfe vppon his horse backe, being firmed in his stirrops, with greate furie he threw his shælde to the grounde, and toke his sworde in both his handes, and pricked Cornerino towardes the place whereas his aduersarie was, who was likewise in a readinesse to discharge his blowe, so both of them together discharged each vppon the others helme, with such furie and force, that the Prince of the Sunne was constrained to fall vpon his horse necke as though hæ hadde bene dead, for that neuer blowe that euer he receiued before that time did bring him to the like perpleritie, but onely one, the which he receiued at the hands of Rosicleer, when he had battaile with him. Lykewise the knight with the græne armour did nothing aduance himselfe of his dæde, for the blow which he receiued was so terrible, that he fell from his horse to the ground, and the blood issued out at his mouth and nose with great abundaunce, and he stretched his armes and legs vpon the sandie ground as though he hadde bene altogether dead. The king and all that were with him were very much amased, to sæ that so cruell and sodaine a battell should happen, without knowing the occasion wherfore. And more they did meruaile, imagining a little by the tokens of the horse who that knight should bæ, which hauing his enimie for so valiant a knight in so short time had brought him into such extremitie. Now when Tefereo did sæ the Prince thus put to his shiftes and in such great necessitie, and howe that hæ lai vpon his horse necke without anie remembrance, hæ began to crie out vppon fortune, and with great furie he drew out his sworde and went against the defenders of the euill accusation, and called them traytours, (although they were his brothers children.) Hære you may sæ what great force and strength the truth hath, that although they were his brothers children, yet he did procure their deaths, for that they came out of their owne Countrie, into a straunge and forreine lande to defende treason. The sonns of the Earle of Prouince was ỳ first that did offer to put himselfe forwards, to whome Tefereo gaue such terrible and strong blowes

huge bigneſſe (although all the worlde did knowe that the Princeſſe is without fault and not culpable) yet they dare not put their perſons in aduenture, with thoſe two horrible and diſordinate monſters. So after they hadde made this their traiterous and falſe accuſation, after manye and great contentions they grew in the end to this concluſion, that the Princeſſe ſhould within the tearme of fiftœne dayes bring thrœ knightes that with theſe other thrœ ſhoulde make and maintaine battaile in the fielde for the defence of this falſe accuſed Princeſſe, and if ſo be that ſhe couldе within that time preſtred finde but two knightes, then it ſhall be at their curteſie to take vppon them the enterprize, and neither more nor leſſe then they thrœ if ſhœ did finde but one knight. Now there is twelue of theſe fiftœne daies paſt, ſo that within theſe thrœ dayes the full time is expired: therefore noble Lordes and knightes, let me bœ reſolued what you will determine hœrein. To loſe our lines for to ſet at libertie this wronged Ladie, aunſwered the Knight of the Sunne, therefore it is conuenient without anie more delaye that wœ take our iourney thether-ward. Then the Damoſell ſayd, how is it that you will take the enterprize in hand and bœ but two, and they bœ thrœ, and beſides, almoſt inuincible. Then Tefereo aunſwered, the iuſtice on the Princeſſe parte ſhall be the thirde perſon, take you no care fayre Damoſell for that, for although we are but two, we doe little eſtœme them. When the Damoſell ſawe their liberall proffer and determination, ſhe was verie gladde and content, and ſtraight wayes ſhe leaped vpon her palfraie and they on their horſes, and ſo rode towards the Citie without making anie farther delaie or tarrieng.

¶How the Prince met in Paris the knight of the Images, and of the battaile he had with him, and howe they ouercame the three knightes which did accuſe the Princeſſe, & afterward how Tefereo knew who the knight of the Images was, & of all that happened beſides. Cap. 17.

With

WIth great haſt the Prince and all that were with him trauailed that daie and the next in the kingdome of Fraunce, vntill they came within two leagues of Paris, ſo the next daie verie early in the morning they aroſe & trauailed againe till they came within the ſight of the Citie, and for that it was verie early to enter into the ſame, they alighted amongſt a companie of trees, whereas by the great thickneſſe they might not bee ſeene of anie: and refreſhing themſelues by a cleere fountaine of water that was there at hand, they ſate downe and did eate of ſuch as the Damoſell had brought with her. So in this ſort they paſſed the time, till they thought it to be the houre to goe vnto the defence pretended, ſo when the time drew nigh, they peruſed their armour in all pointes, and armed themſelues and leapt on horſe backe. Tefereo if it had not ſeemed vnto him to bee a point of cowardlineſſe, would haue procured to haue diſturbed this battaile, for they againſt whome he ſhoulde fight were his kinſefolkes, but yet he thought that he was more bound by the order of knighthoode to keepe companie with him with whom he came, and to reſiſt ſuch like wronges in the defence of truth and iuſtice, then to haue anie reſpect to his kindred, and eſpecially in ſuch like falſe accuſations. Hee therefore determined to diſſemble it and ſay nothing, ſo with theſe and ſuch like thoughtes they went forwardes till they came into the citie, vnto the place appointed for this battell, whereas they found the Princeſſe ſet vpon a ſcaffolde, all couered with mourning robes of great ſadneſſe, which did declare and ſhew her great ſorrowe and vndeſerued trouble. So likewiſe all the whole ſcaffolde, and all the Ladyes and Damoſells that came with the Princeſſe were couered and apparelled correſpondent vnto her attire. The king was at a windowe of his Pallaice with no leſſe ſorrowe and ſadneſſe to ſee his honour put vnto that blemiſh as it was. And that which greeued him moſt was, that not one knight in all his Court durſt giue the enterpriſe, yet was there preſent

" out of one of the windowes of the Towre, and commaun-
" ded publikely to be proclaimed all the whole treason, where
" as to all men was seene his sodaine & sorrowfull death. Then
" he commaunded the Prince to be buried with great honour,
" as vnto such a person did appertaine. After this the sorrow-
" full Tarsina seeing that she was the onely occasion of all this
" euill, not remembring the losse of her virginitie, nor respect-
" ing anie shame, which such as she was ought to haue and
" keepe, began to teare her haire, and to scratch her face, & gaue
" meruailous shrikes, that all the Pallace did sound thereof,
" and with greate furie she went vp vnto the place whereas
" her welbeloued Lidiarte was hanged, and when shee sawe
" him dead with so shamefull and dishonourable a death, shee
" beganne with great lamentation to publish the occasion of
" all this euill, saying.

" Oh souereigne God, now will I acknowledge this great
" errour which I haue committed and done, for the which I
" do not deserue one, but a thousand deaths: Oh miserable cre-
" ature that I am, and vnhappie bodie that hath committed so
" great harme and villanie, and onely because thou couldest not
" refraine thy disordinate appetite, thy soule must nowe paye
" that which thou diddest consent vnto: Oh cursed delight, that
" for a little transitorie pleasure I would lose my virginitie,
" therby causing him whom I loued more then my selfe, to re-
" ceiue so miserable a death & euil end, & haue likewise brought
" in great suspition the honour of my Lady the Princesse, ther-
" fore I will giue my selfe the correction that so worthilye I
" doe deserue, paying with my life and honour, the price of my
" great lasciuiousnesse and diuelish hardinesse. And with this
" she leapt into the windowe with great furie, and layde holde
" on the roape whereby the Earle was hanged, and slipped
" downe by it till she came and imbraced her armes aboute
" the necke of the Earle, and ioyning her mouth vnto his
" mouth, which was then verie colde and blacke with the
" blood, and holding her selfe fast with the one of her handes,
" with the other hand she drewe out a little knife which she
had, wherwith she cut the rope a sunder which he hanged by,

so

ſo that both of them fell to the grounde, whereas they were all broken to peces, and there ſhe dyed. The greate alteration which was in the Court, when they underſtode of all this that had paſt, was ſtraunge and without compariſon. And although manie did heare her complaint, yet there was not one that coulde tell wherefore it was, till ſuch time as a Ladie which was nigh her, declared all that you haue heard tolde, for that he had heard it worde for worde, but when the king did knowe the effect thereof, hee was verye much amaſed at it. And for that he woulde there ſhoulde be a perpetuall memorie thereof, preſently hee commaunded that they ſhould bee burned both together, in a Sepulchre without the Citie of Paris, declaring in it the effect of this dolorous act, the which was forthwith publiſhed throughout all the whole kingdome. So when that this vnhappie death of the Earle came vnto the eares of his Father and all his kinſfolkes, they were verie ſorrowfull, and receiued for it great griefe, and ware verie wrathfull, and determined (if it were poſſible) to reuenge the death of the Earle, and deuiſed continually in ſecrete what order might beſt bee taken to bring it to effect. So in the ende of manie inuentions, they concluded, to accuſe the Princeſſe, that ſhee ſhould be the onely occaſion of all this euill. And the better for to compaſſe and bring this accuſation to paſſe, they did commit it to the vſing of the brothers ſonne of the olde Earle, and couſin vnto Lidiarte, who was ſonne vnto the Earle of Prouince, an excellent and valiaunt Knight. The which accuſation he did accept with a verie good will, and for to make their determination of more ſtrength, they agreed to ſende vnto the kingdome of Sardenia, vnto a brother of the king Bramidoro, with whome they had at that time greate friendſhippe, requeſting him that hee woulde ſende them ſome one of his lignage to fauour them herein, the which he graunted with verie greate good will, and for that they ſhoulde the better vnderſtand the greate deſire that hee hadde to pleaſure them in this matter, he ſent them two of his lignage, and by reaſon that they were Gyauntes and of a meruailous

" and abuſe her, that thou art here, and kepe thy falſe as cloſe,
" and in as great ſecret as may be. The Earle with no ſmall
" pleaſure kept himſelfe ſecret and was quiet, abiding (as he
" thought) the Princeſſe comming. He had not taried ther long
" when that this wicked damoſell came forth, adorned with
" the ſame garments which her Lady the Princeſſe had worn
" the daye before, and opening very ſoftly that poſterne gate,
" ſhe iſſued out, and drewe her ſelfe towardes the light of the
" Moone, or that the Earle might knowe the garments. The
" Earle when that the Earle ſawe, and knewe that they were
" her garments, he thought verely that ſhe had bene his Lady
" ſo long deſired, and without anye more thinking, he fell
" downe vpon his knees, and taking her by the handes, he kiſ-
" ſed them many times, and ſo both of them by great pollicie
" and deceite, and with exceading ioye, did fulfill their deſires,
" and toke their leaue each of other, with many pleaſaunt and
" ſweete wordes, fearing that the daye would appeare, they de-
" parted. The Earle retourned vnto his lodging, wheras he
" paſſed the reſt of the darke night with great contentment.
" This Damoſell did the like, putting from her thoſe vſurped
" roabes of the honeſtie and honour of her Lady the Princes.
" So the next morning when it was day, the Earle roſe vp,
" and apparayled himſelfe with the moſt richeſt apparrel that
" he had, and went vnto the Kings pallaice ſomwhat betimes,
" and ſo walking round about out of one chamber vnto ano-
" ther, vntill ſuch time as he came vnto the chamber whereas
" the Princeſſe was, he lifted vp a cloath which was before
" the doore, where he might well diſcouer the innocent Ladye,
" with a prayer booke in her hande, vſing her accuſtomed pray-
" ers, & daily deuotion. This former diſſembled & fained loue,
" gaue him great courage & hardines to enter into her chãber,
" & entring in, he ſpake vnto her certaine louing and amorous
" wordes, throwing his armes about her neck, and ioyning his
" face vnto the face of the Princeſſe: who ſeing this great
" boldneſſe, merualled very much, and with the great alterati-
" on of her heart, her prayer booke fell out of her handes, and
" ſhe aroſe vp vpon her feete, and began to crie out with a loud

voice,

voice, and sayde. O holie God deliuer me from this vnrighteous and vnmannerly knight. And at those wordes entred in the Prince of Scotland and certain of the Princesses Damosells, but when the Prince did see the greate boldnesse of Lichante, he drewe out his sworde with greate anger, and sayde.

Traitour, thou shalt not cleare thy selfe as thou doest thinke to doe, hauing committed so greate treason as thou hast done, and his anger was such, that he stroke at the Earle a terrible blowe, which was more of ire then regarding how he deliuered it, the Earle let the blow slippe by and running in with the same, he stroke the Prince such a blowe vppon the head, that he parted it in two peeces, and he fell downe dead on the floore. The tumult and vproare was such amongest the Ladyes and Damosells, that at their greate shrikes the king went thether, and his comming was in such hast, that this vnfortunate Lichante coulde not by ane meanes get awaie. There came in companie with the king, Beraldo of Burdeaux, and the Earle of Amow, and the Prince of Viarne, and many other knightes and Gentlemen. And when the king sawe the Prince slaine, and the murtherer standing by, the king stepped vnto him and toke the sworde out of his hande, and sayde vnto him. Oh knight without measure or mercie, what hath beene the occasion of this thy follye to kill this Prince. There was by a Ladie of the Princesses, (who verie greuously lamented the death of the Prince) and told vnto the king all ꝑ truth of the matter as it ther passed, and when the king heard of all this enterprise, he receiued so much anger, that he himselfe in person did carrie him into a strong towre which was in the pallaice and put him prisoner therein, and commaunded to put on him verie greate and strong chaines, and without any more tarrieng he called his counsell together, and opened the matter in publike before them all, whereas he was condemned for a traitour (although there were some which did feare much his great power, but the king made no reckoning of it) and so before that he would breake his fast, he commaunded him to be hanged

" Where is now all your brauerie and contentment, that you
" were wont to haue discouer vnto me all your paine and
" griefe, and the occasion of all this your sorrowe. Noble Lord
" let me here vnderstand of all, and being knowen of this thy
" seruaunt, I will procure the best and most assured remedies,
" that may be for thy redresse conuenient. Tell me Lidiarte,
" if it be corporall griefe, or whether it be a wound hurte by
" the cruell force of Cupides dart. My louing Lord, I do de-
" sire you to declare vnto me the cause of all your sorrowe &
" griefe, and here I do protest and giue my faith, to procure
" with all my power and strength, by pollicie & other meanes
" to finde remedie for this your tribulation. These and other
" such reasons, with hir words well placed, spake this Damo-
" sell vnto the Earle, with hope that he would declare vnto
" her, the cause of all his sorrow, and from whence it did pro-
" cede. These sweete persuasions and louing reasons, tooke
" such effect in the Earle Lidiarte, that he discouered all that
" was in his heart, and the whole occasion as heretofore you
" haue heard. This damosell when she vnderstood the whole
" effect thereof, it grieued her to the very heart, although she
" did dissemble it, and kept it secret to hir selfe, and would not
" suffer him therein to know her minde: and straight waye
" for her remedy, the diuell put into her head, a meruaylous &
" wicked inuention. And for to giue contentment vnto the
" Earle, she tolde him, that she would declare vnto the Prin-
" cesse, all the whole estate of this his sorrowfull paines, and
" passionate griefs, willing him withall to remember, that the
" next daye at that houre, he should meete her againe at ꝑ same
" place, for that she would bring him an answere of all that
" should passe. And with this she left off her talke and depar-
" ted, leauing the Earle somwhat comforted, with the hope of
" her answere, that he looked for the next daye: yet he stoode
" in doubt of her retourning at the appointed houre, & thought
" the time very long: so he passed all that daye & night with-
" out any rest. And on the other side this amorous Lady was
" no lesse troubled and without rest, desiring earnestlye the

appoin-

appoynted times approching: euen as the wearyed Marri-
ners being weather-beaten at the sea, and tossed here and
there by the furious force of tempestes and blustering winde
alwayes in hope that they will abate, whereby they maye
haue faire and peaceable weather, and so be eased of theyr
great trauaile. At length, the long desired houre drew on, of
their appointment, and the Earle repayred vnto the place:
he was scant there, when that the Damosell likewise appro-
ched, almost at the same instant, and the Earle receiued her
with great contentment: but the damsell said, ỹ she had no
time to haue any great talke with him, but onely my Lorde
this I say vnto you, that this night at midnight she wil tar-
rie thy comming, whereas thou shalt fulfill all thy desire, and
giue thee to vnderstand, how that she is not culpable of all
these thy passed sorrowes and griefes, (naming a meeting
place, which after shall be declared). And pardon me, I
pray you, for that the time doth not giue me any more lea-
sure to talke with you, and so without any more tarrying
she went away, and lefte the Earle in such great ioye, that
he was almost in an extasie therewith. The Earle went
vnto his lodging, where he remained, and tarried vntil the
time appointed, the which he thought very long, imagining
euery minute a whole houre. The houre being come, he went
alone vnto the place appoynted, and couered himselfe with
a mantle of cloath of golde. He tarried not long ther, when
that this infortunate Tarsina, put her selfe vpon a wal, wher
as she put downe a peece of timber, whereby the Earle shuld
laye holde on for to goe vp.

The Earle with the great desire which he had, thought
all very easie to be done, and so with great lightnesse he got
vppon the wall, and descended downe on the other side in-
to the gardeine. And when the Damosell had him there-
within the garden, she said: My Lord and Earle tarrie there
a while, by the posterne gate of the pallaice, being the ente-
raunce into this garden: for thereout will issue thy Ladye
and mistresse the Princesse, & in the meane time will I go
and

times in the Court of the French king, and was perſwaded that it was none other, as appeared by all tokens that ſhe before had heard, & comforting her ſelfe with theſe new and ioyfull thoughts, ſhe deſired them to alight from theyr horſes, and that if it pleaſed them to ſit downe vnder a faire græne arbour which was there at hand, ſhe woulde declare vnto them the greateſt treaſon that euer was inuented in the world, to the which theſe knightes did condeſcend with a verie good will, and bæing ſet downe amongſt thoſe græne hearbes, the Damſell with a verie dolorous complaint began, and ſayd.

" Noble knights and Lords, you ſhall vnderſtand that you " are in the kingdome of France, vnto the king wherof it plea- " ſed God to giue a daughter, of ſo great beautie & faireneſſe, " that it cauſed greate admiration vnto all them that beholde " her, the which fame was ſpread abroade, which cauſed verie " manie great and valerous knightes and Lordes of this and " other kingdomes to repaire vnto the Court: amongeſt them " all there came one who was ſonne vnto the Prince of Scot- " land, and named Dalior, a man of a verie good grace & gen- " tle diſpoſition, & one indued with al feats of good knighthood. " Likewiſe there was another who was ſonne vnto the duke " of Guyan, one of the greateſt noble men that was in all " Fraunce, a ſtrong and ſtout man and of great pride, and by " lignage of the moſt valyaunt and ſtrongeſt knightes in the " world, called Lidiarte. Theſe two Princes had diſcord be- " twæne themſelues, & did contend in the ſeruice of this faire " lady Artalanda. The great contentmēt the which they recei- " ued, and the great braucry they vſed in appareil in this their " ſeruice, I cannot hære expreſſe. But this faire ladie did ſo go- " uerne her ſelfe with diſcreation (who was indued with it as " much as with hir beautie) ỹ ſhe made as though ſhe vnder- " ſtood nothing of their deſire, although alwaies ſhe had a bet- " ter affection to the good will of the Prince of Scotland, then " to the loue of Lidiarte, and for that, loue doth not permit " ỹ anie thing which appertaineth therevnto ſhould bæ kept " ſecret, this vnbeloued knight did apparantly perceiue it, by

which

which occaſion, the great griefe which he receiued, abated his ,,
colour and he waxed verie leane, and his face became ye- ,,
low and wan, and did determine to chaunge his apparaile o- ,,
ioye and gladneſſe, and all pleaſures, and to apparell him- ,,
ſelfe in ſuch ſort, that ſhe might well vnderſtande his grea- ,,
ſorowe and heauineſſe. And to the contrary Dalior did ſhew ,,
himſelfe in his apparell, the great contentment that he re- ,,
ceiued, for that he did perceiue that his Lady did ſhowe him ,,
ſome fauour: the which was vnto the young Earle the cauſe ,,
of great ſorrow and griefe. Then Loue, who neuer reſteth ,,
from finiſhing his effects, but alwayes doth with great effi- ,,
cacie make perfect his workes, did wound with firme and ,,
faithfull loue towards Licharte, a damſell whoſe name was ,,
Tarſina, being in the ſeruice of this beautifull Princeſſe be- ,,
fore named, who loued him ſo firmelye, that this miſerable ,,
Damoſell could finde in her ſelfe no kinde of quietnes nor ,,
reſt, and moſt of all ſhe now tormented her ſelfe, for that ſhe ,,
ſawe ſo ſodaine a chaunge in her louer. This cruell paine did ,,
ſo much conſtraine hir, ꝑ ſhe of neceſſitie was driuen to ſeeke ,,
all meanes & pollicies, to procure how ſhe might at her eaſe ,,
talke with him, and giue him to vnderſtand, with her own ,,
mouth, all the paine and griefe that ſhe did ſuffer, and the ,,
onely cauſe thereof. And putting this her determination in ,,
ure, it chaunced on a daye, (as ſhe might ſaye bitter and vn- ,,
fortunate) after dinner when the Table was taken vp, ſhe ,,
founde time conuenient to declare vnto him all that her ,,
heart deſired, for finding her louer leaning againſt a cupbord ,,
all alone, ſhee came vnto him and ſaluted him with greate ,,
curteſie, the Earle did receiue her with no leſſe gentleneſſe, ,,
(beleeuing for that ſhe was a Damſell of his ladie the prin- ,,
ceſſe, that ſhe had come from her of ſome meſſage) ſhe ſeing ,,
ſo good opportunitie, ſpake vnto him in this manner. Many ,,
times noble Licharte, I haue been moued to demand of you ,,
what thing it ſhuld be, that hath ſo much ſtrength and force, ,,
which onely doth not cauſe you to chaunge your gorgeous ,,
braue apparell, but alſo doth take away y colour from your ,,
gentle face, and in this manner weaken all your members. ,,

Where

an end of their battaile, but Tefereo ſeing their determinati-on, conceiued great griefe that ſuch a valiaunt knight as hee with the greene armour ſhould runne in any danger of peril, he did perſwade with ỳ Marriners, & made ſignes that they ſhould vngrapple their barkes, and beeing moued with great compaſſion they procured to doe it, ſo priuely ỳ the knights might not perceiue it, the which was eaſily accompliſhed, for that they were ſo blinded in fierceneſſe of this their battell, that they could not intend to marke it. The grapples wer no ſoner taken off, when ỳ the barke of the knight of the Sun with great force did ſeperate himſelfe from the other, which when the prince did ſee, and that he could not finiſh his deſire, he was purpoſed to throw himſelfe into the ſea, for to come vnto his aduerſarie, but conſidering that it woulde little pro-fit him, he begaune to exclaime againſt Lyrgandeo to be his enimie and a robber of his honour, and ſaying that he was a vile man and of baſe blood and lignage: with this and ſuch like reproch, and other irefull thoughtes, the Prince went onwarde his iourney, and vppon a ſodaine his Galley ſtroke a lande, and in a trice hee leapt out of her, and after him went out Tefereo, and cauſed theyr horſes to bee ta-ken out, and put them into a faire medowe full of verie faire and greene graſſe, where as they did feede. The knight of the Sunne beeing verie full of thoughtes and penſiue, hee woulde not conſent that anie ſhoulde ſpeake with him, but got him amongeſt a companie of freſh and greene trees, where as hee remained till the morning. So verie earlye in the morning at the breake of the daie hee called for his horſe, and when all that were with him were in a readineſſe, hee beganne to iourney, and toke his waie through a verye ſtraight and narowe path, which brought them vnto a verie broad & common beaten waie, ſo they had not trauailed long in it, when they ſawe comming a Damſell with a verie ſad and ſorowfull countenaunce, as appeared by the greate quantitie of teares which proceeded from her eyes, and ſhee came in greate haſt riding on her Palfraie, and when ſhee came nigh whereas the Prince was, hee and all that were

with

with him did ſalute her, the Damſell did returne vnto them the thanks, and with the great ſorrow ý ſhe had in her heart ſhe ſpake vnto them in the French tongue, and ſayde: Oh ſo» uereigne Gods, that I might finde in theſe knights ſo much » ſtrength as the outward ſhew and appearaunce of their wel » proportioned perſons doth promiſe, then they woulde ſone » giue remedie to this my troubled ſorrowe. Tefereo who » was not ſo troubled in his minde as the Prince was, aun» ſwered and ſayde: Of truth Ladie your petition bæing iuſt» ly demaunded and the cauſe conſonable, wæ will not one» ly aduenture our perſons for your remedie, but alſo our » liues, for that wæ are thereto bound by the order of knight» hoode, in the fauour and defence of Ladyes and Damoſells. » The Damoſell aunſwered and ſaid: I haue ſo much iuſtice » on my ſide, that I doe meruaile howe the heauens do con» ſent vnto it, or why the humane force or ſtrength of men » will maintaine ſuch falſehoode, notwithſtanding, gentle » Knight, if you promiſe mæ to doe your beſt to remedie mæ » bærein, I will declare it vnto you, and in the perfourming » thereof you ſhall redreſſe thræ thinges. In the one you ſhall » deliuer mæ of this greate ſorrowe and paine in the which I » nowe am, in the other, you ſhall ſet at libertie the faire La» die Artalanda, who is accuſed by the greateſt and falſeſt » treaſon that euer was inuented in the worlde, and moſt » ſhamefully imputed vnto that innocent Princeſſe, and by » the thirde you ſhall get to your ſelues greate honour, which » is the thing that all good and valyaunt knightes doeth pro» cure and deſire in this worlde. The Knight of the Sunne » aunſwered: Wæ knowe well that theſe thræ are to bæ » eſtæmed, therefore ſayde Damſell, for my ſelfe and for my » companion I thus much ſay, that we doe offer our perſons, » with the conditions aforeſayd. In the meane time ý he ſpake » theſe words, the damſell did behold him very much, and it ſæ» med vnto her ý he was of a great valour, and ſæing him of ſo good a proportion and ſo well armed, ſhe imagined in her minde that he ſhould be the knight of the Sun by all likely» hoods, according as ſhe had heard talke, and declared often

times

the world, and yet thou dost put her a degrée lower, making her whom thou dost serue to be the Princesse of all beautie, what diuell hath bewitched thée in this wise, & deceiued thee, not to esteeme nor to make anie reckoning of the excellent Claridiana. Dost thou thinke that the Grecian Prince is not in the world, or els dost thou vnderstande that hée is so sloe, that he cannot vse his members to maintaine her quarell against such like falsehood as this is, which fondly thou forcest thy selfe to defend, take vnto thée thy helme, thou vile and naughtie Knight, for thy bold hardinesse is worthye of no other thing but death. By these reasons which ỳ Knight of the Sunne had vttered, that was confirmed in the other, which before he did suspect, and rested halfe doubtfull to deale with him, but séeing he must of force he laced on his helme, and commaunded the marriners to grapple fast the Barkes together, the which was done with a trice, which caused the one to ioyne fast to the other, and so without anye more words betweene them, they both drewe their swordes, and the Knight with the greene armour toke the aduauntage, & stroke the Prince such a blowe vpon the healme, ỳ he made him stoupe, and firme his hand vpon the ship borde, and in great hast he doubled another with so great strength, that he was almost astonyed, and it made him to recoile backwards two pates, that he had almost fallen downe. The Knight of the Sunne, came straight waye to himselfe, and lifting vp his mightie arme, he chaunced such a blowe vppon the helme of his enimie (which was as harde and strong as a Dimond) that it gaue such sound, that all the sea was occupied with the noyse thereof. And made him to bowe with both his knées to the grounde. The greene Knight merualled very much of that great blowe which he had receiued: but for that he was strong and of great courage, he arose straight vp againe on foote, and lent vnto the Prince such another blowe, and with so greate anger, that as it hit him on the waste, it made him to fall sidewards to the fore ship. The Prince diode not meruayle much thereat, but was straight way with him againe, and stroke him so mightie

a blowe vpon the helme, that it made the blood ſtart out at his eyes and at his noſe, and he was ſo troubled therewith, that he thought a great tower had fallen downe vpon him. The Prince ſeing him in this traunce, did procure to leape into his barke, but the greene Knight by reaſon he was not fully aſtoniſhed, with both his hands thruſt at the Knight of the Sunne vpon his breaſt, for to hinder him from his entring, ſo that ſpite of his heart he made him to recoyle, and that in ſuch ſort, that he lacked but a little to fall downe backwards, which was the occaſion, that his anger did the more increaſe. And either of them firming themſelues on their feete, there began a new the battaile, with ſo great anger and furie, that the marriners thought, ỳ at euery blowe the battaile would haue bene ended. Neuertheleſſe, the more they did fight, the more their anger did increaſe, ſo ỳ theyr fierce blowes wer incõperable. Dy how much ỳ knight of ỳ ſun foũd himſelfe troubled to ſee ỳ great ſtrength of his aduerſarie, for ỳ except it were in the Knight of Cupide only, he neuer in any other had found the like courage & ſtrẽgth, as he did in this Knight with the greene armour, who lykewiſe did no leſſe meruaile at the power of the Knight of the Sunne: and with this, in either of them increaſed greate courage, with like deſire to ouercome their enimies, procuring to ſtrike the one the other with great furie, and multiplyed ſo their blowes, that neither of them was without his payment. The Prince was meruailouſly amazed to ſee that the courage of his enimie did ſo long indure, which cauſed his anger in very ſtraunge manner to increaſe in ſuch ſort, that he ſtrake at him ſuch ſtrong and incomperable blowes that they were not to be ſuffered, and almoſt no reſiſtance to be made. So long they indured the battaile, that the Sunne had made an ende of his ordinary courſe, & the beaute and mourning night began to throwe his mantle ouer all the earth, in ſuch ſort that they could ſcarce ſee: but they were ſo kindled in their anger, & ſo furious in their battaile, that the darknes was not ſufficient to ſeperate them, but they called with a great noyſe for lights, that they might make

an

Prouokte by her, that laughes when I lament,
And in my torments ſeemes to reſt content.

Oh blinded ſenſe, whereby I was miſled!
and headlong tumbled into Cupides ſnare,
Where I a while was with my fancie fed,
which meate ſeemde ſweete: but ſauce he did prepare,
[A ſhafte of golde, whoſe head was dipt in gall]
This hit my heart, and ſpoyld my taſt withall.

I know right well, that louer findes delight,
which now and then hath pleaſure mixt with paine:
But well may he be deemd a hapleſſe wight,
that voyd of hope, doth helpleſſe ſtill remaine.
So wretched I, haue ten yeares ſued for grace.
And for reward, haue frownes in friendſhips place.

Ah cruell loue, that firſt didſt make me blinde,
when I beheld the beautie of that face,
Which made me iudge her of celeſtiall kinde,
and deeme her heart dame Mercies onely place:
But too too plaine I now in fine perceiue,
That ſmootheſt ſhewes, doo ſooneſt men deceiue.

If thou deſire my death for thy delight,
with willing heart I will the ſame forgoe:
But know, in heauen there is a iudge moſt right,
that iuſt reuenge will for thy rigour ſhowe.
Take then no pleaſure in my reſtleſſe paine:
Bloud guiltleſſe ſpilt, requireth bloud againe.

The world likewiſe of me would deeme the beſt,
and being dead, will tearme me, firme and true:
But thee (ſtill liuing) they will ſo deteſt,
as thou wouldſt ſoone with teares thy rigor rue.
Wherefore waye all, and pitie my diſtreſſe:
Leaſt thou thy ſelfe in fine be comfortleſſe.

I well doo know thy beautie is ſo braue,
that onely it deſerues ado'rde to be:
And ſuch it is, that none the like can haue,
Ladie or Damſell, whatſoere ſhe be.
As Queene of beautie, thou deſerueſt to raigne:
And this will I gainſt any Knight maintaine.

This is that which I denie, aunſwered the Prince vnto theſe wordes, and with a bigh voyce, he ſayde, Knight whoſoeuer thou art, come forth and defende this great lye, which euen now thou ſpakeſt, for it ſhall not be aunſwered with any other thing, but with the loſſe of thy life. So their barkes were ioyned one with another, which the Prince ſeeing, he went and would haue leapt into the other boat: but he was diſturbed by the comming forth of a verie well ſet Knight againſt him, being of a good proportion, who hadde heard the wordes which the Prince had ſayd, and for to ſee who it was which ſpake them, he came from vnder the hatches of the barke. He was armed with greene armour, the moſt richeſt that euer Knight did weare, & was full of theſe two letters F.F. all gylte. This Knight of the barke iſſued out not hauing his helme on his head, who diſcouered a very faire face, ſuch as hath not bene ſeene, but onelye that of the Prince, his beard began to bud as yealow as the golde, and his haire was of the ſame colour. And when he ſawe that the Knight of the Sunne had his healme on his head, and that he was a Knight of ſo gentle diſpoſition, and with ſo rich armour, he almoſt ſuſpected who it ſhould be, & ſayd with great grauitie, It is not ſeemelye (eſpecialiye in a Knight of ſuch diſpoſition as you ſeeme to be) to ſpeake ſuch proude wordes as you haue vttered, and aboue all, vnto one that doth eſteeme them ſo little as I doo. The knight of the ſun at ỹ time was not to ſtrain any curteſie, but anſwered, It is worſe in them which doo preſume of thẽſelues as thou doſt, to ſpeake lies & commit villany, in eſteeming ſo little of them, ỹ are not onely in beautie far paſſing ỹ fairnes of this Ladie whom thou ſo honoreſt, but alſo of more, then any in

times, hearing talke of anie terrible cruelties, he would weepe for the compassion he had thereof. The king which euerie daie did see his mightinesse and vertues more & more increase, thought himselfe verie happie to haue in his power so precious a iewell. Manie other things I could tell you heere, of the nobleneſſe of this Prince, according as the wise Artemidoro doth discouer, but the successe of his worthie father doth cause me to change my stile, to tell you of his high and mightie deedes.

¶ Of the great paine that the Prince did sustaine for the absence of his cosin, and how he had battaile with a certaine knight that was verie dolorous through loue, & of all that which chaunced heerein. Chap. 17.

THE griefe was verie great which the Grecian Prince receiued for the sodaine absence of his cosin, but he did comfort himselfe, for that hee vnderstoode that the vessell was gouerned by the art of Lyrgandeo, and perswaded himselfe that it was conuenient, for that which should succeede, and so dissembling his sorrowe in the best wise he could, he went onwardes his voyage, verie desirous to see land, purposing that if he went alande, being on firme lande, not as then to goe anie more to Sea, and being still in this determination, hee sailed forwardes two dayes. The next daie following when that the Sunne had runne a greate parte of his course, they sawe comming towardes them a greate Boate or Galley, of which the winde with his blustering gale did fill theyr sayles, and also it was rowed with foure Oares on a side, and hadde the Sea likewise fauourable vnto them, and the Princes shippe lost her waie, for that the winde was against her, and therefore they stroke their sailes and made a staie, intending to see what was in the other Shippe: drawing nigh them, they heard the sounde of a Harpe, which made a meruailous sweete and pleasant noise in the eares of all the hearers.

And

And beholding with good aduiſement, they ſawe that within their boat they brought hanging at the maſt an image, which ſeemed to be of ſiluer, of a meruailous great beautie, with this title written thereon: Floriana the daughter of the Duke of Cantabria, Ladie of all the beautie of the world. At her feet ſhe had hanging by little chaines of ſiluer, many images of faire Ladies & damſells, amongſt them all there was two which did hang higher then all the reſt, ỳ one of them had a crowne on her head, which ſeemed to be an Empreſſe, & the other to be a quæne, and euery one of them had their names written what they were, & reading ỳ titles of thoſe two which hung more higher then the reſt, they ſaw ỳ one of them was Claridiana Empreſſe of Trabiſond, & vpon ỳ other was writtẽ, Oliuia Princeſſe of great Britaine. O heauẽly God, how great was the ire that vpon a ſodaine appeared in the prince, when he beheld the image of his Ladie at the feete of the other which was higheſt, & blowing like vnto a wilde bull, he ſaid: O my verie friend & one of great vnderſtanding, if thou doe not ſpædely aſſiſt to puniſh this great outrage offered me, frõ this time forth I will renounce thy friendſhip & account thee as my mortall enimie, becauſe I ſee, for ỳ more augmenting of my paine, thou haſt ſhewed me ỳ which might haue bene excuſed by ſhunning ỳ ſight of it. Tefereo which likewiſe did behold ỳ which ỳ prince had ſeene, & ſaw the great alteration which ỳ ſight had cauſed in him, & fearing ỳ his outragious choler, wold be the occaſion ỳ he ſhuld do ſome vnſœmly act, he had great care of him, & ſurely he had done no leſſe, but that little & little they drew nigher with their galley vnto ỳ other boat, & they were ſo nigh ỳ they might plainly heare the muſicke that was within the boat, & for that it ſeemed vnto them to be very pleaſant, they gaue attendant care therto, & alſo to a ſong that a knight in ỳ galley ſung, which heere followeth.

FAine would I cloke and hide my heauie care,
and cloſely beare the burthen of my griefe,
If ſpite of will, my woe did not declare
my ſundrie ſorrowes, voide of all reliefe:

" thée this childe, & loke vnto him as thou wouldest loke vnto
" thy owne person, for you shal vnderstand, that this is he that
" shall restore you into your kingdome, and shall set you at li-
" bertie from this subiection in the which you now are in, and
" shall put me in my kingdome, taking it out of that tyrantes
" handes who doeth now inioye it: therefore O king do not
" forget to doe this which I haue tolde thée, for if thée doe
" lacke or lose this remedie, all the hope that wée haue in this
" the restoring of our kingdomes is lost. The king which in
the woordes of the Gyaunt had great confidence, giuing vn-
to him great credite, toke the childe by the hand and set him
" vpon his knée, and kissing his faire face, hée sayde: Ah my
" good friend, where hath béene séene a thing of so great beau-
" tie and of so fayre and perfect proportion, it is not possible
" that amongest humane creatures shoulde be anie such, but
" rather some of the Gods hath descended from aboue, and hath
" ingendered him. And héere I doe sweare, by that which I
" doe owe vnto the deserving of the mightie Apollo, to haue
" him in possession, and to intreate & intertaine him as though
" he were my owne proper and naturall Lord, and thinke my
" selfe in this being to be the most happiest king in all the
" worlde, and thou my friend in the meane time procure to
" kéepe thy person from the most cruell dogge, whome I owe
" thinke is feared of the high throne of the supernal Gods: one
" thing there is which onely doth grieue me & put me in greate
" feare, which is, that I would not we should bring vp so ten-
" der and faire a youngling as this childe is, for to be a praye
" héereafter vnto so cruell and monstrous a beast as he. Then
" the Gyant answered and sayd: O king put thy selfe out of
" all doubt, for hée shall not onelye abate the courage and fu-
" rie of this great and sauage tyraunt, but also in hearing him
" named, all the countrie shall be in a feare & quake: trauaile
" therefore in no other thing but to bring him vp with all
" the maiestie that thou maist, for thou shalt vnderstand that
" he is sonne vnto the most valiauntest Prince in all the
" worlde, at which woordes the childe was in a great dumpe,
and blushed in such sorte that his face seemed to bée a Ru-

bie:

bie: ſo the Gyant toke leaue of the King, not without great ſorrowe to apart himſelfe from that young Prince. The King tourned and gaue the childe againe to Formiſa his Nurſe, vntill ſuch time as he came to the vigrelle and ſtature to exercile himſelfe in learning and in feates of armes, the which hee dydde in ſo ſhort time, that it put them in great admiration that did teach him, for that in leſſe then the ſpace of three yeares he was ſo experte in both of them, that they neuer hearde in times paſt of anie lyke vnto him. Moreouer, in ſpeaking of all manner of languages, hée was ſo perfect, that it ſeemed how that all his lyfe time hee had béene brought vp in the place where eyther of all the languages were ſpoken. His vnderſtanding and pollycie was ſuch in all manner of thinges, that not onely the king but all others were perſwaded that hée was the ſonne of ſome of the Gods, by reaſon whereof they did vſe him with ſuch reuerence as though hee hadde béene a thing ſent vnto them from heauen. And when he came to be twelue yeares olde hee was of ſuch greatneſſe, that hee ſeemed to bée twentie yeares olde, his height was according vnto the mightineſſe of his members, which were exceeding well proportioned: particularly he ſhewed in his countenance a great grauitie and ſober diſpoſition, verie little talke, but when hée ſpake, it was with great diſcreation, and his wordes verye well placed, verie full of humilitie, and if at ante time hée were angrie (as verie ſeldome hée was) it was in ſuch ſort, that béeing blinded therewith, he reſpected nothing. The wiſe Artemidoro ſayth, that if this anger doeth proceede of baſe things, it were a great vice, and that it woulde ouerſhadowe and darken all other vertues that a man was indued withall, but he ſayth that it did not come vnto him, but by too much force of the heart, and that it was alwayes accompanied with reaſon, which did nothing at all hurte him, but rather did the more exalt his déedes, and if it did chaunce at anie time that hée were angrie, in looking on them that were preſent he put them in greate feare. Beſides this, hée was verye pittifull, for that manye

childe being a [illegible] did eate it with a very good will. The ſhepheards wife, who was ſomewhat diſcrete, ſeeing the great riches, that this infant Roſaluira had about her, ſayde, Huſband, I do beleeue that this child is of ſome high lignage as it doth appeare by her apparell, and ſurmounted beautie. It ſhall be verye well, that we do keepe her heere till ſuch time as we do know what ſhe is. For in keeping and making much of ſuch a faire creature, cannot chooſe but redound vnto vs great profite. And if it ſo fall out, that we cannot learne nor know what ſhe is, with this ritches ỳ ſhe hath about her, we may bring our ſelues out of all trouble, and be more richer then any ſhepheard in all this Countrey. This ſhepheard receiued great ioye with the finding this childe, acknowledging all that which his wife had ſayd vnto him, to be very good and well ſpoken: and ſo in great ſecret they kept her eight dayes, maintaining her in the beſt wiſe they could, with ſuch meates as they were accuſtomed to eate, alwayes hauing a great care, at all times when he went to Ieroſhlima, to demaund if there were any inquirie for ſuch a childe, although he beleeued for a certaintie, that ſhe was of ſome ſtraunge Countrey, by reaſon of her apparaile, and different language, which was an occaſion that they put in practiſe their determined purpoſe: and laing all feare apart, they tooke from her, her rich apparrell, and put on ſhepheards apparell, as was accuſtomed amongeſt them, wherewith this childe was as well content, as with the other: and vnder that courſe raiment, ſhe did diſcouer ſo great and ſurpaſſing faireneſſe, ỳ Diana was almoſt aſhamed to extend her ſiluer beames, whereas this young feminine ſhepheard did walke, who alwayes carried in her hande a litle ſhepheards crooke, and following the ſheepe whereas they did feed, many times with her golden haire about hir ſhoulders, being of ſo great beautie, that the gliſtering beames of Appollo paſſing thorough, appeared to haue no vauntage of it. The olde ſheapheardes wife did verie well intrate her, and made as much of her as ſhe could, for that thoſe iewells was the occaſion of their great wealth. And againe this ſheapheard was wiſe,

for

for when he sawe himselfe rich of money, yet would he not begin to vse his wealth too spedely, because he would not giue anie to vnderstand of his sodaine riches, but by little and little he did implote it in buying more sheepe, in such sorte, that he came to be the richest shepheard in all that Prouince, accounting and esteeming of that childe more then if she had ben their owne daughter. Now let vs returne vnto the Gyaunt that we left slæping, who when he awaked and found missing the infant, was verie sadde, and toke a booke, and beganne to make his accustomed conturations to knowe where she was become, but hee could not come to the knowledge of her nor anie thing touching her, and when he sawe that he had not so much learning to knowe where this infant was, hee called to remembrance the wife Lysgandeo and Artemidoro, beleeuing surely that one of them had carried her awaie, and being in this beleefe, hee straight wayes without anie more tarrying went into his Wagon, and beganne againe to trauaile: but the greate sorrowe and lamentation that Claridiano made for the absence of his sister was verie grieuous to heare. Likewise the Nurse Formisa did beare him companie with manie teares and sorrowful sighs, but the Gyaunt caused them to holde their peace, and did comfort them in the best manner he could, and so trauailing he left behinde him the riuer Euphrates, the kingdome of Syria and of Babylonia, the greate kingdome of Media, the Gran Tartaria, and the high mountaine Masarpicoronas, in the which Alexander did shut vp the Centaures. Likewise hee passed other greate mountaines, riuers, and kingdomes, which I do heere omit for to auoide tediousnesse. So long they trauailed till they came to the kingdome of Tighasa, and passed the Port of Palato, and left behinde them Sina, and put his wagan in the pleasant Iland of Trapobana within the Pallace of the king of Delfo, before whome hee did present himselfe with this young Claridiano by the hande, and sayd,

O good and bountiful king, heere I do present thee a present greatest that euer was presented vnto any king: take

whome he did commende the two infants. And as at that time this faire Lady was not ſufficient to giue them both ſuck for lacke of milke, he did by his arte likewiſe prouide a Liones, which had newly whelped, and a ſhe Goat, which did helpe her with their milke, to the nouriſhing of theſe two infants. This Lady for the refreſhing of the Infants, did aſke licenſe to vnſwaddle them, which being graunted vnto her, ſhe vnſwaddeled the young infant out of his riche clothes wherein he was, and in making cleane of his little bodie, with a fine linnen cloth, ſhe ſawe on his breaſt, a very fierie ſpeare, at the which ſhe was greatly amazed, & for this occaſion they gaue him to name Claridiano, of ẏ ſpeare: and the other infant they called Roſaluira. So in this order as I haue told you, wer theſe infants nouriſhed two yeres, with theſe their nourſes, and euerye daye more then other their exceeding faireneſſe and beautie increaſed, ſo that they ſeemed to be heauenly creatures. This Gyant did determin not to depart from that place, til ſuch time as they came vnto age, for that the countrey did lyke them very well. So they were there fiue yeres without remouing from thence to any other place, in the which time theſe Infantes were ſo great of body that they ſeemed to be of a doſſen yeres of age. Claridiano was of a meruailous and faire beautie, but the infant Roſaluira was without compariſon, more then anie humane creature. Then Galtenor ſeing that it was time to carrie them vnto Trapobana, he cauſed by his art to be brought a Chariot, which was drawen by two great Griphons, and therein he put the children, and alſo their nourſe: for that the children did crie pitifully for their nourſe, and the nourſe likewiſe ſhed many teares, and began to torment her ſelfe, when they ſhould be carried awaye, and ſo beeing in the Chariot they trauailed, and left behind them Armenia, and the faire and white Albania, the great Sea of Caſpro, and likewiſe Marmantina, the Gran Tartaria, with his ſurmounted ſeas, which is ſeperated from the great ſea, they paſſed likewiſe by Armenia the great, and came vnto the head ſpring of Euphrates, which doth begin a hundred miles

from

from Damaſco, & is compaſſed about with two faire cities, ỳ one of them to the Eaſtward called Ieroſolima, & the other is ſcituated to the Ponents, called Sabioſca. Hære he cauſed his waggon to deſcend for to eaſe themſelues, and that the childzen ſhould take ſome refreſhing: the which was done to the great contentment of them all: and being ſomewhat wearie of their iourney, the Gyant fell a ſlæpe, and ſo likewiſe the nourſe, who was called Formiſa with Claridiano in her armes, who alſo was a ſlæpe, but Roſaluira was awake, and being apparailed with very rich apparell of white Damaſke, all ſpotted full of Iewells of golde and pearles, ſhæ deſcended out of the Waggon, and with her faire yelowe haire, which ſæmed to be golde wiers, all hanging down behinde on her back, gardiſhed about with very rich iewells, & without all feare ſhe went vnto the riuers ſide, the which was beſet on euery ſide with very faire Orchards and gardeines, and all the fields garniſhed with diuers kindes of ſwæte flowers and græne hearbes, which ſerued for the fæding of many ſhæpe, that were nigh at hand fæding by the riuers ſide. And ſhe receiued ſuch contentment, in theſe ſwæt delights, that before ſhe was aware, ſhe was very far from the place, whereas her brother and the reſt were a ſlæpe.

There was nigh that place a ſhepheard, which kepte certaine ſhæpe, & with that exerciſe he paſſed his lyfe, (although with great miſerie) and in a very poore and little cottage, who ſæing that Infant all alone, and ſo gallantlye adorned with rich apparell, he drew nære the place whereas ſhe was, and looked round about him towardes all parts, to ſee if there were any that came after her to ſeeke her, or if ſhæ had any kæper: but when he ſawe that there was no body, he toke her by the hand, and the childe followed him with a verye good will, allwaies loking him in the face. The Shepheard ſpake vnto her in the Tartarian tongue, and the childe ſpake vnto him in the Chaldean tongue, and aſked of him ſomewhat to eate, with a ſmiling countenance: this ſhepheard did partly vnderſtand her & lead her vnto his houſe, and gaue her a diſh of milke and ſops of bread, and the

childe

And being reſoning in this manner, they were cut off from their talke by the comming of the Empreſſe Claridiana, who brought leading by the hand, the Lady Oliuia, who came from her cloſet, whereas being together, they heard of the newes of the arriuall of the Prince. If Roſicleer did receiue great pleaſure when he did ſee Oliuia, (vnto them that haue reaſon and diſcretion of vnderſtanding, I leaue ẏ conſideration) : ſo likewiſe he did much meruaile, at the great leanneſſe of Claridiana, for the which he was very ſorrye, and with ſome reaſons he did comfort her, as one ẏ knewe all the ſecreat of her heart. All the whole Court receiued great ioye and pleaſure for the comming of the Prince, and all the Knights and Gentlemen came to viſite him. And being dinner time they ſate downe at the table, and at the end of the dinner, when that all was taken vp, they did determine and thought it good, that out of hande they would procure to giue battaile to the Gyaunts, vſurpers of the kingdome of Lira, and that the Quœne and the Dutcheſſe ſhould remaine in the Court: and with this concluſion they commaunded, that for the next daye, ſhould be made readie, all that ſhould be neceſſarie for their iourney. In the Court was made great lamentation and ſorow, for that the prince wold ſo ſone depart, & leaue it without anie knight of eſtimation or accompt to be made of: for that they were all departed in the Queſt and ſeeking of their Lord and Emperour: whereas I will leaue them. And the Princes Roſicleer & Brandimardo going onwards in they̓r voyage, left ẏ Empreſſe with the gouernment of her Empire, and in her company the Empreſſe Claridiana, and the Quœne of Lira, and the Princeſſe Oliuia. Where let them reſt, and now I will tell you of the ſucceſſe of the two children of the great Alphebo.

¶ How the two children of the great Alphebo, were ſtolne away, by the Giant Galtenor, and what afterward did ſucceede of the ſame robbery. Cap. 16.

WIthin the wide and dæpe ſea, towardes the parts of India where the people are gouerned, vnder the Pole antarticke, and whereas the furious waters with their great waues & terrible noyſe, with violent force do make hollowe and vndermine the rockes, & ſtrong defence of the port Palato, and the ſumptuous citie of Sina, are two very faire Ilands, the one of them is called Trapona, a very great Iland and plentifull of all things, wherein raigned a knight of great fame called Delfo, which was not farre off from the other Iland, named Arguinaria, being likewiſe very aboundant of all kinde of victailes, & very ſtrong and was gouerned by a Giaunt called, Gedereon Brandembul, a very fierce man. His power and ſtrength was ſuch, that he was not onely feared of them of the Iland, but alſo of all other Kings and Knights, borderers and confines vpon his Iland. He was fiftœne cubites in height, and his face very furious and wilde, and his ſtrength ſurpaſſed the power of men. And aboue all he was very cruell, and had vſurped that land of another Giant, who by lineall deſcent ſhould haue had the gouernment, whoſe name was called Galtenor. This was he, which in a Serpentine figure entered into the chamber of the Empreſſe Claridiana, and ſtole away her two children, for that he did knowe by his arte Magicke (in the which he was very cunning and expert) that he could not recouer his Iland, but by meanes of the young ſonne, whereof the Empreſſe ſhuld be deliuered. For which cauſe he did ſteale them away in the forme as I haue tolde you, I ſay the two young children newly borne. Then this Galtenor, hauing theſe two young infants in his power, trauailed onwarde his iourney, and ouerpaſſed all Greece, hée came vnto the vttermoſt partes and confines of Armenia. And approching vnto a Caſtle, by reaſon that the infants were out of quiet with hunger, he vſed the effect of his arte, and did inchaunt all them that were within the Caſtle, and depriued them of their wits, ſauing onely one Lady, that was newly brought a bedde, whoſe childe ſtraight dyed, to whom

" knight, I neuer thought to giue you so louing entertainment
" as now I dw, by reason that you did intreate me very ill, &
" all my people, and caused me to receiue great griefe: neuer-
" theleſſe, the amends which I hope to haue of so worthye a
" knight, doth cauſe me to craue of you pardō for this my for-
" mer anger, for that the little knowledge and acquaintaunce
" I haue had of you, hath bene the principall occaſion of my
" diſcourteſie. Then the Prince did call to remembraunce, that
she ſhould be the Lady which was in the Chariot, as well
by her ſpeaches, as by the apparell ſhe wore, to whom he an-
" ſwered and ſayd: Ladye, for your great griefe I am verye
" ſorie, and ſurely I ſhould receiue much more griefe, if occa-
" on ſhould not fall out, wherein I might dw you ſeruice. Not
" for ſo much in that I owe by duetie vnto knighthode, as
" it is to be at your commaundement: and more, it is the wil
" of ỹ Emperor my father, to labor to obtaine you all the eaſe
" and contentment, that poſſibly I could: and therefore onely
" for this cauſe and purpoſe, he commaunded me to come vn-
" to the Court: ſo that whenſoeuer you thinke it neceſſarye
" to put your neceſſitie in vre, I am here ready at your com-
" maundement, to dw all that in your ſeruice is conuenient.
" And for that all things in your ſeruice ſhall be fulfilled in
" more ample manner, I will that the noble Brandimardo go
" with me in my companie, for that your defence ſhall bee the
" more certain. And although the attainment be neuer ſo dif-
" ficult, yet hauing him in my companye, I hope to make all
" things dead ſure. Brandimardo rēdred vnto him great thanks
and did accept his deſire to haue him in his companie. The
Quēne of Lara was not a litle ioyfull of this ſhe heard, and
gaue great thanks both vnto the one and vnto the other, for
" their great courteſie ſhowed, and ſayde. Noble and valiant
" Princes, I dw conceiue very much ioye in this your great
" curteſies offered vnto me, touching the reſtoring me agayne
" vnto my kingdome: but in the meane time that you dw
" pretend to make me this reſtitution, and likewiſe in ſatiſ-
" faction of this great curteſie which you haue offered, I be-
" ſeech you to procure vnto me (hauing ſo good oppoꝛtunitie, &

none

none more worthier for this effect then you, of whom I may
receiue it) the order of Knighthood, which is the thing that
I so much desire. This she deliuered with so goodly a grace,
that the Prince stoode and beholde her, and was much ama-
sed at her meruailous beautie: and replieng vnto the words
of the Quéene, he sayd. Oh fortunate Empire, that shall bee
gouerned by so valyaunt a Princesse, the order of Knight-
hood, Lady, I know not how to giue it, for ỹ it doth wholy
and altogether consist in you. There is nothing lacking but
the girting on of the sword by the hands of some worthye
Knight: but who is he that hath deserued to obtaine to doo
so worthie an act vnto so noble a Quéene, notwithstanding
seeing at this present it is offered vnto mee, I will enioye
the benefite of this great desert, although I well knowe my
selfe, not worthy thereof. And with this he toke off his
owne sword, and put it about the Quéenes necke, who with
a meruailous and chéerefull countenance sayd, I do receiue
it by the hands of the best Knight of the world, and héere I
do returne it vnto you againe, for with it, I hope to be re-
stored into the Kingdome of Lira. And whiles she was sai-
eng these words, he girte himselfe therewith againe. Then
the Prince sayd. Faire Lady, I haue this sword nowe in
such estimation, that I do beléeue no Knight maye estéeme
more thereof, nor haue it in greater price, neither will I
chaunge it for anie thing in all the worlde, and héere I do
giue you great thankes for this your curtesie, and desire of
God spéedely to giue me occasion, that I may pay this great
debt, in the which I am indebted. And for that I maye the
better satisfie my desire, I do request of you to graunt me a
boone, which vppon my faith, I do promise you, is the very
first that euer I did demaund of Ladie; and that I protest
by the honour I owe vnto the order of Knighthode: Verie-
lie sayde the Quéene, and it shall be the first that euer I
graunted vnto anie Knight. And beléeue me it is vnto mée
no small pleasure and contentment, that this my first grant
should be giuen vnto a knight of so noble valour as you are,
let it be therfore what it shall be, I will graunt it vnto you.

And

the Emperour was, and after this olde Earle issued out ma-
nie of the people of the Citie, as well knightes as other Ci-
tizens. The quæne vnderstanding all this vproare & tumult,
fearing that by force of all those people, there should be slaine
that knight, who amongst all other was worthie to liue for
his great valour and knighthood, she determined to goe forth
accompanied with all the nobilitie of her court, & with many
faire Ladies and Damsells to aide and deliuer him from pe-
rill, but before the quæne could come thether, the olde Earle
was there whereas the Emperour was, but when he saw so
many men there dead, and all by the force of one vnarmed
knight, if it had not bene for griefe to sée his sonne lie slaine
amongst the rest, and also the fatherly loue which did pro-
uoke him to wrath, I promise you he wold haue ben the first
that should haue procured to set him at libertie, for that hée
thought it not possible there should so much valiantnesse rest
in one knight and also vnarmed, against so [illegible]ye armed
knights, except some of the Gods had descen[illegible]d to help
him, but the great affection which the father ought to haue
to his sonne, caused him with great showts & cries to preasse
in amongst the knights that were fighting, & to put them a-
part, & likewise all the whole multitude ý were there ioyned
together, & with his speare in his hand he came to the place
whereas the Emperour was, whom I will now leaue, for ý
the South winde blew in my eare, & hath constrained me to
moue my purpose and returne to Constantinople, wheras ý
court of the Emperour remained in great sorow for ý depar-
ting of their Lord, whose carefull countenãce seemed to prog-
nosticate ý great daunger that the Emperour should be in, &
if ther had not chaunced at that time to come to the court the
wise Artemidoro, who did verie much comfort the Empres,
in willing her not to torment her bodie with so many la-
mentations and passions, for that in this his trauaile all
things should fall out verie well and vnto his great honour.
to whose wordes the Empresse gaue greate credite, other-
wise shée would verily haue bene slaine with sorrowe. The
Prince Clauerindo was hée which did most lament

at

at the sorrowe of the Empresse, and determined to goe forth in the quest of the Emperour, for that he accounted nothing to be grieuous to comfort the sorrow of the Empres, which would be mittigated by the seeking of the Emperour. This secret determination came vnto the eares of the king of Sardenia, and he declared vnto Clauerindo, that he would beare him companie, who straight wayes determined together to take their voyage, and commaunded to make ready a fayre and strong ship. So without giuing any to vnderstande, in a night they imbarked themselues, and hoysed they sayles, and committed their ship thether, whereas Fortune woulde carrie her. The Empresse, although she receiued great discomfort by her beeing alone, yet she did dissemble it in the best wise she could, and did labour with great discretion to gouerne her Empire in quietnesse, thinking thereby to mitigate her griefe, for the absence of the Emperour. So one daye [illegible] in this sorrowe, there was heard a great rumor, which was supposed to procede of great ioye and gladnesse. The Empresse hearing it, could not by anye meanes imagine what it should be, and being doubtfull, she sent one to knowe what it was, that caused that great tumult in the Court: but quickly she was resolued, and put out of all her doubt, for that it was giuen her to vnderstand, that the ioye was, because of the Prince Rosicleer, of whom I haue tolde you, who did then at that instaunt disimbarke himselfe at the waters side.

What should I heere speake of the great ioye which the Empresse receiued, I am not able fully to declare it, but it was in such sort, that for the great loue she did beare vnto the Prince, and againe for the great comfort which she receiued in hir sorrowful minde, that with both her armes cast about his necke, she receiued him and imbraced him, with great ioye and contentment. Rosicleer did kisse hir Emperiall handes with great humilitie. The Dutches was present at this meeting, who knewe very well Rosicleer to bee hee that did make such slaughter of her Knightes comming by the waye, and when she came vnto the Prince, she sayd.

that were first against him. And when these two saw the other eight knightes comming, they stepped on the one side, & with a loude voice, cried. Knightes kill this diuell, kill this diuell, who in this sort hath intreated vs. When the Emperour sawe that there came other eight armed knightes against him, he could not but iudge himself to be in great danger of death, for that he was vnarmed and without anie defence, yet for all that, his accustomed courage did not fayle him one iot, but he put himselfe in defence with so great hardinesse, as though he had ben armed with all his accustomed armour. Then one of the eight armed knights who would shew himselfe to be of a more courage then the rest, preased forwards with his sword in his hand and his shælde on his arme, making shewe as though he woulde strike him, the Emperour did ward that blow on his sword wheron it fell, and with his left hand he take so fast holde on his shæld, and with so great strength, that he pulled it from his arme, and with great spæde he couered himselfe therewith, and with a valiaunt stomacke sayd: Do not thinke you disloyall and cowardly knightes to take me prisoner or do me anie outrage, first I hope to put you all to the point of any sword, or to die in my iust defence, but by reason that he spake to them in the Græke tongue, they coulde not vnderstande him one word, wherefore forgetting that which the quæne had commanded them, they striued with all their strength to kil him: the Emperour by reason of the fountaine had his backe defended, so that they were constrained to fight with him face to face, but he which by his hardinesse did seeme to prease forwards more then the other, was straight slaine or verie sore hurt. Amongst these knights there was another which was of a more hardier courage then any of the rest, who manye times did prease forwards, & had hurt this valiant Trebatio in two places, & although the wounds were not very great, yet it caused his aduersaries to haue the better stomack to assault him. This knight which had hurt the Emperour sawe well, y if euery one of the rest had done as much as he, y this vnarmed knight had ben slaine, & with a loud voice he sayd:

O ye Knights of Tinacria, how is it possible that one only knight, & without armour, hath brought vs into this iopardie and great extremitie, the which wordes he spake in the Tuscan tongue, and so with great hardinesse & mightie courage he pressed forwards, but the Emperour who well vnderstode his wordes, stepped forwardes to receiue him, two steps more thē he did before, the which was done with great lightnesse, and followed his blow so hard, that ỹ knight was constrained to receiue the blow vpon his healme, the which was giuen with so much strength and furie, that it parted it in twaine with the head, & before that he could returne back againe into his standing, they hurt him in two or three places, but it was not much, but the Emperour as he recoiled, stroke two of them, & that with so much furie that they fell dead to the ground, the rest of the Knightes which remained were meruailously afraid, for that they had felt his mightie blowes, and againe with the sight of those that were slaine before them, therefore they withdrew themselues backe so ỹ his blows might not reach them. The Emperour seing himselfe at more quietnesse, retired to the place where he first was, by the fountaine, and there he remained in more safety being better able to make his defence, so there was left of all those sixtéene Knights, but seauen, of the which, three of them were more importunate then the rest, and dealte with him euen as a compante of small spaniels with a great mastiefe, who with their barking runne round about him both before and behinde, yet not daring to touch anie haire, but when they come before him, the mastiefe maketh thē afraid, and forceth them to runne awaie: so in the same sorte was the Emperour amongst his enimies, and being in this conflict, they heard a great noise in the citie of making hast vnto armour, and anon they perceiued how ỹ olde Earle did know of the death of his sonne, who by reason of the great sorrow & passion that he receiued was almost beside himselfe, & commaunded to bring him his armour and his horse, on whom he mounted, and toke in his hande a greate and mightie Speare, and rode forth towardes the Fountaine whereas

laine knightes which rode abroade to ſolace themſelues, and by chaunce they came to the place whereas the Emperour was, and when they ſawe him of ſo faire a fauour and of ſo goodly a ſtature, and to their thinking he ſlept without all feare or care, one of them ſayde: Out of all doubt this is a knight of a ſtraunge Countrie, and by his countenaunce and proportion, it ſeemeth that he is of ſome high lignage, & that peruerſe fortune which alwayes is fickle vnto mankinde, hath cauſed him to come hether, & brought him to be in this eſtate. To the which aunſwere one that was in companie, who ſeemed to be of greater eſtate then all the reſt, ſayde: that he doth rather ſeeme to bee ſome robber and theefe, and one that doth lead an ill life, more then a knight of proweſſe, and that the ſworde which he weareth, he hath ſtollen from ſome trauailing knight, let me come and I will awake him out of his ſound ſléepe, and I will take this ſworde from him which doth not become him to weare, for it is not to be beſtowed on him, and without anie more delay he alighted off from his horſe to ſéeke his owne death (as it fell out) for when he came to the Emperour, he pulled him by the beard with ſo much ſtrength, that ſpite of his heart he did awake him, but when the Emperour awaked and ſawe the hands of that villanous knight fall vpon his beard (which was full of haires) he with his left hand ſtroke him ſuch a blowe vppon the breaſt, that he made him to recoile backe, and whether he would or no, he fell to the ground with the force thereof, and with great anger he roſe vp, (not making anie outward appearance of the great and incomperable trauaile that he had paſſed) he laide hand on his ſworde, and without tarrying till the other did ariſe, he ſtroke him ſuch a blow vpon the head that he cut him downe to the breaſt, ſo that he fell downe dead to the ground, in this ſort he gaue him his paiment for his great and vnſeemely pride: theſe knights that came together were eight in number, but when the reſt ſawe ỹ which the Emperour did, they prepared thẽſelues to fight, & fighting from their horſes they laid hands on their ſwords, & wrapped their cloaks about their armes, & then began a cruell battel,

but

but when this mightie Trebatio saw himselfe so beset with the other seauen knights, he determined to sell his death derie dere, or else to kill them all, and as you doo se the gredie Lyon ranging the Countrie with his haire brisseled, and raging with great hunger to finde his praie: euen so the valiant Emperour began to strike with his strong arme, flourishing with it in such sort, that on whom it chaunced to light, he had no nede of a Surgion to heale him. In a little space of the eight that were of them, there were foure of the slaine, and the rest were so scarred with his terrible and mortall blowes, that they durst not come nigh him. There was a lackie that came with them, which when he saw this great destruction of the knights, toke the horse of one of them that was slaine, and in great hast he galloped with him towards the pallace, crieng with a loude voice: Armour, armour, come knightes quickly and helpe, for that there is slaine the Earle of Modique his sonne, and all the rest that were with him, the quene and Ladie of that Countrie, when she heard that great noise, she looked out of her closet, and asked who had done that murther, to whome the Lackie answered, that one onely knight vnarmed, whom they found a slape at the marble fountaine, hath slaine them. These wordes caused great alteration amongest all them in the pallace, and in great hast they called for their armour to arme themselues, but this faire quene asked farther of the Lackie, what was the occasion which these eight knightes offered, to cause that knight to attempt so hard an enterprise, who tolde and declared vnto her all that you haue heard, and when shee vnderstode the whole circumstaunce, she commaunded straight that vproare to cease, and that there should other eight knights goe and procure to take and bring him prisoner, without doing him anie harme, for that she was desirous to know what hee should be that was of so valiaunt courage and so greate a strength. So straight waie at the commaundement of the quene these eight knights were readie and armed, and went to the place whereas they were still in battaile, and at such time as they approched, there was but two left of the eyght,

aloft, there came another great waue which ſtroke him with ſuch violence, ỹ it threw him vpon the ſhore, almoſt without any remembraunce, whereas I will leaue him amongeſt the ſhingles which were at the ſea ſide, and of all that happened, I will tell you hereafter.

¶ How the Emperour when he was recouered of the wearineſſe which he receiued by the great trouble of the ſea, he trauailed in the ſame Iland, and how he met with certaine knights, with whom he had battaile, and what happened. Cap. 15.



Mightie princes & valiant knights, and you excellent barons, & all you which finde your ſelues mounted vp in the triumph of felicitie, & haue all the contentments & pleaſures of this worlde, euen all you together, I come here admoniſh, ỹ you ſtand not too much in your owne conceits, neither be you negligent nor forgetfull, for ỹ you know, or at the leaſt you haue heard ſay of the ſodaine and variable changes of peruerſe fortune, who reſpecteth no man, for vnto them which be moſt mounted & are in greateſt proſperitie, vnto them ſhe giueth ỹ mightieſt fall: let none ſhew himſelfe proud nor vſe anie crueltie, becauſe he is in high eſtate, but rather in ỹ authoritie let him vſe all humilitie: for here you haue ſeene ỹ great ſurmounted quietneſſe & peaceable eſtate, in which the Emperour hath indured vntill this preſent, & now you may ſee vnto what an ebbe fortune hath brought him, there he lay along vpon the ſands a great while, vntil ſuch time as the Sun had almoſt run three parts of his daily courſe before he came to himſelfe, at which time he rather deſired to die then to liue, cõmitting his ſoule vnto almightie God, whoſe only it was. The night drew on when ỹ w̃ his black mantell he procured to couer the brightneſſe of Apollo, at which time this emperour was ſomwhat refreſhed of his paſſed trauaile, and aroſe vp, but he was all to be mired & full of ſand, wherof he made himſelfe cleane,

in

in the beſt manner ẏ he could, & began to take his way thorough a very narrow path, but he could not trauaile far, for that the night came ſo faſt & it wared verie darke, ſo that hee was conſtrained to ſeeke a place where he might reſt himſelfe, for that he wold not loſe the path wherinto he had entered, ſo he laide himſelfe down vnder a broad pine tree, where as he paſſed the moſt ſorrowfull and afflicted night that euer knight indured: next vnto God he had great cõfort by meanes of his mightie courage, for to paſſe ouer all his aduerſities, thus he paſſed all the night with great deſire ẏ the day wold come, & when the daie brake it ſeemed very faire & calme, and the aire appeared quiet, & he trauailed out onwards his way in that ſtraight path, vntill ſuch time as he came to a verye faire & delectable foreſt, whereas ſundrie chirping birds had gathered themſelues together to refreſh and ſhrowde themſelues from the parching of the Sun, yelding verie delectably diuers ſweet notes. In this foreſt, he trauailed wel nigh two houres, & then he went vp to a ſmall mountaine which was at hand, from the which he diſcouered a very faire & wel towred citie, vpon the farther ſide whereof the ſea beate againſt the faire & high walls, & towards that part wherevnto the narrow way did lead, without ẏ citie there was built a princely pallace very ſumptuous to behold, & moted round about, which moat made a ſeparation betweene the citie and ẏ pallace, there he receiued great pleaſure to finde himſelfe in a peopled country and of ſo goodly building, for that before he thought he had ben in a deſart: likewiſe he diſcouered from ẏ hill, a faire fountaine all wrought of Marble, piller like with a great bowle in the middeſt alſo of marble, out of which did proceed foure ſpouts running with water, which fell into a great ceſterne, & comming vnto it he waſhed his hands and refreſhed his face, and ſate him downe by it vppon the greene graſſe, with a great deſire to eat ſomewhat, but ther was no body to giue him any thing, ſo he reſted himſelfe vpon his elbow, & what with the wearineſſe of his way & with his hunger, & being very penſiue for his troubleſome ſorow, he fell a ſleepe. Not long after ther came out of that faire pallace cer-

traytor, who is the cause of all this my harme. O cruell and ingratefull fortune, I see that here plainly without all pittie, thou dost driue me to the death, and although ỹ fault be others, yet thou dost apply the paine to be mine. And in this sort, with great griefe, the sorrowfull and vnfortunate Lady did torment hir selfe.

So likewise, by reason of the great tempest and torment of the sea, (whereof we before spake) there arriued nigh the same place, a Knight, with no lesse daunger, then the others that landed there before. The Pilot seeing that Aeolus had shut vp his windes, and made fast the gates in such sorte, that the sayle beate against the masse of the galley, that they were constrained by the force of oares to retourne againe to sea. For that they did see by all sea-faring tokens, that the weather would be troublesome: they did perceiue it also by the Cornesa, also by seeing the Dolphins, leaping and plunging in the sea, more then they were accustomed to do. These and such like tokens the wise Pilot did consider off, who desired to take part where as he might defend himselfe from that terrible weather looked for. So with this great desire they stroke the water with their Oares, & with great furie they tormented their armes, to get to the lande: but the fatall Quæne Atrapos, would not consent therevnto, for that at the houre when the troubled Mone, did extend hir beames vppon the face of the earth, and vppon the large and deepe Sea, then the winde Boreas began to blowe his blast, so that it constrained them of the galley to bring their saile to a bowe line, and to strike it very lowe, which made the vessell to tumble and roll from the one parte to the other, in such sort, that euerie time of hir tourning, all they that were in hir, thought to be drowned. Then the marriners thought good to strike and amaine their sayle, the which they did in great hast, and laboured to profite themselues with their oares and by the strength of their armes. But in the ende, when they sawe that neither sayle nor oares would profite them, they committed themselues vnto God, and lefte the Galley and all their goods vnto his gracious

will

will,and the furie of water,which beganne presently to intreate them in such sort,that it gaue them plainly to vnderstand of their destruction. This was the Galley in which the Emperour departed in,at such time as the Ladie Lidia did take her leaue,wherein he toke but small rest, alwayes labouring to aide and helpe whereas most necessitie required, in throwing out water which troubled them verie much,being driuen by those mightie waues into the Galley. Thus were they tossed and tumbled all the night loking,euerie houre for death,at length the Sun appeared and shewed his golden face,whereby he did declare the cruell stormes & tempests which was past,and likewise gaue shew of that which was to come,by reason that it was darkned vpon a sodaine, and shewed a beauie chære: so the windes began to arise & blew more and more,and the waues increased and rose of a great and huge height,beating vpon the galley with such violent force,that being taken betwæne two billowes,the galley brake a sunder in the middest. These sorrowfull marryners which vntill that time had trauailed and fought with the wind and sea to defend their galley & to saue their liues, were now constrained to striue with death, and indeauour with all their strengths by swimming for to come to the shoare,but all would not serue for their defence, for waxing wearie by the great force of the waters,bæing able no longer to indure,they yælded themselues into the handes of God, and their bodies to the furie of the sea,wherein they finished their liues,the Emperour Trebatio being holpen by ẏ mightie hand of God,vppon whom he alwaies called in his heart, desiring to deliuer him from so terrible a death,praieng him for the merits of that mightie mediator Iesus Christ,that he would succour and defend him, who of his wonted mercie heard him,& would not permit that he should perish,for ẏ he laid hold of a bord which was broken from the galley, and made himselfe fast therto,though it were with some labour, neuertheles this distressed Emperour thought ẏ the ende of his daies were at hand,for ẏ the mightie waues kept him a great while vnder the water,& when hæ discouered himselfe

traytor, who is the cause of all this my harme. O cruell and ingratefull fortune, I see that here plainly without all pittie, thou dost driue me to the death, and although ỳ fault be others, yet thou dost apply the paine to be mine. And in this sort, with great griefe, the sorrowfull and vnfortunate Lady did torment hir selfe.

So likewise, by reason of the great tempest and torment of the sea, (whereof we before spake) there arriued nigh the same place, a Knight, with no lesse daunger, then the others that landed there before. The Pilot seeing that Aeolus had shut vp his windes, and made fast the gates in such sorte, that the sayle beate against the maste of the galley, that they were constrained by the force of oares to retourne againe to sea. For that they did see by all sea-faring tokens, that the weather would be troublesome: they did perceiue it also by the Cornesa, also by seeing the Dolphins, leaping and plunging in the sea, more then they were accustomed to do. These and such like tokens the wise Pilot did consider off, who desired to take part where as he might defend himselfe from that terrible weather looked for. So with this great desire they stroke the water with their Oares, & with great furie they tormented their armes, to get to the lande: but the fatall Queene Atrapos, would not consent therevnto, for that at the houre when the troubled Mone, did extend hir beames vppon the face of the earth, and vppon the large and deepe Sea, then the winde Boreas began to blowe his blast, so that it constrained them of the galley to bring their saile to a lowe line, and to strike it very lowe, which made the vessell to tumble and roll from the one parte to the other, in such sort, that euerie time of hir tourning, all they that were in hir, thought to be drowned. Then the marriners thought good to strike and amaine their sayle, the which they did in great hast, and laboured to profite themselues with their oares and by the strength of their armes. But in the ende, when they salwe that neither sayle nor oares would profite them, they committed themselues vnto God, and lefte the Galley and all their goods vnto his gracious

will

will,and the furie of water,which beganne presently to intreate them in such sort,that it gaue them plainly to vnderstand of their destruction. This was the Galley in which the Emperour departed in,at such time as the Ladie Lidia did take her leaue,wherein he toke but small rest, alwayes labouring to aide and helpe whereas most necessitie required, in throwing out water which troubled them verie much,being driuen by those mightie waues into the Galley. Thus were they tossed and tumbled all the night loking,euerie houre for death,at length the Sun appeared and shewed his golden face,whereby he did declare the cruell stormes & tempests which was past,and likewise gaue shew of that which was to come,by reason that it was darkned vpon a sodaine, and shewed a beaute chære: so the windes began to arise & blew more and more,and the waues increased and rose of a great and huge height,beating vpon the galley with such violent force,that being taken betwæne two billowes,the galley brake a sunder in the middest. These sorrowfull marryners which vntill that time had trauailed and fought with the wind and sea to defend their galley & to saue their liues, were now constrained to strine with death, and indeauour with all their strengths by swimming for to come to the shoare,but all would not serue for their defence, for waxing wearie by the great force of the waters,bæing able no longer to indure,they yælded themselues into the handes of God, and their bodies to the furie of the sea,wherein they finished their liues,the Emperour Trebatio being holpen by ỳ mightie hand of God,vppon whom he alwaies called in his heart, desiring to deliuer him from so terrible a death,praieng him for the merits of that mightie mediator Iesus Christ,that he would succour and defend him, who of his wonted mercie heard him,& would not permit that he should perish,for ỳ he laid hold of a bord which was broken from the galley, and made himselfe fast therto,though it were with some labour, neuertheles this distressed Emperour thought ỳ the ende of his daies were at hand,for ỳ the mightie waues kept him a great while vnder the water,& when hæ discouered himselfe

Oh Neptune that gouerneſt the ſeas, let loſe thy furious & outragious waues, and ſinke ſo vnnaturall and inhumaine a Knight, and ſuffer him not to liue, that vncourteouſly did leaue this louing Lady in this diſtreſſe, who for his deliuerie had put her ſelfe in all this trouble. This ſorowfull ladie ſtill ſleeping, dreamed, that there was a great and fierce wilde man, which ſtood before her, with a very ſharpe ſword in his hande, making as though he would kill her, and ſhee was ſo troubled with the great feare that ſhe receiued, that ſhe gaue great ſhrikes, and called vnto her Brenio for aide & ſuccour, and as ſhe thought, with his handes he ſtopped his eares, for that he would not heare her, and ſeemed that hee would not moue himſelfe in any reſpect. This dreaming ladie ſeeing this, determined to make her owne defence ſo well as ſhe could, it ſeemed vnto her that there appeared before her a Centaure, which ſaid, feare not faire damſell, for I am come hether to aide & ſuccour thee: yet for all that, this wilde man did not let to ſtrike her vpon the breaſt, and as it ſeemed to her, her breaſt was all open, and how that the Centaure put his hand into the wound, and pulled out hir heart, and threw it at the wilde man, and ſayd, Take vnto thee this heart, ỹ without all conſideration loued a man, which with ſuch ingratitude hath rewarded her. So ſtraight at the ſame inſtant there appeared a Knight, which likewiſe layd holde on the heart with the wild man, and they two ſtriued greatly betweene themſelues with much contention, who ſhoulde pull the heart out of the others handes: but in the end, each of them remained with his peece in his hand, and the hearte parted in two. So the peece which remained in the power of the wilde man, tourned into a harde ſtone, and that peece which remained in the power of the knight, tourned into red bloud, and being in this great perpleritie, this ſorowfull ladie did awake, thinking to haue tolde this terrible dreame vnto her beloued Brenio, but ſhe found him not in place, and tourning her face to the other part, to ſee if ſhe coulde ſee him, but ſhe could neither behold him, nor any other perſon, of whome ſhe might enquire. Wherewith ſhe leaped from the

bed, and with a loud voyce, she began to call for hir Brenio: but all was in vaine. So with a swift pace she went down to the waters side, thinking to haue found him there. But at her comming thether, she found neither him nor any other person, neither the galley which brought them thether. Then she loked to sea wards, to see if she could discouer any thing, but she could see nothing but water, which was the occasion that she made great lamentation. And being verye hoarce with the terrible shrike which she gaue, shee went vp vpon a little rock which was nigh the waters side, from whence she did discouer the galley, in the which was her vnlouing Brenio, whereby she perceiued plainly how she was deceiued, & how she bestowed her affection, whereas was nothing but falshode: although before time she could not perswade vñ her selfe, that so great treason remained in his heart. The great sorrowes and lamentations which this forsaken Lady made, was sufficient to moue the stones vnto compassion. Thus being weary with lamenting, she sate her downe vpon the little rocke, and leaning her cheke vpon her white hande, she fell in a great sound, in such sorte, that in a longe space shee moued neither hande nor foote, but when she came againe vnto her selfe, she bagan a new to make great lamentation, and did publish her paine with terrible shrikes, saying: „ Why was I not drowned in the Sea, that the fishes „ thereof might haue torne my bodie in peces, or else to haue „ bene deliuered into the handes of tyrauntes, to haue vsed „ their tyrannie against me, that my heart might not haue „ felte this sorrowe, neither my eies haue seene this crueltie: „ O vnhappie chaunce, oh cruell fortune, why diddest thou „ not make me to passe this bitter and sorrowfull life in my „ childhode, in such sorte, that it hadde consumed me. Wherefore did the Gods permit and suffer me to liue so long, „ it had beene farre better that I had dyed in my Cradell, and „ not to liue to see my selfe in this greate affliction without all helpe: O you mountaines, O you wilde beastes, „ O you deepe sea, there is not in you anie sence to hinder me, „ but that I maye publish heere the greate disloyaltie of that

trai-

louing breſt, and ſprinkle the blond therof round about theſe
" thy ingratefull fæte Oh what paine and ſorrow was in the
" heart of this faire Lidia, when ſhe ſpake theſe wordes vnto
her ingratefull Brenio, and yet not one of all hir ſorrowes
was ſufficient to cauſe him to ſhewe anie kinde of comforte
vnto her. With theſe and ſuch like extremities, the night
paſſed away, and when the lightneſſe of the daye had entred
in at the windowes of the chamber, he aroſe from his bed,
and likewiſe this ſorrowfull Ladie, which had paſſed all the
night, with heauie wæpings, and ſorrowfull ſighes, without
putting of hir clothes, in ſuch ſort ſhe went out and follow-
ed him.

The Emperour was then riſen and readie, and was put-
ting all things in order that was neceſſarye to pacifie and
make quiet the people of the countrie: the which was done
with great eaſe, when it was knowen that their Lords wer
dead, whom they did without all meaſure hate, for that they
were ſo great tyrants: and foure great Cities, beſide manye
other faire townes and villages, did yælde and ſurrender
themſelues vnder his iuriſdiction. The Emperour cauſed
them to ſweare to receiue Roſicleer as their true Lord, and
they to be his faithfull ſubiects, and with them likewiſe all
the whole dominion, the which they did with a verye good
will: and the Emperour appoynted a gouernour amongeſt
them, to gouerne all the land. All this bæing finiſhed, and
that the Ilande was in peace and quietneſſe, he commanded
to make readie two galleyes, the one for the faire Lidia and
hir Brenio, and the other for his owne perſon, for that hæ
would depart for Africa. So all things was prouided pre-
ſently in good order, and being readie, the Emperour com-
maunded the faire Lidia to imbarke hir ſelfe, and to carrye
with hir hir Knight, who ſtraight waye went aboarde the
galley, and commaunded the marriners to take their courſe
towards Spaine. Likewiſe the Emperour did take his leaue
of all them of the Caſtle: who for his noble cuſtomes and
valiaunt Knighthode, after that they knewe who he was,
they both feared and loued him with all their hearts. And

when

when he was imbarked in the galley, he commaunded the marriners to take the way towards Africa.

What is he that could signifie by any reason the small contentment and ioye, that the faire Lidia receiued, in beholding the sad and melancholike countenaunce that hir Brenio continually shewed: who without speaking any word, sayled on till they found themselues in the Pontick sea, whereas continuallye it is accustomed with his furie, to terrifie those, which do naulgate that way. So there arose a mightie and great tempest, which was such, that it caused ỹ galley to tumble and tosse from the one parte to the other, in great perill and daunger. Thus they remained three dayes & three nights in this great danger, & the fourth day they were driuen a land, at a small Ilande vninhabited, that was called Rees. This Ilande was hid in the sea very farre from anye lande, and was poynted with very great rockes. There they came to an anker with their galley, and for to refresh and ease themselues of their great trauaile which they had passed, they went a lande, and commaunded to raise vp a sayre Tent which they brought with them, and therein they made a bed, whereon Brenio laye downe to ease himselfe: and this faire Lidia leaned on the bed side by him, and was somwhat in quiet, for that she sawe that the sadnesse of her Knight was a little abated. And by reason of the great paine and dolor that she had receiued, and the vnquietnesse in the tempest: and againe, for the contentment she had, to see her Knight in better quiet, her wearied body required some rest, in such sort, that as she was leaning on the beddes side, she fell a sleepe. This false Brenio when he sawe her at rest and in a sound sleepe, in great secret he arose from the bedde, and went vnto the waters side whereas he had lefte the galley, and entering therein, he commaunded all those that were a-lande to imbarke themselues, and to hoyse vp the sayles, and wold not by any meanes tarry, til that the seas were calme, but rather did put himselfe in ỹ peril of these furious waues, then to inioye the swetnesse of this faire Damosell: and lefte her all alone, in this desolate and vnpeopled Ilande.

Dh

Then the Emperour commaunded thoſe of the Caſtle, that they ſhould giue him ſomewhat to eate, and likewiſe to all the reſt which were taken out of priſon: vnto him for the great trauaile which he had paſſed in this battaile, and vnto the reſt, for that they had great nèd thereof. So it was ſtraight way made ready, and that in very good order, and they all ſate downe together, at the Emperours table. So when they had almoſt dined, and that they were well refreſhed, the Emperour tolde vnto Roſicleer, who that King was which he had ſène in the waggon, & the occaſion thereof: for the which he deſired him that no other aduenture ſhould be the occaſion to let him, but to goe ſtraight vnto Conſtantinople, and to take in companie with him Brandimardo, and procure that the Lady might be reſtored againe vnto her kingdome, vſing all your diligence to giue hir him to wife: for that the noble Prince is worthye of no ſmall honour. And hère my ſonne I doo proteſte vnto thée, that a more beautifull Ladie in all my life I haue not ſène, but onely the Empreſſe Claridiana. Alſo if that fortune doo ſo ſerue, that thy brother the Knight of the Sunne, come to thoſe parts, thou ſhalt will him, that he doo not moue nor departe from thoſe parts, for any kinde of aduentures that ſhall ſucceède, till ſuch time as I doo retourne, for that nowe at this preſent I cannot retourne, for that I haue ſworne and giuen my word. So there he tolde vnto them all the hiſtorie of that infortunate Herea: at the which all they preſent receiued great ſorrowe, ſauing onely Brenio, which ſèemed that he receiued neither pleaſure nor ioy. So when the boord was voyded, Roſicleer toke his leaue of the Emperour his father, and leaped vp on his horſe, and toke the way which led him whereas he left his boate. He was no ſooner entred into it, but it began to make way, and ſailed with ſo great ſwiftneſſe, that the third day he arriued at Conſtantinople, whereas at this preſent we will leaue him.

¶ How the Ladie Lidia talked with her Knight Brenio, who was verie ſad, demaunding of him the cauſe of his diſcontentment: & of other accidents. Cap. 14.

Hère



Here you haue heard of the great discontentment that Brenio did showe, at such time as he came out of the prison, and in how short time, the ioye that Lidia receyued, was tourned into sorrowe and sadnes: and that she could not demaund to knowe the occasion, by reason of the company that was there; so she was driuen to passe all that daye with bitter sorrowes, and anguish of minde, and without all comfort, till such time as the night approched, thinking ꝑ when she was alone with him whom she loued more then her selfe, to aske of him the occasion of all his paine. Thus hir desire being brought to passe, this false Brenio did vncloath himselfe, and the time that he was making vnreadie, he neuer lefte weping, till such time as he was layd in his bed. This faire Ladie leaning with hir brest vpon the bolster, ioyned her hands with his, and said,

My sweete Brenio, what thing hath caused thée, thus against the firme loue that I haue towards thée, to sheiwe thy selfe so sad, as it doth appeare by thy heauie chére: turne my loue, and showe a ioyfull face, and giue me some comfort with thy smiling countenaunce, & let my troubled hart receiue some ease, of that vnmeasurable sorrowe which I haue sustained, during the time that these vnknowen and traiterous people, haue kept thée in prison and absent from my sorowfull sight. What is this my sweete Brenio, hast thou sene in me any occasion to dissolue this faithfull loue which I beare thée? Let the great trauaile, sighs & sorrowes moue the which I receiued to finde out the Emperour, and bring him to set thée at libertie: and if this be not sufficient, consider with what great loue I haue passed many sorrowfull wayes and terrible stormes, for to attaine thy presence, as now I do. And héere I do sweare vnto thée by the true & faithfull loue, which caused me so sorowfully to wepe being on the deepe sea, that if I the infortunate Lidia be not acceptable in thy heart. Onely for that I will not displease thée, I will with myne owne proper handes open this my

louing

All that, which they hadde determined, for at such time as they would haue shut the gates, he approched them and disturbed their desire with cutting and hewing them, in such sort, that he entered into the Castell in spite of their heartes, and those that were within would haue made resistaunce at such time as he was in the great Court, but this valiaunt Prince did threaten them, saying. O you wicked & contentious villains yeld your selues prisoners, for be certainly perswaded you shall finde more in me by humilitie thē by making resistaunce. There was one knight which remained, and hauing more ciuilitie then the rest, aunswered and sayd.

"Valyaunt Knight, if we hadde thought euer to "haue found in thee so much mercifull clemencie, as we haue "found mightie courage, verily long since we wold haue yelded our selues: now therefore we doe desire thee if there be "in thee anie iot of pittie, to manifest thy clemencie vnto vs, "for considering we were seruauntes vnto those Gyauntes, "we were by duetie bound to defend them, and on the contrarie to our powers, offend you. Then this noble prince promised them their liues, conditionally that they should yeld and "surrender themselues. In this time the Emperour letted not to inlarge his pace for to come to the aide and defence of the Prince, but when he came thether, he found that he was in quiet, & that all those that were left in the Castle requested peace, and when the Emperour sawe that it was then time to discouer himselfe, full of great ioy he fell vppon Rosicleer his necke, and sayd.

"Oh my sonne, I did well vnderstand that in the time "of my greatest necessitie, that thou wouldest neuer deceiue "me, with greate reason I may call thee my fortunate sonne, "not for that thou wert borne in a good daie, but also that "loue did cause so greate affection to thy mother, of whome hath proceeded such fruite as thou and thy brother. Nowe of this worthie Prince what shall I saye, that with verie ioye he was almost beside himselfe when he heard his Father the Emperour speake, for by the sounde of his voyce

he

he did know him. So straight waye the Emperour pulled of his helme, wherewith this valiaunt Roscleer was fully resolued and without all doubt. When he sawe the maiestie of his regall countenaunce, and his beарde adorned with some royall white haires, his face somewhat high coloured, by reson of the great trauaile he receiued in his late battailes, in the which he showed his great power, and the prowesse of the progenie from whence he did procæde: his sonne bowed downe his knées to the earth, and lifted vp the visour of his healme, and kissed the Emperours hands, bathing them with the teares, that fell from his eyes, which was forced by his heart, for the great ioye which he receiued. The Emperour toke him by the hand, & raysed him from the ground with great loue. If I should hære declare the rest of the extremities, that passed in this their ioyfull mæting, it should be very tedious vnto the hearers, therfore I do remit it vnto such a father, whose lot it is to haue good children, & therwith their like helpe in necessitie. So without making any more delay, the Emperour would haue deliuered out of prison the Knight of this faire Lidia, the which being vnderstode by them of the Castle, they straight waye brought him before the Emperour, with many other moe, which were partakers with him in the succour of the Lady. These Knightes altogether gaue great thankes vnto the Emperour, for ỳ friendship he had shewed them, in helping them out of this theyr terrible imprisonment. And thus they remained in great ioy and pleasure, as well the Emperour for the sight of his son, as also all those which were prisoners, for the good successe, that they had, but especially and aboue all the rest, was the ioye of Lidia, which with the contentment that she receiued to sæ hir Bremo in hir companie, so that she was almost rauished of hir wits: but in the countenaunce of the Knight, it appeared by his outward showe, that he receiued no pleasure: the which being vnderstode by this faire Lidia, not knowing the cause whereof it should procede to mæue him therevnto, all hir great ioye and delight, was tourned into despaire.

" memorie doth surmount the high Throne of their celestiall
" seates. Oh noble Emperour, who by thy surpassing excellen-
" cie hast brought thy selfe to die amongst barbarous people,
" whereas without all hope of anie helpe, or anie respect of thy
" mightie estate, thou must receiue the death. Here I do make
" a vowe, that before death doth depriue thee of this great va-
" lour and strength, to destroye my selfe in recompence of the
" great wrong that I haue committed against thee.

The valiaunt Rosicleer which at that time God and good fortune had brought into ỳ place, did cause hir to cease this hir sorrowful lamentation. If you do remember, this is the battell I tolde you of, whereas I lefte Rosicleer beholding the great wrong and outrage that so many did against one onely knight. And likewise he did consider the surmounted prowesse which that one knight vsed, and because he was armed with contrarie armour, he could not know who it was, and much meruailing at that he sawe, without anie more tarrying, he lighted from his horse and laide hand on his sword, & with great furie and anger he pressed in amongst these false knights, and the first that he did encounter with, was ỳ disordinate Gyant, to whom he lent such a blow vpon the legge that he cut it a sunder, and with the force thereof he hurt the other legge by the knee, in such sort that he must needes fall to the ground, not being able by any strength to sustaine or helpe himselfe. The Gyant seing, & to his paine feling so furious a blow, cryed with a loude voice, saying: Vpon them valiant warriours, for they are of no force nor abilitie to resist, at which noyse the Emperour tourned his head aside, and sawe whereas the Gyaunt laye all along on the earth, by force of that most terrible and cruell blowe. Also hee sawe howe this noble knight besturred himselfe amongest the rest of the Gyauntes knightes, which was a valyaunt sight to bee seene, wherfore he remained a good while in beholding and viewing him, till at the last he knewe him to bee his worthie sonne, euen that renowmed and inuincible Rosicleer. I nede not here to declare the exceeding great

ioye

loye and comfort which this worthie Emperour receiued in seing him, and especially at such a time being in great neede and necessitie, for of long time before that hee had not seene him, neither had he thought euer to haue seene him after that time anie more, if at that instant hee had not come vnlooked for, in ý he coulde not chose but to haue bene slaine by those barbarous and vnciuile people. Then gathering vnto himselfe newe strength and courage, he pressed in amongst those false and wicked knightes, in such sorte that they beganne to runne awaie, as well because they sawe their Lordes and Captaines slaine, as also for that they coulde not in anie wise abide the terrible blowes of the Prince. So these two valiaunt warriours bestirred themselues, that they were constrained in hope to saue theyr liues to tourne their backes, and take the waie vp the hill towardes the Castell, but this valiaunt Rosicleer followed them with so greate lightnesse, that before they came halfe waie vp the hill, hee had slaine the greater parte of them. Then the rest which sawe themselues so euill intreated, tourned altogether and pressed on him in such sorte, that by theyr force they hadde almost constrained him to tumble backwarde downe the hill, at which hee was meruailously wroth, and therewith like a couragious Knight hee pressed amongest them with so much furie, that with cutting off armes and heads, hee made them lesse then they were by the one halfe. The Emperour by reason of his great wearinesse and trauaile which he sustained, remained at the foote of the hill whereas the first incounter was, but when he heard the mouing and rushing of the people, hee take the waye vp the hill with so great lightnesse, as though the battaile had but then begun, and after him followed the fayre and beautifull Lidia, but when the Emperour came in sight, he beheld how the Prince with great courage followed after those wretched people euē to the gate of the Castle, for they thought to saue themselues if they might by anie meanes get in at the gates, pretending to make it fast vnto them, but this valiant Greeke pursued them with so great swiftnesse that they had no time to fol-

nor thy Gods, nor thy people ſhall deliuer thée, but thou ſhalt die by my handes, and therewith hée ſtroke at him the faſter and with more courage, but within a ſmall time after he ſawe deſcending from the Caſtell another mightie gyant, and in his company more then fortie knights, who with greate ſhowting deſcended downe the hill, the which béing ſéne by the worthie Trebatio, he was perſwaded certainly that there hée ſhoulde dye. And although he was somewhat wearie of ꝑ great trauaile which had paſſed, yet hée purpoſed to ſell his lyfe verie déere, determining that they ſhould paie well for it before he loſt it. Then all they which deſcended from the Caſtell did compaſſe the Emperour rounde about, and ſtroke him on euerie ſide without mercie or pittie, whoſoeuer had bene there to haue ſéene this worthie warriour, ſhould haue had iuſt occaſion to ſaie that there was the valiant Emperour Trebatio, the flower of all knighthode, for that he alone defended himſelfe againſt his enimies, in that great extremitie, and if thoſe gyants had not ſo preſſed vpon him, he had eſtéemed ꝑ other knights verie little, but it were the gyants that did moſt trouble and moleſt him, neuertheleſſe he that did come in the daunger of his blowes, might thinke himſelfe bewitched or to haue euill fortune, for either he was ſlaine or elſe maimed, or beaten downe to the grounde, but yet all this valour that he vſed little profited him, except hée did firſt procure to deſtroie theſe two diueliſh Gyauntes, who through their might brought him into great perpleritie, making him ſometimes to decline with his handes to the earth, and at other times alſo to ſtagger héere and there. And theſe ſhameleſſe people by the importunate noiſe of their Lordes, procured on euerie ſide to hurt and moleſt the Emperour, and with the ſame noyſe there deſcended from the Caſtell more then thrée ſcore perſons, beſides them that were there before. But when the Emperour Trebatio ſawe himſelfe ſo euill intreated and beſet on euery ſide round about, he called vppon the name of God, and deſired him of pardon for all his ſinnes, and that he would haue mercie on his ſoule, for that he thought verily there to

end

end his life, and therwith he encouraged himselfe a new, and gathered such strength to his heart, that what with the iust quarrell he had, and the great anger he conceiued, hee gaue vnto that Gyant (who had called for succour) such a terrible blowe vpon the waist, that for all the greate force of his armour, it had almost parted him in two peeces, wherewith hee fell dead at his feet. And at the verie same instaunt hee stroke one of the knightes such another blowe vpon the helme, that he diuided both it and his head downe to the shoulders. The other Gyant when he sawe such meruailous blowes, began to exclaime out against Mars, reuiling him, that he had bestowed so much strength and force on one knight, to declare such prowesse as there the Emperour shewed. The rest of the knightes were somwhat afraide of that which they had seene done, and durst not preasse so nigh as before they did, yet by reason of the great feare they had of the Gyant, they did not let greatly to molest and trouble him, and they preased vpon him in such wise that he wared wearie, so that his good heart and noble courage wold little preuaile him, but that he must needes be ouercome and slaine. The sad and sorrowfull Ladie Lidia when she sawe the Emperour in such great perplexitie, with crossing and wringing her hands, and with bitter wepings she sayd.

O most vnhappie and vnfortunate wretch that I am, it
had bene much better that I alone had suffered these my
paines and passions, then that this noble Emperour should
lose his life in my quarrell, which will be the occasion of ve-
rie much sorrowe and great tribulation vnto the most high
and noblest ladie in the world. O famous knight of the Sun,
oh renowmed Rosicleer, what may you saie when you shall
heare that for my cause your father that worthie Emperour
should be slaine, it had ben better for me (miserable as I am)
to haue bene transported into a plant as Daphne was, & not
to haue caused that for my comfort so much harme should be
done, vnlesse it had pleased ỳ Goddesse Iuno to make an euer-
lasting memory of this my true and perfect loue, as she did
by Celos in so many Nymphs, of whom vnto this daie their

anie defence he stroke him such a blowe vppon the healme, that he made him to decline his head to the maine of his horse, and being troubled with that great and cruell blowe, his horse carried him a while here and there about the field. The terrible and fierce Gyaunt would haue giuen him the second blowe, but he could not, for that the Emperour was come againe to himselfe, and being settled in the sadle, he firmed his sworde fast with both his handes, and being incensed with greate anger and furie, insomuch that fire flashed out at both his eyes, he strake his horse with his spurres, and thrust himselfe forward, saying: Tarrie, tarrie thou furious beast, for that I meane to reuenge my selfe of the blowe past that thou gauest me, and without delay send thy dampned soule deseruedly to the diuell of hell, and therwith he stroke the diuelish Gyaunt such a blowe vpon the helme, that he made it sound like a bell, and he without anie remembraunce fell downe backwards vppon his horse crouper, the blowe was so terrible and deliuered with so greate strength, that the bloud started out both at his eies and at his nose. And as the Emperour would haue turned to haue stroken him againe, he heard one with a great noise that called aloude and sayd: Stand still vile knight and hold thy hands, except thou wilt die the death. The Emperour lifting vp his head to see who it was that with so great arrogancie threatned him, beheld another Giant which descended downe from the Castell, of a greater stature, and seeming to be of more strength and furie then the other two, which by reason of his greatnesse was faine to goe on foote, for that there was no horse able to beare him. When the Emperour sawe a thing so monstrous comming towards him, he said with an angry voice: Cursed be that euill and diuelish generation from whence such monsters doth procede, if it please God I will doe my best to abate this thy courage, and in this time the Gyaunt was come to himselfe and rose vp againe, and was prepared against the Emperour, who seeing him so nigh, with purpose to strike him, toke the aduauntage, and stroke first, with such an ouerthwart blowe, that by the force ther-

of

of it cut his throate, necke and all, so that the head fell downe to the earth, and the bodie also like the corner of a great castell. This other Gyant seing his brother dead in such sort, cryed out reuiling his Gods, and with blaspheming of all creatures hee descended downe the hill, and drew out his huge and mightie sworde, pressing towards the Emperour, with such furie, as commonly the fierce Lyon doth after his praie, which beeing wel perceiued by the Emperour, he auoided a little on the one side with his horse, & lighted in greate hast, and with his accustomed courage hee went to meete the Gyant, who was readie with his sworde in his hand, & came a stroke at the Emperour a mightie blow, which he receiued vpon his shield, that did then deceiue him, and by reason therof it fell downe vpon his healme, and made him stoope with both his knees to the grounde, losing somewhat of his sight by force of that furious blowe. The Emperour seeing that it was not then time to sleepe, and that the Gyaunt had his sworde ouer him to strike him againe, he beeing somewhat troubled, stepped aside and cleered himselfe from the fall therof, and therwith preased to the Gyant before he could againe recouer his terrible sworde, to bestow on him a blow correspondent to his rage, and stroke him vpon the arme, but by reason that the Emperour was not wholy come to himselfe of the former blow he receiued, he could not repaie him with his whole strength as his heart desired, or as he would if hee had ben come to himselfe, notwithstanding it was not so little, but that his sworde cut his arme to the bone, wherwith he was so sore hurt that he could not lift his sworde from the ground, with the paine whereof the Gyant did feele himselfe verie ill, and was constrained to chaunge his sworde into his left hand, with the which he stroke blowes verie much out of order. In this time the Emperour stroke at him so terryble and thicke, that it did almost amaze him, & when the Giant sawe himselfe so ill intreated, he began with a terryble voice to call for helpe of his people from the Castell. The which beeing vnderstode by the valyaunt and heroyrall Emperour, he sayd: no thou traitour, for neither thy strength

to be no lesse furious then the first. He came mounted on a a very strong and mightie horse, (for he had neede to be of a great strength, in that he did sustaine the carriage of so mightie a monster as the Giaunt was) and when hee was come whereas the Emperour abode, he loked whether the other Giaunt were altogether dead or not, but when he saw there was no life in him, and that by that onelye blowe hee
" was slaine, he said: Is it possible mightie brother, that a
" thing so vile as this is, hath had power so quickly to slaye
" thee. And tourning vnto this noble warriour, he said: Tell
" me Knight of so wonderfull a courage, what diuell hath
" brought thee hether, to doo vs so much harme, as the Gods
" themselues were not sufficient to haue done. The Emperor
" replied, The Ladie which thou seest here, brought me hether,
" to deliuer and set at libertie a knight, which without all
" reason thou dost keepe in thy Castle, and which with great
" treason thou broughtest hether. Of truth I tell thee Giant,
" that it seemeth very euill in such Knights as thou arte, to
" commit such outrages, for that nature hath not bestowed on
" thee these well proportioned members, nor giuen thee a bo-
" die of so mightie a greatnesse, for to exercise it in doing of
" so great wrongs, as you doo daily practise. I therefore doo de-
" sire thee, by ỳ honour which I owe vnto the order of knight-
" hoode, and for that thy disposition doth greatlye content me,
" that thou wouldest make satisfaction vnto this faire Damo-
" sell, the which onely I am come to demaund of thee, & like-
" wise that thou wouldest apart thy selfe from these wicked
" customes: otherwise, beleeue this of a certaintie, that euen as
" thy brother was slaine with so small a blow, (not beeing by
" my weake arme killed, but onely by his great tyrannie con-
" founded): so likewise if thou dost pretend to lead this tiran-
" nous life, as thou hast hetherto done, beleeue me the lyke
" death will happen vnto thee. Tourne and repeate that once
" againe which thou hast saide (answered the Gyaunt) per-
" haps thy words may winne me to doo somewhat of ỳ which
" thou dost request me, although not altogether. Hast thou me
" in derision thou vile beast (sayd ỳ Emperour) thou shalt sone

vnder-

vnderſtand that I kno be better how to beſtowe my ſworde vpon thy bones and fleſh, then againe to declare that which thou doſt demaund, for that I ſee my reaſons do little auaile, and that I vtter in vaine my ſpeaches vnto thee, ſ thou ſhalt ſone ſee that the ſharpneſſe of my Speare ſhall be no leſſe bitter vnto thee, then it was vnto thy late brother: and in ſaying theſe wordes they retourned their horſes the one from the other, like the ſwift winde, and when they were one ſtraight againſt the other, both of them ſtroke their horſes with the ſpurres, and bare their ſpeares verie lowe, in ſuch ſort that neither of them fayled of their blowes, the gyaunt ſtroke the Emperour in the middeſt of the ſhælde, and by reaſon of the greate ſtrength thereof, the ſtroke glaunced on the one ſide, and the Speare ſprong vp in the ayre without doing anie harme, but the Emperour chaunced to ſtrike him vnder his ſhæld where he was a little open, ſo that the point of his ſpeare entered into his bellie, and if his Speare had not bene ſomewhat blunt, with the blow he gaue to the other Gyaunt, he had at this time finiſhed the battaile, but with great haſt both of them layde hands on their ſwordes, and tourning their horſes there beganne a cruell and fierce battaile. The Gyaunt with the greate paine that he had of the hurt which he receiued, felt himſelfe verie ill, ſo that his anger did the more increaſe, and traueſing his horſe from the one part vnto the other, procured by all meanes to hurt the Emperour, who was not at that inſtaunt idle, but according vnto his accuſtomed valiauntneſſe auoyded his blowes, and ſmote at him ſuch furious and beaute ſtrokes, that hee made the blood to followe in what place ſo euer he chaunced with his ſworde to hit, and with the great paine that the Gyaunt felte, there proceeded from his helme a verie thicke and hot ſmoake, his furie and anger was ſo much to ſee himſelfe beſtowe ſo manie blowes, and not one of them coulde hurt his enimie, he threw his ſhælde from him to the earth, and take his ſworde in both his handes, and verie fiercely ſtroke his horſe with his Spurres, which made him to leape thether where as this worthie warriour was, and without

HEre you haue heard tolde howe that after the Emperour had read the scrowle of parchment that was written and laide vnder the pillowe at the head of the dead bodie of the Ladie Herea, how he returned to prosecute his iourney which he had taken in hand for the defence of the faire Lidia, and howe that they did imbarke themselues in their Galley, and the sea being pacified of that boistrous tempest which they receiued in their last voyage, the Gallie sailed forwards with a verie good and prosperous winde the space of three dayes without meeting with anie aduenture. In the ende whereof they landed at the Iland of Otonio, which by another name is called Citarea, which straight waie was knowen by that faire Ladie to bee the Iland where her beloued Bremio was, and she sayd vnto the Emperour. Lorde, this is the Ilande that keepeth hid from me the whole comfort of my heart. So straight waye the Emperour went a lande and toke with him the fayre Lidia, and commaunded that his horse and his Speare, and the Ladyes palfrate shoulde likewise be taken out of the Galleye, and when the Emperour hadde well pernied his armour, he armed himselfe, and toke the waie which lead him towards the Castell, leauing on the right hande the famous Temple, which from farre did shew the greate sumptuousnesse thereof, in the gate whereof they did discouer and see an armed Knight, who contemplated himselfe in beholding the greatnesse of that Knight. But the Emperour had no care to knowe who it was, but with greate haste they went forwards on their waie, and when they drew nigh vnto the Castell, it seemed vnto them to bee the fairest that euer they had seene, and as the Emperour proceeded to goe vp the hill towarde the Castell, hee hearde one which with a greate voice sayde. O thou Knight of the Diuell or of death, goe no farther vp, but tarrie a little, for by her which thou doest bring with thee I do vnderstande thy ocmaunde, staie a while and I will be straight waie with thee, for I thinke that thou hast alreadie repented thy comming hether.

hether. The Emperour who heard these wordes, would verie faine haue seene him who spake them, and lifted vp his eyes towardes the Castell, but he could beholde no bodie. But hee tarried not long, when that out of a narrowe waie comming downe the hill he sawe a great Gyaunt, shaking in his hande a heauie Speare, and when he came to the place whereas the Emperour abode, he sayde. Knight, tell me, art thou the Emperour of Grecia or any of his sonnes. The Emperour answered and sayde, I am he (who by the helpe of God) may frustrate thy force which thou hast done vnto this Damosell. Then the Gyant sayd, O miserable wretch, how thou art deceiued, what doest thou thinke thy selfe so strong and to haue so much strength to doe that alone, which all the worlde is not able to vndoe, and with greate anger for the wordes which he heard the Emperour speake, he toke his Speare and did leuell it in his hande, and threwe it at the Emperour with such furie, that the aire did sounde therwith, the Emperour made his defence and receiued it vppon his sheelde, and the point slidde in such sort, that it glaunced and broke in two peeces. When the Emperour sawe that hee threw it at him dart wise, he toke his Speare fast in his hande, and firming himselfe in his stirroppes he raised vp his bodie and threw his Speare against his enimie with greate strength, who would haue receiued it vppon his sheelde, but the furie was such wherewith it was throwen, that it pearced both through his sheelde and likewise the bodie, that the head was seene come out at the Gyauntes backe, the which terrible blowe being seene by them which were in the Castell, was the occasion that there arose a greate vproare therein. The Emperour gaue thankes to God for this short victorie, and tourned himselfe vnto the Page which came with Lidia, and bad him take the Speare out of the Gyants bodie and bring it vnto him, for that it was whole, which presently the Page accomplished. Hee hadde no sooner receiued it, but hee sawe presently to descende out of the same path waie another great and huge Gyaunt, which seemed

" traytor, and like a fierce Tygreſſe with the dagger, which
" ſhe carried, ſhe cut the throate of that innocent infant, and
" threwe it to him on the bedde and ſayde, take there thou cru-
" ell traytour, the fruite which thou madeſt within my body,
" and then ſhe threwe the dagger after him to kill the King:
" but Fortune would not that it ſhuld take effect. This wret-
" ched King, when he ſawe all this which the Quæne hadde
" done, he was therewith marvelous ſore troubled, and in his
" furie, he layde hold vpon hir, and did intreate hir very evil.
" But when the Quæne ſawe that the blowe toke no effect,
" & that ſhe could not bring to paſſe that which ſhe had deter-
" mined, ſhe returned vpon hir ſelfe hir outragious furie, ta-
" king that bloudie dagger, & thruſt it to hir hart, in ſuch ſort,
" that ſhe parted it in two peeces, and ſo ſhe fell downe dead
" into the armes of him, which was the occaſion of all this
" evill and crueltie. The great ſorrowe that this falſe and
" and vnhappie King receiued was ſtraunge, in ſuch ſort, that
" he knewe not what counſell to take, but thinking vpon the
" great punihment that might ſucceede theſe cruell actes, hee
" ſtraight waies procured ỳ the bodie of the quæne ſhoulde be
" buried in great [illegible]. At that time there was a ſoothſayer, a
" wiſe-man in [illegible], who adverſtiſed him, ỳ for this cruell
" fact which he [illegible]mitted, his kingdome ſhuld be deſtroy-
" ed, and that it ſhoulde fall into the handes of him which he
" moſt hated, who was his brothers ſonne, his couſin. The
" King beeing adverſtiſed of all that which ſhould happen, hee
" determined to vſe a cruell pollicie, which was, hee woulde
" ſet watch and warde throughout all his Kingdome, for to
" take and areſt all ſuch trauellers, as by aduenture landed
" vppon his Iſlande, not ſuffering them to paſſe, till ſuch time
" as they hadde promiſed him by oath to ayde and aſſiſt him
" euen vnto the death againſt certaine his enimies, which
" wold diſpoſſeſſe him of his Kingdome, making them beleeue
" that vniuſtlye and without occaſion, they intended to take
" it from him. Then this my aforenamed Knight, which
" had ſeene and hearde all the tragicall dealing that is heere
" declared, in the beſt wiſe he coulde, retourned againe to my

Court,

Court, and tolde me all that you haue heard, which was vn-
to me verie sorrowfull and heauie newes. Iudge heere then
gentle Knight what sorrowe I pore and vnfortunate king
receiued, and what bitter anguish I sustained. So herewith
entered in the great sothsayer and wise man, called Artemi-
doro, who came to comfort me, and certified me, that all this
cruelties should be reuenged by a mightie and strong arme,
although before that should come to passe, there shoulde bee
fought manie fierce battailes, and perswaded me to beleeue
it, for that he tolde me the truth. So because that this wise
man was so well knowen, I did beleeue him, and gaue cre-
dite vnto his words, and requested him for his part, to pro-
cure all that in him did lye, to preferre this my reuengment.
So straight way he put it in practise, and caused a Chariot
to be brought, and bad me enter into it, and in a trice he ca-
ried me whereas my daughter was, and commaunded me to
put her into the Chariot, and brought her vnto this Ilande,
assuring me, that he which should ouercome ỹ keepers which
he would heere set, should be the Knight, that should reuenge
my iniurie. And seeing that thou hast ouercome the keepers
that had the charge of the body of this my murdred daugh-
ter, performe now the oath which thou hast made lyke a
valyaunt Knight: and for the better performaunce, thou
must goe vnto Cimarra, whereas thou shalt finde me the vn-
fortunate King thereof, awaiting thy comming.

At the reading of this sorrowfull historie, the Emperour and she that was with him did shed many salt teares, wher-with there did increase in him a farther desire of reuenge-ment. And so they departed to the Sea side, whereas they did refresh themselues, and returned vnto their voyage late begun.

¶ How the Emperour Trebatio did lande himselfe at the Ilande Citarea, and of all things that happe-ned there. Cap. 13.

you

" heart, hæ toke a towell which this Damosell had girded at
" her waist, and with a brutall anger doubled it about hir neck
" and pinched it so straight that the soule departed from the
" bodie. O thou knight that by thy prowesse doest come to read
" this Parchment, consider the greate constancie and chastitye
" of this vnfortunate Damosell, and let the griefe thereof moue
" thee to take vengeaunce of this greate crueltie, shewed with-
" out anie desert. So when this infernall king sawe that shee
" was dead, hæ toke his horse and returned from whence hee
" came, and in a short time he ouertoke his companie, and lo-
" ked with so furious and irefull a countenaunce, that there
" was not one that was so hardie to aske him where my
" daughter was, but one of the knightes of my Court which I
" sent to beare companie with my daughter, hauing a suspiti-
" on by the great alteration that appeared in the king, and bee-
" ing verie desirous to knowe what was become of the Prin-
" cesse, for that he came alone without bringing her with
" him, neither coulde he haue anie sight of her, hæ then pre-
" sentlye withdrewe himselfe backe, and following the fot-
" tings of the horse, he ceased not vntill he came vnto the place
" whereas this crueltie was wrought, whereas hæ found this
" miserable Ladie lie dead, in the same sorte as I haue decla-
" red, at the viewe whereof he remained almost beside him-
" selfe, in such sorte that he had almost fallen to the grounde.
" This knight remained a good while before he could speake,
" so when he was come againe to himselfe, hæ beganne with
" a dolorous complaint, crying out against the Gods and for-
" tune, because they had suffered so greate crueltie to bee com-
" mitted vnto this damosell, and making this sorrowfull com-
" plaint, hæ vnlosed her from the træ, and layde her vppon
" parte of her apparell, and couered her with the rest, and
" sayde on this wise: O cruell handes, what an infernall heart
" was that, which did beare thee companie to doe this vncha-
" ritable sacrifice? Was it not sufficient that this surmoun-
" ted beautie should haue mœued thee to more pitie. So with
" these and other lyke sorrowfull wordes that this knight
" spake vnto the deade corps, he cut downe braunches from the

træs

trées for to couer the bodie, and left it lying so, that it séemed to be a mountaine of greene trées, & then determined with himselfe in the best maner that he coulde to dissemble the knowledge of this fact done, bée toke his horse and went the waie towardes the Citie which lead to the kings Court, in which he rode so fast that he ouertoke the king and his companie at the entering into the Citie, whereas the king alighted, and without speaking to anie person he entered into his closet, by reason whereof this my knight had time to declare vnto the Quéene all that he had seene, and the dolorous ende of the Damosell Herea her sister. The sodayne and vnlooked for sorrowe mired with great anger and wrath, was such in this quéene, that she commaunded the knight not to depart the court vntill such time as more occasion did serue, and she her selfe remained making meruailous and great lamentations to her selfe, all in secret, for that she woulde not be perceiued, yet with a soft voice she sayd: O vnfortunate quéene and borne in a sorrowfull houre, oh vnhappie destinie, which madest me to be subiect vnto the most cruellest king amongst all kings, I suppose ý fortune cannot be so much against me, but ý she will procure to take reuengement of thée? Oh immortall Gods reuéng[illegible] of this so great and horrible an homicide, and if not, I de[illegible]eare vnto you that I will with my owne hands put in practise such an enterprise, that you loking downe from the heauens shall tremble for the feare thereof? What do ye, you deafe Gods, altogether without iustice, will you not hearken vnto this my grieuous complaint, wel seeing you regard me not, I will sée if ý you haue power to withdrawe me from executing of mine owne will. This saying she toke in her hand a dagger of the kings, and in her armes her youngest sonne, saying: I do not wish so much euill vnto the world, ý I will leaue the sonne of so wicked a father to soiourne in it, & in this order she entered into the chamber whereas the king was, and there she founde him tumbling vppon his bedde from the one side to the other, without taking anie rest, and with sorrowfull weeping, and a terrible voyce, she called him

" did defend her selfe, he toke fast holde by her necke, and said,
" Doe not thou thinke O cruell Herea, that thou canst dely-
" uer thy selfe out of my handes, except first thou graunt vnto
" this my desired will, and if not, I do promise thee in pay-
" ment of this great pride which thou doest vse vnto me, to put
" thee vnto the most cruell death that euer was deuised for a-
" nie Damosell or maide. This distressed Ladie was nothing
" dismaide to heare that shee shoulde die, but without all feare
" she answered. Thinke not false traitour, that the feare of
" death shall cause mee to yeeld to thy filthie desire. The which
" being well vnderstoode by the king, he sayde. Understande
" then and bee well perswaded, that either liuing or dead I
" will performe my will and pretended purpose, which so with-
" out measure and with vnquenchable fire doth burne in my
" heart. Thus with great strength she did defend her selfe, and
" with a manly courage she kepte her honour, but this cruell
" and lasciuious king seeing that he coulde not fulfill his euill
" desire, in a greate madnesse he cut off a greate parte of the
" traine of her gowne, and bound it verie fast to the haire of her
" head, in such sort, that with the great strength he put thereto,
" and the tenderneste of the same, together with his euill in-
" treating, all the greene grasse was sprinkeled with the bloud
" that issued out, whereat he beleeued that she would haue ben
" quiet, and haue consented vnto him, but she respected not the
" euill intreating, but the more he procured to torment her, the
" more angrie she shewed her selfe against him with continu-
" all denial. When this cruell traitour sawe that all woulde
" not serue, he beganne to forget all faith and loyaltie he ought
" vnto knighthoode, and the respect he shoulde haue vnto such
" as she was, but blasphemed against heauen, and tearing her
" clothes all to peeces, he stripped her starke naked, and with
" the raines of the bridle of his palfraie hee all to be whipped
" and scourged her white and tender backe, that it was
" full of blewe spottes, with such horrible cruelte that it
" was a verie grieuous and sorrowfull sight to beholde. And
" yet this did profit him nothing at all: hee seeing that this da-
" mosell did still perseuer and continue in her defence, hee

straight

straight wayes lyke a blondie monster heaped crueltie vpon crueltie, and toke and bounde her well proportioned and christalline armes and legges with cordes, and made them fast verie strongly vnto a trée, saying. O cruell and more cruell then euer anie woman in all the worlde hath bene, wherefore hast thou béene the occasion to bring thy selfe to bée thus so euill and mischieuously intreated, and onely for not giuing consent vnto him, which alwayes wouldo haue procured thy ease? What dooest thou thinke, is it better to suffer to be thus martyred, then to liue a most louing, faithfull, and contented lyfe. Then this euill intreated Ladie with a hoarse voyce answered and sayde vnto him. Oh wicked traytour, more harde hearted then euer knight hath bene, wherefore dooest thou make anie delaye, tell mée thou enimie to the Gods, why dooest thou not finish thy crueltie, and take the soule from this my miserable and wofull bodie? Doest thou not do it, because it shall not goe and complaine whereas thou shalt receiue the reward of this thy mercilesse inhumanitie. O you Gods, denie mée not my right iustice against this false and traiterous king? Let not to be true executioners of iustice in reuenging so damnable a déede. And thus being wearied with the cruell and terrible torments, shée held her peace and sayde no more. But for all this, the king did not let to prosecute his crueltie, and with great anger he looked on her, hauing his accursed eyes fired, in such sorte that he coulde not withdrawe them backe. Then this tormented Ladie séeing him, and béeing verie desirous of the death, with a furious voyce she sayde: What dooest thou thinke thou traitour, the greatest traitour that euer was in the world, wherein dost thou contemplate thy selfe, thou fleshly Butcher, thou vnmercifull Tyger, thou lecherous hogge and dishonourer of the royall crowne, make an ende of these thy tormentes, for it is nowe too late to repent thée, giue mée the death, and sende mée into the bosome of Diana. This vnpitifull king, seeing the stedfastnesse that shee hadde in the defence of her honour, with a cruell and infernall

" ceiue great ioy & contentment. But what sorrow did I then
" feele, (nothing thinking of that which shoulde happen, for
" that my heart was ignorant of the knowledge thereof) but
" to see hir depart from me, for whose absence my heart remai-
" ned in so great sorrowe and heauinesse: giuing to vnderstand
" by the outward shewes, & by the teares that proceeded from
" my eyes, the great paine and passion that the lacke thereof
" wold shortly procure: & in this sorrowfull sort, I was forced
" almost without any remembraunce, to retourne vnto ỹ pal-
" laice. And they were not so sone entred into his ships, but
" as one very gelous to kepe close his treason, he commaun-
" ded straight to hoyse vp sayles, and commit them vnto the
" winde, and hauing so good and prosperous a weather, in a
" very short time he arriued in his owne Countrie, whereas
" two leagues from the Citie, he was receiued of his subiects
" with great maiestie, who brought with them both horse and
" Palfrayes needfull for the companie. So being all in a rea-
" dinesse, he commaunded that they should beginne to marche
" forward towards the Citie. This false King still persisting
" in his euill determined purpose, commaunded (as I sayde,)
" that all the company should proceed forwards, and he with
" my sorrowfull daughter Herea, remained a good waye be-
" hinde. And when he sawe his company so farre before, and
" they two alone together, he stepped on the one side, and ledde
" the waye into a little grove which was hard at hande, fast
" by a Riuers side. Ye without any more tarrieng, carried hir
" into the thickest part therof, and as it appeared he was well
" acquainted in the same, and where he thought it most con-
" uenient, he alighted off from his horse, and willed my most
" welbeloued daughter that she shoulde likewise alyght. She
" in whose heart raigned no kinde of suspition, alyghted, and
" sate hir downe by the Riuers side, and washed hir fayre
" white handes, and refreshed hir mouth with the same wa-
" ter. Then this dissembling traytor could not refrayne, but
" by some outward shewes, and darke sentences, gaue hyr to
" vnderstande, the kindeled fire of loue, with the which he was
" tormented, and in the ende he did wholy declare his diuelish

pretence and determined purpose towards hir. So my lo-
uing daughter Herea, being ſore troubled with his impor-
tunate and continuall requeſts, with great anger, yet not
without admiſement, ſhe began to reprehende him, giuing
him to vnderſtand, all that was needfull againſt ſo diueliſh
a pretence. This vncleane King when he heard, that ſo ear-
neſtly and contrary to his expectation ſhe anſwered, and
would haue roſe vp from the place whereas ſhe ſate, held
hir faſt by hir apparayle, and would not ſuffer hir to ariſe,
but began with ſofte and milde wordes to perſwade hir to
be quiet, and ſayde. O my beſt beloued Ladie, wherefore
wilt thou conſent, that for thy cauſe I ſhoulde dye, & mayſt
now very well without being diſcouered of any, giue mee
remedie for the ſame? Be not then obſtinate to denye mee
that, which with ſo great loue I do deſire of thee. Who is
heere that can beare witneſſe of this my priuie deſire, and
bolde enterpriſe, neither diſcouer thy gentle liberalitie ſhew-
ed me? not one ſurely, but onely the immortall Gods. Vn-
derſtande this for a certaintie (my ſweete Ladye) that the
God Iupiter doth receiue more griefe in this my forſwe,
then in the paine which thou doſt ſuffer. This deceiued Da-
moſell, when ſhe ſawe that he held hir ſo faſt with his tre-
cherous hande, that ſhe could not deliuer hir ſelfe, with
furious anger ſhe sayde. Traytor do not thou thinke that
theſe thy lecherous wordes haue power to moue my hearte,
to graunt and fulfill theſe thy filthie, diueliſh, and laſciuious
thoughts: for heere I do execrate vnto thee by the high and
ſoueraigne Gods, that firſt I will permit & ſuffer my body
to bee torne in peeces, then to open my eares vnto the hea-
ring of ſo great treaſon. Therefore falſe King let me alone,
and conſider with thy ſelfe, that I am ſiſter vnto thy wife,
whome I ſee well thou haſt forgotten, by reaſon of this
thy inſatiable dronkenneſſe, and greedye deſire of filthye
luſt. Therefore if it pleaſe thee determine to let mee alone,
and defile me not, or elſe to the contrarie bee fully perſwa-
ded of this, that I will rather dye the death in my defence.
When this curſed king ſeeing that this chaſt Ladye

" for the loue of them, by force whereof he sent vnto mée his
" Embassadours, desiring me that I would thinke wel of him,
" and to giue him one of my daughters in marriage, so (not
" respecting his accustomed treason, but rather considering the
" great honour that might redound thereof for that hée was a
" mightie Prince) I thought it good to conclude with his Em-
" bassadours, and to fulfil his desire, and graunted him in mar-
" riage my eldest daughter. Then I ordeining all things that
" were necessarie and needfull for the same, in all respects con-
" uenient for her estate and my honour, I sent her with all
" the pompe ý was possible to the kingdome of Numidia, ℞ I
" retained and kept in my companie the youngest, who was
" named Herea, béing of farre more beautie then her sister, of
" which this traiterous and vnnaturall king was informed by
" them which he sent to companie with my daughter, they did
" so much exalt her for her surpassing beautie, that there was
" not in him power to make anie resistaunce against that cru-
" ell and mortall wound of Cupide, but it constrained him to
" forget his new married wife ℞ swéete companion, surrende-
" ring himselfe wholy vnto the power of ý absent Ladie, with-
" out anie consideratiõ that she was sister vnto her, that he had
" alreadie taken for wife. So this disordinate loue kindled and
" increased in him euerie daie more and more, and he was so
" troubled with this new desire, that he daily deuised with him
" selfe what meanes he might procure to obtaine her, in such
" sort, that no man might haue power to withstand him. In
" the ende he thought by pollicie and deceit to get her home to
" his kingdome, and sent vnto me, requesting that I would let
" her to come vnto her sister Melinda to beare her companye,
" for that therein shée shoulde receiue great ioye and com-
" fort, to passe awaie the troublesome time of her Sisters bée-
" ing with childe, for that shée sayde, with her companye shée
" shoulde thinke the time farre more shorter, and shoulde
" passe it ouer with much more ease, especially for that the
" loue she bare her sister was so much as to her owne selfe, and
" although I was not aduertised of the euill euent which
" might happen in sending her, yet did I make excuse, that

by

by reaſon I was an olde man, and had no other comforte but hir, I durſt not ſend hir, neither ſuffer hir to vnderſtande thereof, for that as I did ſuppoſe, ſhe would receiue great griefe to leaue me alone and deſolate of comfort. At ý which aunſwere this inhumane King thought very much, and was greatly grieued: notwithſtanding with meruailous craftie and ſubtiltie he did diſſemble it, till ſuch time as my daughter Melinda his wife, ſhould be brought to bed and deliuered, and then thinking that with the great ioye and pleaſure I ſhould receiue for the birth of the new borne infant, that I woulde not denye the ſending of hir. So the time expired, he ſent to me againe for hir: but I was alwayes firme, beeing reſolued not to let hir goe from me, but ſtill denied it, for that ſhe was the whole ioye and ſtaffe of my olde age. Then this trayterous King ſeeing that by no meanes he could get hir from me, ſtraight way ordayned a mightie and ſtrong armie, and came himſelfe to fetche her. And when I vnderſtood of his comming, I went to receiue him with great pompe, as was needefull for our Eſtates: and at our meeting, he requeſted me with very faire and louing wordes, that I would let my daughter goe vnto her ſiſter, to giue her that contentment which ſhe deſired, for that ſhe did loue hir more than hir ſelfe. Thus his craftie and ſubtill perſwaſions ſo much preuayled, by reaſon of the humilitie and loue he ſhewed in his wordes, that I coulde not frame any excuſe to the contrary, (he was ſo importunate,) but muſt needs conſent vnto his demaund. O immortall Gods, that in ſo ſecret wiſe ye made the heart of man, that you onely can comprehende the good and euill that is hid in it. Who would haue thought, (much leſſe haue beleeued) that this traiterous King by his ſweete wordes and ſubtill ſpeaches would haue robbed me of my onely daughter. So ſtraight waye, when he had in his power, ý which his ſoule ſo much deſired, he would not make any delay of his departure, giuing me to vnderſtande, that he would not let any time, but carrie hir vnto his wife, for whoſe ſight ſo much ſhe had deſired, and at whoſe comming ſhe would re-

of some sorrowfull teares, in seeing before him so lamentable a spectacle and to thinke that so greate cruelltie should be shewed vnto a womã of such beautie. This pittiful Emperour had great compassion when he saw first the counterfait of this tormented creature, but much more without all comparison, his sorrowfull heart lamented when hee beheld the naturall bodie, for that all her flesh seemed to be christalline stones, by the greate whiteneſſe and beautie it had, shee had all her legges spoiled with the torments of cordes, and all her bodie wounded with whippings, and that cruell and strangling towell about her necke. The Emperour was a greate while in grauous contemplation in beholding of this lamentable sight (as I haue tolde you) and with him was alwaies this fayre and beautifull Lidia, till at the last, lifting vp his eyes, he sawe a Table which hanged vppon a beame, whereon was written these wordes which followeth.

"O thou knight which hast passed by the kepers of this "my pittifull daughter, if thou wilt confirme the oath which "thou hast made, lift vp the pillowe wherein her wretched "head doth lye, and vnder it thou shalt finde written in a "scrowle of Parchment all the successe of her beautie and "sorrowfull death, for that in vnderstanding it, thou shalt be "the more prouoked to incourage thy selfe to procure her re"uengement, seeing that so much without fault or desert she "suffered it. The Emperour did as was there declared, and ra"tified and confirmed there a new his oath, and lifting vp the "pillowe he found a sheete of Parchment rolled vp together, "which he opened. Heere will I make an ende of this Chap"ter, to receiue some ease in telling of this that is past, & turne "vnto the other, to declare vnto you the most dolorus and gre"uous history that euer hath bene heard or seene.

¶ How the Emperour did open the scrowle of Parchment, and therein read the cause why this dead Ladie was slaine, with such cruell tyrannie, and of the great sorrow that hee receiued for the same. Cap. 12.

YE faire Ladies and Damoſells, for that ther be ſome, which without hauing anye knowledge of your deſeruings, that take great pleſure with their venemous words & poyſoned pennes to intreate euill of your honors and fame, publiſhing vniuſtly that, which with iuſt reaſon and by nature, they are bound with all their abilitie to reſtraine. Likewiſe, all valyaunt Knights, are bound either by force of armes, or els by ſufficient concluſions, to defend your fame, from ſuch falſe detractors. So heere therfore I do requeſt, all you bountifull and beautifull Ladies, to pardon this my ouer much hardineſſe, for that heere I preſume to declare that, which ſhould be of all vnderſtood, & in eſpeciall of your firme loyaltie, hauing for a mirrour before your eyes this faire Lady, who hath not deſerued to ſuffer ſo cruell a death. So as I haue tolde you, the Emperor toke from vnder the pillowe, the ſcroll of parchment, and opening it he read it ouer, which contained theſe ſorowfull words.

I the heaule and vnhappie King of Cimarra, which in times paſt haue bene much eſteemed, by reaſon of my great eſtate, wherein Fortune fauoured me very much, as alſo for two faire daughters, in all poynts ſo exquiſite, as Nature could poſſibly frame, in whom I toke much delight: but yet in the end, that which I thought ſhuld moſt content me, the very ſame was the occaſion, ỹ I receiued this great torment, which is ſuch, ỹ no humane creature can ſuffer it. My two daughters (as before I ſaid) were indued with wonderfull beautie, & accompanied with no leſſe honeſtie, than was conuenient for their high eſtate: whoſe great fame was blazed all the world ouer, by reaſon wherof my court was honored wᵗ diuers ſtrange princes & knights, & ſpecially with thoſe of Africa, ſo ỹ it grew to be ỹ moſt nobleſt court that euer king had. Some came to ſee ỹ worthy knights, & others with great deſire to marrie with my daughters: but aboue all the king of Numidia called Noraldino, who being abſent by ỹ fame of their ſurmounted beauties was taken priſoner

his sworde right vp with the point, and by reason that hée was fast with his clawes vpon the helme, hée could not lose himselfe so quickly, but that the Emperour did hurt him in such sorte, that he thrust all his sworde into his bellie. And when the Griffin felt himselfe so sore hurt, he pulled with so great strength, that if the helme had not left his head, he had pulled the Emperour vp into the aire with him, which would not haue fallen out well with him, but God was so pleased, that in that time the lases with the which it was made fast brake. This Griffin feeling himselfe pearced with this mortall wound, cut through the aire, as a whirlwind, with great and terrible shrikes, but straight hée fell downe dead to the earth, for that the wounde reached vnto his heart.

The Giaunt when he beheld his Griffin to be dead, made no more a dow, but entred into the castle to arme himselfe, the which the Emperour well perceiued, which made him to make spéede to fetch his shield, whereas this infernal birde had let it fall. So not long after this gyant came forth al armed with armour of a boyled skinne, with a great club full of knots in his hande, saying with a hoarse and terrible voice. Doe not thinke thou knight of the Diuell, for all that thou hast slaine the képer of my Castell, that the entering is anie whit the more at thy commaundement, and hereof thou maist be sure, whereat the Emperour answered neuer a word, but rather inuited him to battel, & they ioyned together like two furious tygers, hauing their defence in their hands, burning with great fury the one against the other. Then they thrust themselues forwardes with meruailous force and spéede one against another, discharging their great and mightie blowes that it was wonderfull to beholde. But the Emperour did not determine to receiue the blowes of his enimie fullis and whole, but rather procured that he shoulde discharge them in vaine, and so hée did, for the Gyaunt lift vp his greate and huge clubbe to strike him therewith a maruailous and mightie blowe, which when the Emperour perceiued it to descend, he stepped a side wt so great lightnesse, that it séemed to be wonderfull, in such sort that his clubbe

fell

fell doſwne to the ground without doing anie harme. Then this valiaunt warriour before the Gyaunt had time to recouer and lift vp his heauie club againe, ſtroke him on both his armes ſuch a terrible and furious blow, that he cut them both off, and they fell to the ground. When the Gyant ſawe himſelfe ſo ſore arayed, like a raueuing Woulfe he ranne to him and would haue imbraced him, but the Emperour with his accuſtomed knighthode gaue a thruſt at his breaſt, that by the great ſtrength thereof he thruſt his ſwoorde cleane through his bodie, ſo that the point came out at his backe almoſt the halfe ſwoord, wherewith this Gyant gaue ſo great a fall to the earth, that it ſeemed a whole Towre had tumbled doſwne. When the Emperour ſawe this good ſucceſſe he had againſt his enimies, and in ſo ſhort time, hee kneeled doſwne vpon his knees, and gaue thankes vnto our Lord Jeſu Chriſt for the victorie, in ouercomming two ſuch infernal monſters as they were. The faire Ladie ſeing the Emperour in battaile with ſo diueliſh a monſter, ranne and fetched his helme which the Griffon had carried awaie, & brought it vnto him with all the ſpeede that might be. The Emperour who perceiued the great care which this Ladie had, and the diligence ſhe vſed to helpe him in ſo great neede, he gaue her heartie thankes, and toke his helme and put it on his head, and made it faſt, and when he ſaw that there was none to diſturbe him of his entering into the Caſtell, he went vnto the doore whereas he found the Gyaunt lying along at the threſholde, and entered in thereat, and lead this faire Ladie with him by the hande, for that ſhee woulde neuer leaue him, and ſo they entered in at the Caſtle gates, without finding anie to diſturbe them, and paſſed on till they came vnto a faire large and great hall, whereas by certaine windowes verie ſubtilly deuiſed from the toppe thereof they receiued light, and in the middeſt thereof was a ſtately bedde, adorned all with blacke clothes, and vppon the bedde was the perfect figure of that Image of Chriſtall, which they ſawe in the middeſt of the high waye. The Emperour could not by anie manner of meanes refraine from ſhedding

he arose on his feete and went vnto a place thereby, whereas was made fast to a piller a verie furious griffon, which with greate ſpæde he did vnloſe out of his chaines, and hæ was no ſoner at libertie, but that with great furie he flew vp into the aire more ſwifter then an Eagle, and as you doe ſæ a Hawke houering in the ayre, till ſuch time as the Hearne riſeth out of the water, and then with greate furie falleth downe right on her praie, ſo likewiſe this furious Griffon when he ſawe his time, with a meruailous and infernall furie deſcended right downe, but when the Emperour ſawe that he deſcended with ſuch furie, hæ cauſed the Ladie to ſhrowd her ſelfe vnder an olde houſe that was there at hand, and hæ couered himſelfe with his ſhælde, and hauing his ſwoorde in his hande at that time as the Griffon deſcended with ſo great violence (that it ſomewhat feared the Emperour) notwithſtanding hæ lifted his ſhælde for to receiue that terrible blowe of his clawes, which fall was with ſo greate force, that he pulled the ſhæld cleane from his arme, but this valiant warriour ſtroke him ſuch a blowe with his ſwoord, ỹ he thought hæ had cut him in two pæces; but yet he found his feathers to be ſo harde, that he had done him no harme, and although his hard feathers did defend him, not to receiue anie hurt with the ſwoorde, yet it could not bæ but hæ muſt nædes fæle ſome griefe by the greatneſſe of the blowe, for that with a græuous ſhrike he mounted vp into the ayre, giuing a thouſande tournings. When the Emperour ſawe himſelfe without his ſhælde, which that infernall Bird had carryed with him into the aire, and let it fall downe againe a great wayes diſtant from the ſame place where hæ was, it made him to haue alwayes a verie good and diligent eie, to ỹ griffon to marke when he would deſcend, who ſtraight way began to deſcende, vnto his thinking with much more furie then at the firſt. And loke euen as the Eagle when ſhe hath caught a Viper, doth procure to pull off her ſkinne in ſtriking her vppon a harde ſtone, whereby to ſaue her ſelfe that ſhe be not ſtriken with that ſtrong poiſon, and ſo in

ſafetie

safetie to deuour her praie: euen so did this Griffon flying here and there from one place to another, to see where hee might laye holde on the Emperour, without receiuing such lyke harme as before hee did. And as by force of the water the Mill carryeth the stone about with greate furie, euen so this worthie warriour bestowed himselfe for to defende him from this furious beast, yet he coulde not doo so much, but that he must needes receiue some of his terrible blowes, and his swiftnesse was such in rising into the ayre, and falling downe, that hee coulde not fasten one blow on him with his sworde, but he did hurt the Emperour with his clawes sometimes on the armes and sometimes on the healme, but yet coulde he neuer haue anie fast holde on him to doo him harme, for that he neuer stoode still, but mouing here and there, shunning his blowes, euen as a furious Lyon, who in the time of slæpe is molested and troubled with small beasts, cræping on him in all places, which he fæling with his mouth, snappeth here and there on euerie parte rounde about, so long, til in ẏ end being throughly incẽsed, at once they paie for all the iniuries that they did him: euen so this baliaunt Emperour vsed himselfe with this terrible Griffon, flourishing with his sworde round about on euerie side, awaiting opportunitie at one time to requite him for all the sorrowe that hee did him, but in the ende sæing that it did little profit him in doing this, he sodeinly bethought him of another remedie, which was to kneele downe with one of his knees on the grounde, that when the Griffin shoulde descend more lower to hurt the Emperour, that then with as great lightnesse as he coulde, he woulde rise vp, and with more ease strike him, which he presently did put in practise, So this terrible Griffon descended downe, and with one of his sharpe clawes he clasped fast holde on the Emperours healme. Then the Emperour seeing this fierce Griffon now to descend down more lower then he did before at other times, he thought it not good to be idle at anie time, but with exceeding greate lightnesse he arose vp and carryed

this

The Emperour who was moued with much compaſſion of the great trauaile of this Ladie, and ſomewhat to refreſh hir in the aire, he cauſed hir to goe a lande, and taking hir by the hande, he did helpe hir out of the Gallie, and they reſted themſelues vpon a little mountaine, from which place they might diſcouer a great parte of the Ilande, and more they diſcouered a great way from thence, another ſmal mountaine, vpon the which there ſeemed to be a fire, or light, and making little account thereof, they aſked ſomewhat to eate, which ſtraight way was brought them by the marriners, & ſo they refreſhed themſelues. They had ſcarce made an end of eating, when that they heard a terrible ſhrike, which was ſuch, that the faire Lady loſt hir colour: but the Emperour roſe vp on his feete, and loked round about him to ſee if he could perceiue what it ſhuld be, but he could ſee no more thē, than he ſawe at the firſt, and ſo retourned and ſate down againe: but he was not ſcant ſetled, when he heard the lyke ſhrike again. The Emperour turned and roſe vp the ſecond time, and ſaid: Who art thou, that doſt thinke to make me afraide with theſe thy ſhrikes, I tell thee that thou art verie much deceiued: thou wilt rather giue me occaſion thus in offending me, to take what thou art that makeſt this terrible noyſe. And with theſe words he ſayd vnto the Lady, that ſhe ſhould returne vnto the galley, for that he would goe ſee what thing it ſhould be, the which ſhe would not conſent vnto, but would nedes goe in the company of the Emperour. And when the Emperour ſaw the determination of ỹ courragious Damoſell, he threwe his ſhield vpon his arme, and laced and made faſt his healme, and ſo a foote they toke their waye towards the place whereas the light was, for that towardes that parte they heard the noyſe. And trauailing in the middeſt of the waye, at the foote of a hill, they found an Image of fine Chriſtall, which ſeemed to be wrought by the handes of ſome excellent workeman, all to be ſpotted with blood. And it appeared by the woundes that were formed in the ſame figure, that it was the Image of one that had ſuffered great tormentes, as well with terrible cuttings,

of

of yrons, as with cruell whippings. The legs and the armes did seme as though they had bene martired and wrong with cordes, and about the necke, as though it had bene strangled with a towell hard wrong, and there was written vpon the breast, with letters of lively blood, this Epitath. I am Herea the Kings daughter of Cimarra, violated and slaine by Noraldino King of Numidia. And thou knight that this present spectacle shalt viewe, I doo desire thee, that if thou dost goe forward this way, let it be with great courage, for to take vengeaunce on this crueltie, for that I am not of my selfe able to seeke reuengement. This Emperour, who had wel considered ỳ great crueltie ỳ had bene vsed against that infortunate ladie, being moued with great compassion he sayd, I do vow that if there be any meanes whereby to be reuenged of this thy death, to procure it with all my power: and with this determined purpose, they proceeded on their waye, and went so farre, that they perceiued, that the light which they hadde seene, did proceede of two gates of fine Christall: and there they saw in the high way, a great pillar, whereon was hanged a written table, with these contents: Knight, looke wel vnto the oath which thou hast taken, for that this is a perilous enterprise: and from this place thou hast license to retourne backe a gaine, and not to fulfill thy promise, for that the King of Cimarra, will not constraine nor force any manner of Knight. The Emperour said, As well they maye raise from death to life all the famous Romanes, which haue ben from the time of Romulus vnto Cæsar, and all the rest vnto this time, as to perswade me to retourne from my promise, which I haue made: and if they were all present liuing, they were not sufficient to cause me to leaue my oath. Therfore here now I do sweare again, neuer to returne into Greece, till such time, as I haue performed that which I haue sayd. And thus burning with great desire to se ỳ end of this sorowfull aduenture, he proceeded forwardes, vntill such time as they came to the Christall gates, the which they fownde open, and at the thresholde of the entring there laye a long a greate and huge Gyaunt, who when he saw this knight,

he

" foꝛe I did plainly declare it to him, which greeued him no
" thing at all,(but rather vnto my ſeeming)he was verie well
" pleaſed therewith,ſo by all meanes poſſible I did pꝛocure to
" ſpeake with him,and imagining which ſhoulde be the beſt
" waie, I thought it good to oꝛdaine a hunting, thinking there
" to haue oppoꝛtunitie to be alone in the thickeſt of the foꝛ-
" reſt, and there to eaſe and lighten my ſelfe ſomewhat of
" that beauie loue,which by ſoꝛꝛow I receiued,in giuing him
" to vnderſtand the whole effect of my determined minde: ſo
" this hunting I put in vꝛe, and toke the mountaines and
" woodes,and the hunts men pꝛouided the game,being a great
" Hart,which Hart was(as in the end it pꝛoued) accurſed in
" my ſight,yea,moꝛe woꝛſe then the ſhield of Pallas in the eyes
" of Meduſa,which made all people to deſire to followe her:
" ſo the hunts men followed their game with ſuch haſt, that
" there I was left alone,remaining only in my companie this
" knight,who was halfe perſwaded of my determination, ſo
" I had ſcant well framed my eyes to content mee in behold-
" ing of his chꝛiſtalline countenaunce, when that vppon a ſo-
" deine we were beſet and betrayed of a great and furious gy-
" aunt,and with him eight knightes moꝛe, in ſuch ſoꝛte, that
" my Brenio had not time to defend vs,noꝛ I to call foꝛ helpe
" and ſuccour,ſo that we were theyꝛ pꝛiſoners,and they carri-
" ed vs,and put vs into their theeuiſh Galley,whereas ſtraight
" waye they hoiſed ſaile,and carryed vs to ſea, wee being
" without all hope of ſuccour, and there was I with greate
" trauaile deliuered from the hands of a vile theefe,that would
" haue diſhonoured mee. And ſo hauing the winde pꝛoſperous
" to their deſire, wee aꝛriued verie ſhoꝛtly after at an Iſlande
" called Otono, which is adioyning vnto one parte of your
" Kingdome,whereas wee went a lande. Noble Pꝛince,I did
" not feele ſo much foꝛce by my impꝛiſonment, neyther did I
" receiue ſo much griefe foꝛ mine owne ſoꝛꝛow,as I did foꝛ my
" beſt beloued Brenio, who was ſo laden wᵗ yꝛons & chaines,
" that my heart coulde not by anie meanes ſuffer it, but I
" beganne to call them traitours, and that they were no
" Knightes,but theeues and robbers,ſaying, that ouer one a-

lone

lone & an vnarmed knight they haue ſtrength to worke ſuch violence, but not able to make anie reſiſtaunce againſt armed knightes. And the Gyaunt aunſwered, Oh how ſimple doeſt thou ſhewe thy ſelfe, in thinking that there is anie who is able to reſiſt our ſtrength, and for that thou ſhalt vnderſtande and ſee howe little wee doe eſteeme the ſtrength of men (yea, the ſtrength of the Gods wee make no reckoning of) take this Gallie and all thinges that ſhall be neceſſarie for thy voyage, and take with thee one of theſe my Pages, and goe and ſeeke the Emperour Trebatio, or eyther of his two ſonnes, whoſe fames are ſpread throughout the worlde, and bring them hether, and ſee whether theyr ſtrength is ſufficient for to deliuer this thy knight out of priſon. So I put this iourny ſtraight in practiſe, & departed, and in the voyage I eſcaped with greate daunger to be robbed at ſea by rouers and théues, ſo in the ende I came and preſented my ſelfe before your highneſſe. The Emperour who was verie attentiue to all this which the ſorrowfull Ladie had tolde him, and vnderſtanding the cauſe of all her trouble, he anſwered. Oh happie & venterous knight, to whõ loue hath ſhewed ſo much fauour, to cauſe ſo noble as Damſell as thou art, with thy trauaile to procure his libertie: how much is he bound vnto thée faire Ladie, ſeeing that thou doeſt deſerue the praiſe of all other women that hath béene wounded with loue, & theſe thy déeds to be regiſtred for a perpetuall memorie, & for an example to all other ladies. Noble Lidia, of truth I tell thee, ỳ my departure from Conſtantinople was with ſome ſorrow, to leaue my Empire and ſubiects, but now I am voide thereof, & am glad ỳ I am come to procure thy remedie, & the death ſhal be vnto me a happie death, receiuing it for a ladie that is ſo loiall. Theſe & ſuch like reaſon of a perfect louer ỳ Emperour expreſſed, when vpon a ſodaine they were conſtrained to leaue the waye they tóke, by force of ỳ wind, which came with ſuch gales, that they were faine to take another waie, which carried them vnto a deſolate Iland, wher by force of wether they entered into a port, ỳ was knowen by the marriners, & there let fall their anker.

The

" I praie you if now I ſhould falſifie my promiſe, what hope
" of confidence hereafter ſhoulde remaine in you of my ver-
" tue? Of truth I ſaie vnto you, that Prince which doth not
" kæpe and maintaine his faith which hæ hath promiſed in
" giuing his worde, hæ is vnworthie of lyfe. And ſæing that
" I haue graunted this iourney, although you be diſpleaſed
" therewith, I beſæch you comfort your ſelues, for that by iu-
" ſtice I am conſtrained to goe, truſting in almightie God to
" retourne againe vnto you with greate honour and renowne.
" What woulde the worlde ſaie, when that for feare of hu-
" maine thinges I leaue to mainetaine iuſtice and righteouſ-
" neſſe, and the obſeruation and kæping of my worde? Surely
" they woulde report me for a Prince of ſmall vertue, & dæme
" you (ſo perſwading mæ) not worthie of a good Prince, for y
" many times God doth ſhew his power, whereas the weak-
" neſſe of humane thinges be without all hope. Therefore I
" dow deſire you all (my friendes) that you will not withdrawe
" mæ from this my pretended purpoſe, for if I were not wil-
" ling thereunto, you were all bound to complaine of mæ. And
" making an ende of theſe his reaſons he began to arme him-
" ſelfe. The Empreſſe that of all this thing was ignorant,
" when ſhæ vnderſtood therof by ſome of them that were pre-
" ſent with the Emperour, ſhæ came with ſhedding of many
" teares for to hinder and withdrawe him from his iourney:
" the Emperours heart was ſomewhat græued to heare hir
" ſorrowfull wordes, but with an heroycall courage he com-
" maunded her to returne vnto her cloſet, and willed all thoſe
" that were preſent to goe and beare her companie, and would
" that none ſhould remaine with him but Brandimardo, vnto
" whom the Emperour in greate ſecret ſayd: That when Ro-
" ſicleer or the knight of the Sun ſhould returne to the court,
" that hæ ſhoulde tell them that he was gone to Lidia at the
" inſtaunt of the Ladye, for to reſtore her againe to her king-
" dome. With this he did charge him verie much, and that
" they ſhoulde ſtraight wayes and without anie delaye de-
" parte for that place: Brandimardo thought greate friend-
ſhippe in this which the Emperour commaunded, and gaue

him

him greate thankes, with faythfull promise to accomplish the same, and taking his leaue, the Emperour straight waie entered into a Foyst that was there readie with fiue oares on a side, and hoysing sayles they made such waie that in a small time they had lost the sight of the Citie. This faire Damosell was verie gladde, and did exercise her selfe in no other thing but in seruing the Emperour. In this sort they sayled all that daie and all the night till the nert morning: this noble Emperour sate in the poope of the Galley, and by him sate this faire Ladie, on the one side, of whome hee asked the cause why shee brought him out of Constantinople. Vnto whome with manie teares distilling from her christaline eyes, and with greate sighes that proceeded from her dolorous heart, she said.

I haue tolde you noble Emperour that the force of loue hath brought mee to this extremitie wherein you nowe see me. Also I tolde you that I am Lidia, daughter vnto the king of Lidia, and was meruailously and daintely brought vp, and much set by of my parents, and now all alone with no other companie then you two see I goe subiect vnto this miserie. The great fame of this my surmounted beautie was so spred abroade, that it was the occasion that manye knightes of straunge Countryes resorted vnto the Court of the king my Father, and amongest them all there was one that came from a farre, whose name was called Brenio, of the Countrie of Lusitania, beeing of a meruailous beautie and no lesse valiauncie, which did so surmount, that in all the Countrie hath neuer bene seene the like, and cruell Cupide, I knowe not whether it was to vse his accustomed pollicies, or whether he was enuious of his beautie, hee stroke mee with his poisoned arrowe, in such sort, that I was constrained by that force to loue this vnhappie knight, and therwith constrained to forget the reiall estate from whence I descended, I did exercise my selfe in no other thing, but thinking on his loue, and determined to giue him vnderstanding thereof in as secrete wise as I could, so long it lasted that I waxed blinde in loue, & feared that he would not vnderstand ỹ I loued him, where-

" that liberall Brenio of Lusitania, I am cõstrained to procure
" his libertie, and for the performance thereof, your highnes
" shall not denie me a promise or bone that I will demaund, &
" in so doing, thou shalt performe all that is due vnto thy Es-
" state, and by duetie thou dost owe vnto such as I am. The
Emperour who was meruailous attentiue vnto all that this
faire Ladie had sayd, & very much beholding hir great beau-
" tie, he aunswered and sayd. Of my faith faire Lady, I will
" not let to remedye this thy sorrowe much more then I am
" bound to do by my high estate, and will procure by all
" meanes to ease this thy afflicted euill. Therefore now aske
" what thou semest best for thy purpose, for I am here ready
" to performe all, that by thee shall be demaunded of me. The
" Ladie sayd, I loked for no other thing but this, of thy Em-
" perial dignitie. Therfore (louereign Emperour) it is requi-
" site that alone without any other companie, you goe with
me to giue me this remedye. The Emperour although hee
sawe that it was a haynous thing at that time to leaue his
whole Court and estate, yet did he not showe any such coun-
tenance, but with a valiant corage he called for his armor,
the which was straight way brought vnto him, being all of
russet colour, and the shield of the same colour, and ther was
portrayed in it the picture of leane Death, with a sharp flesh
hooke in his hand. All the Kings and Lords that were pre-
sent at that time, would haue diswaded him from this his
enterprise, but specially and aboue all the rest, the auncient
Prince of Clarencia sayde. Soueraigne Lorde, it is not
" conuenient nor agreeable vnto your high estate, to ven-
" ture your selfe in that, which appertaineth vnto trauay-
" ling and ventrous Knights: behold Lord, Princes, although
" they be liberall in promising, yet they ought to moderate
" themselues in performing, neither should Princes be so boun-
" tifull of themselues: for many times by procuring to extoll
" their fame, they abate the worthinesse of their estate. And
" againe, he that hath not to whom to giue reckoning, but vn-
" to himselfe, to him alone doth Fortune faile. Notwithstan-
ding,

ding, thou (O ſouereigne Emperour) art more bounde to
looke and haue a care vnto your owne ſubiects, more then to
your owne perſon. And a good Prince ought rather to ſub-
iect his will to the fauouring of his people, then to pleaſe his
owne appetite. For which cauſe, honourable Lord, you muſt
pardon vs, for that we will not willingly conſent, that one-
ly for deſire of this pompous fame, that you do pretende,
we ſhould loſe your perſon. Tell me (noble Emperour) if
that Fortune ſhoulde (as ſhe was woont to do) tourne hir
whéele, and kéepe your honour from vs, it would not onelye
make an ende of you, but alſo depriue vs of the moſt nobleſt
and worthieſt Lord vnder the Sunne. All thoſe that were
there preſent, and heard theſe reaſons which the Prince vt-
tered, did greatly praiſe and allowe his diſcréte ſaieng. So
this honourable Emperour without ſhewing any alterati-
on, aunſwered and ſayd. Noble Kings and Princes, and my
very friends, I giue you great thankes for the good will you
do ſhowe mée, in that you would not that I ſhuld be abſent
from you: likewiſe you ſhall vnderſtande, that it doth as
much grieue me, to ſeperate my ſelfe from your companyes,
and I do thinke my ſelfe bleſſed to haue ſuch noble Knights
as you bée vnto my ſubiects: notwithſtanding you muſt con-
ſider, that as you do loue the bodie and perſon of your
Prince, ſo likewiſe you ſhould deſire and procure his fame
and honour, for you knowe you haue many meates that are
verye ſauourie to the taſte of anie man, and yet to the con-
trarye verye hurtfull to the ſtomacke. It is a verye good
thing to liue vnder compaſſe, and that gouerning is good, by
the which fame and honour is not diminiſhed, as this, for
that he that is bounde, muſt procure, perfourme, and main-
tayne his promiſe. For if I of my owne frée will, and to
fede myne owne appetite, hadde procured and moued this
iourney, you had had great reaſon for to haue diſſwaded
mée, but béeing ſought for, and procured héereto, by this
noble and diſtreſſed Damoſell for hir defence, then what
reaſon is it that I ſhoulde abandon my faith? Tell mée

ordaine a solépne feast for to minister the sacrament of Baptisme vnto Bramidoro, for he had so great desire to be baptised, that he would tarrie no longer.

How the king of Sardenia was baptised, and how that a Lady demanded a promise of the Emperour, which he granted, for the which all the Court was verie sad. Cap. ii.

THE next daie in the morning being Sundaie, as you haue heard, the king of Sardenia was brought to the Church to receiue his Baptisme, accompanied with all the nobilitie that at that présent were in the Emperours Court. There went with him for his Godfathers, the king of Bulgaria, and the king of Nisa, and the Emperour vsing his magnanimitie went also with him side by side, vntill he came to the Church of Saint Sofia, whereas the Cardinall of Constantinople layde Seruice and did baptise him, and confirme his owne próper name, when this was done with all the solempnitie belonging, they returned againe vnto the Pallace, in the which vpon the one side was a verie faire Damzell, apparelled all in blacke, hauing no companie, but alonely one Page, she hadde her beautifull eyes all swollen with wéping, her countenaunce was very sadde, which did verie well declare the sorowe of her heart, and beholding so noble a company to enter in, she was in quiet till such time as the Emperour entered, and by his side the king of Sardenia, who was meruailously well adorned, & of goodly greatnesse, and of faire and gentle disposition. This damzell did well know which was the Emperour, whom she did come to séeke for, so drawing nigh vnto him there distilled from her sorowfull eies fait teares, resembling orientall pearles, which ranne downe her chéekes, giuing very sorowfull and grieuous sighs, that all those which sawe her, were moued with compassion. The Emperour when he heard this beautie mourning, looked thetherward, and when he sawe her vsing his accustomed vertue, she put himselfe before her,

and

And at ſuch time as he would haue kneeled downe (hée ſéeing hir ſo faire, and of ſo excellent beautie) wold not conſent vnto it, but kept hir vp by the hand, and with ſweete words gaue hir a comfortable welcome, and like entertainment. Hir ſeuere countenance, with hir well proportioned body did declare that ſhe was worthy of all this honour. To the comfortable words which the Emperour had ſpoken, this faire and diſtreſſed Lady anſwered.

Surmounted Emperour, this my great ſorrow is ſo rooted in me, that I haue no ioye to receiue any comfort, neuertheleſſe, if it be true which I haue heard, both of thée and thy royall Court, the fame whereof, all the world doth reſound: then I am ſure that thou wilt not denie me of my requeſt, for that hetherto thou haſt not at any time denied any Lady or Damoſell, which hath requeſted the ſame, hauing neceſſitie and néede thereof: much more now, béing demaunded of thée by ſo afflicted a Damoſell as I am, being martired by the ſonne of that adultreſſe Venus, whom I may reſemble vnto the Vulture, which alwaies taketh for hir repaſt and féeding, the bowells of that infortunate Ixion, and the more paine he ſuffereth, the more hir hunger increaſeth, ſo that euermore by hir grédines, he ſuſtaineth a laſting griefe, Euen ſo (ſoueraigne Lord) loue doth torment me, & alwayes is gnawing of theſe my afflicted bowels, yet neuer do I faile them without loue, but rather alwaies, both in the Winter & Summer, in preſence and in abſence it doth ſtill increaſe: ſo that I am at no time without loue, and continuallye my faith increaſeth: and by no meanes can I receiue remedie for this griefe, but by the force and ſtrength of ſome ſtraunger, whom I do ſéeke for continually, with great ſorrowe. Therefore I do deſire thée (O ſoueraigne Emperour) if at any time thou haſt paſſed the paines of loue, that thou wouldeſt pitie them that are ſo ſore afflicted and vnfortunate, and do not denie me thy aide & helpe: for if I were the daughter of baſe parents, yet in reſpect I am a woman, thou arte bound to ſuccour and aide me. Much more, for that I am Lidia the daughter of the King of Lidia, who for the loue of

ſomewhat amazed, yet for all that, he loſt not his knightlye courage, but with a valiant heart preſſed to his enimie, and with that litle that remained of his ſword, he ſtroke Buſtrafo, vpon his helme ſuch a blowe, (that if it had bene with the whole ſword, he had cleared himſelfe at that time of this daunger) yet it was not of ſo ſmall force, but it cut off one of his eares, and carried away a peece of the iawe bone. This Gyant Buſtrafo feeling himſelfe ſo ſore hurt with this terrible blowe, pretended to repaye him with double intereſt (the which if it had chaunced to take effect) it had made an ende of his dayes: but this newe conuerted Knight, ranne in vnder the blowe of Buſtrafo, ſaieng: O Ieſus, keepe and defend this thy newe conuerted ſeruaunt. And ſo ioyning together, they imbraced one another, whereas began a marualous & ſtrong wraſtling, wherein they continued a good while prouing their ſtrengths, and procuring the victorie, the one ouer the other, till at the laſt, both being not a little wearie, they fell downe to the ground, tumbling heere and there from one place to another, without loſing their holde, & in this ſtrife Buſtrafo his helme fell from his head, by reaſon that the laces wherewith it was made faſt, were cut in peeces, ſo that his terrible and mightie face was plainlye diſcouered. But they ſeeing that this wraſtling did litle profit them, vnloſed themſelues: but the King was the firſt that roſe vp, as one that ſhewed himſelfe to haue the beſt ſtomacke, and ſeeing that all Buſtrafo his head was bare, in that he wanted his helme, he bent his armed fiſt, and ſtroke him ſuch a blowe vpon the forehead, that his braines flewe out, and his eyes ſtarted out of his head, and there this vnfortunate Gyaunt fell dead to the ground. The King ſeeing then ſo good a ſucceſſe in his battaile, fell downe vpon his knees to ꝑ ground, and lifting vp his eyes vnto heauen, he ſaide. I giue thee thankes moſt mightie Ieſus, that thou gaueſt me to vnderſtand thy power, & lightneſt my vnderſtanding for to leaue this error in the which I was led, and to come to the knowledge of thy true light. Then the Emperour came vnto him, and imbraced him, ſaieng. Worthy Giaunt, vnto whom it

hath pleased God to impart so much of his grace, I doo most heartely desire thee to tell who thou art, that we may know who it is, that hath showed vs so much fauour and curtesie, to the ende we may render thee thy due deserts, for this thy worthy deede. The Grant toke off his helme, and showed his face which was of a sober countenaunce, all to be spotted with his owne blood, and without moouing from the place wherin he kneeled, replyed and sayd, I am Bramidoro King of Sardenia, who of long time haue bene subiect to the superstitions of fained Gods, and by the prowesse of thy sonne the Knight of the Sunne, I am come to the knowledge of the almightie God, and am now ready to receiue the sacrament of baptisme. Therefore I desire thee (soueraigne Emperor) that it may be straight wayes ministred vnto me, and likewise one that maye instruct me in all that shall be necessarie for my saluation. The Emperour receiued great ioye to see a person of so great estimation, tourned vnto the knowledge of the lawe and seruice of God, and sayd. Noble king you shall a while repose your selfe, to prouide remedy in the curing and healing of your wounds, for it is right needfull, & when you are well of them, then shall all things be fulfilled that you doo desire, that shall be necessarie for you. This he sayd, for that he would haue it done with the pompe and right, that to so high a thing is requisit, and with the solemnitie ỹ in such cases they accustomed to vse: & in saying these words, he toke him by the hand, & raised him frō ỹ ground, & led him vnto the chamber of the knight of ỹ Sun, where as he was cured of the wounds that he receiued in the battaile, and was visited of all the kings, Princes & knightes, that were in the Court. The dead Giant was drawen out of the pallaice, and carried without the Citie, where, in stead of a graue to bury him, they made a great fire and consumed him to ashes. The thirde day after this aduenture was ended, ỹ king of Hungarie departed wᵭ many other knights, that were very desirous to goe into their owne countries to take their ease, at which the Emperour remained very pensiue. So the other day following, being on a sunday, they did

ſing this, he put himſelfe in a ſtraight waye, which was not farre from a foote path thereby, whereas he ſawe a man that was cutting of woode, of whome he aſked what countrie it was, and who was Lord of it. This man perceiuing that hée demaunded ſomwhat of him, was not able to anſwere him, but made ſignes vnto him that he was dumbe, & moreouer, ỹ he ſhould returne backe againe, giuing him to vnderſtande that if he did proceade forwards, he ſhould finde great peril. This noble Roſicleer ſayd then to himſelfe, I do not know what ſhall chaunce or happen me: notwithſtanding, if a thouſand that had their tongues ſhould tell me, (yet would I not do it, nor leaue off to follow this my pretended purpoſe) much more thou, whom I cannot vnderſtand. And ſo without any more tarrying, he retourned vnto his new begun iourney, and at the going vp of a hill, he beheld a Caſtle of a mightie and ſtraunge bigneſſe, which was edified vpon another hills ſide. He was a good myle from it, when he diſcouered it, and ſo iourneying thetherward, he hadde not trauailed farre, when he found himſelfe in a faire, broad, & ſmooth way, whereinto when he entred, he ſawe certaine footings of horſes, which appeared not to be made long before, but that lately they had paſſed that way: the which footings he followed, although he found other fayre wayes, and as much occupied as that wherein he was, yet for all that, becauſe he would ſée what footings they wer, he would follow that way and none other, ſo not very farre from that place where he was, he heard (although it was somwhat diſtaunt from him, to his ſéeming) a great ruſhing of harneſſe, and the more he trauailed forwards, the more plainer his eares wer occupied with this martiall muſicke. Till in ỹ end, drawing nærer, he perceiued, it was a notable & well fought battaile, for which cauſe he pricked his horſe onwardes the faſter, in ſuch ſort, ỹ at ỹ going down from a mountain, into a faire & broad plaine, he behelde at the foot of the caſtle very much people and amongſt them Giaunts, all which were in battaile againſt one onely Knight, of a maruailous great & well proportioned ſtature all armed in ruſſet harnes without any

other

other deuise thereon, who with his sword in both his hands made a merualious and cruell slaughter, for that at his feete there lay many of the knightes dead, and also of the Gyants, notwithstanding they did trouble him verie much, so that hee was brought to a verie ill passe, for he had hewing and striking on him more then fortie knights and two great gyants, it was a thing of great admiration to see how the knight did besturre himselfe beholding himselfe so beset, yet for all that there was nothing lacked for of him but death. Somewhat on the one side a little distaunt from the battell, he sawe a Damzell of a merualious excellent beautie, who with great sorrowe complained her selfe. This valiaunt warrieur seeing what this knight did for his defence, and by his mightye prowesse appeared to bee of high estate, he descended and lefte his horse, & with a quick pace he proceeded forwards with his sword in his hand, pretending to aide and helpe that one knight, seeing he had such neede thereof. Before I proceede anie farther in this battaile, I will (although it be somewhat troublesome to the reader) declare the rest of the terrible battaile that was betweene the two gyants in the great hall of the Court of the Emperour. You haue heard how we lefte these two Gyaunts Bustrafo and Bramidoro in great contention of the battell, each one of them indeuouring themselues to winne the victory, although of each parte they denyed to either other the same. He that seemed to be most troubled in this battaile, was the Sardenian King, and with the thicke breath that proceeded from his vnpacient heart, his face was inflamed with the heate thereof. The which his aduersarie perceiued, and like a terrible and outragious Tiger, he lifte vp his mightie sword, letting it fall w̄ such furie, as though fire hadde fallen from heauen. The King seeing that by no meanes he could escape it, lifte vp likewise his sworde, toward that terrible blow: but by reason that that of the Giaunt Bustrafos, was of better steele, and of more strength, hee cut the sword of the Kings in two peeces, and the blowe descended vpon his shoulder, and did a little hurt him. When this King sawe that his sword was in two peeces, hee was

out hands, he gaue a great crye and rored like a furious bull, and therewith he claſped himſelfe to the maſte of the galley, and with great eaſe he pulled it out of his place, and in an infernall rage, he woulde haue entered into the ſhippe, but Roſicleer with his handes once againe thruſt him on the breaſt in ſuch wiſe that he was conſtrained to fall downe vpon the ſide of the galley, and by reaſon of his hugeneſſe & great waight, he lyghted with the one halfe of his body ouer bord: and becauſe he had not his hands, he could not helpe himſelfe, but tumbled with his head forwards, into the deepe and wide Sea, wherein being drenched, he finiſhed his miſerable and vnhappie dayes. Then thoſe which were of his Gallie ſeeing this his wretched ende, and fearing theyr owne miſfortune, in a meruailous greate haſt vngrappeled the Shippe, which was done with ſuch ſpeede, that when Roſicleer remembred himſelfe, he had no time to offende them, nor to doo them anie more harme. Then thoſe which were in his Shippe and had behelde this ſhort and victorious battaile, beganne a new to fall downe at his feet and moſt humblie craued pardon for their former feare. Then the Prince turned towards the Tartarian, who all the time of this conflict, was beholding his excellent and mightie ſtrength, and much meruailed at that which he had ſeene, and aſked of him what he hadde determined to doe. And the Tartarian anſwered, that he would in no wiſe depart from his commaundement, and being in talke, they, vpon a ſodaine ſawe two ſhippes, which ſeemed vnto them, that they were in a great fight. Theſe Princes were meruailous deſirous to be with them, to vnderſtand what they were. So this valyaunt Greeke, tourning to the Tartarian, he ſaid, Prince of Tartaria followe mee, and in greate haſt he leaped into his Boate, and he was no ſooner entered therein, but that it beganne to make waie lyke a Thunder-bolt in the ayre, ſo that it ſeemed ſparkes of fire flew out of the water, in ſuch ſort that the Tartarian hadde no time to followe him, but by reaſon of the ſwiftneſſe, he had quicklye loſt the ſight of him.

So for that it is requiſite, let vs leaue this Tartarian, who was very ſorowfull bæing leſte alone, and commaunded the marrineers to make waye with his ſhip, towardes the other two that were a fighting. So this valiaunt Roſicleer ſayled on in his inchaunted boate, not without greate ſorrowe, for that vpon a ſodaine he had loſt his perfect friend: neuertheleſſe for that he did vnderſtand that he was carried to conclude the things that were more for his contentment, he was driuen to comfort himſelfe, with that which moſt he loued. So with theſe great thoughtes, he ſailed two dayes without any aduenture worthy the telling. But the thirde daye very early in the morning, at ſuch time as Appollo ſhewed abroad his gliſtering beames, they diſcouered lande, whether the barke with terrible furie made waye: and it ſeemed vnto him to be a very ſmall Iſland, where they arriued, neuertheleſſe by the proſpect of the riuers, it appeared to be a place of great delyght, and full of meddowes and other græne fieldes. So by the reſting of this barke a grounde, Roſicleer vnderſtood that there he ſhould goe aland, wherefore he deſcended out of the barke, and after him came his good horſe, and to the ende he would trauell in more ſafetie, he mounted on his backe, and loked round about him, if hæ coulde diſcouer any waye or path. But not farre from the place whereas he was, he beheld very faire and ſumptuous buildings, wherewith he toke the way that led him thether, and being nigh thervnto, he ſaw ý it was old & auncient building. And as he went round about it a while for to beholde the ſame, he ſaw ý ouer the principall gate, was this ſuperſcription written. This is the famous and auncient Temple of the goddes Venus, from whence the noble Paris of Troy, ſtole the faire Queene Helena: this is the Iland of the mother of that cruell Cupide the greateſt ſower of diſcord in all the world. This valiant Knight did very much content himſelfe in beholding that olde and ſumptuous Temple, the name whereof was ſpred throughout all the world, and lefte not any thing, neither without nor within, but beholde it fully to his contentment. After that he had ſpent a little time in peruſing

for his armour, vttering theſe words.

" O you people moſt vnfortunate, frō whence hath come this " hardineſſe vnto you, to offend the King of Tyre, vnderſtan- " ding and knowing, that I am not onely feared of men, but " alſo the Gods in the high heauens do tremble at my name, " and deſire to haue my friendſhip. Then Roſicleer aunſwered " and ſayd, Make thy reckoning, that thou haſt ſayd euen as " much as nothing, for of my ſelfe I ſpeake, that I am none " of the Gods thou nameſt, neither know I thee by the name " thou telleſt, nor yet do I deſire thy friendſhip, nor any others " that practiſeth the like workes, as thou doſt, neither, do I " eſteeme thy threatnings, nor yet thy furious coūtenance, nei- " ther can thy great body put me in any feare. And with this, he commaunded the marriners to grapple the ſhippe & Gal- ley together very ſtrongly. Which, when this fierce King ſawe, with great anger he aroſe out of his chaire, and not tarrying to lace on his helme, would haue entered into the ſhippe: but Roſicleer perceiuing his pretence, thruſte him with ſo great force, with both his hands vpon the breſt, that he made him to fall backwardes into his owne galley, and ſayd. Stand backe thou infernall creature, & take thee to thy armor, what, doſt thou thinke ý thou meeteſt with ſuch as thou art wont to do, to feare them with thy diueliſh coun- tenaunce? Thou ſhalt haue neede both of armour and hands, for to deliuer thee from the puniſhment of the iuſt Iudge, whoſe reward ſhal now be executed vpon thee, for thy vniuſt workes, and cruell cuſtomes, wherein thou haſt long con- tinued.

There was neuer ſeene amongſt ſauage beaſtes ſo much anger, as at this inſtaunce appeared in the Giant, and with the madneſſe of his heart, he drewe out his mightie & bea- uie ſworde, wherewith he woulde haue ſtroken Roſicleer, but this valiant Knight with great diſcretion, ſtepped on the one ſide, ſo that his blowe was diſcharged in vaine, onelye it ſtroke vpon the ſide of the ſhippe, and it fell with ſuche great ſtrength that it cut the ſhippe downe, euen with the galley.

This

This noble Greeke was nothing at all idle, but hauing his rare and precious Swoorde, which Quæne Iulia had sent him, in his hande, hee stroke a terrible and fierce blow at the Gyauntes face, but by reason he was so farre off, he coulde not reach it, but that the point of his sharpe Swoorde onelye passed throughe his cheekes, but if he coulde haue comprehended more of his head with that blowe, he had made an end of the battayle. This furious Gyaunt when hee sawe his bloud before him, he gaue a terrible groane, and therewith toke his broade sworde in both his handes, and with blaspheming and cursing his Gods, hee lyft it vp for to strike this valiaunt Greeke, who seeing it to descende, determined not to receiue so doubtfull a blow, but with great and singular wisedome deliuered himselfe from it. The blowe was such that if it had not doubled in the maine sayle which somewhat disturbed it, it had beene sufficient to haue diuided the Shippe in peeces. This valyaunt and martiall Prince, which with greate discreation and aduisement sustayned this battaile, had alwayes a verye good eye to the Gyaunt, who for to vnloose his Swoorde where it was fast in the Shippe, was inforced to put his lefte hande to holde fast by the shippe side, whereat Rosicleer stroke with such furie that the Gyants hand remained fast to the Shippes side, diuided from the arme. But when this terrible and fierce Gyaunt sawe himselfe lame, and that he had cleane lost his lefte hand, hee began a newe to curse and blaspheme his Gods, and procured to hurt this Greeke by all meanes possible that hee coulde inuent, but he prouided so to the contrarie, that not one blowe which the Gyaunt stroke should eyther touch or hurt him, in such sort, that at last when this furious & outragious diuel striuing to strike this Greeke Knight, was driuen to ballaunce his bodie, thereby to reache at him, this Knight let passe the same blowe euen as hee did all the rest of his blowes, and in passing by hee gaue him such a cruell blowe vppon the right arme, that he cut it off almost by the elbowe.

And when this miserable king sawe himselfe without

At the which wordes the Prince was verie sore troubled, but a certaine aduenture which chaunced him at that verie same time, caused him to forgette this his troubled minde.

¶ How the king of Tire gaue an assault to robbe the shippe where the Prince was, and how the same king was ouercome, Chap. 10.

SOdeinly amongest the knightes of these rouers that had escaped from the handes of the Prince, there arose a greate tumult and showting, with terrible shrikes, calling vpon their Gods for aide and succour, and the Marriners in greate hast beganne to vngrapple and lose their shippes the one from the other, and with as great hast as they coulde they hoised vp their sailes, for to flye awaie and escape from the perill which they beheelde verie nære at hande But when Rosicleer sawe this tumultuous crie, with a verie angrie voyce he sayde. "What noyse is this amongest you captiue people? What sodaine "feare is this that is come vppon you, that with so great hast "you prepare your selues to runne awaye. Lorde answered one of them, greate reason wée haue to make all this "hast which wæ dœ, for you shall vnderstand, that there ap"proacheth nigh vnto vs either dreadfull death or cruell impri"sonment. This noble and valyaunt Prince lœked about on "euerie side to sæ what the occasion shoulde bœ that shoulde "cause them to worke this fact: and straight waies he dis"couered a verie faire and rich Gallie which came towardes "the place where as they abode, with theyr Sayles aloftes "and a prosperous winde, so that the Gallie in a manner sæ"med to flye vppon the water. Rosicleer without anie alte"ration answered them, saieng.

"Tell mæ who is it that commeth in yonder Gallie, that "hath put you in so much feare. Valyaunt Knight (sayde they) "there commeth in yonder Gallie the king of Tire, a mightie

and

and ſtrong gyant being a rouer, we are not able fullie to ter- „
rifie you of his great ſtrength and deformitie, but of this we „
are aſſured, ỹ the verie Gods in heauen do feare him, his life „
& cuſtome is to rob all that euer he doth meete, and if it ſo fall „
out, that anie doe make reſiſtaunce againſt him, he ſtraight „
commaundeth them to the point of the ſword with extreme „
crueltie: ſo heere gentle knight, iudge whether we haue cauſe „
or not to do our indeauour for to auoide this great daunger. „

The Prince hearing all this which they of the ſhip told him, began to make himſelfe readie to the battaile, and laced on his helme, and put all thinges in verie good order, and when that all was readie he ſayde vnto them that were with him.

O you people of little courage & ſmall ſtrength, I ſee well „
you are all baſe minded, and that there is no hardineſſe in „
you, but onely for vile matters, get you downe and hide you „
in the pumpe of the ſhippe, for I will not conſent that anie „
of you ſhall runne awaie, neither ſhal your cries excuſe me of „
this battaile, and ſo with a lowde voice he commaunded to „
beare vp the helme, that the ſhip might runne right vpon the „
Gallie. The Tartarian ſeeing that they pretended to giue the „
enterpriſe, commaunded thoſe that were with him ſtraight waies to put his veſſell in verie good order, of the which it had greate neede, ſo with as great haſt and ſwiftneſſe of ſaile as was poſſible, they procured that the Shippe and Gallie might ioyne both together, and in verie ſhort time they were come ſo nigh each to other, that anie man might well diſcouer and perceiue all that was in the Gallie of their aduerſarie. This valiaunt and worthie Roſicleer ſawe the greate Gyaunt where hee ſate in the middeſt of the poope of the Gallie in a Chaire, where they verie plainely ſawe his countenaunce was ſo terrible, and his bodie ſo greate, that all thoſe which were preſent with Roſicleer were afraide to beholde him. And when the Gyaunt vnderſtode that thoſe which were in the ſhip would not alonely defend themſelues, but alſo offend their enimies, his rage was ſuch, that in great haſt he aroſe and with a mightie voice he called

for

was one who ſéemed to bée the principall of them all, ſayde. Returne you all backe againe and make an ende of that, which weake and ſimple women would long ſince haue finiſhed, and let me alone with this knight that ſo rigorouſly doth behaue himſelfe, and with great furie he preſſed forward and ſtroke the Prince ſuch a blowe that hée made him aſtonyed, but this miſerable man little knewe that hée had to dw with the beſt Knight in the worlde, for if he had, he would neuer haue made reſiſtaunce againſt him face to face. And tourning to ſtrike him once againe, hée diſcouered the deuice that he had in his ſhælde, whereby he knew him, and was verie much afraide of that which ſhould succéde. The Prince underſtood by them that were in the ſhippe, that this was he which did gouerne them, he ſtroke ſuch a blow at his right arme, that he cut it cleane off, ſo that arme and ſwoorde fell downe vpon the hatches of the ſhippe, who ſéeing himſelfe ſo ill intreated, with a greate noiſe and pitifull ſhrike he entered in amongſt his people, and cryed for helpe and ſuccour, but all was in vaine, for that the Nephew of Tiberio ſtroke him ſuch another blowe vpon the helme, that he parted helme and head in two péeces, ſo that he fell downe dead: but when his companie ſawe this, they altogether fell vpon him with terrible furie, thinking to make an ende of him, but he receiued them in ſuch order, that quickly he made them to vnderſtand the ſtrength of his victorious arme, for he neuer ſtroke blowe but either he ſlewe one, or felled him to the grounde, which was the occaſion that their heartes fainted, that not one of them which remained durſt approch, neuertheleſſe they had ſo compaſſed him about, that he could not neither on the one ſide nor on the other make anie waie, for when he determined to put himſelfe forwards one waie, then the other began to laie on him behinde, ſo that of neceſſitye hée was conſtrained in the end to ſet vpon them all at once, for that they did ſo trouble him. In this time Zoilo had ſomewhat recouered his ſtrength, and was well eaſed of his wearyneſſe, and ſéeing the valiauntneſſe of his defender, he went towards y place where he was ſkirmiſhing, & with his ſwoorde

in

in both his handes, he beganne to make greate destruction amongst his enimies, that the slaughter was so great, and their enimies not able to make anie resistaunce, but like miserable people determined rather to submit themselues to ỹ mercie of that newe come knight, then to the force of theyr owne armes, and falling all downe at the sute of Rosicleer, they craued pardon of him for theyr offence, and mercie for their liues, the which he straight ways graunted, and sayde: It is great curtesie, yea, and no little charitie shewed toward the euill man in punishing him, if that he pretende to goe forwardes and perseuer in his naughtie lyfe. Neuertheless if you will promise me, that from this date forwardes you will amend your liues, and leaue this naughtinesse, that you shall not alonely finde in me this which you doe aske, but also true and perfect friendshippe at all times and in all things that you haue nede of, to the which they did all willingly sweare they woulde performe. This being finished, the Prince and the Tartarian embraced one another, with great loue and friendshippe, and Rosicleer asked of the Tartarian what was the occasion that brought him into so great perill and daunger of death. The Tartarian sayde, that by force of an aduenture he departed the Emperours Court, (but he did not declare the effect) and how comming in that small shippe hee was taken with those rouers, who brought him into that greate distresse that he had found him in. Then Rosicleer againe threw his armes about his necke, and with great loue he sayd.

Fortune dealt but frowardly to bring thée out of Constantinople in such a time, for to leade thée vnto this perill, and so beganne to tell him of all that he had passed in the Countrie of Greece. And when he heard him name the Ladie Tetigliasa, he shaked like the leaues of a trée, and sayde. Oh for Gods sake my Lorde, let not my eares heare the name of that thing which my heart doth so much abhorre and detest. For heare I doe sweare vnto thée, that liuing I will burie my selfe in this Sea, rather then to abide that speech.

ces, wherout iſſued ſo much bloud, that all ꝑ hall was ſprinkled therewith. This fierce Buſtrafo ſeing himſelfe ſo ill intreated, his anger ſtill more increaſed, and gaue ꝑ Sardenian ſuch a blowe vnder the waſt, that it hewed his harde harneſſe, and parte of ths ſwoꝛde was ſheathed in the fleſh, wherewith he was very ſoꝛe hurt: ſo with the anguiſh and terrible paine that this Sardenian felt, he gnaſhed his teth together, and with great furye he ſtroke at the head of Buſtrafo, who well knowing the waight of his blowes, ſtepped a ſide, which was the occaſion, that the whole foꝛce of the blowe could take no effect, but with the poynt of his ſwoꝛd, he cut him on the viſoꝛ, and it deſcended to his bꝛeaſt, and ſo downwards, inſomuch, that it diuided the harneſſe and hurt him verye ſoꝛe, from toppe to toe, by meanes of which wound, he ſuffered great griefe, eſpecially being in the place, where it was.

The deds which in all this time chaunced vnto that valyant Roſicleer, we will here declare, and leaue theſe two Giaunts, with their perillous, and well fought battaile, till ſuch time as occaſion do ſerue to to goe foꝛwarde with the ſame. You do remember, how that we leſte Roſicleer within his inchaunted boate, ſayling on the deepe ſeas, vnder the protection of Neptune. And ſo they trauailed foꝛ the ſpace of fiue dayes, and as many nights, without ſeing any thing, but the ſtarrie firmament, and the furious waues of the ſea, without knowing whether they did ſayle. In the firſt day of their nauigation, they beheld comming towardes them another great Foyſt, who came with no leſſe furie, then their boate ſayled, and the courſe thereof was directed right with them. So when they dꝛewe nigh together, the Foyſt paſſed by ſo cloſe, that they might well ſee and diſcouer who was therein, and they perceiued within the ſame a damoſell who ſeemed to be dead, and by hir ſtode a monſtrous Giant, and by the maſte of the Foyſt there was tyed a terrible Griffin, which cauſed great feare in them that beheld it.

The Foyſt made ſuch great waye, that Roſicleer hadde no time to leape into hir, which cauſed him to be verye ſoꝛry

and

and he was ẏ more incẽſed, for that he could not be throughly certified what this aduenture was and what the ſtrangeneſſe thereof did ſignifie, and with the anger that he hadde, he began to curſe all inchaunſments, and all them that vſed it: but all this did profit him but little, for that in a ſhorte time it ſailed out of ſight. And loking about him, he ſawe two ſhippes, which were in a great fight, and very fiercely the one aſſaulted the other, to whome the boate wherein the Prince was, directed his waye with ſo ſwifte courſe, that he almoſt had no time to put on his helme. And with theſe two ſhippes was another boate, which by the force of armes was brought in ſubiection and ouercome by ẏ other two ſhippes, and all the people were ſlaine that was in her, ſauing a fewe which had withdrawen themſelues into the poope of the barke for their defence, amongſt whome, there was one of a verye great and excellent ſtature, who with ſtrong and mightie blowes, cauſed all thoſe that approached vnto the place where he was, to withdraw themſelues, but by reaſon that they had bene very long in this battaile, and that they had troubled him very much, he could not chooſe but be very weake and wearie, in ſuch ſorte, that if it had indured long, he muſt needes haue finiſhed the fight with his death.

After that Roſicleer had well beheldе and noted the great ſtrength and fierce courage of the Knight, it ſeemed vnto him to haue knowen him, and viewing the deuice that hee hadde on his armour, he knewe that it was Zoylo the Tartarian, and ſtraight waie without anie more tarrying he leaped into the ſhippe, and begamne to let them knowe the ſtrength of his ſtrong arme, for in ſuch ſorte he beſturred him, that at the firſt blowe he cut off helme and head, of one of his enimies, and not being content with this, he began againe to ſtrike firſt on the one ſide and then on the other, ſo that there was not one that was ſo hardie to abide his terrible blowes, but when his aduerſaryes ſawe his furie, there ioyned more then thirtie of them together, pretending to aſſault him, but amongſt them there

the shrikes of the Empresse and her Ladies, woulde suffice to make them withdrawe themselues ỹ one from the other, but terribly they let fall their beauie and mightie blowes one vpon another, that their strong helmes were brused, & they inclined their heads vnto their breasts. So then there began a cruell and mortall battell, one of the most terriblest in the world, for the strength of their blowes were so outragious, that with the least blowe they gaue, it was thought that the great hall would haue fallen downe. The Empresse and her Ladies what with the great griefe they had, and againe, with the exceeding heate that began in the hall, withdrew themselues into their Closettes and Chambers, and likewise the knights that were present, departed and left them alone in ỹ hall, sauing the Emperour onelye remained at the dore, to kepe the entrie ỹ none shpuld either goe in or out, who was very well armed. And Brandimardo and Claueryndo were with the Empresse Claridiana, beholding this cruell battell, not knowing who this great Gyaunt was that trauailed so much for the honour of the Emperour and his sonnes. In all this time these Gyaunts had no other care, but in brusing & mangling one anothers flesh, with so greate strength, ỹ whosoeuer beheld them meruailed at their fiercenesse, and without doubt, all the furious rage of Gyaunts consisted in those two, as it did appeare by the terrible and outragious strokes that they bestowed betwæne them, for wt the great strength and the sound thereof, the whole pallace did not onely shake, but also the whole Citie: in this sort they continued a greate while without taking anie breath, and all the flore of the hall was full of hoales, with the beauie blowes that had scaped by. Thus they long continued without knowledge of anie masterie betwæn them, but still they procured the one to indamage the other, and to be reuenged one of another, with so greate rage and in such sort, that they seemed rather to bee rash and vnreasonable Gyauntes, then expert and valiaunt knightes: and in this their great furie they both lifted vp their great and beauie clubs, in such sort that their blowes met and discharged together, with such surpassing strength,

that

that the club of the King of Sardenna, was parted in twain, but the mace of Bustrafo discharged vpon the other, although almost in vaine, for that it had lost the former furie by reason of the first encounter, neuertheleſſe it made his healme to sound as an anfielde when it is stroken on with a hammer. Then this king seeing he had such an aduersary, thought it not good to vse delay, but with great haſt he drewe his sword, and at such time as Bustrafo turned the second blow he could by no meanes shun or apart himselfe from it, but bare it off with his sword, and the fall of the blowe was such, that the mace was cut cleane a sunder, and the great end rolled on the flower in the hall. Bustrafo seeing himselfe dispossest of his beauie mace, threw the tronchen which remained in his hand, at the King of Sardenna, who receiued it vpon his shielde: but the strength of it was so vnmeasurable, that it glaunced on his shield, and flewe vpright to the top of the hall, and the king retired back three or foure steps, so that it was a wonder he fell not to the ground. In this time, Bustrafo had space to drawe his sword, and to throwde himselfe vnder his shield. Nowe there began a new, a more cruell and rigorous combat betweene them, then at the first: for Bustrafo at his first blow, stroke the King vpon ꝑ shield, and parted it in two peeces, and with an infernall furie, it descended on his helme, and hurt his head, but ꝑ wound was not very great, yet the blow rested not, but glauncing on the harneſſe, fell to the ground, whereas it made a great hoale: but in the meane time this newe conuerted King, was not idle, neither did his aduersarie escape his paiment for the blowe past, but hauing his sharpe cutting sword rayſed on high, he discharged it with such exceeding force vpõ Bustrafo, (who receiued it vpon his shield) that with ꝑ great strength thereof, it parted it in peeces, and descended vpon his helme, taking away with it all that it touched both of the harneſſe & flesh, which fell together to the ground, so that Bustrafo remained very sore hurt. And when he sawe his owne bloud, the battaile beganne a newe to kindle, in such sort, that in a very small time, each of them were sore hurt in sundrie pla-

vnto whom it most belonged to make aunſwere, with great ſobrietie and wiſedome, as in ſuch like matters he was accuſtomed to vſe, replyed. Graunt, Roſicleer at this preſent is not in the Court, for the which I am verie ſorrie and conceiue great griefe, for I am ſure if he were here preſent, he would ſome taime and bring downe this thy great pride, and mittigate thy mallice, and ſome abate this thy vnreaſonable bold enterpriſe, which thou haſt attempted. And in that thou doeſt ſaie that I am a traitour, I anſ were that thou doſt falſely lye, like a naughtie and ill taught knight, for I neuer vſed treſon towards anie man, neither would I at anie time conſent therevnto, but I haue procured to the vttermoſt of my power to puniſh it. When the Gyant heard this aunſwere, being more kindeled with rage, hee ſaide. Emperour, thy woordes bee ſpoken verie fondly and without feare, as the Cocke vpon his owne dunghill, here thou ſeeſt me mightie and ſtrong, inſomuch that being in thy Countrie I doo make thee quake, and more I would doe if thou were abroade. Thou great beaſt and deformed creature, replyed the Emperour, for that thou ſhalt vnderſtand how little here in Grecia we eſteeme ſuch monſters as thou art, tarie a while, for in place of my ſonnes, becauſe they are not preſent for to giue thee thy payment according vnto thy deſerte, in me beeing their father, thou ſhalt finde ſuch reſiſtaunce, that I hope by the fauour and helpe of almightie God, to take that diuelliſh and infernall head from thy accurſed ſhoulders. So the Emperour in great haſt with a knightly courage called for his armour. This Gyant ſeeing the diſpoſition and proweſſe of the Emperour to be ſo valiaunt, with a great crie he ſayde. O yee feminine Gods, is it poſſible that your deitie doth conſent, that alonely one man is ſo hardie & couragious to enter into the field with me. Emperour, take to thee one hundreth of ỹ beſt knights ỹ haſt about thee & come, for altogether I will cut you in peeces, for ỹ my gods will not permit ỹ he in whõ al their power conſiſteth ſhuld haue battel wᵗ one knight, & in ſaying theſe woords, he did ſhew the great pride ỹ reſted in his heart. Heere you may iudge in what perplexitie ỹ Empreſſe

and

and all her Ladies were in,to see so ill fauoured a monster before them,I promise you they were all in a manner without remembraunce and cleane beside themselues,but Clarideana neuer moued hir countenaunce,but was verye quiet. In this meane time while the Emperour was arming him selfe with as greate hast as he might, the fierce Gyaunt which burned in anger, thought that the Emperour tarryed verie long and sayd:What doest thou Emperour? why doest thou not cause thy knightes to arme themselues as I haue willed thee,for that both of thy selfe & them I pretend to end the weake dayes, and in saying these wordes he went vnto the place whereas the Emperour was arming himselfe,there the Empresse Claridiana put her selfe before him,and stroke the Gyant such a blow on the breast with both her hands wt so great anger,that she made him to withdraw backwards, and in the end was forced to fall, and she sayd: Thou diuelish beast,what thinkest thou in thy heart to doe, and what is thy pretended purpose? and seing the gyant in so great furie,she cried out and sayde: Oh holie God deliuer these thy knightes from all euill,for he arose vp with such ire from ỹ ground,that a great mountaine had not ben able to make anie resistance against him, if it had not happened, that in the same extremitie there entred into the hall that gentle & valiant giant ỹ king of Sardenia, who vnderstãding ỹ contempt of ỹ other gyant,& how much he had misused ỹ emperor with his proud speeches in the hall,he was very greatly incensed,& ỹ the emperour shuld vnderstand ỹ great loue ỹ he bare vnto his sonne,ỹ knight of ỹ Sun,like a furious lyon he attempted the battell before the Emperour could be ready to make ỹ assault,& lifting vp a great club which he had in his hand, he said:O thou foule disfigured monster, far more proud thẽ appertaineth to ỹ order of knighthood:first before thou approuest thy strength with anie other,thou shalt feele the force of me. The great disdaine that was in this gyant whose name was Bustrago,argued ỹ he little esteemed ỹ other,but wtout replying any answere,they began to flourish with their great & mightie Mases, that the greate noise of the Emperour,neyther

And being in this great traunce ſhe loked towards ỳ place, where the Serpent went out, and ſhe ſawe enter in thereat an olde man, which came with a ſtaffe in his hande, whom ſtraight waie ſhe knew very well to be the wiſe Artemidoro, who with great courteſie ſaluted the Empreſſe ſaiſng: "Madame, take you neither care, paine, nor griefe of ỳ which "is done, neither trouble your ſelfe for your children, for "that there coulde be no more done, then that which is "done: for all is conuenient and neceſſarie for the eſtabliſh- "ing both of yours and their good fortune. And more I de "certefie you, that the time ſhould come, wherein you ſhall re- ceiue more ioye and comfort, then nowe it doth cauſe anguiſh and ſorrowe. And thus without anie more reaſo- ning he returned and went out againe at the place whereat he entered, and he was not ſo ſone out, but that the wall clo- ſed againe as euen as it was before, and no ſigne of opening could be ſeene. After that he was departed the empreſſe & her mayde remained reaſoning and meruailing at this ſodaine and ſtrange caſe, & after they had conſidered of many things, they determined betweene themſelues to keepe all verye ſe- cret, till that by opportunitie were offered them, what they ſhould doe.

The Prince Brandimardo of whom I told you of, was ſo inflamed with the fire of Cupide, which kindled in him tho- rough ỳ loue of the young queene of Lyra, whoſe name was Ardiſilora, ỳ he could finde in himſelfe neither reſt nor ioy, & his paſſions were not ſo ſecret, but that this young queene did perceiue them, & ſpared not to repaye him againe with a kind of honeſt and ſingle loue. Of whom we meane to de- clare more in the proceſſe of this hiſtorie, and of their won- derfull acts which they did: for you ſhall vnderſtande, that this young Queene, being a horſebacke and armed in hir ar- mour, proued another Claridiana, as ſhal be rehearſed in that furious battaile betweene the Greekes & Africans. And you ſhall moreouer marke, that all that you haue hearde in the proceſſe of this chapter, was ordained by the wiſe men, which I onely note, for that thoſe which ſhall reade the ſame, maye

the better vnderſtand the hiſtorie.

¶How that when the King of Hungarie was taking his leaue to depart, there came a Giant, hauing a cruell and furious countenaunce, who defied the Emperour and his ſonnes, and of all that chanced therin. Cap. 9.

THE king of Hungarie ſéeing ỹ it was time for him to returne to his owne Countrie, it happened one daie being in companie with the Emperour his ſonne in lawe, he ſaid vnto him: My louing ſonne, I woulde verie faine before my departure (if it were poſſible) that my ſonne were come, to the ende I might haue him with mée, ſéeing that my Nephewes doe not come, but ſith their tarrying is ſo long, I muſt be content to take patience, and without their companies retourne home into my owne Countrie, leaſt peraduenture this my long abſence be cauſe of ſome inſurrection or commotion. The Emperour woulde verie faine haue anſwered him, but vpon a ſodeine and vnlooked for, there was rayſed a great rumour amongeſt them that at that preſent were in the Pallaice, and demaunding what was the occaſion of ſuch ſodeine alteration, they ſawe entering in at the gate a verie great and mightie Gyaunt, of more then ſirtéene cubites high, of ſtrong bodie, and double the bigneſſe of anie other ordinarie man, he was armed with verie ſtrong and rich armour, and he carried vpon his ſhoulder a great and beauie Male, and at his girdle a verie fayre & broad ſworde, and without doing reuerence or ſhewing anie kinde of curteſie, but with a proude and arrogant voice hée aſked: Which amongeſt you is that falſe and treacherous Roſicleer, ſonne vnto the traiterous Emperour Trebatio? All that were there preſent (were not a little amazed, as well in beholding the huge greatneſſe and ſtraunge forme of the giaunt, as alſo of his great pride and boldneſſe in his wordes) anſwered him not a worde. Then the Emperour, as one

at that time in the hall as the Damzell entered, hée made a great noise without anie moze tarrieng, neither was there anie that could stay him, were he neuer so strong, but running forwardes as a man distraught, hée went out of the Pallaice. The sorrowfull Ladie séeing this, fell downe to the grounde as though shée had béene dead. And Clauerindo beholding the ingratitude of this Tartarian, woulde haue followed him, but the wise Lyrgandeo stayed him and woulde not suffer him to goe, saying: They should let him alone, for that all they shoulde procure to followe him should bée in vaine. And so returning vnto the Ladie he practised such remedyes, that verie quickly shée returned to her selfe againe, and then promised her such remedies, as shoulde in the ende restore her to rest. And when the Barbarian Ladie did knowe who he was, she did meruailouslie reioyce. So this Tartarian went to the sea side, and with great diligence imbarked himselfe in a shippe that was there readie fraughted for Spaine, which he did in such great hast and diligence, that before Bargandel and Lyriamandro could tourne themselues, the shippe had hoised saile, and yélded her selfe vnto the winde, the which was the occasion that these two did the like in taking another ship, who sailed after the first, with determined purpose, with all their powers to procure that this Tartarian should returne againe, whome we will leaue now sayling on their voyage, for it is necessarie for our historie to relate other matters in this Chapter. Let vs returne therefore to the Emperours court. The Empresse Claridiana séeing her time at hand to be deliuered with childe, was verie sadde, and knew not what to doe, but in the ende of many thoughts she determined to decypher all her secret vnto a maide she had who was called Arcana, to whō she did disclose all the secrets of her heart. This Arcana séeing the great friendship and curtesie that the princesse shewed her, in opening her secrets more to her then to anie other, and had a more trust in her then in the rest, kissed her roiall hands, and promised her to be no lesse secret then dilligent in all her affaires.

faires. So they determined betwæne themselues and did prouide as it was best for their purpose, to bæ continually alone and without anie companie, but that which did most trouble and gaue greatest care vnto the Empresse Claridiana, was, for that shæ did not knowe to whome to giue the charge of nursing that, which shoulde be borne of her, yet the maiden who was verie wise, subtil, and discræt, had ordained all things in good order, for she had in great secret disclosed it vnto a verie honest matrone of the citie, saieng, that she was the partie that should be deliuered, and gaue vnto her verie largely of gifts and iewells, with promises of a farther benefite for to kæpe her counsell therein. It was not long after when that with great paine and griefe this noble Princesse was deliuered of a verie faire sonne & daughter, bæing of so great beautie that it was wonderfull to bæ sæne. The sonne had vnder his left side a meruailous & verie strange marke, which was a speare of such a firie prospect that it made them afraid to touch it. The Empresse toke thē both in her armes and with many bitter teares she blessed them, and returned them againe vnto Arcana, willing her that she should dresse them, and put all things in order to send them to the nurse, the which she did with great diligence, wrapping and swaddeling them vp in very faire and rich clothes, according to the best guise that she could, although she wer but little acquainted in such like matters. She had not scantly made an end of swaddeling them, when that vppon a sodaine with a greate rumour, as it sæmed vnto the Empresse and Arcana, one of the walles of the chamber where they were did open, whereat did enter a Serpent, verie horrible and fearefull to beholde, from whome there procæded greate flames and sparkes of fire, who stayed not, but went straight vnto the place whereas the two little Infantes were, and at two mouthfulles hæ swallowed them cleane vp, and so without doing anie more harme or making anie longer tarrying retourned out of the Chamber the selfe same waye that it came in, leauing the Empresse in so greate feare, as in such cases is required.

And

" with a ſolempne oath neuer to depart out of the Kingdome,
" for the ſpace of two yeares, with condition, that in this time
" we ſhould take two Knights, who by their great force and
" chiualrie, ſhould ouercome his father and him in the fielde,
" and then they would depart the lande, and retourne to their
" owne Countrie. And contrariwiſe if we did not procure, to
" bring theſe two knightes to the battaile, or els to delyuer
" vnto them this Ladie within that prefixed time, that Man-
" droco, might mary with hir, that then they would fully poſ-
" ſeſſe themſelues of all the kingdome, and fortifie themſelues
" in ſuch ſort, that all agreement notwithſtanding, we ſhould
" neuer retourne to Lyra againe. And ſo vnderſtanding their
" imbaſſage, I determined to come to this Court, whereas
" I do vnderſtand is all the proweſſe, and flower of Knight-
" hode in the world. So here I preſent my ſelfe (noble Em-
" perour) before you and all your Knights, in aſking fauour
" and requeſting helpe to reuenge vs of ſo great wrong, as
" we haue receiued: and thus ſhe finiſhed hir talke, and with
great weeping, ſhe held her peace.

This noble Emperor receiued very great ſorow & griefe to heare this lamentable tale that the Ladie tolde, and to ſee that faire young Damzel ſo diſpoſſeſſed of her right by ſuch extreame tyrannie, and with a milde countenaunce he aun-
" ſwered. Noble Dutcheſſe, ſince that thy good fortune (though
" the efficient cauſe thereof be to too badde) hath brought thee
" there, where with all good will ye ſhall receiue ſuccour and
" comfort, I requeſt you to take your reſt, and be quyet, and
" leaue of this your mourning. And although ther be knights
" in this my court, that are able to comprehend ſuch enterpri-
" ſes, by their great proweſſe and ſtrength: yet I do looke euery
" day for them, to whom I may commend greater affayres
" to be done then theſe, wherfore reſt you a while till two be
" come, of whom I haue more dominion ouer, & to them will
" I commit this charge. There were many knightes pre-
" ſent that would very faine haue offered themſelues to this
enterpriſe, but bearing the preſence of the Emperour, they durſt not in anie wiſe attempt it, but kept ſilence.

Then

Then this dutcheſſe began to tell them of all the ſucceſſe that happened vnto her knightes by the knight of Cupide. Vnto whome the Emperour ſayde: that knight is one of them to whome I will commit the charge of your combat, and I am right gladde that the ſeruice he ſhall doe you in this enterpriſe ſhall bée the occaſion that you ſhall forget this anger that you haue againſt him. So with theſe and like reaſons they drew nére the Citie, whereas ſtraight waie they began to prepare all things in a readineſſe for the departing of the Emperour Alicandro, and in a ſhort time all things béeing prouided, this Emperour béeing alſo readie with a verie good will entered the ſhip, and carrying with him the Prince Meridiano, and his welbeloued ſpouſe, and the Troyan Oriſtedes, he taking leaue of the Emperour with a better countenaunce then his heart would conſent vnto, committed the ſailes vnto the winde, and with a proſperous voyage they went a land at Tenedon, whereas we will leaue them, for to tell you what chaunced vnto the Empreſſe Claridiana, who was verie ſadde for the abſence of her ſpouſe, and likewiſe to ſée her ſelfe ſo great with childe, (although in the great hall ſhe continually ſhewed a merrie countenaunce.) So it happened one daie being in conuerſation with the Empreſſe, and the quéene Lira, there entered into the great hall the worthie Prince Clauerindo, all armed with his accuſtomed harneſſe, and leading by the hande a verie faire Damoſell, all apparelled in blacke veluet, and after her there came other nine faire Damoſells, all apparelled after the ſame manner. This Damoſell if you do remember is ſhée, whoſe képer Roſicleer did kill, which was the Prince of Meſopotamia, & ỹ knight which came to her at her complaint & ſorrow, was Clauerindo, who in greate ſecret followed the knight of the Sunne, and becauſe of the great confidence that he had in the friendſhip of Zoylo, he promiſed her fauour & ſuccour: for the which this faire Ladie who was daughter vnto the king of Tiglia, came in this order as you ſhall heare. In the meane time that all this happened, there chaunced a thing of verie greate admiration, which was, that the Tartarian béeing

at

eies, the ſorrow that in heart ſhe conceined, and in this wiſe
" ſhe anſwered. High & mightie Emperour, in the kingdome
" of Lyra not long time ſince raigned the father of this young
" Damſell, in ſo greate proſperitie and fame, that he was not
" onely honoured of his owne ſubiectes, but alſo feared of the
" borderers thereabout. High vnto this kingdome there is an
" Iland called Rocafor, which beareth this name for the great
" ſtrength it hath, as well in the buildings with Caſtells and
" townes, as by the inhabitaunts of the ſame, who are verye
" ſtrong, of the which Iland was Lord and gouernour a Gy-
" ant of a meruailous huge and mightie bigneſſe, beeing alſo
" proude and of verie ill conditions, who hath a ſon of a more
" greater ſtature and fierceneſſe then himſelfe, ſuch a one as I
" beleeue hath not his like in all the world, and for that he had
" this vauntage ouer and aboue all other, it ſeemed vnto his
" Father, that there was none ſo conuenient in marriage for
" his ſonne as was this Damzell, daughter vnto this aforena-
" med king, and heire vnto the kingdome. And thus beeing
" wholy determined, he ſent meſſengers vnto the king to de-
" maund his daughter in marriage for his ſonne, but the king
" made them anſwere verie rigorouſly, (and although the Gi-
" ants are greatly feared, yet the power of this king was ſuch
" that he didde eſteeme them but little.) But when the Gy-
" aunts Bulfar and Mandroco (for ſo were they called) did per-
" ceiue with what diſdaine the king anſwered them, they
" were readie to burſt with anger, neuertheleſſe Mandroco
" gaue counſell vnto his Father, ſaying: That he alone was
" conſtrained herein to returne for his honour and no other,
" and that it touched him to make anſwere vnto them, and
" that he woulde neuer be accounted to be his ſonne if he did
" not wholy reuenge himſelfe. Then Bulfar who well knewe
" the greate ſtrength of his ſonne, verie much reioyced to heare
" thoſe his reaſons which he vttered, & commaunded ſtraight
" waies that it ſhould be put in vre: and ſo with full determi-
" nation in as ſecret manner as they poſſiblie might, they ga-
" thered together fiue hundred of ꝑ moſt valianteſt knightes ꝑ
" were in all the Iland, which were almoſt all of their affini-

tie,with ꝑ which knights verie secretly they arriued vnknow-
en in the land of Lyra, and verie closely in the beginning of
the night, two miles from the citie,they put themselues into
a little groue that was nigh at hand,whereas they remained
vnespied two parts of the night,then vpon a sodeine when ꝑ
people were all at rest,and little suspecting anie such sodeine
misfortune,they entered the citie & neuer rested till such time
as they came to the kings pallace,at which entrie & first en-
counter the king himselfe was slaine, by a cruell blowe that
Mandroco stroke him on his head,as you may beholde here
where the bodie lyeth on a Bære within the wagon. This
Bulfar made such destruction in the entering of the pallace,
that in a small time he possessed it for his, and so descending
through the citie,by reason ꝑ those knights which he brought
with him were of great power and strength. And againe,that
those of the citie were vnprouided of all defence, with verie
little a do he ouercame them all and brought them vnder his
subiection,by compelling them to yeld: So I a miserable wo-
man more then halfe dead in beholding so great damage done
by a false doore that belonged to ꝑ pallace,I went out,where-
as escaped also many of the kings knights ꝑ were taken on
a sodeine:so I toke my way forwards and came to Hircania,
for that the king therof was my brothers sonne,& cosin vnto
this Princesse,who receiued vs verie well,& was not a little
sorrowfull for our misfortune. From which place we sent
to demaunde of the Graunt to surrender vnto vs, that
which with great violence he hadde vsurped, and aunswere
was retourned, that they woulde not owe it, except this
young Quæne shoulde first marrie with Mandroco, to the
which we woulde not consent for that he was so deformed.
So seing his determined purpose, wee sent once agayne,
demaunding whether he woulde giue vs the bodie of the
dead king, to the which they did straight wayes graunt.
And Mandroco sent vs worde, that forsomuch as wee
woulde not consent vnto that which he did require vs,ten-
ding to our owne quietnesse,to the ende we shoulde vnder-
stand how little it was that hee did esteeme of vs, he swore

with

it was preſently couered with the thicke and terrible lightenings, in ſuch ſort, that it depriued all them that were therein of their ſight, and with the great feare that they receiued, they fell flat downe vppon the floore in the Galliè. And when they came againe to themſelues they loked about to ſee if they coulde perceiue what it ſhould be. And then they coulde not finde the infant Floramonte, for whoſe loſſe they lamented greatly. You ſhall vnderſtand that the wiſe Lyrgandeo by his learning had deliuered the infant from them to kæpe him cloſe and in ſecret, for that he vnderſtood by his art of ỹ great warres that was pretended and made redie for in Grecia, in the which warres ſhoulde be ſlaine the flower of all knighthoode, and that it ſhould be in greate daunger to be loſt and vtterly deſtroied. Alſo he did comprehend by his learning to knowe how this infant and one other that was then begotten (but not yet borne) ſhould be the greateſt help & chiefe of this victorie, comming by chaunce to the end of the conqueſt, likewiſe he did knowe that if this childe ſhould at anie time before this aduenture vſe armour, that he ſhould be put in great perill of death. This was the onely occaſion that hæ ſet him at libertie as you haue heard, and did inchaunt him in ſuch ſorte, that none other could clære him of it, but onely he which ſhould be his companion and aide in the greate neceſſitie of theſe warres: which was the ſonne of the heroicall knight of the Sunne, and of the Empreſſe Claridiana, of whome thou ſhalt heare hæreafter. Thus this wiſe Lyrgandeo hauing deliuered this childe that none in all the Court knewe of it, retourned thether againe, and from that daye forwardes kept it ſecrete to himſelfe, not ſuffering anie to vnderſtande thereof, nor of anie other thing that hæ foreknew in his heart by learning. All thoſe of the Court were verye ſadde, for that the Emperour was ſo ſorrowfull, forasmuch as hæ coulde heare no newes of his ſonnes, as I haue before tolde you, determined after hæ hadde ended the hunting, to retourne backe againe to the Citie. And in the way as they ſhuld go, they diſcouered romming forwardes them a Wagon, which did repreſent much dolor,

for,(and this was that which Rosicleer did finde,)and there they remained to see what it shoulde bee, and when the Wagon drewe neere where the Emperour was, they lyfted vp a cloth wherewith the wagon was couered, and out of the wagon there issued a Ladie, who lead a maiden childe by the hande,all couered with mourning apparell, which did represent great sorrowe, and of so meruailous beautie, as it was to bee wondered at. This Ladie when shee vnderstode which was the Emperour,shee kneeled downe at his feete,and with sundrie sorrowfull sighes,shee lamentably sayd.

Considering that all distressed women and oppressed damzells,forasmuch as they are women and of the weaker sort,do finde in thee (O souereigne Emperour) succour and defence, what shoulde those that descende from noble and royall estate hope for at thy gracious handes? Among which number this which doth present her selfe before thee, is neyther the least in birth, though nowe one in most miserie, for redresse whereof she craueth thy aide and defence. Thou shalt vnderstand O souereigne Emperour,that this childe is right heire apparant vnto all the kingdome of Lyra,of which she hath bẽn dispossessed by meruailous great violence. The Emperour when he heard that this was the Quéene of Lira, he did reuerence her,and take her by the hande, and caused her to stand vp,and embraced her with exceeding shewe of loue, & offred vnto her his person and all his power at commaundement for her helpe & succour. Then the Lady would haue kissed his hands,but the Emperour would not consent therevnto by anie meanes,but take his horse to proceede forwards on his iourney,& for curtesies sake take vp the young quéene behinde him on horse backe, and the Emperour Alicandro take also the other Ladie. In this guise they returned vnto the Citie,for to put in order all thinges for the departing of the Emperour Alicandro,& riding by the way the emperour Trebatio demaunded of the Ladie the cause of her cõming to the court,the which she did declare vnto him,not letting in her tale to shew by shedding of salt teares from her

eyes

for to repose themselues, considering the greate trauaile and paine which they had passed. The next day in the morning, although they hadde more nede to haue taken greater rest, yet there altogether they mounted on their horse backs, and toke the way that lead them to Saragosa pretending to enter within the Citie, and there with all humilite to craue pardon for all the iniurie that was past: but their trauayle was all in vaine, for that before time they of the towne, hauing had sufficient triall of Tefereos crueltie, would not by any meanes open the gates, alwayes beholding the lamentable spectacle before their eyes, and therefore fearing that they would deceiue them. So that when these noble knights perceiued it was labour lost to stand long in contention, these people (though then causeleſſe) being so incredible, they returned backe againe towards the Castle: and all the way they went, being almost by the sea side, these two Cousins sawe their ship comming towardes them in great hast, and staieng their horses, they saw, that she was fast at ỹ waters side.

The knight of the Sunne perceiuing well, that hir comming thether was for no other cause but to inuite them to come aboord hir, which Eleno and Tefereo condescending vnto, they presently did: and sent word by a page of Tefereos to commaund all those of Sardenna that they should set at libertie all the Countrie, and without farther delaye retourne vnto their owne houses. These worthie Knights were no sooner entred into their Shippe, but she beganne presentlye to spread her Sayles, and shouing from shoare, in great hast shee launched in to the maine Sea, wherein with prosperous windes they sailed two dayes, but the thirde daye verie earlye in the morning, they discouered a Galley, gouerned with sixe Oares on a side, which came rowing towardes them, and being toyned together, they beheld that ther was in the same a verie faire Ladie, whose haire of hir head was dispersed abroad, and hir selfe very ill intreated by an vncourteous Knight. This sad and distressed Lady with a sorrowfull voyce and pitifull lamentation, cryed

ed out for ſuccour vnto the heauens: at whoſe complaintes and vncourteous handling, theſe Princes receiued great anger. The valiant Dacian Don Eleno being in all poyntes prepared to fight, layd faſt holde on his ſword, and with great lightneſſe leaped into the galley, into the which he was not ſo ſoone entered, but that theſe two veſſells were looſe, and voyded the one from the other, ſo that not one of his other friends had time to followe him, & the ſwiftneſſe was ſuch in the departure, that in a ſmall time either of them loſt the ſight of the other.

By reaſon of many accidents, which are to be accounted in this hiſtorie, it is conuenient I imitate the good muſition, who to content all thoſe, which attend to heare his melodie, chaungeth into many tunes: therefore now we will leaue theſe three knights, and retourne vnto the Emperour, to declare ſuch things as chaunced in his Court.

¶ By what aduenture Floramonte was deliuered from the perill he was in, and how the Princeſſe Claridiana was deliuered of childe, and howe ſhee was comforted in all hir trouble by the wife Artemidoro.

Chapter. 8.

WIth great ioye and contentment departed the Pagans, that carryed away the Infant Floramonte, vnderſtanding that Fortune hadde greatly fauoured them, to beſtowe on them ſo good a price. Wherefore with great haſt they got themſelues to the Sea. Wherein they had not trauayled long, but that vppon a ſodaine they diſcouered a ſhippe, which was comming towards them, all blacke, and out of it proceaded verie fearefull and wonderfull lightenings, accompanied lykewiſe with terrible Thunder, ſeeming by the force thereof that the heauen opened: and when the ſhippe drew nigh vnto the Galley of the Pagans,

in his ſtirrops, and ſtroke the Giant ſo terrible and wonderfull a blowe, that the blood guſhed out of his noſe & mouth, and therewith he fell to the ground as though he had bene dead. He was no ſoner downe, but with great lightneſſe the Dacian Knight leapt from his horſe, and ſtept to the Giant to vnlace his healme, which while hée was a doing, hée heard a voyce which ſayd, Do not kill him knight, do not kill him, and tourning his head about to ſée who it was that ſo diſturbed him, he perceiued it to be his couſin the Knight of the Sunne. (This was the great noyſe of harneſſe, that the Knight of the Sunne heard towards his left hand, as before I haue tolde you.) So when Don Eleno had pulled of the Gyaunts helme, he withdrew himſelfe apart, and his couſin alighted from his horſe, and preſently came and imbraced him with exceeding ioye, and no little loue, which the more increaſed, when he conſidered that the Knight which ſhould vanquiſh ſo great a Giant, could not be but of great valour, as it appeared by that furious blowe, by which the Giaunt was meruailouſly martyred: for the aſtoniſhment was ſuch, that in a great while after Tefereo could not recouer himſelfe, till ſuch time as they brought water from the houſe which was hard by, and threw it in his face, by which meanes, he came to his remembraunce, and ſéeing himſelfe in ſuch a pickle, and the ſworde of his conquerour prepared for his death, I do referre vnto your iudgemens, what ſuch a valiant Knight ſhould thereof conceiue, and with a verye great and ſad ſigh he ſaid.

"O thou that haſt robbed me of my ſurmounted honor,
"content thy ſelfe to inioye this my great and high glorie, and
"ſuffer me not to ſuſtaine any farther ſhame in ſauing of my
"lyfe, with the inioying of which, I ſhall neuer hereafter re-
"ceiue ioye, but euerie daye, yea, euery houre thereof, will re-
"preſent vnto me a thouſand deaths, in remembring that one
"arme hath hadde ſo much ſtrength as to bereaue me of that
"which ſo many with all their forces, haue not had power to
"maintaine themſelues againſt. I knowe not wherefor thou
"detracteſt time, make an ende of me, for that thou haſt had

so much power to ouercome me,) I earnestly desire thée. And neuer think that thou shalt be Lord of the thing which thou hast ouercome: for otherwise I will not yéeld my selfe, but onely to death. For they may account him onely conquered, which hauing strength to defend, submitteth himselfe vnto the mercie of his enimie. Therefore gentle Knight I do beséech thée, not to shewe any pittie towards me, but to finish with my death this tragicall triumph which fortune & time hath now bestowed on thée. These two Knights and Cousins were very attentiue to the words that this mightie pagan vttered, and liked exceedingly of his reasonings, and in reply, Don Eleno aunswered, Although that Fortune, (naye rather God) thus in the beginning of my glorie, hath giuen me this victorie, and libertie therewith either to extend crueltie or clemencie, yet both for thy words which touch mée to the heart, and for thy prowesse, which I so much esteeme, I protest vnto thée, I wish rather neuer to haue ben borne, then willingly vpon thée to execute this extremitie, considering what a blot it is vnto noble Knights, to haue the name of tyrants, for that it depriueth them of all the honor & glorie, that strong armes can any way atchieue. Therefore knowe worthy Knight, that the royall bloud of Dacia desireth not the death of Tefereo, neither was it my request to haue thée ouercome, but onely to haue thée conuerted from thy cruell conditions, to the ende that I might enioye thy friendship. Then the valiant Knight of the Sunne did cut off their talke, to the ende he might declare vnto them, all that happened with the other Giaunt. Which when Tefereo heard he was sore abashed, and with great sobrietie he saide: Well, séeing it is so, that the flower of all Knighthood and the glorie of armes, is possessed by you and your kinred, I vowe that from this daye forwards, I will not remain any longer my owne, but nominate my selfe as onely yours, and in deliuering these spéeches, in the best manner he might he arose vp from the ground, and with great loue imbraced them both. And after salutations ended, they entered altogether into the Pallace, whereas they remained all y night,

warde and remained a while without his remembrance, but his horſe being ſcarred with that terrible ſtroke, gaue a great leape towards the one ſide, by the which he deliuered his maſter from the ſeconde blowe, which Tefereo thought to haue beſtowed on him. The Dacian Knight being againe recouered, and not a little abaſhed at this blowe, ſetteled himſelfe in his ſaddle, and throwing his ſhield from him to the ground, he toke his ſword faſt in his hand, and ſtroke Tefereo ſo terribly vpon his helme, with his ſword ſome what flatling, (by reaſon whereof, the force of the blow ſomwhat abated, it ſlid downe vpon his lefte ſhoulder,) that it conſtrained him to ſtoupe forwards with all his bodie, and if he had not claſped his armes about his horſe necke, hee had fallen downe to the ground, and with the force of this great blowe, the horſe was conſtrained alſo to bow his fore fæte, who with a ſodaine and furious force roſe vp again: wherat this noble Dacian warriour, with great haſt pricked his horſe with the ſpurres, pretending to make an ende of this cruell battaile with his ſecond blowe: but it fell out contrarie, for that Tefereo comming againe to himſelfe, as fierce as a Lion, thruſt forwards againſt his aduerſarie, procuring (if it paſſed not his power) to repay againe with intereſt, that which he had receiued. Now hære began a newe their battaile, and their forces multiplied in ſuch furious ſort, that all the mountaines and valleyes, were occupyed with the noyſe of their terrible ſtrokes. The courage was ſo great of theſe two Knights, ỹ many times they loſt theyr wits, with the weight of the terrible raps which they receiued one of another. Then this Prince Don Eleno ſayde to himſelfe, that if all the reſt of the Knights with whome hæ ſhoulde haue battaile, were of no leſſe proweſſe then this preſent Knight, that he feared quickly to be diſgraced: and on the other ſide, Tefereo found himſelfe very ſore troubled, and ſaw that he was in ſo great diſtreſſe, began to inuocate vpon his Gods for aid. The prowes, ſtrength, & pollicie was ſuch betwæne theſe two Princes, ỹ whoſoeuer had ben preſent to haue beheld ỹ ſame, wold haue ſaid, ỹ there was be-

twæn

twẽn them expressed, all ẏ knighthood in ẏ world: for it was wonderfull to sẽ, how somtimes they pressed forwards, and presently retired backwards, as wel to bestow as to auoyde their terrible strokes. It was ful thrẽe houres, ẏ these noble knights thus contended together, & yet there appeared not in them any kind of faintnes, but by their behauior, ther strẽgth semed stil more and more to encrease. When this heroycall Dacian not accustomed to find such resistance, began to forget al patience, & as one ouercome wᵭ anger clasped his sword fast in his hand, & being setled in his sadle, he strake ẏ giant so hard in ẏ midst of the helme, ẏ with ẏ heuines of ẏ blow, he was forced to fall backwards vpon ẏ crupper of his horse without any remẽbrance, & with ẏ great strengh the Prince put to this blow, his sword flew out of his hand, & hanged by the wrist band, which while he recouered, Tefereo returned to himselfe, and with outragious anger (prouoked by ẏ great paine he felt) with both his hands he strake such a blow vnlooked for at Don Eleno with the halfe sword vpon the visour, in such furious sort, that it bereaued him of his sight, & glauncing wise it descended downe vpon the head pece of the horse, but by reason of ẏ first blow ẏ last had small strength, so ẏ it did but litle harme, notwithstanding it amazed the horse in such sort, ẏ with his staggering the Prince was constrained to vse pollicie to kẽp himselfe from falling from his backe, but when his horse was recouered, he returned againe, so inflamed with anger as though sparks of fire had issued out of his mouth, & crushing his teth together, he vttered these words. O thou infernal diuel, is it possible, ẏ by thy strẽgth so euil bestowed on thee, thou shuldst in ẏ beginning of my knighthood, put me in daunger to be ouercome, by one only blow, I protest by ẏ honor ẏ I owe vnto ẏ progeny frõ whẽce I proceed, ẏ if by this one blow I bring thee not to the point of death or ouercome thee, ẏ I will neuer weare armor more against knight, & so with great rage he returned against his aduersary, ẏ he did not only feare him, but if ther had ben there a whole army of men, considering his fury, they would haue ben afraid, & pressing forwards ẏ prince raised himselfe

And not long after, there was another windowe opened more lower then the first, from whence there looked out a knight who seemed to be of a gentle disposition, his face somewhat swart of coulour, who with great curtesie said. Knight what is it that thou wouldest haue, for I am he whom thou doest seeke for: that which I would haue aunswered Don Eleno, is, that thou doest leaue this diuellish custome which thou doest heere maintaine, for that a knight of thy disposition and manner should rather occupie himselfe in breaking these euill customes, then in maintaining them, for these be not works of a knight the which thou doest, but of an infernall diuell, I therefore much maruell how thou vsing so much cruelties, thou doest liue with so great ease and without care. Come therefore thou tyrant and arme thy selfe, and I hope thou shalt heere paie the tribute of all these euills which thou hast done, for it is not reason that so diuellish and cruell a man as thou art shouldest liue. These reasons did little trouble this Gyant, neyther made hee anie reckoning of them, but with his accustomed sobrietie, he aunswered.

Miserable knight, thou doest not knowe how heere thou doest seeke thy owne death in demaunding battaile of mee, therefore returne againe the waie thou camest, for thy tender age and smoth face without a beard doth moue me to vse this my vertue and curtesie with thee, and considering that thou art a straunger and not of this Countrie. Then this Dacian knight aunswered. It is not this that I doe seeke, but to accomplish this which I haue tolde thee, and if my wordes are not sufficient to cause thee to leaue this which thou doest exercise, I do beleeue that my sword will ere long compell thee thereto, for either I will die the death or else I will depriue thy bodie of that damnable and accursed soule, and send it whether as thou hast sent manie a better then thine is. To these wordes this Tefereo aunswered nothing at all, but withdrewe himselfe in great hast from the windowe, and called for his armour, the which was all blacke, and of a verie faire and straunge making, he was with a trice armed, and being on horse backe, the great and princely Pal-

laice

pallaice gate was opened, whereat issued out this Sardenian with a gentle and demure countenaunce, and after him followed a page with two speares in his hand, of the which Tefereo toke the one, and sent vnto the Prince the other, who standing in nede accepted it, and without farther reasoning they turned their horses about with such courage and quickenesse, that the lyke hath bene seldome sene betweene two knights. And when each of them wer come into their appointed place, they set spurres to their horses with as great force as the thunder in the aire, and meeting together in the midde way with their speares, their shockes were so terrible that it was wonder to see, so that not one of them failed of his blow, but ioyned in such sort, that the staues (although they were verie strong) brake, and the shéuers of them separated themselues in the aire with great violence, and yet the valyaunt knights both remained in their saddles, no more moued then a rocke by the sea side. But when either of them beheld the little harme they had done in this their iust, they both with their swordes in their handes returned their horses, and began to strike so extreamly the one vppon the other, that their bodies felt the force of their armes, and although their harnesse was not cut, yet it could not be but their flesh shuld receiue damage. In this sort trauailed these two knights more then an houre, without knowledge of anie aduauntage, but either of them were inflamed with anger to see his aduersarie to indure so long, and the knightly courage of each of them did more and more increase, and their exceeding cholar was such, that the battaile began to be more terrible then at the first. But this furious Tefereo somewhat feeling, and therefore by experience knowing the surpassing strength and valiant courage of his enimie, although he did not greatlye meruaile at it, yet it did cause him to be more furious, and béeing incensed in such sorte, that with both his handes hée toke his sword, and strake at him such a stroke vppon the helme, ỹ the blowe sounded through all the fields, & made an ecko in the mountaines, that by ỹ waight thereof the Dacian knight was constrained somwhat to incline his head dowwards

thereof he began to knock, which he had not ſo ſone done, but ỹ lifting vp his eyes, he beheld to deſcend from aboue out of a bulwarke a great frē ſtone which was caſt downe by the hands of a Gentlewoman, which came ſo ſodainly, that he almoſt had no time to deliuer himſelfe from receiuing the fall thereof, and if the lightnes of his horſe had not ben the quicker, he muſt nēdes haue taken the blowe on his head, which would not haue fallen out well with him. But when this Gentlewoman ſawe that the ſtone fell downe without doing anie harme, with a grēuous and terrible ſigh that procēded from her heart, ſhe ſayd.

„ Art thou that curſed Tefereo, through whoſe cauſe the
„ moſt part of the mournfull matrones of this diſtreſſed Citie
„ are made widowes, and with great affliction are inforced to
„ bewaile the loſſe of their louing huſbandes and welbeloued
„ ſonnes? Art thou he that doth not onely content thy ſelfe to
„ kill them and teare them in pēces, but alſo hangeſt them be-
„ fore our eyes, and garniſheſt the walls of this our vnhappie
„ Citie with the bodies of them? Art thou that ſonne of the di-
„ uell, which without all feare of the Gods hath put our Citie
„ in this extreame neceſſitie? Oh cruell tyrant, open the eyes
„ of thy vnderſtanding, and let ſome ſparke of pittie reigne in
„ thy heart, and ſuffer not that for thy cauſe onely ſo worthie a
„ Countrie as this is ſhould be deſtroied? Let it ſuffice thee ỹ
„ thou haſt alreadie bene the occaſion that all theſe noble ma-
„ trones of this Citie, haue loſt their reſt & forgot their eſtate,
„ and are nowe become as ſcowtes in the warres, and frame
„ themſelues to weare armour. This gentle knight of Dacia
would not ſuffer her to procēde anie farther, but cut off her tale, and with greate ſoberneſſe he ſayd.

„ Gentlewoman, I am not he that you take me for, but I
„ come hether rather (if ſo bee I maie) by ſome meanes to pro-
„ cure your reſt, & deliuer you from this outrage that is offe-
„ red you. Then this gentlewoman with much more anger an-
„ ſwered. O traitour, doeſt thou thinke that by thy treaſons
„ and ſubtilties to increaſe our care more then hetherto thou
„ haſt done? Get thee hence traitor, for thou art the moſt falſe &

cru-

cruell man in all the world, for thy naughtinesse we doo well
vnderstand, and to all the world it is knowen: O immor-
tall Gods, you doe well knowe that on the earth there is no
strength sufficient to rote out this diuell and cursed tyrant
from amongest vs: why do not one of you come doiwn from
heauen and confound him with your deitie. The good will
which hath brought mée hether, gentle mistresse, answered
Don Eleno, doeth not deserue to be thus ill intreated of you,
who for to procure your libertie will put his life in aduen-
ture. I suppose I doe deserue better entertainement at your
handes. Well, let it be what it will bée, sayd this Gentlewo-
man, but touching thy comming into the Citie, it is labour
lost to speake, neuertheless if thou art not that cruell knight
whom I did take thée for, turne thée about and looke towards
the corner of yonder towre, which standeth amongest the
grœne trœs, and there thou shalt finde him, whom I doe be-
leeue without seeking for thou bringest with thée, & so with-
out anie more speaking this Gentlewoman went from the
wall, and left this knight alone. Then the Prince Don Ele-
no seeing himselfe alone, tooke the waie which the Gentle-
woman shewed him, wherein he had not trauailed farre, but
in the middest of a groaue amongest a companie of grœne
trœs, he sawe a verie faire house and well wrought, where-
vnto when he approched he found that the gates were shut
and closed verie fast. And drawing nigh the gate, he tooke the
ring in his hand and gaue a greate stroke, at the sounde
whereof there looked a man out of a windowe of the same
house, and by the riches of the armour that the Knight
ware, he knew that he was none of their companie, but said
vnto him.

Who art thou that art so hardie beeing a straunger,
which without feare doest call at the gate, whereas thou
canst not escape, but must of necessitie suffer death. Friend,
answered this Dacian Knight, goe thy waies and tell thy
Lorde Tefereo, that here is a knight of a straunge Coun-
trie that hath a great desire to speake with him. This man,
without anie answering went awaie from the windowe,

and

"beare about me a deadly perill. But alas, how can I helpe
"that, although this occaſion hath brought me into ſuch ex-
"tremitie, conſidering that it is ſo ordained. But to what end
"faire Damoſell, you haue vttered theſe wordes, I am as
"yet altogether ignorant, wherefore I would be very glad
"to knowe ſomewhat, whereby I might haue occaſion to for-
"get theſe thoughts, & to bring my ſelfe in care of ſome new
"defence. Then this Damoſell drewe nigh to him and ſaid,
"Thou ſhalt vnderſtand ſir Knight, that this Countrie in
"which thou art, is the olde and auncient Kingdome of Ti-
"nacria, whoſe happie dayes, which in times paſt it had, are
"now abated, and the great felicitie thereof is turned to con-
"fuſion. Then this Damoſell did relate vnto him, all the
"whole ſtorie that you haue heard, which the olde Prieſt told
"vnto the Knight of the Sunne his Couſin: but the great
"ſorrow that he receiued in the hearing of ſo great crueltie,
"conſtrained a fewe ſalt teares to fall from his eyes, from
"the which he could not refraine. And procæding forwardes
"in his talke, ſhe ſaid, You ſhall vnderſtand ſir Knight, that I
"am a Damoſell belonging to the Counteſſe of Modica, who
"is nowe in companie with the vertuous Quæne Garoſilea,
"in the Citie of Sarragoſa, here in the lande of Tinacria, by
"whom I was ſent about certaine buſineſſe, and came nowe
"from thence. Verely, the hearing of this terrible and beaue
hiſtorie, did verie much cauſe this noble Knight to lament, &
compelled his hart to earne, although on ỹ cõtrarie he did re-
ioyce very much, for that now in the beginning of his knight-
hoode, he might imploie himſelfe and his valiant courage in
ſuch terrible conflictes, whereby he might winne to him-
ſelfe a renowmed name and reporte, if ſo it pleaſe God
that he may goe forward with this enterpriſe. So he de-
termined with himſelfe, to loſe his lyfe in this quarrell, or
elſe to ſet the ſame Citie at libertie, although hee gaue
not the Damoſell to vnderſtand anie thing concerning this
his intent, who in the end of many good reaſons and pittifull
perſwaſions that ſhee vſed in counſailing and perſwading
this worthy knight Don Eleno for to haue very great care

and

and to loke well vnto himselfe, that he did not fall into the handes of this cruell Giant, she toke hir palfray and departed hir way towards the Citie, to the ende that she might enter in at the gates before the daye did breake, whereby shee might not be discouered of the enimie. So this Damosell departed, and lefte the Knight in great anguish and sorrowe of minde, as well in thinking of the crueltie of this vncharitable Giant, as also, for that the night was so long that he could not put his determined purpose in vre, but in the end the gladsome daye appeared, at which time this worthye Knight perused his armour, and surely armed himselfe, and lased on his helme, and taking his horse, he rode the waye which led towards the Citie, beeing the same waye which the Damosell went. He had not ridden farre when he discouered the Citie, which was meruailously adorned with Towers and fortresses, but yet round about it was to be seene a meruailous and dolorous spectacle of dead men and women torne in peeces, and others hanged by the necke vppon Gybbets hard by the walls, and some vpon trees which were in the field nigh at hand, which caused the Prince to stay, and to sigh with great sorrow and teares in the beholding of so inhumane crueltie, and in bitternesse of heart he said, O Lord how wonderfull be thy secrets, y thou sufferest this Knight to vse so great crueltie without punishing of him, it cannot be without some great mysterie which thy diuine Maiestie doth pretend. I beseech thee (O Lorde) to giue me so much grace and strength, that I may cause this great crueltye to be taken away, and vtterly to cease. O noble Citie, I cannot iudge what anger fortune should receiue of thee, in y she consenteth thou shouldest be subiect vnto such vnmercifull people, so much without pitie and compassion. Well, I maye say, that as Grecia may brag hir selfe of most excellent, wise & learned men which it hath brought vp, euen so maist thou complaine, that against thee hath bene fostered two terrible and abhominable tyrants. And in saieng these wordes: hee drew nigh the gates of the Citie, which for feare of the crueltie of the Giant, they kept shut, & taking hold at the ring

thereof

low, thinking ther to take his reſt, but ỹ place being ſolitarie was fitter to occupie his amorous mind wᵗ his old thoughts, and to call to remembrance things paſt, then for anye eaſe: neither was there any nære to giue comfort, or to bemone him, and calling to minde the aunſwere which he had of the faire Floriſdama, in ſuch ſort it afflicted his minde, that he remained a great while without anye memorie, but as one halfe dead, leaning againſt the body of a trée, that whoſoeuer had ſæne him at that time, would rather haue iudged him dead than aliue. In the end he came againe to himſelfe, and being somwhat eaſed with the teares that diſtilled from his eyes, of the griefe he had, he toke his lute in his hand, which he alwaies carried with him for his comforte, and began to playe on it verie ſwætely, and with his ſwæte voyce mixed with agrëable muſick, he repreſented the dolor of his heart, and ſung the ſorowe of his ſubiection by loue, which ſong is contained in theſe verſes following.

ACcord your ſounds vnto my careſull ſongs,
ye ſiluer ſtreames that paſſe this grouie ſhade,
Refrain your courſe a while, to waile my wrongs:
whoſe former weale, by loue is wofull made.
My bliſſe to bale, my pleaſure vnto paine
Conuerted is, and I in care remaine.

And ſith I ſeeke in ſiluane ſhade to ſhrowd
my ſelfe ſo ofte, my ſorrowes to declare:
Ye ſauage Satyres, let your eares be bowd
to heare my plaints, with ſpeede your ſelues prepare.
Trees, hearbes, and flowers (in woods and fields that grow,)
While thus I mourne, doo you ſome ſilence ſhow.

Sweete Philomela ceaſe thy ſongs a while,
and will thy mates their melodie to leaue,
And all at once attend my mournfull ſtile,
which will (I know) of mirth your notes bereaue.

If you deſire the burden of my ſong,
It's ſighes and ſobbes, that are conſtraind by wrong.

You furious beaſts that feed on mountaines hie,
and reſt eſſe rome with rage your pray to finde,
Drawe neere to him, whom brutiſh crueltie
hath cleane bereft of reſt and eaſe of minde.
For quite deuoyd of reaſon, loue or kinde,
Are theſe great plagues to my poore heart aſſignde.

But ſith that Fortune is ſo much my foe,
that force perforce I was inforſt to part,
From hir whoſe preſence firſt procurde my woe,
and for whoſe abſence now I feele this ſmart:
This onely one thing reſts to comfort me,
I will be firme, though ſtill ſhe froward be.

In that I loue, and am not lou'de againe,
my life I loath, and onely death require.
But ſince my proweſſe is not proued plaine,
to ſhewe my loue, I longer life deſire.
And when in field my martiall force is tride,
Sweete Death from thrall my heauie hart deuide.

This doloꝛous Knight could not pꝛocæde foꝛwards with his muſicke begunne, by reaſon of a Damzell, which was in that place vnknowen vnto him, and therefoꝛe vnlooked foꝛ, who with a ſofte and milde voyce ſaluted him, and this Knight retourned hir againe the courteſie ſhe offered. Then this Damoſell right ſoꝛrowfully ſaid. It doth well appeare ſir Knight that thou doeſt not knowe howe nære thou art vnto the perill of death, conſidering that ſo without all care thou art publiſhing theſe thy paſſions of loue. Vnto whom he aunſwered and ſaid.

I do knowe verye well faire Ladie, that alwayes I beare

doubting but to haue the aide and helpe of the valiant Empe-
rour thy Father, and by his meanes to be the better infor-
med. And noble Prince I do desire thee to declare vnto Te-
fereo my cousin and brothers sonne, all this my pretended
purpose, and perswade him to leaue of this euil custome, and
not continue in it anie longer. And moreouer to giue order
vnto all his knights and Gentlemen, that they followe no
more this wicked race, but commaund them to returne vnto
theyr owne Countries, and to remaine there in the good go-
uerning thereof, with his brother Tramarando. And the like
words he spake vnto his owne knights that were there pre-
sent at that time, and when the valiant knight of the Sunne
heard these words, which proceeded from the Gyauntes heart
without anye dissimulation, he receiued so great pleasure
therein, that incontinent he threw his sword to the ground,
and pulled off his helme from his head, and ranne and caught
the Gyaunt in his armes, and with great loue imbraced him,
giuing him to vnderstand the great contentment that he re-
ceiued to heare that he would forsake his false Gods, & turne
to the true and liuing God, the author of all goodnesse. The
Gyaunt when he sawe his face discouered, he much meruai-
led to see the great beautie of that Prince, and toke him fast
by the hande, and departed towardes the Castell, reasoning
with him of diuerse matters by the waie, And when hee came
to the Castell, he straight wayes commaunded that a shippe
shoulde bee made in a readinesse with all kinde of furniture
belonging to it, for that without anie delaie he would prose-
cute his voyage, and so curing himselfe of the small wounds
which he hadde, which did a little trouble him, he commaun-
ded straight that they should bring him somwhat to eate, for
that it was needfull, as well for the great trauaile he had in
the former battaile, as also for the losse of so much bloud
which ranne out of his woundes. And when he hadde ea-
ten and dined according to his desire, without anye more
delaie or farther resting himselfe he stayed not so much as
to pull off his harnesse, but departed out of the Castell,
and entered presently into the Shippe, and withouttaking

anie

anie farther leaue he commaunded to hoise vp the sayles, and caused the Marriners to direct theyr course towards Constantinople, leauing greate charge with the knight of the Sunne for to burie the bodie of Arcalanda, which he promised to performe with all his heart. And straight waies he finished it, for in ỹ same Chappell vnder the alter hee caused her to be buried, and vppon her for a perpetuall memorie caused an Epitaph to bee written, as in the storie hereafter shall appeare. So this gyant beeing departed his iourney, the knight of the Sunne without anie more tarryeng asked where he might finde this Tefereo, and when he was informed of the place he toke his iourney thetherwards, and left order with the people that there remained, that they shoulde not remoue nor departe till such time as he retourned againe. So long he trauailed that daie that the night drew on, and towards his left hande he heard a greate rumor and noise of harneste, whereat he tourned about that waie with Cornerino his horse, where we will leaue them, to tell you of all that which happened vnto the knight Don Eleno of Dacia.

¶ How the knight Eleno had battaile with Tefereo the Gyants cousin, and the successe that was therein, and how the Prince Eleno by a straunge aduenture was separated from his cousin and Tefereo.

Chapter. 7.

After that this knight Don Eleno of Dacia was departed from the knight of the Sun, all that daie he trauailed without meeting of anie bodie, and when night approched it wared so darke that he was constrained to withdrawe himselfe out of the high waie, and to repose himselfe in a fayre greene fielde, where as hee let his horse fede of the grasse that did there growe, and he layde himselfe downe vnder a faire and greene Willowe,

but he in no wiſe could, for ſtumbling vppon the Gyaunt he lighted on his breaſt, in ſuch tumbling ſorte, that he fell on the other ſide of him, & ſeing himſelfe ſo ouerthrowen wont any power in himſelfe to prouide for help, he gaue a loude cry & ſaid. O Jeſu Chriſt the ſonne of God deliuer mee from this daunger, ſo incontinently as ſone as he was at the grounde, with a light and valiaunt courage hée roſe vp againe, pretending not to ſhew anie pittie or fauour in this fight, and returned to the Gyaunt whom he found on foote and readie to defend himſelfe, and approching nigh him, becauſe he would ſhewe the greatneſſe and valiaunt ſtomacke that hée had, hée ſayde. Valyaunt King, take to thée thy helme, for that I will not that for lacke thereof thou doeſt loſe the ſurmounted valour of thy heart. The Gyaunt which had proued by experience the great proweſſe of his ſurmounted ſtrength, and againe ſeing his noble curteſie in offering him his helme, with an humble and meeke voyce hée ſayde. Valiant Prince, I praie thée tell me if it be true, that thou art he which at the beginning thou ſaydeſt thou wert, or whether thou art the God Mars, which is come downe from heauen to deſtroye mée, and to make my ſtrength of no eſtimation. This worthie knight then placing the point of his ſworde vppon the grounde, and leaning his arme vppon the croſſe of the hilte, not making anie outward apperaunce of wearineſſe that he had in this battaile, with an amiable countenaunce he ſayd.

" O king, if thou wouldeſt acknowledge this greate cruel-
" tie which thou committeſt, and the ſmall reaſon which thou
" haſt to execute it, and howe greatly thou doeſt erre and art
" ouerſéene, in thinking that thou ſerueſt thy Gods in maintai-
" ning and defending ſuch extreame tyrannie, thou ſhouldeſt
" do much better, & ſo returne vnto the knowledge of my God,
" who is the true creator of heauen & earth and all that therin
" is. Then the Gyant replied vnto him & ſayd: Of truth (gentle
" Knight) thou knoweſt well how to extoll thy God in whome
" thou doeſt beléeue, but howe ſhall I knowe that this thy
" God is of more goodneſſe and vertue then my Gods. Vnto
" whom the Prince anſwered and ſayde. Oh king, that is ve-

rie

rie easie and apparant to be seene and perceiued. Tell me I „
praie thee that if at anie time thy Gods haue in their owne „
causes had anie power or defence? no surely, for if they had, „
then would not they haue suffered themselues to be so ill „
intreated of them who should worship and serue them, for if „
at anie time your Gods doe not graunt vnto your requests, „
and performe that which you would haue them do, then you „
beginne to curse and to banne them, and speake the worst „
that may be spoken of them, and some of them you throwe in- „
to the fire and burne, and other some you pull out of their „
Tabernacles, and tread them vnder your feete and polute „
them, and presently you leaue them and chaunge them for „
other new Gods, and vnto them you doe your worshippe till „
such time as they likewise fulfill not what you aske of them, „
and yet these poore and infortunate Gods are in no fault, for „
that at anie time they cannot helpe themselues, but dosth „
burne in the pit of hell. So that it commeth of a great sim- „
plicitie ý thou wilt beleeue in the diuell, who is the authour „
of all euill, and forget the creator of all thinges, who hath gi- „
uen thee this thy strength and prowesse, and will deliuer thee „
in all thy necessities. Oh king thou shouldest not make any „
other promise, but onely that which thou thy selfe diddest vn- „
to the image of Diana. For in thy anger thou diddest throw „
it downe and cut it with thy sword, and diddest vnto it all „
the euill that thou couldest, so that if they had had anie pow- „
er, thinkest thou then they woulde haue suffered that thou „
shouldest haue offered this outrage vnto them, no I tell thee „
thou mightst not haue bene once so hardie as to haue moued „
against them. The Gyant who then was somwhat touched „
with the truth, sayd. „

Worthie Prince, I henceforth promise thee, that I wil serue this thy God & wil desire thy frēdship & remaine thy friend, for ý thou hast opened my eies & giuen me the light of ý true life. And for ý I may the better bring to passe and accomplish this my determined purpose, I wil without tarrieng take my iourney to Constantinople, to ý end to be instructed in ý doctrine of ý faith, & vnderstand perfectly ý power of thy god, not

whiſkeled in the ayre, but the knight perceiuing the ſtronchon to approch, ſtepped aſide and let it paſſe by, and cloſing with him, with the ſtrength of his Herculine arme he ſtroke him ſuch a blowe vpon the thigh that the harneſſe brake all to peeces, although they were exceeding ſtrong, and wounded him vppon the thigh, which wounde although it were not much, yet the aboundaunce of blond that ranne from it did greatly trouble him. The Giant ſeing himſelfe ſo ill intreated, with a wonderfull and outragious furie, gaue terrible & fearfull ſtrikes, and out of his helmet iſſued forth a thicke ſmoake, and therewith he drew out his huge & broade ſworde, and ſhrouded himſelfe vnder his ſtrong ſhælde, and began with great furie to redouble his ſtrokes vppon the knight, the which the noble Prince with greate nimbleneſſe defended him from. Now hære began ỹ braueſt & beſt fought battaile that euer was ſæne betwæne two knightes, there might you beholde the whole ſtrength and valiantneſſe of giants, there might you perceiue all the proweſſe of knighthood, with euery policy vſed in armes, ther might you ſæ how theſe two knights preſſed one vpon another, and procured one to hurt another, and alſo to warde the cruell blowes, ỹ the one beſtowed on the other: there might you viewe the ſparks of fire like lightening flaſh from their terrible ſtrokes, and the peeces of harneſſe flying in the aire, hauing no compaſſion the one of the others paines, but each one ſæking to haue the vauntage of his enimie, traueſing grounde from one place to another, that it was right wonderfull to beholde, and howe lyke two ramping Lyons they endured for the ſpace of two houres, without receiuing anie reſt, neither could it be perceiued that anie of them both did faint, but rather the longer they fought, the more their furie kindled and their ſtrength augmented, of the which the Gyant much meruailed, and fæling the great force of his aduerſarie which was before him, was not a little amazed, but that which moſt græued him, was, that he could not faſten one blowe to his contentment vpon his enimie, for which cauſe hæ beganne to exclaime agaynſt his Gods, but eſpecially agaynſt Mars, for that

he

hée was perſwaded, that hée was deſcended from Heauen, to make that combat with him, whereby to worke his deſtruction. And therewith his furie double increaſing, with an infernall anger, he multiplied his blowes with ſo great haſt and ſtrength, that he cauſed the Greeke, to beſtur himſelfe from one place to another to make his defence: but he as one which was not idle, but by theſe meanes the more inflamed, letting ſlip the bridle of all patience, his valiant & heroycall courage double increaſed, and his ſtrength & lightneſſe did ſurmount in ſuch ſort, that vnder his harneſſe in more then ten places he hurt the Giaunt, and although the wounds were not great, yet the bloud that iſſued out, was very much. Then the Giant ſéeing himſelfe in ſuch a pickle, threw his ſhielde from him to the ground, and with both his handes toke his great cutting ſword, & heauing it aloft, he let it fall with ſuch wonderfull furie, that it was verye ſtraunge to beholde. But this politike Prince ſeeing on which part this terrible blowe would fall, determined not to receiue it, but with a light leape did cléere himſelfe from the fall thereof, the which fell to the grounde with ſo greate and terrible haſt, that the halfe of it entred into the earth, and by reaſon that the ſtroke was giuen more of anger then of cunning, by the great ſtrength that he put to it, he could not kéepe himſelfe, but was forced with the ſtroke to fall with his breaſt vpon the pommell of his ſword. Ye was no ſoner downe, but the Sonne of Trebatio gaue him another vpon his helme, that it ſounded as though he had ſtroke vpon a bell, wherewith the Giant fell flat to the ground, greatly aſtonished, and almoſt beſide himſelfe. This valiant Greeke when he ſawe him in this traunce, laide faſt holde vpon his helme, and with the excéding ſtrength that he ſet to it, hée pulled it from his head. The Giant which was then ſomewhat recouered, caught holde vpon the ſkirt of his harneſſe, and pulled the Knight towards him with ſuch ſtrength, that he was not able to make reſiſtaunce, but néedes he muſt go whether his ſtrong arme carried him. Then gladly woulde this noble Greeke haue defended himſelfe from this perill,

whiſkeled in the ayre, but the knight perceiuing the tronchon to approch, ſtepped aſide and let it paſſe by, and cloſing with him, with the ſtrength of his Herculine arme he ſtroke him ſuch a blowe vpon the thigh that the harneſſe brake all to peeces, although they were exceeding ſtrong, and wounded him vppon the thigh, which wounde although it were not much, yet the aboundaunce of blood that ranne from it did greatly trouble him. The Giant ſeing himſelfe ſo ill intreated, with a wonderfull and outragious furie, gaue terrible & fearfull ſhrikes, and out of his helmet iſſued forth a thicke ſmoake, and therewith he drew out his huge & broade ſworde, and ſhrouded himſelfe vnder his ſtrong ſhelde, and began with great furie to redouble his ſtrokes vppon the knight, the which the noble Prince with greate nimbleneſſe defended him from. Now heere began ỹ braueſt & beſt fought battaile that euer was ſeene betweene two knightes, there might you beholde the whole ſtrength and valiantneſſe of giants, there might you perceiue all the proweſſe of knighthood, with euery policy vſed in armes, ther might you ſee how theſe two knights preſſed one vpon another, and procured one to hurt another, and alſo to warde the cruell blowes, ỹ the one beſtowed on the other: there might you viewe the ſparks of fire like lightening flaſh from their terrible ſtrokes, and the peeces of harneſſe flying in the aire, hauing no compaſſion the one of the others paines, but each one ſeking to haue the vauntage of his enimie, traueſing grounde from one place to another, that it was right wonderfull to beholde, and howe lyke two ramping Lyons they endured for the ſpace of two houres, without receiuing anie reſt, neither could it be perceiued that anie of them both did faint, but rather the longer they fought, the more their furie kindled and their ſtrength augmented, of the which the Giant much meruailed, and feeling the great force of his aduerſarie which was before him, was not a little amazed, but that which moſt greeued him, was, that he could not faſten one blowe to his contentment vpon his enimie, for which cauſe hee beganne to exclaime againſt his Gods, but eſpecially againſt Mars, for that

he

hée was perſwaded, that hée was deſcended from Heauen, to make that combat with him, whereby to worke his deſtruction. And therewith his furie double increaſing, with an infernall anger, he multiplied his blowes with ſo great haſt and ſtrength, that he cauſed the Greeke, to beſtur himſelfe from one place to another to make his defence: but he as one which was not idle, but by theſe meanes the more inflamed, letting ſlip the bridle of all patience, his valiant & heroycall courage double increaſed, and his ſtrength & lightneſſe did ſurmount in ſuch ſort, that vnder his harneſſe in more then ten places he hurt the Giaunt, and although the wounds were not great, yet the bloud that iſſued out, was very much. Then the Giant ſéeing himſelfe in ſuch a pickle, threw his ſhielde from him to the ground, and with both his handes toke his great cutting ſword, & heauing it aloft, he let it fall with ſuch wonderfull furie, that it was verye ſtraunge to beholde. But this politike Prince ſeeing on which part this terrible blowe would fall, determined not to receiue it, but with a light leape did cléere himſelfe from the fall thereof, the which fell to the grounde with ſo greate and terrible haſt, that the halfe of it entred into the earth, and by reaſon that the ſtroke was giuen more of anger then of cunning, by the great ſtrength that he put to it, he could not keepe himſelfe, but was forced with the ſtroke to fall with his breaſt vpon the pommell of his ſword. He was no ſoner downe, but the Sonne of Trebatio gaue him another vpon his helme, that it ſounded as though he had ſtroke vpon a bell, wherewith the Giant fell flat to the ground, greatly aſtoniſhed, and almoſt beſide himſelfe. This valiant Greeke when he ſawe him in this traunce, laide faſt holde vpon his helme, and with the exceéding ſtrength that he ſet to it, hée pulled it from his head. The Giant which was then ſomewhat recouered, caught holde vpon the ſkirt of his harneſſe, and pulled the Knight towards him with ſuch ſtrength, that he was not able to make reſiſtaunce, but néedes he muſt go whether his ſtrong arme carried him. Then gladly woulde this noble Greeke haue defended himſelfe from this perill,

" ling an answere, or disdainful by denying thy request, vnder-
" stand then (O King of Sardenna) ỹ I am a Grecian borne, &
" named the Knight of the Sunne, sonne vnto the renowmed
" Emperour Trebatio, and brother vnto the inuincible Rosi-
" cleer, whose courage as yet was neuer quailed in fight, ney-
" ther hetherto hath my heart bene vanquished by any force:
" for although as yet I haue detracted time, by meanes of this
" my conference, it hath not bene for any conceiued feare, but
" the onely griefe of my conscience, which is not a little aflic-
" ted with sorrowe, to see so worthy a personage as thou art,
" so impiously to lead thy life: admonishing thee friendlye to
" forsake thy former wickednesse, and to reuoke the abhomi-
" nable sentence of thy frowarde will: & seeing I haue both
" answered thy demaund, & thou vnderstandest my desire, I
" would faine be certified whether thou wilt accepte mee for
" thy friend, or defie me as thy foe: that either by thy subuer-
" sion we may fauourably conclude, or by thy persisting, pro-
" cede to the combat: for although for thy sake I chiefly wish
" for peace, yet for mine owne part, I am indifferent. Great is
" the ioye (aunswered the Giant,) that I conceiue at the sight
" of thee, whose worthinesse is so much wondred at through-
" out the world, and to the ende I may both trye thy famous
" strength, and thou fele my renowmed force, I accept ỹ bat-
" taile, with this condition, that if by thee I be now vanquish-
" ed, I will not onely in my armour blaze forth the honour of
" my conquerour, but for euer hereafter I wil submit my selfe
" willingly to thy commaundement: and if my Fortune be so
" friendly that I subdue thee, thou shalt in satisfactiõ leane vn-
" to me, the thing thou most likest: which is my life aunswe-
" red this noble Prince, as a due reward for my weakenesse.
" That were much more then I would willingly request (re-
" plyed the Giant): but if, (which indeede is doubtfull) thou
" escape my handes, thy horse shall suffice me, if likewise hee
" fele not my furie, in that (as I suppose) he is of so singu-
" lar properties.

" If thou obtaine the victorie (aunswered the Prince) I

pro-

promise thée my horse, which I will heere in safetye leaue, both for that if thou winne him thou shalt be sure to inioy him: and also for that I neuer vse in anye battell to fight with aduantage. Wherewith, with no lesse agilitie then courage, he leste the saddle, and drawing out his sword, couragiously he sayd: Giant, prepare for thy defence, for beholde me readie to beginne the fight: and therewithall hée gaue him so furious an ouerthwart blowe vppon the waste, that the sparkes of fire fell burning to the grounde, and the strength of the stroke constrained the Giant, to stagger sidewarde, thrée or foure steppes, deceiuing him for that time of the daungerous blowe, which with his peysaunt clubbe he had prouided to indaunger the Prince. But when he felte this course intertainment, his cholar double increasing, hée lyghtlye recouered, and lifting his clubbe aboue his head, he determined to repaye the Prince with such vnreasonable interest, that at that one blowe hée woulde ende the battayle: (which in déede if in the descending, it hadde lighted on the Greeke, it hadde not a little indaungered him). But the noble Prince béeing of no lesse prowesse then experience, and nothing vnacquainted with such skirmishes, hauing an eye to the maine, by the nimblenesse of his bodie made waye for the blowe, which without harming him, fell to the grounde with such terrible furye, that it caused a resounding Eccho, in the woodes and mountaynes there adioyning.

The valyaunt Knight of the Sunne, greatlye misliking so monstrous a weapon as that clubbe was, determined (with as much spéede as possiblye he might) to delyuer himselfe from the daunger thereof, and before the Gyaunt coulde recouer another blowe with the same, he strake againe at his handes, with so great force and incredible furie, that he cut his heauie clubbe a sunder, and moreouer if he had followed his blowe, both clubbe and handes had fallen to the ground. Then when the Giant remained with no more then a yeard of his club in his hand, much meruailing thereat, he threw the rest at him with such rage, that it

where out iſſued the Gyant at all pointes armed with verie rich armour of fine ſteele, and vppon his right ſhoulder a great clubbe barred with yron of a huge weight, and at his girdell a verie bigge and broade ſword, and about his necke there hanged a rich and ſtrong Shielde, whereon was portratured the ſame deuiſe which he ſawe on the Altar in the Chappell. In his demeanour, he ſhewed himſelfe to bee valiant, and with a gentle countenaunce he came towardes the place whereas the Knight abode. All this, the noble and courteous Greeke did ſtedfaſtly beholde, and prayed God, that of his mercie he would abolish this euill cuſtome that he did maintaine, and that he would giue him grace to acknowledge his error wherein he had tranſgreſſed, and that he might be conuerted vnto the knowledge of ỹ true faith, for that it was great pitie, to ſee ſo much crueltie remaine, in ſo noble & worthie a perſonage, as he was, or in ſo well proportioned a bodie as he ſeemed to haue, and thus this noble prince remained in beholding his perſonage till ſuch time as the Gyaunt drew nigh vnto him, who without ſhewing anie deſiaunce or countenaunce of pride, ſaide. I beleeue (gentle Knight) that this my preſence hath put thee in ſome feare of my force, therfore for that thou ſeemeſt to be a knight well diſpoſed & of great valor, I yelde vnto thee the battaile. And if ſo be thou miſtruſt thy power, I giue thee liſence to return from whence thou cameſt, or elſe if thou ſo pleaſe, to remaine with me in my companie. But this valyant Greeke as one nothing daunted, without mouing of his countenaunce aunſwered and ſayd: Doe not thou thinke O king, that the bigneſſe of thy bodie, although it ſhew thee to be of great ſtrength, maketh me in anie part either to meruaile or feare, for that my ſword hath bene accuſtomed to abate the courage of diuerſe ſuch as thou art, but that which maketh me moſt to muſe, is, ỹ god hath ſuffred thee ſo long time to exerciſe this crueltie. And againe, that thou being adorned with ſo gentle diſpoſition and courage, vnto my ſeeming conformable, wouldeſt maintaine ſo cruell a cuſtome, without either feare of God, or regard of his lawes. Neuer-

the-

nertheleſſe conſidering thou haſt no knowledge of the true God, but of other fained Gods, I do not ſo greatly muſe that thou haſt followed thine owne appetite ſo much, but take my counſaile, and beſtow not this thy great ſtrength and force in the ſeruice of thoſe euill Gods, but turne vnto my God, and in his defence and faith (which is the right faith) exercise theſe thy good giftes, with the which he hath endowed thée, and if thou wilt thus do, I will take thée for my friend and kéepe thy companie, for that thou ſéemeſt vnto me to be of ſo good a diſpoſition, & one ý doth well deſerue to be had in reputatiõ. For verely, it is conuenient (worthy King) that thou leaue this cruelties which thou doſt héere vſe, béeing ſo farre different from natures rule, and to forget this ſeruice which thou doſt vnto the Diuell, which is the onelye willer of this damnable worke: and ſo reforming thy life, I would wiſh thée to become a chriſtian. For I promiſe thée it doth not a little gréeue me, that ſo worthie a knight as thou art, ſhould through vnbeléefe periſh and be dampned: and if alreadie thou haue anie remorſe in conſcience, or perſeuerance of this my ſpéech, accept my counſell I requeſt thée, which if thou do, I promiſe thée to be alwaies thine, and by firme friendſhip to vnite my ſelfe vnto thy fellowſhippe. Contrariwiſe, if thou perſiſt in this thy pretended tyrannie, prepare thy ſelfe, (and that ſpéedely) vnto battaile, whereby thou ſhalt perceiue how ſmally I feare thy force, (as thou doeſt fondly ſuppoſe.)

The Gyaunt which was verie attentiue vnto all that the Prince had vttered, replied in this wiſe. Before we beginne our battaile (ſir Knight) let me requeſt this little ſute of thée, which is, that thou vnfolde to me thy name, foraſmuch as by thy comly proportion thou ſéemeſt to deſcend from ſome noble progenie, and by thy behauiour to be of no leſſe prowéſſe then authoritie: the one arguing in thée no ſmall valour in fight, the other no little eloquence to ſubuert thy foe. The heroycall Prince diſcréetly marking with what ſober aduiſement he deliuered theſe ſpeaches, with no leſſe mildenſſe, returned vnto him this anſwere, ſaying. Foraſmuch as I will not in anie reſpect be accounted either quarellous by conceā-

thought it would little prevaile him, and betaking him to his
feete, he fledde awaie: Of whome this noble Prince made
small account, but let him go, the olde priest of whom we be-
fore spoke, was present and beheld all that had happened, and
mervailed verie much at the great prowesse of the vnknow-
en Knight. And this noble Prince seeing himselfe cleere of
them that would haue done him wrong, returned vnto the
Priest and asked him if he hadde anie thing that he might
eate, and requested him to let him haue it, for that he hunge-
red and had great neede thereof. Then this Priest gaue him
such meate as he hadde for himselfe, still perswading the
Prince for to returne againe the same way hee came, and not
to put himselfe, into that so daungerous and terrible an ad-
uenture, but this heroycal prince made little reckoning of his
requests, but giuing him great thanks for the good entertain-
ment he gaue him, he toke his leaue of him, & went the same
which lead way towards the castle where the giaunt dwelt, &
trauailing by little & little with an easie softe pace, he anone
had a sight thereof, and perceiued that it was verie fayre to
behold, and walled about verie strongly, which he beheld not
long, but that he harde a Trumpet sound with mervailous
sweete melodie, and at the sound thereof there loked out of a
window a gyant, being a young man of great & large bignes,
& comely in all parts accordingly, his face was verie irksull
to loke on, but not ill fauoured, but rather seemed to be ador-
ned with a severe kinde of grauitie. This Gyant loking
that way where this noble Greeke was, he asked him with a
high and mightie huge voice.

" Knight, what doest thou heere so securely seeke, and what
" wouldest thou haue, not respecting this my vnfortunate and
" vnhappie customs, but without anie feare thereof thou ap-
" prochest hether, presenting thy selfe of thy own free will to be
" sacrificed. But this worthie Greeke in the meane time that
" the Gyant spoke these wordes did contemplate himselfe in
" beholding the huge making and the greate strength that
" did appeare hee hadde by the proportion of his members.
" And placing his words with great discreation he answered

and

and sayd. I come to demand battaile of thée O King, not for that thou hast at anie time greéued mée, or giuen mée cause, but onelye to take awaye and frustrate (if it bée possible) this euill and diuelliſh custome which thou maintainest, or else to lose my lyfe in the quarrall, therefore if thou doest thinke good to proceéde in this thy helliſh pretence, take thy armour and arme thy selfe and come forth, and héere in this fielde I will abide thy comming, where I hope by the fauour of almightie God, that with thy death thou shalt paye héere the tribute of all this tyrannie which thou hast vsed. The Gyaunt remained still at the windowe beholding this worthie Grecian Knight, for that hée seémed vnto him to bée a Knight of greate valour and prowesse, (by his comelie proportion, and by the deuises that hée had in his armour hée seémed to bée a straunger) with a familiar countenance he sayd.

I would somewhat replie vnto these thy wordes, but because thou shalt not saie I speake lyke a Thrush in a cage, I will referre it till such time as I am with thée in the fielde, if thou dareſt to abide my comming. And so without anie more speaking he withdrewe himselfe from the windowe, and with a terrible voice hée called for his armour, in the meane time this noble Greéke did peruse his harneſſe in all partes that it was well, for it was néedfull, as héereafter you shall heare.

¶ Of the terrible battaile that this Grecian Prince had with the Gyant, and of all the aduentures that chanced in the said battaile. Chap. 6.



His worthie Grecian knight lifting vp his heart and eies vnto heauen, craued fauour and helpe of almightie God, requesting his aide against so great and terrible an aduersarie, and being thus in his praier he sodeinly heard a great noiſe & well consorted sound of Trumpets, the which made melodious and swéet harmonie, and not long after this the gate of the castle was opened,

where

when these knightes espyed the Prince so well proportioned and of so good disposition, & with his armour of strange deuice contrarie vnto theirs, then one of those fiue knightes which seemed to haue more authoritie then the rest, sayd. Oh knight, what infernall furie hath hardned thee to aduenture hether, knowing the custome which is vsed heere. But it seemeth vnto me that rather ignorance is the occasion hereof, more then anie other thing, wherefore I am content to let thee depart againe vpon condition, that thou leauest with me thy armour and thy horse (if it be thine to giue) for that they do greatly delight me. This valiant Prince dissembling his anger, with a very merrie and smiling countenance made answere.

You haue sayd true, y ignorance hath brought me hether, for y I am a straunger in this countrie, and neuer vnderstood that anie such crueltie hath ben vsed heere till now, that this good olde man hath tolde mee. But to giue thee my armour I am not determined at this time, for that I am not accustomed to trauaile without it. And as for my horse, I do insure thee that he will let none take his backe but my selfe, therefore it were best thou aske some other thing, for that in this I pretend not to accomplish thy request. They vnderstanding the wordes which the Prince answered vnto them, one of the fiue knights pretending more hardinesse then all the rest, replyed. I will see how thou canst defend thy horse, and with that he went to laie hande on the horse bridle, which he had not so sone proffered, when the fierce horse opened his mouth and with great furie he caught him by the shoulder, and lift him vp from the ground, and in his fall he all to trampled & troade him in peeces, and so slew him. At the which this noble Prince could not refraine from laughing, and merrilye sayd.

In this sorte doth my horse reward them that bee so bolde and hardie of enterprise. Then the knight which did first speake vnto the Prince, sayde vnto him with exceeding great anger. I do promise thee for certaintie, that this great iniuries and outrage which thy horse against my companion

hath

hath done shall cost thée thy lyfe: And on a sodaine another of the fiue knightes which remained drew out his sworde, thinking to haue cut off the horse legs, but this expert horse with great lightnesse shunned the blowe, and on a sodayne rose on his hinder fæte, and with his fore fæte he played so with his helme, that he broke it all to pæces and threwe the knight dead to the grounde: the which fact did greatlye amase these knights of Sardenna. Thē the noble Prince with a pleasant semblaunce said. I am afraide that if in this sort you battayle with my horse, he will in ỳ end deliuer me frō all danger of the losse of my armour. Then this other knight hearing these wordes, which he tœke to be a greate reproch vnto him, bæing almost ouercom with anger, in a great furie and rage he drew out his sword, and flourishing it about his head, he saide. The greate outrage which thy horse hath hære done, (as I before said) thou shalt spædely repay with the losse of thy lyfe, and vttering these words, he smote the Prince vppon the helme so vehemently and with such courage, that the very sparkes of fire sprong out, & fell burning to ỳ ground. This noble prince fæling ỳ blowe not loked for, determined that that miserable knight should not go vnpaied for his good dæde, least he should praise himselfe for doing it, but with greate anger and furie he stroke the knight such a blowe a little aboue the waste, that it almost parted him in two pætes, so that he fell downe dead to the ground. Then the other thrée knights sæing this terrible and vnmercifull blowe, made no tarrieng, but all at once fell vpon ỳ prince, doubling their blowes to bring him to his ende, that it was wonderfull to sæ, but this worthie Knight, who lyttle estæmed of such daungers, stroke one of them so harde vppon the head, that he cut him downe to the breast, & he fell downe dead vpon his other companion. And tourning to another, at one blowe he parted his shæld in pæces, & cut off his arme frō his shulder. Then the other knight which remained aliue, sæing his cōpanions to be so ill intreated by one only knight, thought it best to saue his life by trusting to his legs, rather then to repose any confidence in his prowesse, for that hée

thought

" ſoner had he deliuered theſe ſpeaches, incenſed with furie, he
" ſet his hand to his ſwoꝛd, & ouerthꝛew the image of Diana,
" that was there, & parted it in two parts: and yet not content
" with this ſacriligious fact, he deſcended from the ſcaffolde,
" exclaiming againſt the ſoꝛrowfull Tinacrian people, and ſai-
" eng: O villaines and traitoꝛs, it is not poſſible but that all
" you were conſenting vnto this cruell fact, and determined
" euil. And vttering theſe and ſuch like reaſons, in his diueliſh
" furie, he began to flouriſh with his ſwoꝛd cutting, killing,
" and wounding on euery ſide, with ſuch vnmercifull crueltie,
" that in a ſmall time there did not remaine one of all them,
" that were there preſent, but I alone: and by reaſon that I
" was one of the Prieſts of Diana, he ſaued my life, although
" he little eſtæmed it. Then when this fierce and bloudie di-
" uell did ſee that all were ſlaine, and that we two onely re-
" mained, he toke the dead Quæne in his armes, & commaun-
" ded me to follow him with my praiers and oꝛiſons accuſto-
" med vnto Diana, and bꝛinging hir to this place, he ſtrayght
" wayes commaunded this Chappell to be buylded, in this
" oꝛder as you now ſee, and promiſed by vowe vnto all the
" Gods, to ſacrifice euery weeke fiue perſons, naturally boꝛne
" in the lande of Tinacria, thꝛee men, and thꝛee women, in ſa-
" tiſfaction of the bloudie ſacrifice that they conſented to be of-
" fered by their deceaſed Quæne. And it is now two monthes
" paſt, ſince they haue vſed this tyꝛannie: and it is not onely
" he that doth perſecute the poꝛe people of Tinacria, but hee
" hath alſo to farther him in this his diueliſh determination,
" his bꝛothers ſonne, being of like cruell diſpoſition as him-
" ſelfe. And in this ſoꝛte do theſe two bell-hounds exerciſe
" themſelues in this deteſtable murder, inſomuch that the Ci-
" tie is almoſt left deſolate, and there remaineth verye fewe
" which doth maintaine the warres. And you ſhall vnderſtand
" moꝛeouer (gentle Knight) that the Citie is ſo ſtrong, that
" it is not poſſible to win the ſame, neither by foꝛce of armes,
" neither by hunger oꝛ any other ingen, foꝛ that it is ſo well
" furniſhed with munition and victuales: yet in the citie there
" are but a ſmall number of Knights, which foꝛ their great fi-

delisse and loue vnto their Countrie, haue not lefte it dese-late, but dw defend it to the vttermoſt of their powers. Ne-uertheleſſe to the iudgement of all men, although for a time they doe neuer ſo politikely defend and make reſiſtaunce a-gainſt their enimies, yet in the ende they ſhall be driuen to yelde and to render themſelues: for that in two battayles which the people of the Iland haue had, the diuelish Gyaunt path had ẏ victorie, ſo that now they remaine in great feare, for that the ſtrength of theſe two tyrants, is incredible to be tolde. Now here (gentle Knight) I haue declared vnto the that which thou ſo greatly didſt deſire to knowe, requeſting the to returne backe againe, the way that thou didſt come, & to keepe thy ſelf from feeling the euent of this expreſſed euil.

The noble Prince which with ſtrange attenſion gaue care vnto this ſorowfull Prieſt, being fullye determined to ad-venture his lyfe for to violate this cruell and wicked cu-ſtome, anſwered, (not according to the counſell the which he gaue him, but according vnto his courageous determinati-on,) ſaying. Friend, where is (I beſeech the) the abiding of this vnmercifull giant, & which is the way ẏ leadeth thether. The old Prieſt replied, His Caſtle is two leagues diſtaunt from this temple: but what ſhall it auaile the to know the ſame? & what profit wilt thou get by going thether, but only death: but if thou wilt nedes aduenture thy ſelfe, the ſame which brought the hether, is ẏ direct way thether, for other there is none. Moreouer, the valiant prince demanded of him if he could aduertiſe him how many knights & what ſtore of people the Gyant had about him, and he anſwered that the moſt part of them that wer about him were ſeruants, & that all the reſt of his knightes and men of warre, were placed in other caſtles and fortes of the Iland. And while they were occupied in this cõmunication, they heard without the chap-pell horſemen, as it appeared by the treading and noyſe of their horſes. Wherefore to vnderſtand what they were, they ſtaid their talk, & the prince iſſued out of ẏ chappell, where he found fiue knights, armed wᵭ verie good & ſtrong armor, who were alighting from their horſes to enter into ẏ chappel, but

when

ſubiects approcheth, the which proceedeth onely by meanes
of my beautie. Oh ſacred Diana, is it poſſible that thou doſt
"conſent, that ſo worthie a Damoſell, deſcended from ſo noble
"a race, and nouriſhed in this my Countrie, ſhoulde procure
"to ſpot the worthineſſe of hir predeceſſours, without reſpect-
"ing my beautie, or regarding the chaſt vowe that vnto thée
"I made, but that I muſt néedes violate my ſelfe againſt all
"humane nature. Well, ſéeing it is ſo, I am content, and be-
"ſéech thée to receiue the ſolempnitie of this my death, which
"I offer in ſacrifice vnto thy Deitie: for me thinke there is
"no reaſon, that one infortunate Ladie as I am, ſhould bée
"the occaſion, that ſuch a noble Kingdome as this is, ſhoulde
"be brought to ruine and decaye. Oh my louing ſubiects, by
"you I am conſtrayned to ſurrender my ſelfe vnto him, who
"cannot chuſe but intreate you ill, and indamage my Coun-
"trey, which thing is contrarie to all our expectations: in
"conſideration whereof, I am héere conſtrained with my owne
"trembling hande, to cut off the flouriſhing braunches of theſe
"my dayes: for this I ſweare vnto you my deare and faithful
"ſubiects, that I had rather offer my ſoule into the ſocietie &
"ſacred boſome of Diana, than to yélde my ſelfe vnto this de-
"formed figure. And thou King of Sardenna, ỹ greateſt tyrant
"amongſt tyraunts, beholde héere I yéld vnto thée my body
"to vſe according to thy will and pleaſure, requeſting onely
"this one thing of thée, (if ther be any pitie or mercie in thée)
"conſidering that thou inioyeſt that which thy heart deſired,
"that thou ſuffereſt theſe my louing ſubiects to liue in peace,
"wherefore come now I ſay, and receiue that which is thine.
"And thou O chaſt Diana, accept likewiſe that which with
"ſo much bloud I offer vnto thée. And in finiſhing this ſor-
"rowfull ſpeach, ſhe drewe out a faire and bright ſhining
"ſword, which ſhe had hidden ſecretly vnder her gowne, and
"putting the hilte vpon the ſcaffolde, (little loked for of all
"thoſe that were preſent) ſhe ſodaynly threwe hir ſelfe vppon
"the poynt of the ſayd ſword, ſo that not all that were there,
"could deliuer hir, for ỹ poynt paſſed through hir body in ſuch
"ſort, (as thou doſt ſee héere by this figure portratured) rei-

dring hir soule to hir tuition, vnto whom she offered hir sa- »
crifice. What should I heare declare the lamentable sorowes »
and pitifull lamentation that was there made for this vn- »
happie mischaunce, committed in the sight of all the people, »
I say it was such that the woodes eccoed, and their pitifull »
shrikes ascended to the heauens: but none was more galled »
with griefe, then the afflicted Giant, who rose vp, and like a »
man distraught somed at the mouth, and roaring with horri- »
ble cries lyke an infernall creature, in great furie he rushed »
amongst the people throwing them downe on euerie side, till »
he came vpon the scaffolde, and approching to the dead body »
of the damosell, he toke hir in his armes, and with a terri- »
ble and fearfull voyce he sayd. Oh my beloued ioy and earst »
my onely hearts delight. Is this the desired sacrifice, where- »
in through thy desperatenes thou hast deceiued me? who lo- »
ued thee more then my selfe. Is this ꝑ truce thou requiredst »
for one day only, therein to conclude both thy death, & mine »
also. Oh noble Queene, and my beloued Lady, if this were »
thy intent, why diost thou not first sacrifice me thy seruant »
and loue, wholly subiected vnto thy beautie. Woe be vnto »
thee thou vnfortunate King of Sardenna, that for thy fault & »
lack of loking to, thou hast lost hir, whom thou madest La- »
die of thy hart. O ill graunted truce, whereby my hart hath »
lost that, (yea without all hope of recouerie) wherein onelye »
it had lately rest. O Diana, is it not sufficient, that they do »
worship and honour thee, but that thou wilt haue all goodnes »
to consist in ielousie? Tarrie therefore, for I will make that »
thy determined purpose shall mitigate thy mallice, and thy »
owne deuice shall be thy destruction: for I vowe by the di- »
uine Iupiter, because thou hast permitted this detestable act, »
that so long as I liue, thou shalt not be worshipped for the »
chast Diana, but Arcalanda in thy sted shall be adored. I wil »
procure moreouer to diminish thy name, yea, vtterly to ex- »
tinguish it, so that there shal be no more memorie remaining »
of thee, for that thy bloudie tyrannie doth deserue no lesse. »
What shall I more speake (gentle and noble Knight) of the »
anguish and deadly sorrowe that the King sustained, for no »

" of him truce for the nert daie following, to the intent that
" I maie make some publyke sacrifice, as well to appease the
" wrath which the chast goddesse Diana may conceiue against
" me, as to satisfie my owne heart, for not fulfilling my vow:
" so incontinently without anie more delaie the Knightes dis-
" patched a messenger vnto the king, giuing him to vnderstand
" of all that hadde passed, and the determination of theyr
" Quéene. The exceeding great comfort that this king did re-
" ceiue thereat, the time will not permit to declare vnto thée,
" but with right good acceptation of the truce he graunted to
" all that was demaunded, and moreouer proffered himselfe to
" be present at the same sacrifice. The next morning when that
" Phœbus with his golden beames did scarcelye appeare, they
" beganne to prepare all thinges in readinesse for the sacrifice)
" (which hath since bœne the occasion of so manie inhumane
" sacrifices,) and in the midde waye betwixt the Citie and
" the Campe of the Sardenians, they erected a scaffolde all co-
" uered with cloth of golde verie rich, and vpon the Scaffolde
" about the middle thereof was placed a faire table couered
" also with a carpet of cloth of golde, and vpon it a chafindish
" of coales burning. This being done, there was straight
" wayes hearde a swéete and harmonious sounde of clarions
" and Trumpettes, and sundrie other kinde of instrumentes,
" these went before the people, and nert vnto them were
" brought fiftéene rammes, all adorned with fine white woll:
" and after them followed fiue Bulls, with huge and mightye
" hornes, bœing all black of haire: and after them there fol-
" lowed fiue kine, and with them a certaine number of the
" Priests of Diana, singing theyr accustomed songes in the ho-
" nour of Diana: then followed a greate companie of knights
" all armed with strong armour & bright, without any other
" deuice: and after them came the Marques of Modique,
" bringing in his hands the image of Diana, and on either side
" of him two Knights of great estimation, each of them bea-
" ring in theyr handes greate vessells of golde full of most
" precious and swéete Wine. Then after all this came the
" beautifull Quéene Arcalanda, apparelled with a roabe of
stats,

ſtate, beeing of great and ineſtimable value. And with this ceremonie they went vppon the Scaffolde, where the Marques placed the image of Diana, behinde the Chafingdiſh of coales that was there burning: and the Prieſtes continued ſtill ſinging theyr ſongs, which cuſtomablie they vſed in the lyke ſacrifices, drinking of the precious Wine that the two knightes did bring in the golden veſſells, and all at once they brought lowe the ſtout and vntamed neckes of the Bulles, and the reſt of the other beaſtes by cutting theyr throates, whoſe blood they ſprinkled all about the Sacrifice, and opening theyr bowells they toke out the inwarde partes, with the call on the liuer, and put them vppon the Chafindiſh of burning coales, and with this ſlaughter they did make ſacrifice vnto the chaſte Goddeſſe Diana, and the Prieſtes fell downe flat vppon theyr breaſts on the earth, and ſo ended theyr ſacrifice. At the ſight of this ceremonie was preſent the king of Sardenna, and his couſin, his brothers ſonne, both armed with all their armour, and verie attentiue to this that I haue tolde you. The Sacrifice ended, this vnfortunate Queene commaunded ſilence to bee made, and all the companie beeing ſtilled, ſhee raiſed vp her ſelfe vppon her ſeate, and with a beawie voice diſtilling manie ſalte teares, ſhee ſayd.

O moſt excellent and chaſt Diana, in whoſe bleſſed boſome the chaſt and vndefiled virginnes doe recreate themſelues. Vnto thy diuine excellencie I doe commende theſe my laſt Sacrifices, craning record of all the Gods, that I haue procured and done my beſt, & yet ſtill do, for euer to bee thine: for whoſe ſake O mightie Iupiter, I know not how thou doeſt conſent that I by force ſhoulde loſe that, which thou by thy omnipotencie and almightie Deitie, oughteſt to keepe and defende: and not to ſuffer that I thus ſhould bee compelled to deliuer my body into the power of him which with all tyrannie woulde ſeeke to haue the vſe of the ſame. And neuertheleſſe if to this I do not conſent and agree, beholde the vtter ruine and ſorrowfull deſtruction both of my ſelfe and alſo of all my true and faythfull

nertheleſſe I requeſt thée to declare vnto me the cauſe, for that as yet being ignorãt of farther peril, thou ſæmeſt to perſwade me to ſo great a feare. To whom the olde man replied, for ſ thou ſæmeſt vnto mœ to be of an incomperable perfection & exceeding force. I will not let to declare vnto thœ with as great breuitie as I may this tragicall matter, whereby thou maiſt well perceiue the ſingular profit that thou ſhalt receiue in following this my counſell which I haue giuen thœ, and ſo with a ſadde and heauie countenaunce, mixed with many ſalte and bitter teares diſtilling downe from his aged eyes, he began in this wiſe and ſayd.

"This countrey wherein thou now art, is that auncient "and famous kingdome of Tinacria, which not long ſince, "was gouerned by one of the moſt puiſſaunt Kings that euer "raigned therein, or in any Prouince hereabout: but death, "by his accuſtomed furie, depriued him of his life, and all his "loyall ſubiects, of a vertuous and louing Lord, leauing the "guiding of the Kingdome, in the power of two very fayre "and Angelicall damoſels, his daughters, who repreſented the "former vertues of their noble & late deceaſed father. The el- "deſt of thẽ was named Arcalanda, & the youngeſt Garaſilea. "Not long after the death of the king their Father, this fayre "Arcalanda was requeſted of loue by the king of Sardenna, "whoſe name is Bramidoro, a gyant of huge and mightie big- "neſſe, (as by the ſtature which thou doeſt here ſee) thou maiſt "eaſily ſuppoſe: but this vertuous quœne not onely denied her "conſent in marriage, but alſo to heare the meſſage of the em- "baſſadours, and would in no wiſe ſee them, ſo that they re- "turned without any anſwere. Then this Giant ſeing ſ great "diſdaine and ſmall account that the Quœne made of him, "and how little ſhe eſtœmed of his loue, beeing more infla- "med with furie then any other reaſon, and truſting in his "incomperable ſtrength, with fiue hundred knightes he tranſ- "ported to Tinacria, and landing in the Port of Saragoſa, he "there beganne to make knowen his vnmercifull crueltie, "hoping that he ſhoulde obtaine that by force, which by faire "meanes he could not winne. The knights of Tinacria, like

trus

true and faithfull subiectes obeied the commaundement of
their noble Quéene, and made diuerse and sundrie valiant
skirmishes with the Knightes of the Gyant: but by reason
of his great force and surpassing strength, they were alwaies
constrained to retire to the Citie, not without much losse: for
that this Gyant had in his companie to aide him a brothers
sonne of his, who in valiance & force of armes equalled well
nére his vnkle. And in such sort they mainteined the wars, ẏ
in small time they put the citie in great perill to be lost, and
likewise the whole kingdome. The knights & subiects of this
noble quéne Arcalanda, not able long to resist ẏ Gyants for-
ces, & séling themselues meruailously oppressed & in great di-
stresse, began to perswade with their quéne ẏ she should ac-
cept his demaund, and graunt to marrie the aforesaid gyant.
Then this vnfortunate Ladie vnderstanding the feblenesse
of her subiects forces, and the effect of that which they had
declared vnto her, and téling in her selfe such impossibilitie
to accomplish the demaund of the gyant, that the accepting of
it would be more grieuous vnto her then to receiue ẏ death,
she remained for a time in so déepe a studie, (being confoun-
ded as it were by her owne conceits,) that she could neither
giue aunswere vnto them, nor yet declare anie thing of her
minde: But in the end lifting vp her angelicall face, with a
chéerefull and merrie countenaunce, she sayde after this
sort.

My renowmed and well approued knightes, it is a verie
greate thing to perswade, naye rather to force my owne
will to the fulfilling of your requestes. The pure and chast
Goddesse Diana doth wel know the great wrong that I shal
commit against her, in not performing ẏ vow which I haue
promised vnto her long since: neuertheless the consideration
of your loiall fidelities hath taken such déepe rot & impression
in my heart, that I am more carefull of your safeties, then of
the vowe which I haue made vnto the chast Goddesse Dia-
na, wherefore I am determined with all spéede to accepte
his offer. Therefore out of hande let messengers be dis-
patched vnto the king of Sardenna, to aske and demaunde

thy bloud, in memorie of that ſacrifice, which once Queene Arcalanda made, who ſlewe hir ſelfe with hir owne proper hands, and ſharpe two edged ſword, vſing the greateſt cruelties that euer was heard of, both to hir ſelfe, and to me Bramidoro King of Sardenna: for ſhe at once wrought hir owne haſtie and vntimely death. And I liue ſtill, yet for hir vnhappie end, through exceeding ſorrow, euer dieng.

Little account did the valiant Knight of the ſonne make of theſe threatning words, which were there written, but wayed them as winde, and as one deſirous to ſee the end of this ſo ſtraunge an aduenture, not regarding the perill thereof, he toke his iourney forwards, determining to come againe to the waters ſide. So long he trauailed ỹ at laſt he came to a little Temple, that was very curiouſly wrought, erected to the vſe of the greateſt crueltie that euer was heard off. Nere vnto that Temple he ſawe foure dead bodies, whoſe heads were cut of, and as it appeared by their apparell, two of them were Knights, and the other two Damoſells, then caſting his eyes a ſide towards a faire & græne field which was harde by, he beheld a great number of heades, which were the heades of thoſe that had ben ſlaine, amongſt which were the foure heads of the newe ſlaine bodies, that hee before found dead, for the freſh bloud did as yet runne out vpon the ground. This lamentable ſpectacle, this noble Greek beheld, with ſuch ſurpaſſing ſorrow, as almoſt no heart can comprehend: but beeing rauiſhed as it were with deſire, to be reſolued of the effect of this ſo monſtrous inhumanitie, he proceeded farther, till at length he approched the Temple, where he diſcouered a poſterne doore to be open, and incontinent alighting from his horſe with a heroycall courage, being incenſed with anger, he ruſhed in, hoping there to haue found the homicide, which was the chiefe author of this tragicall crueltie. Beeing entred, the firſt thing that appeared to his view, was a verie faire Altar curiouſly wrought, and vpon it the dead figure of a verie faire Ladie, through whoſe bodie was thruſt, a terrible two edged ſworde, likewiſe at

the foote of the same Altar, was another figure of a huge and mightie Giant, being ten cubites in bright, all meruailous curiously wrought in Alabaster with straunge and subtil deuises, who kneeled with both his knées on the earth. This noble Knight was very much amazed, at ỹ sight of so strãge a matter, and yet not satisfied, he went into a little Courte there adioyning, & found that it was all hanged with blacke cloathes, which represented great sadnesse and sorrowe, and in those clothes was figured diuers dead men and women. Hard at the foote of the foresaid Altar was made fast in the earth, euen to the brimme thereof, a sesterne of leade, into which the blood of those that were slaine, and their heades cut off in sacrifice, was poured, and out of the same sesterne it was conuayed vnder the earth by a gutter very secretely, the which went vnto the Riuer, whereof we spake before: & this was the same bloud, which the valyant Prince did see, in the channell of the riuer, euen the blood of the four headlesse bodies that he found newly slaine. On the other side of the Altar he sawe an olde man with a faire white beard, sitting in a chaire, who leaned his aged head vppon his lefte hand, and his elbowe vppon the chaire side, whose eyes were shut, and his countenaunce so sad, that it appeared ther was in him no comfort, but onely great sorow and mournings. This valiant Greeke who greatlye desired to vnderstande the ende of this sorrowfull antecedent, approched vnto the slæping old man, & pulling him by his apparell for to awake him, this carefull old man presently lifte vp his eyes, & with out any delay or farther demaund he said. O gentle & noble Knight, what crooked fortune hath brought thee into this peruerse & accursed place, wherein is exercised so much sorrowfull impietie, and wheras thou maist expect no other thing, but death, by the hands of the most cruell Giaunt that euer thou hast heard of, take therefore my counsell, & returne the way thou camest, & that spedely before thou be espied, for otherwise it will be hard for thée to escape from death. Then the worthie knight of the Sunne answered and said. I giue thee great thankes for thy counsell (good Father) ne-

wondring how comely he backt him and managed him, the horſe in his iudgement ſæmed to be of great price, and very ſwift in coursing, imagining in this sort he alwayes thought that this young Prince was the very portraiture of his louing brother Roſicleer.

These valiant knights not meaning to ſkæpe out the daie, they vndertoke theyr iourny, and in trauailing they came to a narrowe and ſtraight lane which lead them by the fœte of a huge and ſtæpe mountaine, they had not long rid, but they entered into a broade and rough path, alwayes hoping that the countrey would prowe very pleaſaunt and well ſhadowed to ride in: but after they had tolde all their cards, it fell out contrarie, for it was a champaine ſoile deſtitute of inhabitauntes, and altogether vnprouided of victualles, which diſcommodities galled these worthye Princes very greatly, and that which græued them moſt, was, that they knew not whether they went, neither could they mæte anie one that might guide them in what place and Countrie they were. Trauailing onwardes they found that this crooked waie was diuided into two broade lanes: And then bæing in a doubt which waie they might take, ſtood ſtill, and in the end they did determine betweene them to make a diuiſion, the one to take the right hand, and the other the left. And thus these two valiaunt knightes parted the waie betweene them both, bæing right sorrowfull that theyr late acquaintance, was so vntimely ſeparated by a crooked lane. The one hauing loſt the ſight of the other, they rode very ſadly, and the Knight of the Sunne trauailed all that daye, and could not happen vpon any path that might guide him to some towne or Village. The night wrapping hir ſelfe in her browne Mantell, made the Grecian alight from his Cornerino, nigh vnto a faire Forreſt and græne meddowe, adorned with all ſwæte and ſmelling flowers, and pulling of his bridle he ſuffered him to fæd in the græne medow. This valiant knight bæing somewhat wearie of the trauaile he had ỹ day before, layde himſelfe downe vppon the græne and pleaſant graſſe, to eaſe his wearie limmes and to paſſe away the night, wher

he

he slept vntil such time as the graie morning with the notes of the swet singing birds awaked him. This valiant Prince beeing start vp, returned vnto his new begun iourney, & trauailed so long, that at the last he came to a verie faire and cleare riuer, and going along by the brinke of the same hee beheld, howe by reason of the calme winde that did blowe, there did arise manye small bubbles in the water, the sight whereof did greatly delight him, vntil such time as he discried in the same certaine little streames and droppes of bloud, at the view whereof he was striken into a meruailous admiration, and the farther he went, the streames did more plainly shew forth the skarlet coulour thereof, in such sort, ỹ the cleere and christalline water had lost his naturall coulour, & was changed into a crimosin, which strange and vnacquainted case procured the noble knight of the Sunne to bee halfe amazed, and mervailed greatly whereof should proceede such abundance of this bloudie water. And hauing an earnest desire to knowe the head spring of the riuer, and the occasion thereof, he raised his horse to hast his pase somewhat more fast, alwaies hauing an eie to the waie from whence ỹ bloudie streames descended, but in the end he lost the sight thereof, by reason of a little hill which was betweene him and the riuer, and there he was constrained to take another path, which did leade him vnto the toppe of the saide hill, which in truth was not farre distaunt from the broke or Riuer. And when he came to the toppe of this hill, he beheld there a piller of Parble stone artificialiye wrought and firmelye fixed in the ground. Vpon the highest part of the piller, there was fastened a chaine, whereat hanged a very faire table of Cipers woode, and therein was written certayne wordes, which this noble Knight began to read, the contents were as followeth.

TO the Knight or Damosell, whose frowarde & peruerse fortune shall lead this waye, I desire thee not to proceede any farther, but to retourne againe: for true it is, that heere thou canst finde no other fauour but death, with oblation of

be his good Fortune to doo him pleasure, which loued him so tenderly, and had done so much for him in his childhood, and herewithall the Dacian Prince leapt into the bark, and after him his noble cousin, leading Cornerino by the bridle, and tourning vnto the Gentlewoman, he saide vnto her on this wise.

I am assured that mine olde and approued friende the wise Lyrgandeo doth fauour me so greatlye, that he will not see me staide for lacke of a shippe, either to pleasure my selfe or to doe him a good turne. The Gentlewoman hauing
" done great reuerence, tourned her speech to Don Eleno and
" sayd to him.

" Valiaunt and amorous Knight, Lyrgandeo kis-
" seth your royall hands, and willed me to tell you that your
" captiued heart somewhat lately amended shall in the end bee
" throughly helped, to your no lesse comfort then great ioy, and
" because your present estate is sorrowful and fraughted with
" griefe, he sendeth you this armour which is nunc werable to your mourning minde, wrought with a Metaphore, which declareth your passions alreadie passed, and saying this, shee toke the trunke wherein the armour was laide, & albeit the Prince made hast to giue the Gentlewoman thankes, shee was so nimble in vanishing awaie, that his thankes came too short, whereat he was more abashed then before. The Knight of the Sunne tying his horse in one part of the vestell, sawe standing by him another more beautifull, the which he knew presently the Gentlewoman had brought for his cousin, and making toward him to see what armour the wise man had sent him, being laide abroad, sawe them wrought all with one worke, LL, and the shield was of strong and fine steele, the field blacke, and therin was set a groue, so liuely as there appeared to be nothing but trees, and likewise there was wrought in it many fine inuentions, which did testifie to be the artificiall worke of the wise Lyrgandeo. And in the middest amongest those trees there was a fayre Lady shadowed, apparelled in a straunge attire, in her counte-

naunce

naunce ſhée was verie ſadde, her haire flittering all about her eares.

The ſight of theſe ſtrange deuiſes made the Dacian Prince verie penſiue, and cauſed him to mervaile much at the great art that was vſed in the framing hereof, it was ſo dainetely handeled. But in the meane time that theſe two Princes were thus muſing and beholding theſe ſtraunge things, the ſhippe flyſt the Seas, with a braue gale of winde, and carried them ſo ſwiftly that when they called to minde the ſtraungeneſſe hereof they were greatly aſtoniſhed. In this wiſe they layled fiue dayes, not knowing whether they went, nor whether the ſhippe would carrie them: neyther could they ſée anie lande, but they were aſſured of this, that they were directed by the will of the wiſe Lyrgandeo. And layled not towarde Dacia, whereat the Prince Eleno was greatly diſcomforted, but this griefe was ſomewhat ſtayed by the gentle perſwaſions which the Knight of the Sunne vſed.

After the long and wearyſome trauaile which theſe two noble Princes ſuſtained, one morning by the péepe of the daie, they did diſcouer not farre from the place where they were, the lande, towardes which coaſt the Shippe layled amaine, the Knightes verye ioyfull hereof beganne to arme themſelues, with ſet purpoſe to land there. Not long after the ſhippe came to the ſhoare with ſuch a bottome ruſh, ſticking faſt in the ſandes, that they thought ſhée had bene ſlit in ſunder. Which ſodaine chaunce made them with all ſpéede to leape to the lande, aſſuring themſelues that the wiſe Lyrgandeo had ordeined the ſtaie to be made there, wherefore without tarrying anie longer, they take theyr horſes and mounted vppon them, and preſently after the Prince Eleno made proéfe of the goodneſſe of his horſe, which was ſent him by the wiſe man, and brothing his ſides with the Spurres, hée founde him verye readye, ſtrong, and light. The noble and worthie Knight of the Sunne his Couſin ſtoode by and did beholde him,

won-

" and perceiuing it to be so proper and conuenient to shed my
" complaints in, I vnbrideled my horse in this wilde fields,
" and determined with my selfe heere to ende my dayes, wher
" I haue remained this two yeares, demeaning this sorrow-
" full life, wherein you see me now, nourishing my selfe, with
" such fruites, as this wildernesse doth yelde. And somtimes
" the shepheards that come hether to shrowd themselues from
" the Sunnes parching heate, do fauourably bestow some pit-
" tance on me, and kepe me companie according to their lea-
" sure. Thus haue I vnfolded vnto you (most excellent prince)
" the beginning, not the ending of all my sorowes: see I beseech
" you, if you can call to minde any remedie that may stay the
" rankling of my disease, which hath continued so long, and
" wasted me to the very heart.

Vnneth had he rehearsed these wordes, but his senses began to faile, he was so ouercome with sorrow in rehearsing the tale.

¶ How the Grecian Knight perswaded his vnckle the Prince of Dacia, to accompanie him, & leaue that sorrowfull and desolate life: and of that which after happened to him.

Chapter. 5.

THE ioye that the Princely Knight of the Sunne receiued in finding his Cousin in the pinch where some comforte woulde do him good, can hardly be heere expressed, especially for that he knewe him to be the sonne of the King of Dacia his Vnckle (of whome till nowe no mention is made in the booke before) because of the long sickenesse that the King sustained, and therefore was his name concealed, and his valour clowded by meanes of his misfortune, albeit in truth the heroycall deedes of his sonne did almost equall his auncestours in euerie degree, as shall be said heereafter. And as I said before,

the

The Prince of Dacia remained in a traunce, imbraced betwæne the armes of the knight of the Sunne, by reason of the wordes that he spake, yet in the ende he wrought such meanes that he reuiued againe, promising him that if anye thing did lye within the compasse of his power which might bannuly his sorrowes, he shoulde finde him readie to performe it, and he would rather die then se him linger his life without anie sparke of comfort. This great kindnesse was friendly receiued by the Dacian Prince, and after many cogitations he thought it most conuenient to returne to his Countrie, and also it seemed him best for his most safetie to cut the seas, for being vnprouided of a horse, he might fall into some daunger, being strongly encountered. Whereuppon without more tarriaunce the Prince armed himselfe with his guilt armour, and girded his sword close vnto him, and mounted behinde the Prince, and so going where Fortune would guide them, and where the horse made choice of the waie, in the end after a little space they came to the shoare of the sea, where they found a straight and narrowe path, hard by the same, which seemed to them the direct passage to finde some hauen, where they might trauailing imbarke themselues, and in this manner as I haue told you, they saw comming towards them in the sea a faire barke well rigged and trimmed, wherin they saw no pilot to gouerne it, but it made directly toward the place, which when the two Princes sawe it came so neere the lande, they alighted, and drawing more neere, there lanched forth a Gentlewoman all alone, in a mild kinde of speech she spake and sayde vnto them. Noble Princes, the wise Lyrgandeo which at this present is resident in Constantinople, commendeth himselfe vnto you both, and by me hath sent you this faire barke, which with his art shall bring you where he hath extreame need of your valour, and farther he praieth you not to stand in suspition of that which I saie vnto you, for ỳ truth is, he hath great occasion to put in proofe your soueraign knighthood. The knight of the Sun his heart throbbed with ioye to heare the newes which the Gentlewoman tolde him, and especially for that it should

be

" imagination of that ſame, which not beeing applyed, I
" haddo no comfort lefte me but death: and yet with this
" ſtraunge demeanour ſhe was not contented, but ſtarte vp,
" and rowling the beames of hir chriſtalline eyes towardes
" me, as though they were ſparkes of fire kindled with ma-
" lice, ſhe ſayd.

" Couſin, hardly coulde I euer haue bene perſwaded to
" haue found you ſo preſumptuous, as to haue giuen the on-
" ſet to any thing which might preiudice mine honour, or of-
" fend my minde, partly for that you are bound to pleaſe all
" Ladies, but principally for that you ſhould not harme your
" friendes, among whom albeit I haue bene leaſt able, yet
" haue I not bene moſt vnwilling to ſtande you in ſtead: ſith
" therefore theſe conſiderations haue not preuayled to quench
" the firebrande of your fooliſh loue, I enioyne you vppon the
" penaltie of my diſpleaſure, not to make me ſtaine my credit,
" by imbruing mine owne handes in mine owne bloud: for
" in ſo doing, your villanie ſhall be publiſhed to the world,
" and the loſſe of my life ſhall make your traiterous heart ac-
" ceſſarie to my murther.

" After ſhe had miniſtred this corroſiue vnto me, ſhe re-
" tourned into hir cloſet, leauing me ſo benummed of my ſen-
" ſes, and ſo ſurfetted with this banket, that not being able
" to diſgeſt it, I ſonke preſently to the grounde, lying as it
" were in a traunce, where I was founde by the maydens
" of honour, which attendes vppon the perſon of the Quéene
" my mother, who ſéeing me in this pitifull plight, bethought
" them immediately of thoſe drugges, which might awake
" my dulled ſenſes: and as it is ſéene commonly, that wo-
" men are timerous in ſuch tragedies, they yelled and ſhri-
" ked in ſuch ſort, that the Quéene my mother ouer-hearde
" them, who wondring at the cauſe of this clamour, and leſſe
" thinking of my diſtreſſed eſtate, repaired vnto the place,
" whereas I laye thus martired, and ſéeing mée lulde and
" rockte vppe and downe in the Ladies lappes, ſo bathed in
" teares, and ſo hopeleſſe of life, ſhe wringed hir handes, and

what

what with their chafing of me, and pittiful noise they made, I felte my selfe somewhat reuiued againe, and when I opened mine eyes and sawe my selfe inclosed with so manye Ladyes and Damosells, and she absent whose vnkindnesse hadde dragged mee to this miserie and torment, I sodainlye fell againe into a traunce, and after long trauayle, and no lesse sorrowe, they summoned together my vitall spirites.

When I was the second time brought from death to lyfe, I founde they hadde stripte mee, and layde mee in my naked bedde, the same companie continued with mee, which came first to visite me. Likewise there came to comforte me certaine Knightes and Gentlemen, who demaunded of me where I felt my greatest griefe, and what was the cause of it. I then considering with my selfe howe despaire did rule the steame of my boate, and howe frozen I founde my Mistresse hir fauour (though vndeseruedly I was dispised) I bidde request them to bee quiet, and to depart from me for that time, giuing them to vnderstande, that I was disposed to slepe, which courtesie they presentlye graunted me.

Nowe Cousin, and worthie Prince of Greece, you maye gesse what discontented thoughts, what bitter imaginations, what sodayne alterations of minde, and what sundrie sorrowes I marked in, beeing hemmed in betweene dispaire and death. I know not I assure you what humane or earthly bodie were able to sustaine so manye tortures or so often rakings as my oppressed minde did, hauing not anie helping carde in my hande, nor anie hope that my Fortune woulde proue better. In this perplexitie at midnight I arose vp and apparelled my selfe, putting on my armour, the which I thinke you haue seene. Amongest these thicke bushes, I caused a Lackie to make readie my horse with as much secrecie as might bee, and taking my horse I departed out of the pallace without tarrieng or resting in anie place a moment, but with continuall sighs and sorrows, in the end of eight daies I attained vnto this place where you finde me.

And

" ſhall you perceiue the willingneſſe I haue to doe you good.
" And the great care that I will execute, to ſtay the rancknes
" of your diſeaſe. The pithie perſwaſions of this angelicall
" Ladie, were ſo ſweet and comfortable, that they cauſed ſuch
" baſhfulneſſe in my heart, that it moued mée to chaunge cou-
" lour, and through modeſt ſhame I could not, no nor I durſt
" not open my lippes for to vntwiſt vnto her the bottome of
" my griefe, but craued pardon, promiſing her, that at our
" next méeting, I woulde bewraie who ſhe was, that galled
" mée ſo greatly, ſhée béeing ſatiſfied herewith, and my wordes
" carrieng ſome credite with her, ſhée departed from me: but
" the terrible night that I ſuffred, what with viſions, dreadful-
" neſſe of dreames, miſtruſt of good Fortune, I referre the taſt
" of thoſe pills to your ſauoury and mature iudgement, noble
" Prince. For ſometimes I thought good to diſcloſe and diſco-
" uer the whole ſtate of my paine. And immediatly I would
" charme thoſe thoughts, preferring a cruell death before a per-
" petuall torment, but yet in the ende I concluded with my
" ſelfe, and thought it good to vnfolde the plaites of my ſorrow
" to ſo good a Phiſition, whoſe ſkill I knew could helpe mée,
" if diſdaine did not let it. I thought it good to entertaine hir
" courteſie as one that could enfraunchiſe my bondage, but
" wanting abilitie to perfourme my deſires by meanes of
" inwarde paynes, which hourely griped mée. I thought it
" not impertinent to vſe a pollicie by (Metaphora.) And ha-
" uing decréede with my ſelfe how to handle this practiſe, I
" roſe verie earlye in the morning, and ſhéuing off all
" feare, I apparelled my ſelfe more braue then I was accu-
" ſtomed, and went out of my Chamber to preſent my ſelfe
" to her, who had more authoritie ouer mée then my ſelfe.
" And loe, I found my miſtreſſe attending for mée, deſirous
" to heare the expoſition of that riddle which ſo darkelye I
" had propounded vnto her. The time was exceéding fauou-
" rable and the place moſt conuenient, ſo that I had verye
" good opportunitie and leaſure to diſcloſe the ſecretes of my
" heart. And ſurely ſhée hadde no ſoner diſcouered a glim-
" mering of me, but ſhée came to encounter me immediatly,

(whoſe

(whose Angelicall and braue beautie surpassed the twinkling Starres,) and her greate desire remayning to knowe the cause of my sorrowe, with a gratious and smiling countenaunce she approched to me and saide on this manner.

Loving Cousin, the place is now so conuenient, as ỹ you nede not to make it straunge to me wherein you are so grieued, I beseech you blush not to rehearse your pangs, which I knowe do sting you, and in so doing I promise you I will aduenture my selfe in ante daunger, howe greate so euer it bee, to remoue those pinching passions which so greatly afflict you. Then I seeing the houre so fit to make my market, I toke out of my bosome a faire bright Christall glasse, and with a panting heart, I sayd.

Faire Lais, and the onely nourisher of my lyfe, receiue this Glasse, & therein shall you see the Image of her who is the procurer of my martirdome, and encreaser of my woes: marke well her countenaunce, and then tell me I praie you whether it lyes in your power to vse ante authoritie ouer her, I am perswaded she is so neere a friend of yours, as you onely may dispose, which being true, I earnestly require you, to fulfill that which you haue promised me, euen for affinities sake, and for promise made; I am bolde to craue you to keepe the couenaunts which you haue made with me.

After I had thus spoken, with greate hast and quicknesse she toke the glasse out of my hande. And drawing off the couer she loked therein, whereupon she coniectured straight that she was the breder of my woes, which sodaine and straunge thought altering her coulour, she remayned greatly greeued, staring on me with a stearne and wrathfull countenaunce, beleeue me the memorie thereof as yet redoubles my sorrowe, for considering then with my selfe how bitterly shee harped vppon this string, and what a passionate minde did feede her melancholyke humour, I woulde more willingly haue spared my lyfe, then to haue her waste her selfe in sorrowe, through the greene

" with all her cunning, frame ſo much beautie in her face, to
" beguilde thoſe whome ſhe thought to entice. My deſire ſtill
" increaſed to beholde ſo much beautie, and the beautifull La-
" die ſetled all her care in chaſing the little Fawne, which
" when ſhe had gotten at anie aduauntage, ſhee would ſurely
" ſhoot and ſpeed, whereupon I would ſpeake ſoftly vnto my
" ſelfe and ſay. Alaſſe, that arrowe were better beſtowed in my
" heart, for being once dead, I ſhould auoide an hourely death,
" which pearceth me euerie daie. Therfore be aſſured of this,
" Knight, that I ſuſtained not ſo much ioy by her companie in
" the daie time, but I endured as great torment in the night by
" her abſence. Being thus waſted in woe, Floriſdama hadde a
" narrow ſcantling at the cauſe of my paſſions, and yet was
" ſhe not fully reſolued that it was for her ſake, and therefore
" with making ſhewes of loue ſhe demaunded what wringed
" me in ſuch ſort, either whether it was an imperfection in my
" ſelfe, or a want of boldneſſe to diſcouer it, hauing as I haue
" alreadie declared attained to the age of fouretéene yeares, I
" was dubbed Knight by my father, God knowes how grie-
" uous it was to me to be ſeparated from the thing wherin I
" ioyed ſo much. The imagination whereof I referre to your
" diſcréete iudgement, moſt worthie Grecian Prince, ſith that
" alreadie you haue taſted the ſame ſauce of cruell loue, and a-
" las howe grieuous were thoſe thoughtes vnto me which
" brought vnto my minde the enter-courſe of ſpéech, the kinde
" familiaritie, the pleaſant walks, and the comely graces of my
" diuine Floriſdama, your paſſed miſerie maye eaſily haue an
" ame at ỹ ſame, ſ my preſent eſtate may beſt diſcouer it, what
" ſhall I ſay more, right worthie knight, but my paſſions were
" ſo bitter, and my helpe ſo ſlender, that I loſt my coulour, for-
" bare my meate, and grewe to be ſo weake, that an inkling
" therof came vnto my ladyes eares, who perceiuing in what
" poore and lowe eſtate I remained, entreated mée moſt ear-
" neſtly to diſcloſe vnto her the cauſe which pinched mée ſo
" greatly, promiſing mée that if my ſorrowes might bée relée-
" ued through the fauour of anie Gentlewoman, ſhée woulde
" ſtraine her ſelfe to releaſe them if it were poſſible, and

woulde

would hazarde her selfe to procure her fauour which had so much enthralled me, wherat with watrie eyes I thus answered her.

Alasse Florisdama, loue hath layde such a corsiue to my heart, such a flame vnto my lightes, and such a sting vnto my breast, as it hath reduced mee to this state wherein you see mee. Oh souereigne Ladie, how much better had it bene for me, that rather in my greene yeares and in the middest of my hunting, Atropos had shredde in sunder the twist of my lyfe, then nowe to continue in sorrowe without anye hope of release or delart of relefe. The Angelicall Ladie seeing me weep so beautily, could not but distill some few teares from her christallin eies, albeit she did not throughly feele the bottome of my inwarde griefe, and thereupon she sayde thus.

Ah my louing brother, let me obtaine that fauour as to manifest vnto me the cause why you faile in sorrowe, and as it seemes remediesse, graunting my request, I promise you to procure with all diligence that there may be some salue that may cure that festering wound which seemes to cancur your hart & impaire your ioyes, for if you giue me credit I am perswaded there is no Ladie so vngratefull as to denie you her loue, being so valiant a Knight as you seeme to bee: and againe, knowing the worthinesse of your progenie, the disposition of your minde, and those incomperable vertues which shine in you: Alasse why shoulde not the courage of your minde suffice to kindle the affection of all the Ladyes in the worlde. And for that it hath beene your course Fortune to yeeld and surrender the interest of your good will to the subiection of one Ladie, relinquishing all other ioyes and pastimes. I meane not as now to shrinke from you, but with all my endeauour to releeue and succour thine estate, vntill such time as my care and practise maye haue light of her, that hath brought so worthie a Knight into such a Labyrinth, and hath cleane bereaued him of his libertie, and dispossest him of his former ioyes: spare not therefore to imparte vnto mee what it is that wringes you: thereby then

Alaſſe ſir Knight, howe little is the bodie touched with the dolefull cares of the heauie heart, and how ſlenderly nowe a dayes is the guerdon of a faithfull friend, as mine owne experience can beſt relate it, ſo ſhall your curteſie moue me to impart the well ſpring of all my woe, and then I beſeech you iudge how vnworthily I am tormented, I cannot otherwiſe thinke but you will pittie my miſhaps with ſome ſorrowing ſighs, eſpecially if at anie time you haue taſted the bitter pils of loue, and I promiſe you I would be heartely gladde that it might ſtand with your pleaſure to make me acquainted with your name, to the end I might knowe to whome I might diſcloſe my wretched eſtate. The Prince made him aunſwere and ſayd. I am ſonne to the Emperour Trebatio of Greece, and am called the Knight of the Sunne, brother vnto the renowmed Roſicleer, whom you greatly reſemble, and be thus perſwaded, that the ſparkes of loue hath kindled as many glowing coales in me as in anie other, and hath left as deepe impreſſion of ſorrowe in my poore heart as in anye other Knight. Therefore Knight as I haue ſatiſfied your requeſt, ſo I praie you vnfolde to mee the cauſe which makes you liue ſo penſiue. In ſo doing, I will ſweare by the almightie God, I will hazard my life to purchaſe your deſired quietneſſe. The Prince of Dacia which had alreadie heard of the proweſſe of the Knight of the Sunne, herewithall began to ſhake off part of his martirdomes, and knowing the worthineſſe of the knight, bowing downe his bodie ſomwhat low he ſaid. Although ỹ my miſhap haue ben great in ſuſteining ſuch cõtinual griefs, yet do I eſteeme it leſſer, ſith ỹ hereby I haue purchaſed acquaintance with ỹ flower of all chiualrie, whoſe valiant hart doth bemone my oppreſſed eſtate, & whoſe only counſell wil determine my exceeding torments. Sith thẽ renowmed prince ỹ loue hath already made a paſſion in thine hart, wherby you may ỹ better be an eie witnes of my wretchednelle, or to laie the truth of my cruell death: Underſtand you then that I am Don Eleno Prince of Dacia, ſonne to Cadiſlao, brother to the high and mightie Emperour Trebatio your Father, and to the beautifull Floriſena Daughter to

the

the king of Cypres and Nygroponte, vnder whose wings I was nourished till I was eight yéres of age, and was trayned vp in ỳ regall sort as was incident to my parents estate. Béeing of this age, spightfull Fortune who is slipperie to all men, and leuells commonly at the contented minde, spun mée so course a thrid, as I feare me in the weauing it will proue my vtter destruction. This blinde Fortune I saie, conueyed to the king my Father his court the beautifull Princesse Florisdama, daughter to the king of Nygroponte, brother to my Father, she was equall to me in age, and so induced with beutie, that she séemed Angelicall. While I was thus young, the burning flames began to scorch me, which now do singe me, and we were so allied, that without anie suspition we walked where we would, and most commonly we spent our time in a banquetting house which was halfe a mile from the Citie which was right faire, & compassed about with christalline streames, and grene meddowes furnished with sweete flowers we lead so pleasant & princely a life, ỳ we bestowed all our care in catching chirping Birdes and young Leauerets. Our mutuall good wills was so greate, as seldome did we forbeare each others companie, mine proceeding of an inward desire to haue hir to my wife, & hers in regard of the affinitie which was betwéene vs. This figured life continued vntill we were foureteene yeares of age, the which time we bestowed in hunting, to the great comfort of my heart (though in the ende not to the harts ease of my mind) my Florisdama hauing a crossebowe in hir hand, and a bugle horne about hir necke, little mindfull of that sorrowe which galled me so much. While she continued this paine in hunting, it begate a singular good will in me to sée hyr shewte, hauing hir golden lockes somewhat layde forth, and vpon hir head was knit a garlād of all sweet smelling flowers, she had a gowne of white Satten all laid ouer with gold lace, which made her séeme so celestiall, that she had bene able to haue quailed the heart of Cupid. Beléeue me and doubt not of it, valiant Prince, that Venus in hir most brauerie did neuer excell hir. Neither coulde the inchaunted Circes

That in my abſence, Lucifer ſo bright,
Nor gladſome Phœbus once ſhould giue thee light.

I gone, thou vowdſt, the waters ſhould not yeeld
their wonted ſolace, nor the pleaſaunt Roſe,
Or any flower of the fragrant feeld:
ſuch loue thou ſaidſt, thou didſt on me repoſe.
Which was but ſmall as now the ende doth trye,
That thus diſtreſt, thou ſufferſt me to dye.

Oh Gods of loue, (if ſo there any be)
and you, of loue that earſt haue felt the paine,
Or thou thy ſelfe, that thus afflicteſt me!
heare theſe my words, which hidden griefe conſtraine:
Ere that my corps be quite bereaud of breath,
Let me declare the cauſe of this my death.

You mountaine Nymphes which in theſe deſarts raigne,
ceaſe off your chaſe of ſauage beaſts a while,
Prepare to ſee a heart oppreſt with paine,
addreſſe your eares to heare my dolefull ſtile.
No ſtrength, remorce, no worke can worke my weale,
Loue in my heart ſo tyrantlike doth deale.

O Driades, of louers much adorde,
and gratious damſells, which in euenings faire
Your cloſets leaue, with heauenly beautie ſtord,
and on your ſhoulders ſpred your golden haire,
Attend my plaints: and thou that made'ſt me thrall,
If thou haue power, giue ſpeedie death withall.

Ye ſauage Beares in caues and dennes that lye,
remaine in peace if you my reaſons heare:
And be not mooued at my miſerie,
though too extreame my paſsions doo appeare.
Ye Mounts farewell, ye fragrant fields adieu,
And ſiluer ſtreames, high Ioue ſtill proſper you.

He finished his song with manie a bitter sigh, and hée was so windlesse with sobbing, that he laye as it were in an extasie stretched vpon the ground. The Knight of the Sun entring into this ruinous lodge, finding the Gentleman in this wretched estate, he began ne to behold the proportion of his face, and with extreame dolour wepte, as well in ballauncing his owne passed miserie with this young knights, as also for that he verely reputed him to be his brother Rosicleer, or els some néere kinsman of his, for that in beautie and strongnesse of bodie, he resembled him so much, ỹ there was but small difference betwéene them, saving onely the beard. While the Grecian Prince was beholding this sorrowfull sight, the inthralled knight with a déepe sigh awaking, and seing the Knight of the sunne afore him, he wondred what might drawe so comely a Knight vnto so solitarie a woode, and therewithall he reared vp his bodie, and sitting vpon ỹ gréene grasse, with many a drerie teare, hée beheld ỹ shape of the Knight of the sun, ỹ inforcing himselfe to speake, he said: Sir Knight, insomuch as fortune hath directed you hether to accompanie me in this desart place, sit by me I pray you, and pardon my folly, in that you haue found me so disordered. The Prince without making anye aunswere, sate downe as the Knight intreated him, being very desirous to knowe the ende of that aduenture, ỹ what cause made him demeane so tragicall a life, he being set, he tolde the Knight, that the desire he had to vnderstande the darke wearses that were in the trées, and likewise to heare his swéete songs, which so harmoniously he sang, moued him to forsake his waye, and to repaire to this ruinous lodging, ỹ therwithall made render of his seruice to the knight. While the Prince deliuered these speaches, the comfortlesse Knight was musing with himselfe, what he might be, who by his comelinesse appeared to be valiaunt, and by his curtesie to be honourable, and therewithall was verie desirous to knowe what he was, and being somewhat stinged with the bitter passions which he had alreadie sustained he said.

But then (alas) my dreame I vnderſtand,
and torments freſh doo newly vexe my minde.
So that theſe trees as witneſſe of my care,
To heare my plaints to ſilence them prepare.

The time I ſing to eaſe my heauie hart,
conuerts in fine to former miſerie:
Ah cruell Dame, that I (without deſart)
for louing thee, in countrie ſtraunge ſhould die.
But what know I, that thou doſt this intend:
Heauens graunt thy ſight to me before mine end.

Yære he ended this ſong, the Knight of the Sunne gathering by his dittie the wretchednesſe of his eſtate, he could not but accõpanie his pitifull muſick with many ſtreams of brackiſh teares renuing in his minde the olde ſtormes that lately battered his breſt. Wherevpon he then alighted from his horſe, (which before he had not done) and with a ſoft pace he marched towards the olde ruinous houſe, where he ſawe a knight proſtrate vpon the ground all clad in cloth of gold, which in truth was torne in many pæces, and perceiuing the Knight to be of a goodly ſtature and verie well proportioned, and ſo young that ſcarce might bæ ſæne anie haire on his face, and therewithall ſo faire, that the knight of the Sun neuer ſawe anie one that might match him, he greatlye wondered. This enthralled knight hauing his eies ſhut vp, hæ guſhed forth trickeling teares ſo faſt, that almoſt with blubbering he had diſfigured his face. As the Knight of the Sunne viewed all theſe things attentiuely, the young forlorne man without opening his eyes, turned him vppon the other ſide and ſaid, Oh Prince of Dacia, how much better wer it for thæ to die then to liue in this continual thraldom. The Grecian prince ſtood ſtill to ſæ if this ſorrowing knight woulde renue his plaintes, who immediatly after with extreame dolor began to ſay. Oh death, what doo I fæle, whether are thy forces fled, why haſt thou now forſaken me, ſith at this preſent thy curteſie might fauour mine eſtate. Oh

cruell

cruell Fortune (admit there be anie) art thou not satisfied with that iniurie which thou hast alreadie extended vppon me: wilt thou needes inioyne me to suffer more penaunce: make an ende I saie, of thy greedie desire, make me not sometimes merrie and more often sorrie. When he had finished these speaches, he began to slumber, and immediatly with a sorrowing sigh he began to saie. Alacke Fortune, how manie things are there framed by thy hands, I weete in all mens tasts, and sowre in my digestion, pleasant to many, and bitter to me. After this he toke againe his instrument, & with an harmonious stroke & pittifull voice he sang these verses.

O Heart more hard then Hircan Tiger fell!
and are more deafe then senceleſſe troubled ſeas:
O cauſeleſſe foe, whoſe rigor doth excell!
to thee I yeeld, thy anger to appeaſe:
Take tyrant wrathfull, wreake of me thy fill,
That ending now, my griefe remaine not ſtill.

My heanie cheere, and euill that is paſt,
my fainting voice, my caſe ſo comfortleſſe,
Thou moandſt not once, ſo mercileſſe thou waſt,
nor ſtirdſt thy foote, to eaſe me in diſtreſſe:
But time will come, when ſorrow hath me ſlaine,
That thy repentance will increaſe thy paine.

Ah cruell, how canſt thou the loue forget,
that each to other we in youth profeſt?
Which when I minde, full many a ſigh I fet,
for that was it which firſt bred my vnreſt:
And for the ſweete, which then by thee I felt,
I finde ſharpe ſowre, O moſt vniuſtly dealt.

Tell me wherein I haue offended thee,
or when I ſlackt thy ſeruice anie waie:
Then how canſt thou ſo much vnmindfull be,
when oft in ſecret thou to me wouldſt ſaie:

ſtand the conceit hereof he became very penſiue, and ballancing in his minde the fortune that chaunced to him in the Iland of the wilde Fairie: herevpon he imagined this other was not much different from it. The Grecian dwelling in this dumpe, turning his eyes he ſawe that all the trées ther abouts did carie the name of Floriſdama, and in ſome places it was ſhortly written with an F. and a D. It chaunced alſo among thoſe trées he ſpied a ſword faſt chained, which by the damaſking and brauerie of it, might be geſſed to belong vnto ſome worthie Knight. Theſe thinges procured the Knight of the Sunne to imagine, that this Knight ended his dayes deſperately, through the ſwéete enticing baits of loue, which thing draue the Knight of the Sunne into a greater maze then he was in before, and therewithall engendred a deſire in him to ſée the ende of this aduenture. The ſtearne of his ſhip being thus guyded by a carefull Pilot, he returned backe to the place where he firſt heard the noyſe of the inſtruments, and the farther paſſage he made, the ſhriller he might heare the ſound, whereupon he trauailed ſo long, that with eaſe he might perceiue the ſorrowfull Knight touch his Lute, with a panting heart, and ſometime intermedled his muſicke with a ſwéete voyce and a pitiful dittie. The knight of the Sunne was greatly enclined to know him that bewayled ſo bitterly his miſhap. And hearing him begin to ſing certaine verſes, hée ſtood ſtill. The ſorrowfull Knight of the Foreſt, began in this ſort.

O Direfull death! when ſhall the hower be
ſo long deſirde, for to diſſolue my griefe:
That this my corps bereaued of breath by thee,
in Miſtres praiſe my ſoule may finde reliefe.
Oh Atrapos (in deſarts where I pine,
And liuing, die) doo thou my thred vntwine.

O loathed life! oh moſt vnhappie fate!
wherein I feele ſuch force as none maie bide.

Iniu-

Iniurious Dame, (which broughtſt me to this ſtate)
thy cruell dealing plainly is eſpide:
Yet thus I deeme, and ſo my ſelfe perſwade,
My mone, no mirth vnto thy hart hath made.

But ſure I feare my fortun is not ſo faire,
that I for thee ſhould bitter death ſuſtaine:
Yet if it chaunce, this ſtill ſhall be my praire,
that ere my ende, I may thy ſight attaine.
Ay me poore wretch, my wiſh would worke my woe,
Thy irefull face would cauſe my griefe to grow.

What force I that? If God would giue conſent,
that thy white hands a while before I dye
Might comfort me, I ſhould be well content,
whether with friendly or with frowning eye
Thou me beheldſt: For, being traind to griefe,
Till life be loſt, I looke for no reliefe.

But what auaileth me my vaine deſire?
too childiſh is this fond conceipt of mine.
No hope can helpe to that which I require,
theſe deſarts are vnfit for one ſo fine.
Yet ofte times heere me thinkes thy face I ſee,
With mercie mixt, anone with crueltie.

And euen as one which ſpectacles dooth weare
in eight parts cut, can haue no perfect ſight,
(In that from one, ſuch ſundrie formes appeare):
euen ſo my fancie neuer falls out right.
For in my ſleepe I onely ſhadowes ſee,
When ſubſtaunce ſweete is fartheſt of from me,

Sometimes I prooue, and forth I put my hand,
and thinke to feele the thing I hope to finde:

moued the chirping birds with their golden layes to warble forth their ſugered tunes. At that preſent houre the knight of the Sunne brideled his horſe, and without ſetting his foot in the ſtirop he mounted vppon him, leauing the raines on his necke, to the end he might goe where beſt liked him, hee had not long iourneied but he was come neere vnto a riuer which ranne through the Forreſt, his horſe being verie drie entered into it, altogether careleſſe of the exceeding anguiſh wherein his Maſter was, whoſe minde was ſo perplexed in conſidering his ſtraunge miſhap, that he forgot where he was, vntill the bubbeling of the Chriſtal water awaked his benummed ſences, and then ſeeing himſelfe in this golden ſtreame, and gaſing on euerie ſide he eſpyed the armour of the valiant Wight, which was chained for a monument vnto a Pine apple tree. The Prince ſtaied long in viewing them, greatlye admiring at ſuch an aduenture, and approching more neere, he might well diſcerne by the head peece that the armour belonged vnto the Wight whome he had ſought with great labour and paine, which ſight did greatly trouble his minde. And turning his horſe to ſee the ſtraungneſſe of this miſfortune, he ſawe the bloudie alter where the Wight had committed this ſacrifice, & neere vnto it was annexed a goodly graue cloſely couched by a lofty Pine, wherin was engraued certaine verſes, which when he peruſed he might perceiue that they were compounded by his brother, and when he had by reading of them, gathered the ſorrowfull end that the valiant Wight made, he could not ſo well gouerne his affection, but y his eyes diſtilled guſhing ſtreames of water, greatly deploring with himſelfe the frowarde fortune of ſo valiant a man, where by imbruing his hands in his owne bloud had thereby eclipſed his former honour. Then greatly exclaiming againſt the wretchednes of this worlde, and the looſeneſſe of the people, he did note the ſolempne vowe his brother made, and therewithall did remember the fruites of his vertue, and thereupon deſirous to ioyne with him in trauaile, he did ingraue with his dagger ſomewhat vnder the other Epitaph, theſe verſes that followe.

Whoſe

Whoſe trauaile ſtrange ſhall leade him to this place,
to view this ſhield and ſtrong Tartarians graue:
That man I warne that he doo not deface
the ſame,deuiſde by Roſicle'er the braue,
Whoſe brothers bloud the quarrell ſhall maintaine,
Againſt ſuch knights,that would this armour gaine.

When he had written this,he walked vp and downe by the graue,& by chance ſaw ẏ dagger wherewith ẏ Moꝛe had killed himſelfe,and taking it in his hand,he ſayd: Truly thou haſt great cauſe to lament, ſith that thou haſt bene the inſtrument to murther the beſt knight that euer ware armour, and in memoꝛie hœreof thou ſhalt ſtaye hœre,ſaying this, he lift vp his arme and ſtrake the Dagger into the pine trœ vp to the hiltes, and without any moꝛe tariance he toke his hoꝛſe and trauailed on thꝛough a young groue, the night being very cloſe,till at length he repaired to one coꝛner of the Riuer, which was all ſhadowed with the grœne bꝛaunches of Pine apple trœs, and not farre from the Riuer, hœ diſcerned an olde ruinous houſe,which was verie auncient, and as it ſœmed no man did inhabit it,and as he made thetherwarde, he hearde the voice of one which as he thought ſang very ſwœtly,wherupon he rained his hoꝛſe & directed his way thether. Not far diſtant frō a trœ he ſaw a grœne armoꝛ engrauen with perfect gold very richly,and there was faſt tied vnto a bough of ẏ ſame,a ſhield of fine ſtœle, the field being grœne, wherein was poꝛtrayed a Mermaide, which in ſhape ſœmed to be a Goddeſſe of the ſeas. Likewiſe cloſe vnto the ſhield,ther was chained a rich helmet,which was very ſtrong. It might well be thought by the riches of the armoꝛ they appertained to ſome valiant man,and alſo it ſœmed the time was long ſince they had bene hanged there,foꝛ that the waſhing of the water had waſted the bꝛightneſſe of the couloꝛ. The knight of the Sunne with an earneſt deſire beheld them, and ſawe the bodie of the Trœ ingrauen with this woꝛd Floriſdama. And when he could by no meanes vnder-

ſtand

ing of Roſicleer, and will returne to declare vnto you, the many worthie deedes that his brother did accompliſh, ſuffering him to ride in his boate, as alreadie hath beene treated vnto you.

¶ The great ſorrow that the knight of the Sunne receiued in thinking of his owne diſloyaltie, and that which happened vnto him. Cap. 4.

THe Knight of the Sunne with great furie and haſt, wandred through the Forreſts of Greece, as it hath ben alreadie declared vnto you, kindling the aire with fire, with that burning cholar wherin he was wrapped, vnhappie had he bene, which at that time durſt haue vndertaken to haue reſiſted his purpoſe, for while hee was in this moode, there had bene no roeke ſo harde, but hee would haue torne in peeces, nor no hill ſo ſteepe, but he would haue pulled downe. In this ſort he went all the daie not finding anie print of that he ſought for. The darke night did ouertake him in the thickeſt of the Forreſt, whereby he was enforced to alight, and eaſe his horſe, who fed vpon ỹ greene graſſe, and he leaned himſelfe vnder a high Pine tree, the place being ſo ſolitarie, it was a meane to drawe him in minde of many things which had alreadie happened vnto him, and ſpecially it renewed the freſh aſſaultes of that lone which paſſed betweene him and the Princeſſe Lyndabrides muſing with himſelfe what ſhould moue him ſo vnkindly to forget her, and in comparing the beautie of the Princeſſe Lyndabrides with his beloued wife, he found the Empreſſe did farre exceede her, and hereupon the knightes good will beganne to kindle, and was inwardlye glaade of his owne choice, but this affection was ſone extinguiſhed, ſo firmely ſetted was that good will hee bare vnto the Barbarian Ladie. The impreſſion whereof was ſo deepe, that hee altogether forgot the auncient loue that he had borne vnto his beloued Empreſſe, whereuppon with ſorrowing ſighes he ſounded forth his griefe, and with briniſh teares hee ſaide, Is there in the world anie

anie knight so little attainted with loue as I am, or can there be anie one so vngratfull as I, sith that I bestow no care vpon one, so furnished with beautie, and indued with so many excellent vertues. Alasse Lyndabrydes, right worthie dw I acknowledge my selfe to be chastised with loue, sith that without reason I haue transgressed his bonndes. As there is nothing in me to merit your diuine beautie, so am I altogether vnworthie (being a disloyall knight) anie so vndeserued curtesie, but I will promise you to execute vpon my selfe a more sharp reuenge, then laie in you to giue me, sith that I haue forfaited that bond wherein I was bound vnto you. Oh miserable knight what sayst thou in thine owne defence, how canst thou excuse thy folly? hast thou blotted out of thy mind ỳ souereigne curtesie of thy Ladie? or hast thou suspended the swæt memorie of her diuine beutie, being so rare an Empress? Oh traiterous hart why hast thou yælded to this folly? why dost thou not now repent this passed fault, sith that loue which first enthralled thy minde, doth now without ceasing tormẽt thy heart? Oh wretch that I am, what condigne punishment may I bestow vpon my selfe. O sacred Emperico, thou gauest me fræ possessiõ of all, without reseruing any thing, thou didst surrender to me thine Empire, & thou didst yæld to me thy libertie, and I careleste of my faith, & neglecting thy courtesie, could not intertaine a good opinion of thæ alone in my heart, according to thy desert, but haue ben preuented by the Tartarian ladie, who hath made a breach in my affection. Forgiue me I beseech thæ: Oh sorrow, oh intollerable griefe, no lesse sharp then death to sæ my hart diuided in twaine. Is it possible ỳ I can liue & sustaine these nipping passions which assalt me; with this the miserable knight sẽt forth a scalding sigh, & by his countenance appeared to be plunged in great sorrow, insomuch ỳ the ecko of his bitter passions moued ỳ shiuering leaues to quietnes, & the percing aire to a certain calme stay, only to heare ỳ plaints of this oppressed knight. In this beenie plight, & woful cogitation ỳ afflicted Grecian spent ỳ wearie night, vntil the glistring Sun w̃ his radiant beames, did shine vpon the græne grasse and swæte budding træs, and

moued

and seeing the Knight, knew he was none of hirs. Therupon with an angrie countenaunce she said vnto him, Who are you sir Knight which haue bene so bolde as to come and see what is heere without my commaundement? where are my Knights and keepers which haue not defended you the passage, nor brideled your exceeding boldnesse? The courteous Grecian who greatly bewailed the sight which he sawe, and the great dolour wherein the Gentlewoman was, hee aunswered hir soberly. Madame, I am a Knight, whose help if it might stand you in steede, though it were with hazard of my life, you should finde it readie at your commaundement: and as concerning the gard which haue attended vpon you, they haue done what lay in their power to preuent me, but all could not preuaile. The Ladie attentiuely heard the speeches of the Knight, and hearing the tidings he deliuered hir of hir Knights, she lifte vp the other side of the couering of her Charlotte, she espied some of hir Knights murthered, other some hurt, & other some all to be trampled vnder the horse feete. After she had seene the great ouerthrowe of hyr Knights, with an angry countenaunce she turned hir to the Knight and sayd: The Gods send thee a perpetuall plague, sith that in such sort thou hast intreated the best Knights in all my Prouince, and sith that our misfortune hath bene so great that thou hast had the power to vanquish my keepers, I beseech the Gods, that thy forces hereafter may proue as weake, as my troupe is now poore and slender. Follow on thy waye, and suffer me to goe mine, with that companie which hath scaped thy cruell hand, what wouldst thou farther learne then that which thou hast alreadie seene? Besides this, my griefes cannot affoord me so much time as to recount them, neither hath thy courtesie wrought in me such good will as to recite them. When she had thus spoken, shee opened one of hir casements, and made signe to the dwarfes which ridde, that they should whip the horses, which when they had done, they went like the winde, leauing ỹ Prince more discontented then he was at the beginning. And without more tarriance, he continued on his iourney, greatlye

bla-

blaming the courtesie of so euill mannered people: and hée trauailed a long time without encountering any thing worthie the recitall, vntill he came vnto the shore of the Sea, wherein he saw a great boat of verye faire workmanship, vpon which he had great delight to looke, yet he did not forsake his way, and he had not continued long in rying, but that he heard a womans voyce as he thought, call vnto him: Knight of the Princesse Oliuia, succour this captiue Gentlewoman. At the call hereof, the Knight tourned his head, and gazing on all sides, he coulde not see who called him in such hast, and so following his waye, hée heard agayne a newe voyce which sayd vnto him: Knight of Cupide, thou neuer deniedst to anie thy helpe, and wherefore doost thou not succour me. The Prince greatly astonished, tourned himselfe to see if he could perceiue who called him, which thing when he could not doe, it bred a bitter passion in him. Going forward in his iourney more carefull then hée was, he heard the third time a voice cryeng vnto him. O son of Trebatio, couragious Rosicleer, what is become of that pittie which was wont to dwel within thy valiant heart, towards the succouring of the oppressed Ladies, why dost thou now begin to faile me. When he heard himselfe called by his proper name, it did strike him into a greater dumpe then hée was in before, herewith imagining that the voyce came forth of the ship which he sawe at the shore side, hée lighted from his horse, and nimblie leapte into the Boate, and his horse as if he had vnderstanding followed him. They were no sooner in the Boate, but it beganne to cut the Seas with such swiftnesse, as the winde which hath long time bene imprisoned in his caue, and could not get forth at anye chinke, & it blewe now in such sort, as Iuno by long intercession intreated Eolus, who vntying therhynes, commaunded the Windes with all their furie to transport the enamored Aeneas and his Troyans armie into the deapth of the seas. Rosicleer was greatlye amazed to see himselfe thus swiftlye conuayed, and sawe not anye in the Boate which so often had cryed to him for succours. Here wee will leaue speak-

of the same colour, and in their company came a Chariot, all couered with blacke Seargе so close, that it was impossible to see what was within it, ỹ light came in through two windowes which were placed at the side of the Charriotte. Foure horses did drawe it, all clad in blacke cloth, and there did ride two faire dwarfes, as guyders of the same, all apparailed in blacke. Behinde the same there came likewise tenne Knights cloathed in lyke sort, & by their countenaunce they weare all right sorrowfull, so that the troupe of the Knights that came with the Chariot were thirtie in number. With this beauie countenaunce and great straungenes, they passed by Rosicleer, without speaking any word vnto him: wherevpon the Prince came to those that wayted behinde, and demaunded of them in courteous wise, what they were, which were inclosed in that sorrowfull Waggen, but the Knights were so beauie and sad, that they made him no aunswere, but passed on forward, which bred a more earnest desire in Rosicleer to know who was within, sith that with such milde speach he had demaunded, and could not be resolued to any purpose. And herevpon without taking anye further aduise in the matter, hee rushed among them that enuyroned the Chariot, onely to see what was within it, but ere he might come nere it, he was letted by two of the
"Knights which saide vnto him: Staie thee Knight, staye
"thee, for if thou longest to knowe who is here, thou shalte
"be hindered from it by vs, which stande here to no other
"purpose. It is my desire (sayd Rosicleer) and willingly wold
"I be satisfied of my request without entering into the com-
"bat, and if ye would afford me so much courtesie, as to tell
"me the cause of so great sorrow, I should bee heartelye glad.
"Thou maist not understande it, aunswered one of the
"Knights, at this time, therfore depart thou hence in peace,
"vnlesse thou wilt make experience of our forces, which do
"attende vpon it. I knowe not (replyed Rosicleer) how it shall
"betide me, but truly whether you will or no, I am purpo-
"sed to see what is within it. After he had thus spoken, hee laid his hand vpon his sword, and without tarriaunce for

more

more speaches, he hit one of them so strongly, that he killed him. His companion seing this, let drive at the Prince with all his force, but the fierce Grecian suted him a passport suitable to his companions: which thing drane theyr companions into a wonderfull admiration, and hereuppon forgetting all courtesie, they altogether enuyroned the Prince, and strake at him on euerie side: but the valyaunt Grecian seing himselfe in such a prease, it was not long, but that he did vnharnesse some, and maymed other some, and others hee strake downe dead, and cursed was hee vnto whome hee lent a full blowe. In such sort the Prince skirmished with those Knightes, that they beganne to recoyle, fearing the death, considering that it was better to disclose to him that which with such humanitie hee had demaunded of them. Hereuppon the knightes with blushing countenaunce made towardes the Knight, and being so wearie as they were, which tourned to their owne harme, they strake freshlye at him againe, whereuppon the Prince did cut and mangle them at his owne will. Hee then perceiuing the small resistaunce that they made, he came vnto the Chariot, and pulling vp the coueriure, hee sawe that there was within it, a dead body all imbaulmed, and on the head of it, there was the Crowne of a King, which head vnto the breast was diuided in sunder with some blowe, and he didde repute him for such a one by his royall garmentes, which were all imbrued in bloude. There sate in a Chayre couered with blacke Tipers, at the foote of this dead king, a Gentlewoman of a middle age, leaning her cheeke vpon her hande, and her eyes shut, shee bedewed her face and breastes with innumerable brinish teares, and neere vnto her there sate another Gentlewoman, who seemed to bee but tenne yeares of age, all wrapped in blacke, which Gentlewoman was so fayre, that she appeared vnto his viewe more diuine then humane.

The renowmed Grecian Prince with great admiration and no lesse pittie, beholde this sorrowfull sight, and at length the distressed Gentlewoman, opened hir heauie eyes,

ſcull euen to the verie ſhoulders, the wretched Pagan falling down dead to ẏ ground, ẏ moſt parte of his bloud came guſhing out of his bodie. Vnneth had hee fallen from his horſe when the trembling and troubled Ladie did alſo fall from her Palfraie, as one that ſhoulde giue vp the Ghoſt, whome when her Gentlewomen did eſpie, lighted all of their Palfrayes, and with ſtreames of ſalt teares began to lament her wofull caſe, & to accurſe her froward fortune, euerie one ſtriuing about her, to trie if they coulde by anie meanes reſtore her againe to her memorie. The Prince ſeeing her in this extremitie, did alſo forſake his horſe and come towardes the place, where this miſerable Ladie laie like a ſtake, and cauſing one of her Gentlewomen to fetch a little water from the riuer which was hard by, he beſprinckeled her beautified viſage with it, and thereupon ſhee came to her ſelfe againe, and opened the dimmed windowes of yir darke bodye, and when ſhe beheld the Prince ſo nigh hir, with a profounde ſigh and pitifull voyce ſhe ſayde. O cruell homicide of my faithfull and valiant champion: thou thirſtie bloudſucker of the royall bloud of Meſapotamia, diſpatch nowe, diſpatch I ſaie, to execute thy furie with thy imbrued Sworde vpon my ſorrowfull heart, and ſpeaking theſe words ſhe fell againe into an extaſie as before, which Roſicleer marking, and gelling at her inward paine by her extearne countenance, he turned himſelfe to one of her Damoyſells, which as hee thought among the reſt of hir traine ſeemed the chiefeſt, in knowing moſt hir Ladies ſecrets, and ſayd vnto hir: Gentlewoman, I ſee (God knoweth, not without great ſorrowe be it ſpoken) ẏ griefe ẏ your Lady indureth in viewing my face, therefore I praye you tell hir from me, that I intreate her to goe to the Emperours court of Greece, and there preſent her perſonage to his maieſtie, and certifie him of all theſe accidents, and there to ſtay my comming, for I meane ſhortly to returne thether, and then I promiſe her, that there I will vſe ſuch means ẏ ſhe ſhall inioye to her great contentment, that thing, the want wherof doth ſo greatly grieue her, and becauſe my wordes may carrie more credite with her,

you

you ſhall tell hir, that one of the Emperour Trebatio his ſonnes, the greateſt friend that the Tartarian Prince hath, did informe you this much. And hereupon not tarieng for anye replye, he mounted vpon his horſe, courſing through the foreſt. When he was gone, the Gentlewomen helped their ladies by certaine drugges which they brought forth for preuenting ſuch mishaps, and ſo recontinued hir health againe, and afterward expreſt to hir all that which the knights imparted vnto them, which report comforted hir not a little. The griefe which the Ladie and hir Gentlewomen did ſuſtaine, in ſeing a ſtraunge Knight glaunce by them armed, and to remaine in the woode alone without ſuccour or comfort of any, I would here ſet downe before your eyes: but I am inforced to return to the famous Roſicleer, and at this preſent, I will not make recitall to you, what knight that was, who parting from Roſicleer did appeare againe vnto him at his going out of the foreſt.

¶ Prince Roſicleer trauailing on his way, hauing alredie taken leaue of the Princeſſes Ladies, did chance vpon a certaine aduenture, and of the ſucceſſe hee had therein. Cap. 3.



THe valiant Roſicleer being departed from the ſorrowfull princeſſe, went as he thought the nereſt way through the foreſt to finde his brother, with ſet purpoſe to make him acquainted with that which you haue alreadie heard, and afterwards to returne backe to Conſtantinople. So it happened that fortune guyded him into a broad and large way, which was his direct pathe to Conſtantinople, and turning him to the ſame waye where he ſaw a great gate in hope to learne ſome newes of the knight of the Sunne. He had not trauailed long, but he deſcryed a farre off a ranke of men all armed, and they drawing more neere vnto him, he perceiued that they were xx. Knightes armed with black armour, and their head-peces and beueres

vpon theyr Anſieldes. But whoſoeuer had then beheldē the appalled countenance of the Ladie, hée would no doubt haue taken her for no liuing creature, ſo much did this deſperate and fierce combat aſtoniſh her comelye face. And thinking vppon the valiaunt enimie of her Knight, who lyke a Beare that hath loſt her yonglinges aſſailed him euermore: on the one ſide ſhe wiſhed in her heart the victorye ouer him, and on the other ſide fearing to ſée her ſelfe all alone, ſhe deſired greatly truce betwéene them, and that they might parte friendly, & that which did moſt glad her minde was, ỳ oftentimes ſhe did imagine (& yet but doubting of ỳ matter) if perhaps this ſhould be the knight whome ſhe did take ſo greate paines to finde out, and that which did confirme her ſurmiſe, was, that ſhe heard him at the firſt name ỳ Tartarian prince. In ſuch and other like thoughts and doubts, the comfortleſſe Ladie paſſed awaie her time: In the meane while that the couragious Knights were buſie how they might diſpatch the one the other. But ỳ crabbed Moore with both his hands gaue the ſtout Grecian ſuch a blowe vppon his helmet, ỳ he made his horſe necke a pillow for his head, wherewithall he began to thumpe & beat all his fæling, & in this ſenceleſſe ſort was Roſicleer carried vp & downe the plaine by his horſe, ỳ Moore purſuing him to cut off his head, but as God would haue it, he awaked as it were out of a dreame, and furiouſly recouering his ſworde, hée tourned backe againe, and repayed the Paganne with ſuch a forcible blowe vppon his friendly helmet, that his wonderfull ſtrength made the well tempered ſtæle to yæld, and therewithall it made him fall backwardes vpon his hyrſes buttocke, caſting out blood out of his mouth, his horſe carrieng him hære and there amidſt the pleaſaunt fields more then halfe dead, but Roſicleer would not followe him, but did attend whether and about what he went, who tarried not long but ỳ he inioyed his former ſenſes & ſtrength, (being once almoſt diſpoſſeſſed of them) and abaſhed to ſée the Prince to haue ſurmounted him by lending him ſuch a cruell blowe, ſo extreamely did all the furies in hell conſpire in his breaſts, that now hauing reared vp his ſworde, which fell

from

from him by force of that vnreasonable blow, he broched his horse with his spurres amaine, and with incredible swiftnesse he encountered with the Grecian Prince, and hit him so mortall a stroke vpon one of his shoulders, that it made his bones rattle within his skinne, but he failed not to leaue the print of his sworde in some parte of the sinnowed flesh, so that nowe the battaile seemed to bee but begunne, such was the fiercenesse of both these stout champions. And both of them imployed their forces in smiting of each other, and also their wits were not idle how the one by some slight might soner cut off his enimie, because it greeued them both that the battaile begunne two long houres since, shoulde indure anie longer without aduauntage of anie parte, wherefore both did their diligence to finish it by some waye or other. And all this while it was verie harde to knowe whether of them had the better ouer the other, being equiualent in prowesse and manhode. But the couragious and fierce Grecian being angrie in his minde to see one onelye Knight to keepe him at the staffes ende so long, replenished with an infernall furye, he beganne a fresh to double and redouble his mightie and peysaunt blowes vpon the Pagan, whereat he had good cause to wonder: and perceiuing that his strength did more and more increase with his courage, he beganne to blaspheme against his Gods, yet notwithstanding lyke a fierce Lyon hee thought to teare in peeces the worthie Grecian, wherewithall he let slippe so diuelliſh a blowe vppon his head, that with the losse of his vnderstanding, hee did almost fall from his horse: The worthy Rosicleer quickelye againe recouered, and seeing himselfe to bee in such a plight, hee tourned his horse so nimblye, that he scarce lefte his treading in the grounde, and nowe when hee sawe himselfe iumpe with his enimye, gathering together his forces and standing vpright in his stirroppes, hee wealded his sharpe Sworde betweene his strong and mightie armes, and thundered so deadlye a blowe vppon the Pagans head-peece, (who indeede was not prouided for anie defence) the force whereof made a diuision from the

" whose life and disdaine breedes me this sorrow, might argue
" too much pitie without desart. Alasse, what lucke had I, that
" love should intrude himselfe so forcibly into my poore hart,
" and governe there as chiefe Lorde, and could he not have
" battered the breast of Zoylo, whose defence in resisting had
" been more strong then mine, but the weakest must to the
" wall, and the least able must beare the heaviest burthen.
" How gladsome would that daye be vnto me, wherein I
" might see my Knight abandon his straungenesse, and ex-
" tend more favour vpon me: or els alas, how willing wold
" I be that my afflicted heart were drawen out of his
" place by his bloudie hande. The poore Ladie being not a-
ble to speake anie more, wrong her handes and staied her
selfe against a Pine apple tree, which was behinde her
backe, at the view whereof the Mesopotamian knight in
great sorrow layd himselfe downe againe, vpon the greene
grasse. And the Grecian Prince wondring at this straunge
aduenture, retourned very softly to that place wher he left
his horse feeding, with intent and purpose to encounter that
Knight, so soone as Titan shoulde appeare to lyght
the world with his beames, and for no other cause but on-
ly to deliuer his friend from that prepensed malice. And
when as ye firie Phaëton began with his glancing beames
to shine, the Grecian Prince put on his armour, laced his
helmet, mounted vpon his horse, and with a soft pace made
towards the Prince of Mesopotamia, who was now pre-
pared to vndertake his iourney with his companie. After
they had trauailed awhile, the Prince did espie them pas-
sing through a faire champain or field, and was greatly a-
bashed at the exceeding beautie of the Ladye, whome hee
viewed a long time, and loue hauing tickeled him for
that she was so rare a Phoenix, he thought for her sake
he coulde subdue all the worlde: wherefore he tourned
his eyes towarde that place where the Knight was, and
if before hee wondered at the Ladyes comely graces, not
much lesse was he now amased at the strong bodye of

this

this knight, and at his huge and well fashioned weapons, whereby he reputed him to be some worthie & noble champion. After he had shaked off this imagination, hee said vnto him: Knight, take thy weapons and armour for thy defence, for I am desirous to haue some triall of thee, before that thou doest proue thy valour with the Tartarian Prince, thereby peraduenture to quite him (if I canne) from the like battaile which thou doest intend to haue with him, at the request of this Ladie, and therefore I meane to preuent that diuellish purpose which thou hast promised to accomplish. The Pore hereat began to swell, and verie scornfully and with a fearefull countenaunce replied. What furie or diuell of hell hath placed so foolish a thought in thy brains, to vndertake that exploit, which the best of the Gods neuer durst enterprise: and not able to speake anie more, his cholar & rage was so great, he laide both his handes vpon his sword, and therewithal let flie at the Grecian Prince such a blowe, that he made his head redouble in his breast plate, and vpon the necke of the same, he discharged another vpon him, which made him yeld backward. The Grecian Prince wondering at his incomperable strength and nimbleneſſe, drewe out that straunge and vnknowen sword, which the Quæne Iulia did giue him, and lifting it aboue his head with one of his accustomed blowes, he did smite it vpon the pagan his helmet, which made him bowe downe his head to his saddle Pomell, so that his sences were almost benummed with the force of it, but being recouered, he began by little and little to smite and wounde the noble Prince, yet his dexteritie in fighting coulde little preuaile, for the Prince stode not still, but did so bestur himselfe, (and with as great furie as the other) that he did scarre his enimie in diuerse places, which he felt not without greate paine, although he made no semblaunce of the same, whereupon the battaile being before but kindled, was now on a hot flame, both of them burning in reuenge, and therefore continued a good while furious and fierce, flashing maine blowes betweene them, which sounded a terrible noise in the thickneſſe of the wood, as if manie Smithes had bene hammering

Yea euen the fiſh that in this riuer dwell,
whoſe cleere ſweet ſtreames my teares haue bitter made,
Will ſtay to heare the proceſſe which I tell,
the Nymphs alſo that haunt this grouie ſhade:
And Ecko eke, full glad of ſuch a mate,
Will in my words bemone hir paſſed ſtate.

I loue (aye mee) whereby my ioyes I loſt,
and am not lou'd, wherein freſh griefe I finde:
Prowd Tyrant thou, with ſhame thy conqueſt boſt,
thy faith, my fame, ſtaind by thy cruell minde,
Who gotſt with guile the guard of my good name,
And leau'ſt me now to ranſacke of defame.

Cannot my face where nature prints her praies,
thy liking draw her A.b.c. there to know,
My haires excell bright Phœbus golden raies,
my eyes more cleare then ſtarres in froſt that ſhow.
My cheekes likewiſe, for perfect white and red,
reſemble bloud that in the ſnowe is ſhed.

The reſt vnnamde doth match all theſe likewiſe,
but lo my faith my forme too farre doth paſſe,
Yea, forme and faith he ſhunnes and doth deſpiſe,
whom ceaſleſſe I purſue from place to place:
Whereby though ofte my tender lims I tire,
My will yet freſh, through hope and ſweete deſire.

She made an ende of hir ſong with a pitifull ſigh, and letting hir lute fall out of hir hand, with a trembling voice ſhe ſaide. O Prince Zoylus, if thou diddeſt or wouldeſt
„ knowe the greate trauaile that this carefull Damoiſell
„ ſuſteyneth for thy onely cauſe, I dare verily thinke, that al-
„ beit thou haddſt taſted of the water of the inchanted well of
„ Merlin, yet could it neuer worke ſuch effect in thee, as to

make

make thée careleſſe of my tormentes, ſith they are ſo ſharpe, and I haue ſuſtained them ſo long.

Theſe wordes were no ſoner vttered by this ſorrowfull lady, but preſently, the knight ſtart vp, who was laid downe cloſe by the Lady, and could not be quiet, vntill he had anſwered hir thus. What breath hath loue made in your breaſt, moſt delicate damoſell? how hath he ſubdued you with his blinde force, vnleſſe the great diſdaine and diſcontentment that the Tartarian Prince ſhewed you do oppreſſe you, I know not why you ſhould complaine: why ſhuld not you quite his diſcurteſie with like diſgrace? why ſhould you not make him taſt of ỹ ſower which ſeemes ſo bitter to you? You ſent for me (you know) to come into Greece, onely to be reuenged of his crueltie: and how often haue you wiſhed his head as a Sacrifice in reſpect of his contempt? And how comes it now to paſſe, ỹ in your longs he is remembred with ſuch affection, thought vppon with ſuch plaints, and called vpon as a diuine creature? Beléeue mée and doubt not of it (good madame) if Fortune be ſo fauourable to aſſiſt mée in my purpoſe, I will in ſuch wiſe contriue theſe matters, that you ſhall neuer haue anie occaſion to lament his lyfe, neyther yet to ſuſpect that he doeth beſtowe his good will and liking vpon ſome other Ladie.

The afflicted Dame notwithſtanding all theſe his comfortable ſpeaches, could not ſtrip her ſelfe of any part of theſe exceeding ſorrowes, which ſo deeply did ſting her, wherevppon ſhée aunſwered him in this order saying.

Prince of Meſopotamia, I ſayle euen nowe betweene two doubtes, whereby I do not onely doubt, but am alſo perſwaded my ſhipwracke is harde at hande. For if I become ſo frowarde, as to enuie him whome I wiſh to bée my friende, or that I haue ſo cankered a minde as to ſéeke to deſtroie him whome I loue ſo well, what might be layd of me otherwiſe then of a fained louer, and cruell homicide: againe, if on the other ſide I pardon his death, whoſe

of the lamentable ende of this desperate Moze. Hauing finished his talke and trauaile, without longer abode, he mounted vpon his courser, and directed himselfe thozough the thickest of the Wood, determining alwayes to accomplish ỳ which he promised, although it did impoze so much in it, as the weight of his life, as you shall perceiue hereafter. This valiaunt knight continued not without greate griefe of minde, in remembzing the ozder of ỳ death of Bramarant, which did continually occupie his memozie. And as he went thus dzowned in sudden of sozrowe, he knew not, neither cared he which way his hozse did carrie him, vntill the darknesse of the night surpzised him, so that hée coulde not passe anie further, wherefoze hée was constrayned to light from his hozse to walke on foote, and to remaine in that place all Night, wherefoze hée vnbzideled his hozse, and gaue him libertie to fæde on the swæte grasse, (whereof he had great næde) hauing endured much trauell befoze. He likewise vnlaced his helmet, and laying it vnder his head in stæd of a pillow (being a course bolster foz an Emperours sonne) rested his werie limbs vpon ỳ greene medowe. And thus bæing alone and solitarie, he could not suspend the remembzaunce of those passions, which the day befoze he had passed. Also those conceites did call to account moze sozrowes, & made him to be græued foz his long absence from his best beloued Oliuia, whose beautye hée intertained so dæply in his minde, as neither time, place, noz any foztune whatsoeuer, could seperate hir from his good opinion. Nourishing his minde with this swæte passion, he continually tossed to and fro: and in the ende, sæing the bzight shining Mone, & firing his eyes vpon it, hée began to contemplate the diuine power of almightie God, not wondering also a little, how that ỳ heauens were beautified with golden stars, and how the greate Architector of the wozld, had setled euerie one in his due and conuenient place, which ingendered a greate confusion in his minde. These cogitations summoned him to slæpe, wherein hée had

had not taken long reſt, but ꝑ he heard on his left hand a harmonious ſound of ſome muſical inſtrument, & therwith all ſo pleaſant and Angelicall a voyce anſwerable to the ſame, ꝑ he ſuppoſed it to deſcend frõ ꝑ heauens. The prince ſtart vp, and ſoftly went through the darke thicketes, to the end he might approch the more nerer, therby to be partaker of that celeſtiall muſicke, but he was hindered of his iourney, for that Dianas brightneſſe was eclipſed with a Clowde: wherefore then lifting vp his eyes, he might diſcrie vnder a broade Pine apple træ, a certaine Lady ſitting vppon a quiſhion of blacke veluet, embroidered with diuerſe prætie knots of golde, whom he ſuppoſed to be that Ladie, with which her diuine harmonie delighted his troubled ſpirits, her faire & yeolow haire vntied, and hanging downe beneath her eares, did reſt vpon her comely ſhoulders, in ſuch ſœmly ſort, and ſo long, that ſome part therof touched the black veluet cloath, which did ſœme with their golden colour to repreſent ſome golden embleme, wouen in the ſame cloth. She had before hir Chriſtalline breaſt, a goodly Lute, whereon ſhe played (as you haue heard) this ſ wæte muſicke. There waited vppon her perſon nine faire damoſells, arraied all alike, with gownes of blacke veluet, & on her one ſide ther lay proſtrate a luſtie & ſtrong knight well proportioned in bodie, and tall, harneſſed in a blacke Diamond armour, without anye other deuice, who was verie attentiue to the muſicke, which the faire Ladie did ſing: the tenor of the which is compriſed in theſe verſes following.

STraine forth a voice conformed to my hart,
and let my fingers heauie ſtops applie:
Whileſt that my tongue in words bewray ſuch ſmart,
as who them heares, maie knowe in life I die.
Foules, beaſts and wormes, that neighbor neere this place,
All in your kindes, aſsiſt my wofull caſe.

Hone,

of the miserable ende which did befall vppon this Tartarian, he coulde not but sheede from his eyes some trickeling teares, saying: O wretched worlde, what boteth so much the mightie limmes and exceeding forces of any man, when as thou with thy smoth and flattering face, doest drawe them at last that follow thy course, to such a wretched end, and at the pinch of all their pangs thou forsakest them. O Bramarant, Bramarant, whose forces did resist the mightie Grecian armie, the incomperable strength of my brother, the tried knight of the Sunne, and hast not had power to suppresse thine owne outragious passions. Hadst thy valour and noble courage did require, naye rather deserue, more glorie, and more guerdon then this. Thy strong and fast knit members did merit to be entombed in a more rich Sepulchre, then in this weat and small sandes, and God knowes, neuer deserued to be a pluming stocke to the rauenous Fowles of the ayre. What did moue thee, O most vnhappie amongst all men, to make thy angrie arme bereaue thee of thine owne lyfe? It coulde bee nothing else I am sure, but thy surpassing great pride: What did moue thee to this vntimely death, as it well may be tearmed, sith thy fortune hath beene such, I will not suffer thy bodye to be pulled in sitters with hungrie beastes and rauenous Harpies, neither will I see thine armour dispearsed in such sort, without bestowing vppon thee the due desert of honour, which are sufficient witnesses of the sacrifice of thine owne bodie, and a testimonie of that which thou diddest offer vp to thy Gods, by sprinkling the pleasaunt leides and greene grasse with such a crimsin coulour. And after hauing thus pittifully bewayled the More, he toke his helmet, and pulling out the murthering dagger, which was nailed close to the hiltes in his bodie, he digged a deep graue therewith, wherein was interred the miserable bodye of the vnfortunate Tartarian. Likewise he did hang the armour vpon a verie faire and high Pine apple tree, which was neere vnto his graue, and with the point of his

Dag-

Daggar did ingraue this Epitaph in the rinde of the Træ.

This Pine with ſtretched armes, oreſhades a valiant knight,
Whoſe bodie heere interred lies, and Bramarant he hight:
In ſtrength and feates of armes, he moſt men did ſurpaſſe,
A Pagan borne, his natiue ſoile and land Tartaria was.
His owne right hand, a wofull caſe, himſelfe did ſlay,
And rēt his heart which neuer was ſubdude before that day
Trebatios ſonne firſt there this mightie More hath found,
Twixt life and death, and with his hands ingrau'de him in this ground.
A Monument too baſe vnfitting his degree,
Whoſe bloud & acts in tombe of gold interd deſerud to be.
In this faire growing pine for honour of his name,
He did ingraue theſe lines, to be a record of his fame.
And placed his armour heere, forbidding anie Knight,
To take it hence, vnleſſe he be as ſtout as he in fight.
And who ſo ſhall it weare, muſt warres continue ſtill,
With Grecian Lordes, as Bramarant did, this ſtandeth for my will.

Roſiloor

Nowe hauing finiſhed this pæce of woꝛke, he ſayde: Pardon mæ valiaunt Woꝛe, I beſeech thæ, becauſe at this time & in this place I do not attribute ſo much honour to thæ as thou deſeruеſt: yet I dœ pꝛomiſe thæ by the faith of a Chꝛiſtian knight, to fulfill euerie point in this Epitaph, (I eſtæme ſo much) though it bæ done with the loſſe of my lyfe. And to make the moꝛe aſſuraunce of this my pꝛomiſe, I bowe that no yeare ſhall paſſe, but that I will come to viſite thy Sepulchꝛe, to ſæ and knowe who hath bæne ſo hardie and bentrous, as to thinke himſelfe woꝛthie to carrie away thy heroycall armour.

And in ſpeaking theſe and ſuch other lyke woꝛdes, hæ did not foꝛget to mingle them with ſome trickling teares, his couragious heart was ſo toꝛmented in meditating

of

" ſhalt perceiue, that they are not ſo valiant and ſtout as I
" am, or euer haue bene. Hauing thus ſaid, he caſt it in the
deepeſt part of the riuer, not hauing any more weapons
but a poore poynado, which vſually he did weare about
him: & taking it in his hand, deliuered theſe ſpeaches vnto
" it. Thou ſilly bodkin ſhalt finiſh ỹ peece of worke, which
" all Chriſtendome was neuer able at anie time to beginne,
" I meane in bereauing me of my wearie & lingering lyfe,
" for I aboue all men onely deſerue to leſe it, ſeeing that I
" beeing the ſonne of ſo valiant a Father, haue not ſhewed
" anie ſparke of that valour which by right ought to deſcend
" to mee from mine auncеſtour, ſith then I haue digreſſed, I
" repute my ſelfe vnworthie to be regiſtred for his ſonne. O
" how worthely doeſt thou deſerue death vnfortunate Bra-
" marant, ſith there are ſo fewe buddes of valour ſpring-
" ing in thee. And let mee not denie but that mine aunce-
" ſtours deſerued to finde much more fauour at the Gods
" hands then I haue done. Foraſmuch therefore as my caſe
" is ſo bad, I will neither commend my ſoule to the tuition
" of the Gods, neither will I craue of any man ſo ſmal a fa-
" uour as a graue for my wretched bodie. Yeelding forth
theſe reaſons with a great and pitifull ſigh, deſcending
from his heauie heart, hee ſtabde the Dagger amiddeſt
his ribbes, which pearced vnto the liuer and heart,
and ſo the vitall powers ſtriuing with death, and his mi-
ſerable carcaſſe beating vp and downe the ſmall ſandes
for lyfe, there dyed in this ſort the moſt valiant & ſtout Pa-
gan, whoſe ſemblable the world did neuer yet bring forth,
moſt vnworthie (God knoweth) of ſo cruell and pitifull an
ende.

¶ The worthie Knight Roſicleer finding Brama-
raunt giuing vp the ghoſt, after he was dead, did
entombe his corpes neere vnto a Pine apple tree,
wherein he did ingraue an Epitaph. Cap. 2.

The

THE laſt pang & deadly galpe that the baliaunt Tartarian yelded, being diſtreſſed betweene lyfe and death, was ouerheard by noble Roſicleer, who by chaunce (purſuing him and his brother) repaired to that place where the Moze lay wallowing: & aiming very well by his ſozrowfull ſighes, that he indured heapes of paſſions, rained his hozſe towards that way where hee heard ſo thrill theſe gronings, and ſtaieng a while to heare his pitiful complaints, laid himſelfe ſquat vpon ỹ ground, not far frõ whence ỹ dead pagan lay imbzued in his blood. And wondering howe ſo deepe a riuer might chaunge his coulour by the loſſe of the bloud of one man, began to toſſe the dead cozpes vp and downe, pzeſuming in himſelfe, that rather the paſſion of the minde oz the weight of his armoz then anie deadly blowe that he had receiued, had brought him to this extremitie. In the end, ſeeing his viſage ſo beſmeared with bloud, as he coulde not trulye geſſe what knight hee might bee, inſomuch as he neuer ſawe him but in his Beauer. Hereuppon hee wondzed greatly, partlye to ſee that this knight was ſo ſtrong timbered, but principally to ſee his ſterne and lowze countenaunce. And by as much as he could gather by his fozeſayde complaints, he imagined him to be the executioner of his owne bodie. He pauſing ſomwhat in a maze, in viewing this lamentable ſlaughter of Bramarant, without mouing his eyes either one waie oz other, vntill in the ende he looked vp, beeing greatly afflicted in his minde, and deeply ſighing, caſt his eies that waie where the Moze his armour laie ſtrawed as you haue alreadie heard, and ſeeing them to bee ſo greate and ſtrong, he went about foz to peece and lay them all in ozder, which thing being done, he knew by the deuice ingraued in them, that this was Bramaraunt the Moze, which lay thus murthered. His ſtout heart could not bzooke this ſozrowfull Sacrifice, but in conſidering

woods, cutting downe oakes, & rooting frō ỳ ground pine apple trees, as if they had ben slēder rods. And being plunged in this pensiue mode, he entred into ỳ highest degree of his melancholike passiōs, debating wt̄ himself, why should it not be possible ỳ his mightie hand should conquere & subdue one silly Knight. But other sometimes descending from ỳ mode into a more mad & frantick kind of behauiour, this disturbed More did bend himselfe towards the midst of ỳ wood, & keeping on his right hand, he repaired towards the brink of a broad & deepe riuer which ran by that wood, where he purposed to ease his wearie limbs: and the better to performe his desire, he vnlaced his helmet, and hurled it scornfully to the ground. Now the infernall furies began to visite the More, and attended to sting his poysoned breasts, in such sort, that what with desire of reuenge, and sorrow for his late mishap, he was all kindeled in fire, hauing tossed manie thoughts in his crabbed minde. In the end, he cast vp his wretched eyes to the heauens, saieng: O ye trecherous Gods, ioyn in league to defend your selues from mine vnfortunate hand, stay not, but muster your forces together, for if mine owne hand in the meane while be no impeachment to the cause, by pulling out my heart, I will change the colour of these christalline waters with the Sacrifices of your bloud: for no doubt there resteth more valour in this one knight, then in you all, when you are together. O ye dastardly cowards, where are ye now become? Trust ye to this, that I haue in more regard the worthines of that knight that fought against me, then I haue in lyking your famed forces. And seeing ỳ neither your powers nor my strength, may not paragon to his courage, and to the ende, ye shall not flatter your selues wt̄ a good opinion of your own soueraignitie, being insufficient to succour me, & much lesse vnable to suppresse my will, or bridle my desire, I will renounce you all, & trust no more to your fauors. After he had thus spoken, forthwith he began to pull in sunder his strong & bright shining armor, & what with outragiousnes

nes,or with ſorow which did greatly gall him,he caſt from him one pace here,another there:& blaſpheming againſt al his Gods,he ſayd: What doth it auaile me your vertue, your fauours,or mine owne ſtrength? is it not altogether weakneſſe?is it not a ſhew without ſubſtaunce?Haue you not ſuffered my father to be ſlain without taking reuenge? haue you not ſeene me ſubdued, wanting forces to requite it? Might not my father haue bene preferred before Iupiter for grauitie & wit?before Alcides for proweſſe?& before Mars for courage?Can I otherwiſe conceiue, but that you are all baſtards,in ý you take no reuenge: deafe,in ý you will not heare the complaints of the oppreſſed:& blinde in that you cannot ſee the deſerts of me. I ſhuld think truly my fathers forces exceding you all,ye haue bene a meane to breede his death ſo ſoone. Why did you not aſſiſt me againſt ý Emperor Trebatio?why did you not maintain me againſt ý knight ý hath cõquered me in ý field.O ye faint harted wretches,what hath brought me hether,thus in the prime of my youth to be put to ſhame, by being ſubdued of this knight. I will vſe ſuch meanes, ý none of you ſhall take reuenge of me,by dieng at my enimies hands:neither ſhall any haue occaſion to triumph & ſay, ý he hath ſlaine the knight Bramarant.And ſpeaking theſe & like ſpeaches, he toke his ſword into his hand & ſaid. O good & faithfull ſword, releaſe me from ý ſhame which I deſerue, in that I haue not executed ý,which I did couenaunt to atchieue by thee,ſith ý neither thy trenchãt edges, nor my approued ſtoutnes haue ſufficiently plaid their parts, to ſatiſfie that, wherevnto my promiſe hath bound me. A cowardly arme did hold thee,a baſtardly hart did direct thee,& an euil guerdon be thy glory. Well,I will ſhrowd thee in ſuch ſort, ý hereafter thou ſhalt not ſtand any other hardie knight in ſtead,nor be ſubiect to any man as thou haſt bene to me. This onely thing I requeſt of thee,if any of ý Gods carry ý good will to take thee vp to ſerue their own needs,erpes in what ſmal regard my vncõquered hart held thẽ, & thou

vpon him (which fickle fortune doth vsually affoord), herevpon did call for his horse and armour out of hande, which being brought with as much spéd as might bee, in so short a time he being furnished with his owne weapons & armour, he leapt vp nimbly into ỳ saddle, & posted through the forrest in as great hast as he might, following his brother in the same path whether he went, wher we will leaue him, to make rehearsall of that which did befall in the Emperours court, in the meane time: when as ỳ beholders had somewhat staide themselues in remembring this notable battaile, & had as it were forgotten the sharp brunts ỳ two champions sustained, the Emperour with ỳ rest were somwhat recomforted to sée how lovingly Rosicleer did follow to aide and succor his brother, and discoursing by the way of the battaile, and of the incredible strength and courage of the Pagan, they withdrew themselues into their tents: being not long there, newes was spred abroad in the court of the losse of Clarimant, which report when the Empres hard, it laid such an impression of griefe in her Emperiall heart, that albeit she was an Empresse and had rule dome of many nations, yet had she not so much power ouer her selfe, but presently thereupon she fell into an extreame Extasie betwéene the Empresse Claridianas armes. The Duénes and Ladies beholding so tragicall & sodain mischaunce, they clustered altogether, & with certain drugs which they had about them in a readinesse, they somwhat reuiued hir againe, she being before greatly distraughted out of hir wits and senses. And with sorrowing sighes replenished with much martirdome, descending from the bottome of her heart, bathing also her beautifull visage with two streames of salt teares gushing from her eyes, with a lamentable voice she deliuered certaine speeches, which did moue the assistaunts vnto verye great compassion: To whom the emperour came (although he was God wot, in such plight himselfe, that his case rather required more comfort) then to visite the comfortlesse: yet notwithstanding

ding he with a graue countenance, verie louingly did cherish & perswade her: which spæches of his sauoured somwhat of an angrie shewe of reprehension, in the ende hæ wrought so much with her, as she was fullie recouered and contented. The Emperour not to seeme daunted with any thing, but to make a more apparaunt shew of his valour, he commaunded his huntsmen to continue the sport, and in outward semblance seemed to be so merrie as euer he was, wheras in truth he was secretly wringed, for the exceeding great passion which he sawe the lady Claridiana indure, for the sodeine absence of him who was newly married vnto her, & had begotten her with childe. After three daies were passed, they were desirous to returne to the Citie againe, and taking vp their tents, they layde all thinges in order, and in readinesse to procede on theyr iourney. But as they began to marche on theyr waie, they might perceiue comming a long by the Forrest side a Coach, all couered ouer with blacke Seargs, which foure horses did drawe, trapped with such like blacke furniture. Before it eight knightes came riding, with Targettes and armour, all out of order, and broken, which did very well erpresse, that they escaped from some daangerous & hot skirmish. Behinde the Coche did attend as many more knights, hauing their armour suitable to the first, all did beare blacke deuices, the barbature of theyr Horses, aunswerable to the same. The Emperour and Knightes which beheld this same shew, beeing all blacke in mourning wise, did raine their horses to knowe what came in the same Coach.

Heere must I digresse and recite vnto you the cruell order and miserable end of the vnfortunate Pagan, & will returne at length to relate vnto you, what did betide the Emperour and his companie, after this sight of the Coche. The diuelish Moze Bramaraunt ran through the Grecian forrests (a hellish furie being his guide) yelling & braieng against his Gods, and as a starued Tyger he trauailed the

taſſe did continue betweene thē ẏ ſpace of two long houres, and albeit it was fierce and ſharpe, the valour of the incenſed knight of the Sunne preuailed not to abate or extinguiſh the rage of the Pagan, & much leſſe could the force of the Tartarian quaile in anie ſort the courage of the princely Grecian. The ſkirmiſh being hot, and the redoubted ſon of Trebatio perceiuing that it indured very long without certauntie who had the better: hereupon being greatly inflamed with furie, lifted vp his peiſant club aboue his head, & did diſcharge it vpon the pagan his left ſhoulder, in ſuch ſort, (that notwithſtanding his ſtrength) he was forced to ſhrinke backward, and ſo fell flat vpon his right ſide, being greatly diſmaied at ẏ blowe, & much more at the fall: he began to recouer himſelfe at length by the friendly help of an aſh tree which was cloſe by him, for otherwiſe his vnwildie bodie had taken more pauſe vpon the ground. Scantly had he taken good footing when he perceiued the knight of the Sun ſort him another ſequence aunſwerable to ẏ firſt. The Gyant being vnprouided of anie trumpe to caſt in his waie, wherupon he was driuen to cloſe with the Grecian, and hauing ceazed his bodie with his ſharpe talents, he began to gripe him verie hard: The heroicall Prince ſeing himſelfe thus imbraced contrarie to the cuſtome of all curteſie, began to ſhift, for to auoide this courſe entertainment ſo well as he might, but wanting more time then courage he was thereby tript to the grounde. And finding himſelfe laden with his enimie, he was therby compelled to forſake his club, and by all meanes to ſeeke to ſhake off that vnfriendly burthen. Therefore catching Bramarant by the middle with no leſſe agilitie then furie, hee did violentlye pull him vnderneath: whereby he requited him in part, for the diſcourteſie of the former fall. There did they both ſhew their ineſtimable forces, and paſſing nimbleneſſe of bodie, in this cruell and daungerous encountering. And thus they long time tumbled and toſſed each other on the graſſe, ſome times not mouing for want of breath,

other.

otherwhiles wallowing together to get the masterie, yéelding forth most terrible groninges, by reason of the great paines and wearinesse that they susteyned in this harde conflict, at length they set each other at libertie, & then start vpon their feete, and beganne to fight as fiercely as before. The Knight of the Sunne drawing out his Sword, supposed that no resistaunce of the enimie, how strong so euer it were, coulde suspend the execution of his purpose, the Moore likewise toke holde of his beaute trenchaunt blade, cursing and banning his Gods, that they hadde endued this Knight with so great force and prowesse. Being in this brainsicke mode, he wold not attempt to make experience of his enimies force againe, but flourishing his sword amongst the troupe, caused thē to sunder themselues and so in flying, made a broad lane betweene them, and ranne to shrowde himselfe into the thickest of the Wode, that he could, leauing the people in a great admiration: The noble knight of the Sunne when he beheld that his champion betoke him to his heeles in so great hast, whether hée did it for feare (which was vnlikely being a stout champiō) or for diuelish madnes, (which might seeme true) being no christian, called for his horse, & could not be perswaded frō pursuing ỹ Pagan, by the Emperour his father, making a semblaunce of great anger by his countenaunce, his horse being brought by one of his esquires, he mounted into the Saddle verie lightly, without helpe of his stroppes, and broching his courser with the Spurres, hée made him runne so swifte, that he seemed another Perseus vppon his Pegasus, to them that beheld him. He ceased not to course vp and downe the Forrest, with set purpose to single out his Enimie, and not to rest vntill hée hadde subdued him, or els to be conquered by the vertue of his aduersaries force.

Noble Roscicleer perceiuing his brother to be inclyned for to take reuenge of the Pagan, and thereby mistrusting least that some frowarde mischaunce might atteine

¶THE FIRST BOOKE

of the second part of the Mirrour of Knighthood: wherein is intreated the valiant deedes of armes of many worthie Knights.

¶THE CRVELL BATtaile which past betweene the Knight of the Sunne and the fierce Gyant Bramaraunt, in which bickering the Gyant perceiuing he must needs haue the worst, murthered himselfe.

CAP. I.

WHEN THE GLITTERING armour of Aeneas of Troie was at the request of his Mother Venus forged in Vulcan his shoppe, the well fouled hammers did let temper and beate it with great noise, then the heroicall sonne of Trebatio (pursuing the stout Pagan Bramarant through the thickest of the Grecian woods,) did with his vnbrudle club, thunder downe blowes vpon his armour, mangling by little and little his strong and lustie bodie, so much the more their choler increased, as the combat did indure betweene them. There were present at this bickering the renounced Emperour Trebatio, Alicandro the king of Hungarie, and his Grandfather, with manie other puissaunt Princes and graue Lordes, who with no small admiration did behold the exceeding fiercenesse with which they let driue their blowes the one at the other, which did resound an Eccho in the aire, and yelded a terrible noise in the woodes. And

To the Reader.

it there ſhall (peraduenture) want the like grace of eloquence in the tranſlation as is requiſite, yet I doubt not but the varietie of the matter ſhall make a ſufficient recompence. Moreouer (curteous Reader) I requeſt thee to note, that whereas the beginning of this part followeth not conſequently vpon the ſame booke which was publiſhed in the name of the firſt part, it is not to be imputed to any errour committed in the tranſlation of this ſecond part: for that it is verely the ſelfe ſame, that beareth the title of the ſecond part in the Spaniſh tongue, but the booke that lacketh, is the ſeconde booke of the firſt part, which with as much ſpæde as may be, ſhall be ioyned therevnto. In the meane time, accept this in good parte, which I now preſent: wherein thou ſhalt finde the ſtrange and wonderfull proweſſe of the worthy Trebatio, and his ſonnes, nephewes, kinſmen, and ſundry other couragious knights, mixed with many lamentable and ſorrowfull hiſtories, together with the redreſſe of the wronged innocents. And ſo I ende, committing this my labour, to thy curteous conſideration, and thy ſelfe to the Almighties tuition.

Thine: T.E.

to finde an Engliſh Patrone of conformable qualitie, whoſe countenaunce might as well preferre him with the curteous, as protect him among the enuious. But I had not long bethought me, when the conſideration of your worſhips courteſie with the good reporte of your vertue, expelled that doubt, and incouraged me to preſent you with this worke. Beſeeching you to accept in good part, this poore preſent at the handes of him, which wiſheth to you long life, with the continuall increaſe of vertue, proſperitie, and health: and after this life endleſſe felicitie.

Your Worſhips moſt aſſured:

T. E.

To the Reader.



Gentle Reader, I haue hére published the ſecond part of the Myrrour of Knighthode, to the end that I might both ſatiſfie thy deſire, and yælde vnto thée the delight, that by reading thereof thou mayſt receiue. About the veritie of the hiſtorie I will not contend, neither would I wiſh thée to bée more curious to inquire, then thou wouldeſt be deſirous to ſift the truth of each tranſmutation in the Metamorphoſis of Ouid, or cuerie tale in the works of Aeſope: but to conſider, that as the one by the tranſformation of reaſonable creatures into ſundrie brutiſhe ſhapes, ſhadowed the deformitie of their wicked liues: and the other by the manner of his beeſtes figured the behauiour of all the eſtates of men, wiſhing a reformation of the euill, and a confirmation of the good: So our Author hath pleaſantly compiled this preſent worke, as well to animate thoſe that are by nature forward vnto the exerciſe of armes, for to exalt their fame: as alſo to prouoke them that haue hetherto ſlept in the bedde of ſecuritie, to ſhunne their wonted ſloth, with deſire rather honourablie to loſe their liues in the defence of equitie, then ſhamefully to liue with perpetuall infamie. And whereas there are ſome ſo ſkoycall to contemne the reading of hiſtoryes, alleadging that their vaine delight withdrawe manie from other vertuous ſtudies. I anſwere, that in anie matter where vice is reprehended, vertue is no waie hindered, and although I muſt nedes confeſſe, that the learned workes of the liberall ſciences are principallye to be preferred, ſo it cannot be denyed but that the pleaſaunt ſtile of a well penned hiſtorie, is as it were a whetſtone to the minde, being almoſt dulled with continuall ſtudie: and albe-

TO THE RIGHT WOR-

ſhipfull, and my verie good

friend, Maſter Edward Cordele,

Eſquire.

ARISTOTLE (right Worſhipfull) being demaunded, what benefite he had obtained by Philoſophie, anſwered: This is my gaine, that vncommaunded I can doo that I ought, and auoide dooing that I ſhould not; For, (ſaith he) the ignorant for feare of puniſhment abſtaine from euill, but the ſapient can ſhunne the ſame of their own accord: noting, that ſtudious exerciſe bringeth experience, and maketh as well ciuill pollicie, as martiall proweſſe apparant. For which cauſe, there haue bene ſundry in times paſt, and ſome in this our preſent age, that haue not onely penned with great labour the laudable workes of Antiquitie: but alſo with as much trauaile haue imitated certaine olde writers, by inuenting of hiſtories, no leſſe profitable to repulſe other hurtfull paſtimes, then pleaſaunt to paſſe away the tedioufnes of time. Amongſt the number of which late workes, there chanced about a three yeares ſince to come into my handes, the firſt part of a Spaniſh tranſlation, intituled, The Mirrour of Knighthood: which beeing publiſhed was ſo accepted, that I was importuned by ſundry Gentlemen (my very friendes) to procure the tranſlation of the ſeconde part: whereto, (partly to accompliſh their deſires, and partly for the vulgar delight of all) I condiſcended.

And finding this Spaniard adorned with all good exerciſes, which pertained to the exalting of vertue, and the extinguiſhing of vice: I laboured (as much as in mee laye)

THE SECOND part of the Myrror of Knighthood.

CONTAINING TWO SEVERALL Bookes, wherein is intreated the valiant deedes of Armes of sundrie worthie Knightes, verie delightfull to be read, and nothing hartfull to be regarded.

¶NOW NEWLY TRANSLATED out of Spanish into our vulgar tongue by R.P.

IMPRINTED AT London by Thomas Este.

1583.